CK-12 Physics - Intermediate

CK-12 Physics - Intermediate

Ira Nirenberg
John Kim, Ph.D.

AUTHORS
Ira Nirenberg
John Kim, Ph.D.

EDITOR
Boris Korsunsky

To access a customizable version of this book, as well as other interactive content, visit www.ck12.org

CK-12 Foundation is a non-profit organization with a mission to reduce the cost of textbook materials for the K-12 market both in the U.S. and worldwide. Using an open-content, web-based collaborative model termed the **FlexBook®**, CK-12 intends to pioneer the generation and distribution of high-quality educational content that will serve both as core text as well as provide an adaptive environment for learning, powered through the **FlexBook Platform®**.

Printed: December 6, 2014

Contents

CHAPTER 1 What Is Science?

Chapter Outline

Science has brought countless innovations and advances to humankind. This chapter reviews core principles of scientific inquiry, including standard units, dimensional analysis, and unit conversion.

1.1 Scientific Inquiry

Objectives

- Explain the role of using postulates in science.
- Explain the role of mathematics in science.
- Explain how scientists investigate nature by ensuring their models are falsifiable and tested by independent researchers.
- Describe the difference between a hypothesis, theory, and law.
- Explain that new theories explain phenomena more accurately than preexisting theories, and such theories are consistent with the correct predictions of previous theories.
- Describe the scientific method.

Vocabulary

- **hypothesis:** A proposed explanation for an observation, phenomenon, or scientific problem that can be tested by further investigation.
- **inquiry:** An approach to learning that involves exploring the natural or material world, then leads to asking new questions and making new discoveries.
- **scientific law:** A concise mathematical relationship that always occurs under specific conditions. A law is not an explanation, and it is no more or less final than a theory.
- **scientific method:** A systematic approach used to investigate the natural world that must make predictions, be testable, come from evidence, and be potentially disprovable.
- **theory:** A statement or set of statements devised to explain a group of observations or phenomena. Theories have often been repeatedly tested or are widely accepted, and can thus be used to make predictions about natural phenomena.

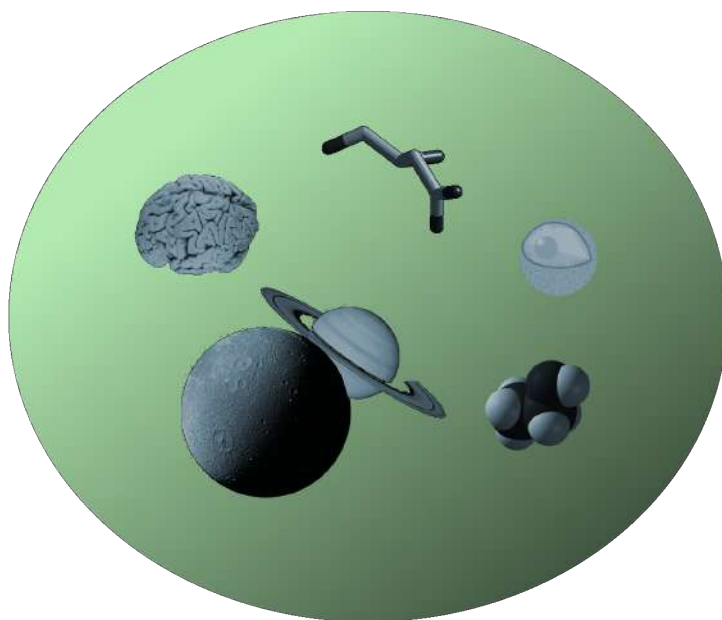
Introduction

Science is frequently portrayed as a source of absolute truth. In reality, however, science is a dynamic and flexible enterprise. It truly a process—not an end result. The scientific process can be approached as a series of steps, as shown in the **Figure** 1.1.

FIGURE 1.1
A scientific investigation typically follows these steps of the scientific method.

Scientific inquiry is pursued using the **scientific method**. The **Figure** 1.1 presents a very specific sequence of steps, but the process is in fact quite flexible. The order is not fixed, and approaches in the real world are often much less linear. Though the process itself can vary, the scientific method requires that all scientific explanations share certain characteristics. They are as follows:

- The explanation must be logically consistent.
- The explanation must make predictions.
- The predictions must be testable.
- The tests must be based on evidence.

- The explanation must be falsifiable, meaning that it can potentially be disproved based on the test results.

A scientific explanation is always subject to revision based on new evidence and can be discredited at any point. It can never be absolutely proven.

There are a few important clarifications to how the scientific process has been defined so far:

- There is nothing more solid or final than a **theory**.
  - A theory is never formally changed to anything else, no matter how much evidence there is. It becomes harder and harder to disprove with more evidence, but it is never upgraded from a theory to a "scientific fact" or a **scientific law**. A scientific law is a specific mathematical relationship, which is tested in the same way as a theory and just as open to being disproven at any time.
- Steps can be skipped as long as the explanation is valid and tested.
  - As a scientist, you could have a strong hunch before investigating, so you create a **hypothesis** immediately and then move on to testing it. Alternatively, you could devise a series of tests to try out before you have a definite hypothesis.
- Scientists conduct investigations for a wide variety of reasons.
  - A scientist can conduct work for any purpose, which is still completely scientific as long as it maintains some basic ethics. As a scientist, you could do your work because of the money it would make. Alternately, you could pursue a theory because you like the "beauty" of the explanation. Further still, you could do your work based on religious conviction, in the tradition of religious scientists like Galileo and Newton. As long as you do not falsify evidence, your reasons are unimportant.
- Scientists make mistakes and report them.
  - Scientists are never perfect, and even if they follow all procedures properly, unforeseen circumstances can sometimes throw off the results of an experiment. The key to scientific processes is not to throw away the unexpected results, but to keep them, analyze them, and report them. This can help other scientists who might run into the same problem, or can even result in new discoveries. It is unethical to throw out odd results unless you know exactly what caused them.

Unethical scientists may alter data to give the results that support what the experiment was intended to show. This could be to enhance their reputation, make more money, or to prove the result that they prefer for personal reasons. A result like this may stand for years, but in time it will be disproven as other scientists attempt investigations to confirm or follow up on the false result. Both intentional deception and honest mistakes are eventually discovered.

In order for a result to be taken seriously by the scientific community, researchers must explicitly show how they conducted their work, how the testing was done, and how the data was collected. Presenting their results to their peers allows for feedback, corrections, and insights that may not have occurred to the experimenters themselves.

Development of Ideas Over Time

One example of developing better explanations is in the case of falling objects. Since ancient times, it was widely accepted as true that heavier objects fell faster than lighter objects. The multi-talented Aristotle (384–322 BC) of ancient Greece held this belief, and scholars took his word for centuries. This idea is based on good experimental evidence, because very light objects like feathers do fall much more slowly than heavy objects like rocks.

Years later, Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) looked in further detail at the nature of falling objects. He carefully timed marbles as they rolled down a slanted wooden block. He also dropped objects of varying weights. He found that very light objects like feathers were the exception. Heavy objects all fall in about the same time regardless of how heavy they are. Galileo hypothesized that a feather falls slowly due to resistance from the air. Heavier objects are easily pushed through the air, and thus experience little effect from air resistance.

He hypothesized that in the absence of air, all objects would fall at the same rate. Robert Boyle first confirmed this hypothesis twenty years after Galileo died. In 1660, Boyle pumped all the air out of a glass tube and then dropped both a feather and a coin inside that tube. Centuries later in 1971, astronaut David R. Scott repeated this investigation during a live TV broadcast from the Moon, as shown in the following video.

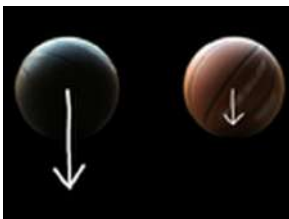
http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5C5_dOEyAfk

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/60767

This explanation is more complicated, because it involves two effects: gravity and air resistance. It can be hard to reconcile these two, especially if you don't know how they were discovered. Many students learn that all objects fall at the same rate only as an unexplained fact, but don't know how to relate this to the common case of a feather.

The following is a video of high school graduates talking about their understanding of falling objects.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_mCC-68LyZM

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/60771

Mathematics and Technology

As science has advanced, evidence has gone beyond just what we can see with our eyes. Modern experiments use technology to collect data and mathematical analysis to reveal patterns within that data.

Mathematics can be used to prove a scientific law. As explained above, a scientific law is no more or less absolute than a theory. Rather, it is a mathematical relation that may or may not have an explanation. For example, you might prove that the weight of water is proportional to how much volume it takes up.

1.2 Fundamental Units and Standard Units

Objectives

- List and use fundamental units in the study of mechanics.
- List and use standard units in the study of mechanics.
- Use dimensional analysis.

Vocabulary

- **dimensional analysis:** Checking your mathematical equations by keeping units with every number, or predicting units based on the relation of other units.
- **length:** The measurement of the extent of something along its greatest dimension.
- **mass:** A property of matter equal to the measure of an object's resistance to changes in either the speed or direction of its motion. The mass of an object is not dependent on gravity and therefore is different from but proportional to its weight.
- **meter stick:** A ruler exactly one meter in length.
- **scalar:** A quantity, such as mass, length, or speed that is completely specified by a single number. It is said to have magnitude, but no direction.
- **SI units:** The most modern version of the metric system, also known as the International System of Units (SI).
- **time:** An ordered continuum in which events occur in succession from the past through the present to the future.
- **vector:** A quantity, such as velocity or force, that must be completely specified by both a magnitude and a direction. For example, if an object is moving, we must know both the amount of motion as well as the direction of motion to know the vector quantity velocity.

Equations Including Units

Mathematics is central to science in general and especially physics. The math in physics is always connected to real physical quantities, however. In a math class, an equation might read:

$24 - \frac{1}{2} \times 10 \times (2)^2 = 10$

However, in physics all numbers represent a specific physical quantity and they have units.

$24 \text{ m} - \frac{1}{2} \times 10 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times (2 \text{ s})^2 = 4 \text{ m}$

Each of the quantities in the equation has abbreviations for units beside it. For example, this is the formula for how high an object would be after dropping for two seconds from the top of a six-story building.

Standard Units—SI Units (Standard International Units)

Especially in scientific work, it is vital that we use a consistent and logical set of units. For almost all scientists, that system is the **International System of Units**, abbreviated **SI**. This the most modern form of the metric system. It is used universally for all scientific work. It is also used on a daily basis in almost all the world. The three countries that do not officially use metric units in some form today are Burma, Liberia, and the United States.

FIGURE 1.2

Map of countries not officially using the metric system worldwide.

Students often learn the basics of metric units, but are not fluent in them. Especially in physics, it is important not just to perform abstract calculations, but to be able to mentally picture what measurements look like.

- How heavy is a 10kg weight?
- How short is someone who is 155cm tall?

The standard unit of length used in physics today is the meter, which is roughly the distance from the tip of your nose to the end of your outstretched arm. The **meter sticks** you have in your classroom do not have this accuracy.

The standard unit of **mass** is the kilogram. A one-kilogram mass corresponds to a weight of approximately 2.2 pounds. Mass and weight are not the same property. Weight is the product of the gravitational acceleration, g, and the mass of the object: $W = mg$. The corresponding standard weight unit is the Newton, where 4.45 Newtons is equal to 1 pounds.

The standard unit of **time** is the second, which is familiar to most students.

The standard unit of temperature is the degree Celsius. One degree Celsius is the same as one degree Kelvin, but they measure from a different starting point. Celsius measures up from the freezing point of water, while Kelvin measures up from the point called "absolute zero".

These fundamental units are combined into *derived units*, such as $\frac{\text{length}}{\text{time}}$ for speed. Speed and velocity have the derived units of $\frac{\text{length}}{\text{time}}$. Other derived units include force, energy, voltage, and so forth.

Vectors and Scalars

If we wish to fully define the motion of an object we must state the object's magnitude and the object's direction. In the case of motion, the magnitude is the speed of the object. Quantities such as displacement are represented by net distance (magnitude) and direction. Any quantity requiring a magnitude and a direction is called a **vector** quantity. Force is another vector quantity. For example: A 150 N punch (magnitude) to the stomach (direction, loosely speaking!). Quantities that require only a magnitude for their complete description are called **scalars**. Mass and temperature are examples of scalar quantities.

Dimensional Analysis

Dimensional analysis is the method of using fundamental or standard units in detecting an error and discerning the correct relationship between physical quantities. As a simple example, recall our old friend $d = rt$, where d is a distance, r is a rate, and t is time. If we accidentally rewrite the equation as $r = t/d$, we see that the units are inconsistent since m/s do not equal s/m. If the derived units are not the same on each side of the equation, we know that a mistake was made. The converse is not true. If the units agree, a mistake may still have been made. (Why?)

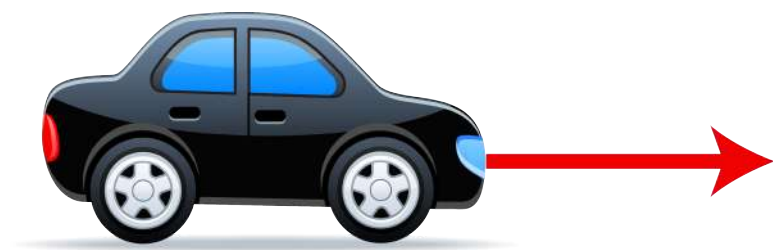



FIGURE 1.3
A vector requires both a magnitude and direction.

Check Your Understanding

1. The density of mercury is 13.5 g/cm^3. What is the formula for density?

Answer: The units of density are given as g/cm^3. Grams are a measure of mass, and cm^3 is a measure of volume. Density therefore has units of mass/volume. So the formula for density is: $d = m/V$, where d is density. Of course, there may be a "dimensionless" quantity in this formula. Not all formulas have only physical quantites in them. Consider the volume, V, of a sphere: $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. Here, r is the radius of the sphere and it has units of length. But the quantity $\frac{4}{3}\pi$ has no units. It is a "pure number." Dimensional analysis cannot determine what, if any, pure numbers are in a formula. But, at the very least, a statement of proportionality is always possible, as in the case of V is proportional to r^3.

2. In the formula, $x = \frac{1}{2}at^2$, x has units of meters and t has units of seconds. What are the units of a?

Answer: The acceleration, a, has units of m/s^2.

1.3 Unit Conversions

Objectives

- Perform unit conversions.
- Properly use scientific notation.

Vocabulary

- **conversion factor:** A mathematical expression equating two different units, such as 1 m = 100 cm.
- **scientific notation:** A number expressed in scientific notation is written as a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by a power of ten.

Introduction

Just as there are many spoken languages, there are many ways of expressing the same quantities in science. All scientists throughout the world measure length using centimeters, meters, and kilometers rather than inches, feet, and miles. Even within this single system of measurement, it is still necessary to reinterpret, or convert, quantities. For example, it is more efficient to express 1,000 meters as 1 kilometer, or to express 150 centimeters as 1.5 meters (**Table** 1.1).

TABLE 1.1: A Few Select Unit Equivalencies

Unit	Equivalent Unit
LENGTH	
1 kilometer (km)	1000 meters (m)
1 m	100 centimeters (cm)
1 cm	10 millimeters (mm)
MASS	
1 kilogram (kg)	1000 grams (g)
1 g	1000 milligrams (mg)

FIGURE 1.4
A United States five cent piece has a mass of five grams.

Examples Using Unit Conversions

Note: Answers to the illustrative examples below will be expressed in **scientific notation.** A number expressed in scientific notation is written as a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by a power of ten. For example: $12,300 = 1.23 \times 10^4$.

Illustrative Examples

For our purposes, let us regard the statement 1 km = 1000 m as an "equation."

1. How many meters are there in 10 km?

Answer: First we need a **conversion factor.** We know that 1 km = 1000 m. Dividing both sides by 1000 m,

$\frac{1 \text{ km}}{1000 \text{ m}} = 1$, or equivalently $\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}} = 1$.

The first result is useful if we wish to convert meters to kilometers, and the second result is useful if we wish to convert kilometers to meters. Using this conversion factor, we put the units that we want on the top. Since the result is in meters, we must convert from km to m. We use the unit conversion factor $\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}}$.

$10\text{km} \times \frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}} = 10,000 \text{ m} = 1 \times 10^4 \text{ m}$

2. Convert 10 m to km.

Answer: Here we use the conversion factor $\frac{1 \text{ km}}{1000 \text{ m}}$.

$(10 \text{ m})\left(\frac{1 \text{ km}}{1000 \text{ m}}\right) = \frac{1 \text{ km}}{100} = 0.01 \text{ km} = 1 \times 10^{-2} \text{ km}$

3. Convert 100 km/h to m/s.

Answer: Recall that 1 h = 60 min = 3600 s.

$\left(\frac{100 \text{ km}}{1 \text{ h}}\right)\left(\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}}\right) = 27.77 = 27.8 \text{ m/s}$

Check Your Understanding

1. Convert 60 mph (mi/h) to ft/s.

Answer:

Given: 5280 ft = 1 mile

$\left(\frac{60 \text{ mi}}{1 \text{ h}}\right)\left(\frac{5280 \text{ ft}}{1 \text{ mi}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}}\right) = 88 \text{ ft/s}$

2. Convert 80 mg to kg.

Answer: $(80 \text{ mg})\left(\frac{1 \text{ g}}{1000 \text{ mg}}\right)\left(\frac{1 \text{ kg}}{1000 \text{ g}}\right) = 8 \times 10^{-5} \text{ kg}$

3. Convert 60.0 mi/h to m/s, given 1.609 km = 1.00 mi

Answer: $\left(\frac{60.0 \text{ mi}}{1.00 \text{ h}}\right)\left(\frac{1.609 \text{ km}}{1.00 \text{ mi}}\right)\left(\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1.00 \text{ km}}\right)\left(\frac{1.00 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}}\right) = 26.8 \text{ m/s} = 26.8 \times 10^1 \text{ m/s}$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/UnitConverter/

1.4 Measurement and Recording Data

Objectives

- Describe measurement.
- Explain what is meant by significant digits.
- Determine the number of significant digits in a measurement.
- Add, subtract, multiply, and divide with significant digits.
- Use scientific notation.

Vocabulary

- **precision:** The smallest unit that a device can measure.
- **significant digits:** The number of precisely-measured digits in a measurement or result.
- **uncertainty (in measurement):** The possible variance between a measurement and the true result.

How to Measure

A typical meter stick is accurate to a millimeter. Assuming the object being measured lines up well with the meter stick and has a sharply-defined end, you can clearly see it measuring closer to one millimeter mark than to another. This is expressed as **precision** of $\pm$ 0.5 mm, or equivalently, $\pm$ 0.05 cm. A measurement of 42.78 cm can be read exactly to 42.7 cm (**Figure** 1.5). The "8" in 42.78, that is, 0.08 cm, is a reasonable estimate, where the actual measure lies within a range of values between 42.78 $\pm$ 0.05 cm $\rightarrow$ [42.73 - 42.83]. This measurement has 4 **significant digits**.

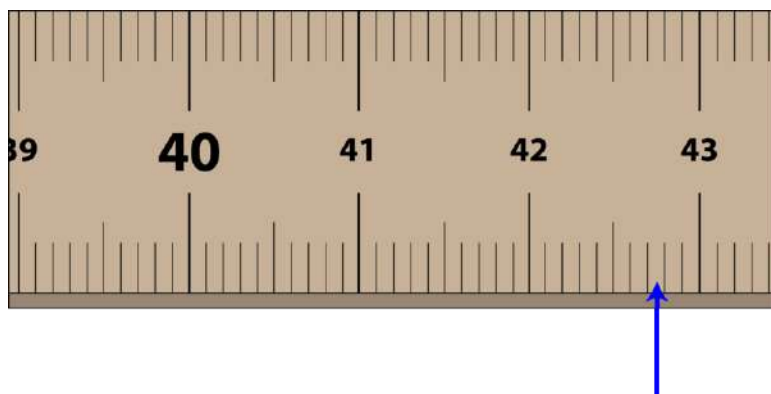



FIGURE 1.5
What reading would ***you*** use assign to the position of the arrowhead?

Introduction

A person stands on their bathroom scale. What is a reasonable weight for the scale to show?

A reasonable weight might be:

a. 120.5 lbs

b. 120.53 lbs

c. 120.534 lbs

In all likelihood you chose answer A. Good! Why didn't you choose B or C?

Most likely, you did not select B or C because the finest measure on most bathroom scales is to the pound. At best we can estimate to one decimal place.

This example highlights when and why significant digits are used in science, and especially in physics. When an experiment is conducted, data measurements can only be as precise as the equipment used to make the measurement.

Significant Digits—Reporting Data Correctly

The length of the pen shown in the **Figure** 1.6 is measured as 14.58 cm. It's easy to see that the pen is clearly larger than 14 cm and that it is past the 14.5 cm mark, as well. Where does the 8 (at the end of this measurement) come from? The 8 represents an estimate by the person measuring the pen. The end of the pen is somewhere between the fifth and sixth millimeter. If it had appeared to have fallen exactly in the center of this interval, the final digit would have been reported as a 5. In fact, depending upon who read the ruler, the final digit may have been reported as a 7 or 9, giving us a measurement of 14.57 or 14.59. **The last digit of any measurement is significant but uncertain - but not *completely* uncertain!** It's reasonable to argue based on varying individual perspectives about whether the last digit is a 7, 8, or 9 (you may even say 14.60) but no one will argue, based on what they can see, that the reading is between 14.50 and 14.55. There is a difference, however, in reading the ruler as best as you can, and the actual **uncertainty** of the ruler. Mass-produced measuring tools typically have a precision of no better than $\pm\frac{1}{2}$ of the smallest interval of the device. Therefore, 14.58 cm is recorded as 14.58 $\pm$ 0.05 cm, [14.53-14.63].

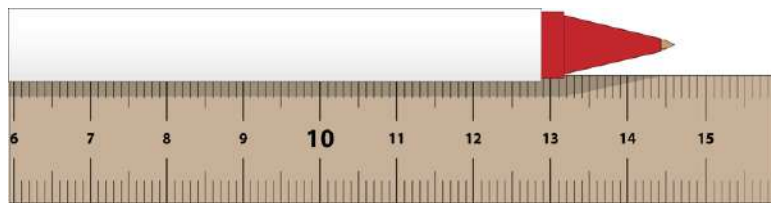



FIGURE 1.6
A pen measured in metric units having 4 significant digits.

Note: we will not cite our results using a range of values when working on problems in later chapters. This method should, however, be used in reporting laboratory data.

What if someone had used the same ruler in **Figure** 1.6 to measure the pen and stated it was 14.573 cm? How believable is it that they could read a measurement of 0.003 cm with this ruler? It's not believable at all! (Think of the example above.) The 7 was a reasonable guess, but there's nothing reasonable about claiming the 3 is readable—it's a physical impossibility with this ruler. The ruler measures a maximum of 2 significant figures to the right of the decimal- no more and no less!

What about zero?

Zero can be a source of confusion when it comes to recording significant digits. Let's see if we can understand the source of this confusion.

Using the ruler in **Figure** 1.7, a student measures a calculator's length as 18 cm. What's wrong with how this measurement is reported? A measurement must include a last digit, which is always an estimate. This final estimated number is uncertain but reasonable (significant). This last digit informs us of the precision of the device used.

Since 8 is the last digit, it must be an estimate. Therefore it is impossible for the tool to measure numbers like 18.2 or

18.26. But this isn't true. The way to state the measurement and include the precision of the ruler is to write 18.00. Reading 18.00 informs us that the measurement appears exactly at the 18 cm mark but is also capable of measuring one more digit to the right with certainty, and estimating yet another digit to the right. The measurement 18.00 has four significant figures, while the measurement 18 has only two significant digits.

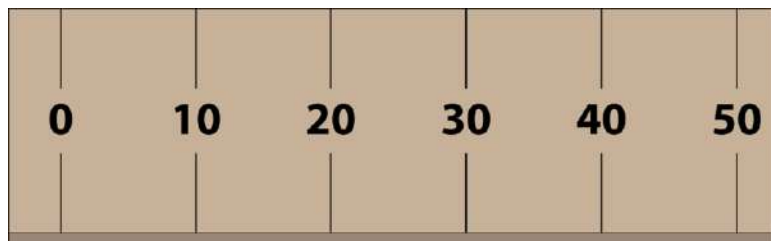



FIGURE 1.7
An example of a ruler where the units place is an estimate.

Zero as a Placeholder

A United States penny has a diameter of 1.91 cm as measured with our ruler. Even though the ruler can measure lengths like 11.91 cm, the penny has no "tens of centimeter" value. You can't measure what is not there, so there is no added "significance" if we write a zero in front of the ones-units to indicate there are no tens, like this: 01.91. This number has only three significant figures. The zero is not a measure of anything and the diameter of the penny is in the range [1.86 - 1.96] cm.

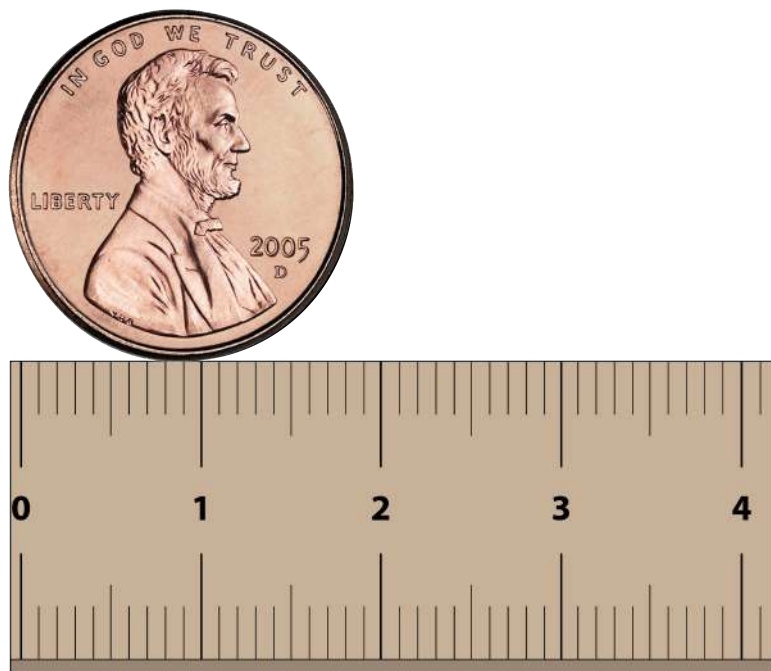



FIGURE 1.8
A penny cannot be measured to the "tens-place" so zero in the "tens-place" is only a place holder and has no significance.

Check Your Understanding

1. How many significant digits are there in:

a. 0.191
b. 0.190
c. 00.19
d. 10.90
e. 10.060
f. 010.060

Answers:

a. 3
b. 3
c. 2
d. 4
e. 5
f. 5

Ambiguous Recording

How many significant digits are there for the number 100? We have a problem with this. As it is written, we don't know whether the zeros are placeholders or if the tool used to measure 100 can actually measure to the tens place. Had the number been written as "100." (with a decimal point after the third digit), then we could say, yes, and we would know the measurement has three significant digits, with the ones-place being an estimate. But we don't typically write a number terminating in a decimal point. The best method for writing significant digits is using scientific notation.

Let us restate the definition of scientific notation. Scientific notation expresses a measurement as a number between 1 and 10, then multiplied by a power of ten.

Some examples:

- 5,400 (2 significant figures) = 5.4×10^3
- 5,400 (3 significant figures) = 5.40×10^3
- 5,400 (4 significant figures) = 5.400×10^3
- 0.0200 (3 significant figures) = 2.00×10^{-2}

If we had intended three significant digits for 100, we would have written it as 1.00×10^2, using scientific notation. Had we intended one significant digit then we would have written it as 1×10^2 using scientific notation.

Check Your Understanding

1. Using scientific notation, write 2800 with four significant figures.

Answer: 2.800×10^3.

2. Using scientific notation write 28,000 with three significant figures.

Answer: 2.80×10^4.

Computing with Significant Digits

There are set rules used to determine the number of significant digits (or figures or numbers!) to report when adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing with significant numbers. Let's consider these rules.

Adding and Subtracting with Significant Digits

Rule: When adding or subtracting significant numbers, round to the smallest number of places past the decimal, of the least precise number in the group.

Example 1: 23.56 + 47.0 = 70.56 = 70.6 (least precise measure is the tenths place)

Example 2: 512 + 48.6295 = 560.6295 = 561 (least precise measure is the ones place)

Example 3: $6 \times 10^2 - 10.76 = 589.24 = 600 (least precise measure is the hundreds place)$

Consider why this rule is reasonable. In each example, the two numbers being added or subtracted could not have been measured with the same instrument. The second number in each pair was measured with a tool of greater precision. A less accurate measurement cannot be made more accurate by the addition or subtraction of a more accurate number, no more so than a more precise measuring tool can impart greater precision to a less precise measuring tool. The precision of the sum or difference computation is therefore always determined using the least precise tool.

Multiplying and Dividing with Significant Digits

Rule: When multiplying and dividing with significant digits, the final result must be rounded to the same number of significant digits as the number with the minimum number of significant digits.

Example 1: $23.56 \times 47.0 = 1107.32 = 1110 = 1.11 \times 10^3$ (round to three significant digits)

Example 2: $512 \times 48.6295 = 24898.304 = 24900 = 2.49 \times 10^3$ (round to three significant digits)

Example 3: $(6 \times 10^2)/10.7 = 56.07476636 = 60 = 6 \times 10^1$ (round to one significant digit)

Consider why this rule is reasonable.

Recall that the last digit in each number is not an exact measure, but an estimate. When multiplying (or dividing), the uncertainty of the estimated digits affects every digit. This rule ensures that the uncertainty is never greater than two digits having a direct calculation from an estimated digit.

1.5 Working with Error

Objectives

- Describe systematic and random error.
- Explain precision and accuracy as they relate to error.

Vocabulary

- accuracy
- precision
- **random error:** Error that varies within the inherent uncertainty of a measuring device.
- **systematic error:** An error of constant value that is made repeatedly.

Introduction

There is a difference between what we mean by *mistake* and *error* in a laboratory setting. A mistake, for example, is accidentally writing $3 \times 5 = 8$ rather than 15. On the other hand, a **systematic error** is one of a constant value that is made repeatedly. **Random error** varies within the inherent uncertainty of a measuring device: a meter stick ($\pm$ 0.05 cm) or human reaction time (at worst $\pm$ 0.2 s). We will discuss both of these sources of error, along with **precision** and **accuracy**.

The classic target example below is a good way of explaining precision.

1. A data set can be precise, but inaccurate, as displayed in **Figure** 1.9.

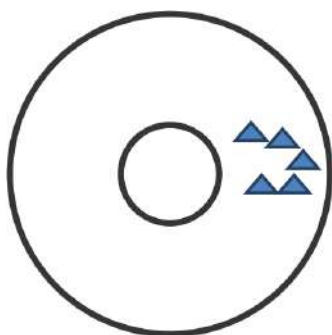



FIGURE 1.9
The hits are precise but inaccurate; they miss the center.

2. A data set can be imprecise, yet accurate, as displayed in **Figure** 1.10.

3. A data set can be imprecise, and inaccurate, as displayed in **Figure** 1.11.

4. A data set can be both precise and accurate, as displayed in **Figure** 1.12.

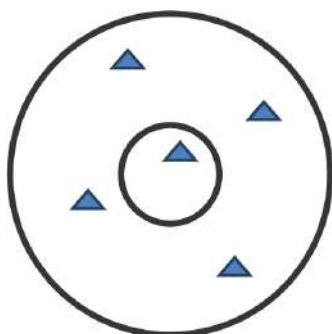



FIGURE 1.10
The average of the hits is fairly accurate, but the shots are imprecise.

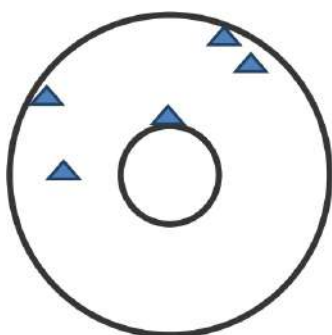



FIGURE 1.11
The shots are imprecise and they miss the mark.

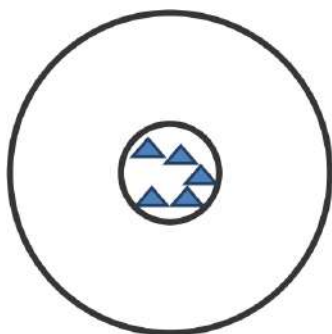



FIGURE 1.12
Both precision and accuracy are apparent.

Defining Error

The error that generates a precise but inaccurate result is typically associated with systematic error. Systematic error is usually a result of an error of calibration, like a scale that is not zeroed. A nurse's aide recording the weights of a group of toddlers may not realize that the scale reads two pounds before any weight is placed on it. Therefore, each toddler's weight appears two pounds greater than it really is (see **Figure** 1.13). Systematic error is detected when an ordered pair of data should have a direct relationship (the function should pass through the origin of a Cartesian coordinate system) yet does not by a greater uncertainty than the measuring tool suggests. In general, this kind or error can be corrected by a constant shift in the data.

Random error generally refers to the limits of the equipment and people involved in an experiment. It does not mean that such an error is necessarily correctable.

Consider the example below:

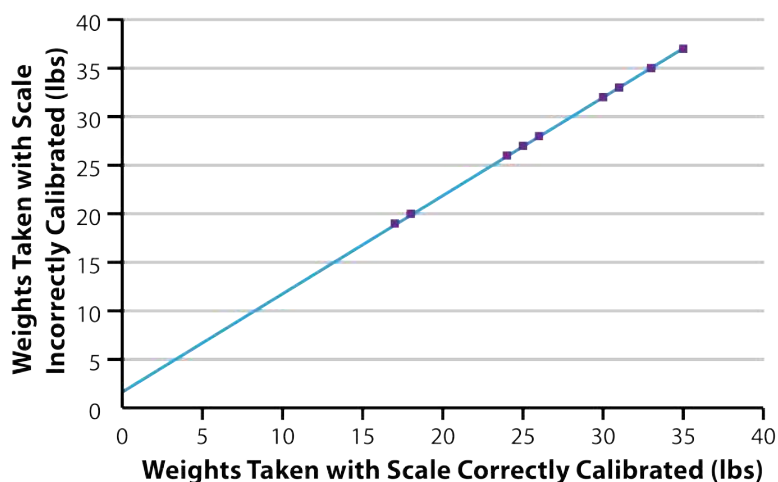



FIGURE 1.13
Graph showing 2 pound offset due to calibration error.

A group of students wish to find the time of fall for a golf ball dropped from a height of 4.9 m. Students take turns dropping the ball and recording the time. They've devised this procedure to avoid the systematic error introduced by having the same person drop the ball and the same person time the fall for each trial. They make sure that at least ten data points are collected. The data appear as follows in **Figure** 1.14.

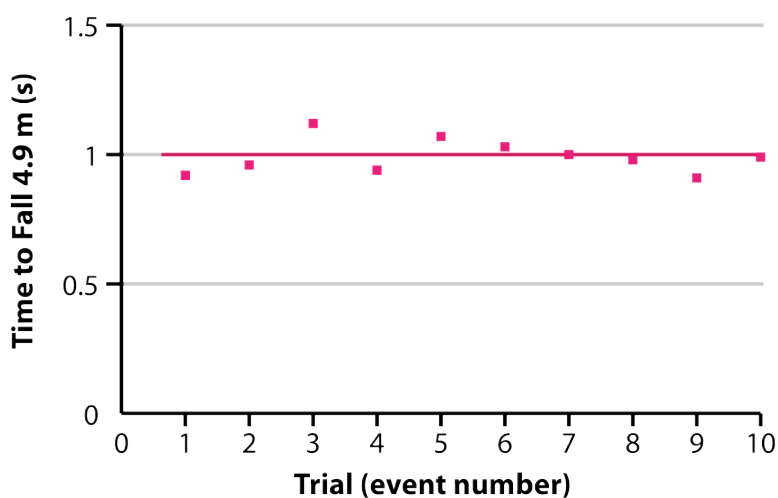



FIGURE 1.14
Experimental results of timing a fall of 4.9 m. The time to fall 4.9 m is theoretically 1.00 s.

The resulting data was the following times: 0.92, 0.96, 1.12, 0.94, 1.07, 1.03, 1.00, 0.98, 0.91, 0.99

The average value of the data set is: 0.992 = 0.99 s.

The theoretical value (the accepted value) is 1.00 s.

It seems clear from the data that the timing device's smallest interval of precision is 0.1 s. Therefore, the last digit of each measurement (0.01 s) was significant but uncertain. The timing device has a precision of $\pm$ 0.05 s, so the final result is within the range [0.94 - 1.04] s. This means the experiment worked quite well, since the accepted value of

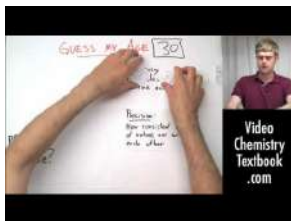
1.00 s fell within the range of the experiment.

You can see from the data set that the worst deviation from the average value was: 1.12 - 0.99 = 0.13 s. This is quite reasonable, factoring in the timing device and the person's response time. If an experiment is performed well, the random error, for the most part, should be evenly distributed near the accepted (theoretical) value. The data should be both precise and accurate.

Watch the following video as an example:

MEDIA

Click image to the left or use the URL below.

URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/69195

1. Science is a broad method of inquiry, the steps of which can be completed in a different order as long as the results are potentially falsifiable and verified by experiment.
2. Scientific data is analyzed by mathematics. Data will often include errors, which must be included and analyzed.
3. A hypothesis is an educated guess. A theory is a synthesis of a substantial body of study that is generally accepted a true. A law is a broad unifying statement usually expressible mathematically.
4. Unit conversions involve multiplying fractions of equivalent units.
5. All measuring tools have a limit to their precision and therefore an intrinsic uncertainty of measurement.
6. The last digit of any measurement is an estimate and a significant figure.
7. There are two types of error: systematic and random. Systematic error is a consistent error that is usually associated with calibration, while random error is associated with the precision of a measuring tool.

1.6 References

1. Courtesy of NASA. http://spaceflight.nasa.gov/gallery/images/station/crew-26/html/s133e010411.html . Public Domain
2. Gwilliams10; NASA; Mariana Ruiz Villarreal (LadyofHats); WriterHound; Ben Mills (Benjah-bmm27). http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BglIIactivesite.png; http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saturn_System_Montage_-_GPN-2000-000439.jpg; http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Diagram_cell_nucleus_no_-text.svg; http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Brain_090407.jpg; http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ethanol-3D-vdW.png .
3. Hana Zavadska. CK-12 Foundation .
4. User:Donovaly/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Metric_system.png . Public Domain
5. Image copyright lana rinck, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
6. Courtesy of the United States Mint. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2006_Nickel_Proof_Obv.png . Public Domain
7. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Christopher Auyeung, using penny image courtesy of the US Mint. CK-12 Foundation (penny image: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2005-Penny-Uncirculated-Obverse-cropped.png) .
11. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
14. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 2 One-Dimensional Motion

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 2.1

One-dimensional motion means moving forwards and/or backwards along a straight line, and is the simplest form of motion to study. The core of learning this is understanding *rate*s, which is how any quantity changes over time. Key rates we will study are speed, velocity, and acceleration.

2.1 Locating an Object: Distance and Displacement

Objectives

- Define scalar and vector.
- Define distance and displacement.
- Distinguish between distance and displacement.
- Graphically model distance and displacement.

Vocabulary

- **displacement:** The difference between final and initial positions.
- **distance:** The positive length between two points.
- **position:** The place of an object represented in the same way we might represent a point on a number line.
- **scalar:** Term used when referring only to magnitude.
- **vector:** Term used when referring to both magnitude and direction.

Equations

Distance: $X = |P_1 - P_2| + |P_2 - P_3| + \dots$

Displacement: $\Delta x = P_f - P_i$

Introduction

We begin our study of motion in the simplest terms possible- motion that takes place along a straight line. This is called one-dimensional motion. A car traveling east, west, north, or south is an example of this kind of motion.

When we imagine a car moving along on a road, we think of the car as represented by a particle. We define the position of a particle in the same way we would define the position of a point on a number line. Later on we will take up the case of two-dimensional motion, like the motion of baseball through the air.

Scalars and Vectors

Consider the dashboard of a car shown in **Figure** 2.2. It displays information about the motion of the car. The odometer shows the miles driven by the car during its lifetime. The speedometer shows the instantaneous speed of the car. These values describe amount, or size, or (as we say in physics) magnitude, but they do not include information about the direction of the car's motion.

In order to describe the motion of an object completely, two pieces of information are required

1. Magnitude (how far or how fast) and
2. Direction

In physics we use the term **scalar** when referring only to magnitude. Distance (i.e. 30 miles) and speed (i.e. 30 mph) are two examples of scalar quantities. We use the term **vector** when referring to both magnitude and direction. Two examples of vectors are:

FIGURE 2.2
The odometer (300,000 miles) shows the distance the car has traveled and the speedometer shows the instantaneous speed of the car (61 mph).

1. Displacement (ex. 30 miles due west) and
2. Velocity (ex. 30 mph due west)

Check Your Understanding

1. Which statement best describes a vector quanitity?

a. A race car moving at 110 mph

b. A turtle strolling at 200 cm/min

c. An SUV moving at at 40 km/h east

Answer: C, since both speed and direction are given. Speed is considered the scalar component of velocity.

2. Is time a scalar or a vector quantity?

Answer: We do not associate any direction with time, since we cannot choose to move in whatever direction we wish through time. This is not to say that t = -3.0 s has no meaning. It simply refers to a situation that occurred three seconds before our observation began. It does not imply that we can move backward in time.

Position

We need to know where things are, both in the context of daily life and in the complexities of modern science. Physics defines the location of an object by assigning a position to it. Just as with mathematics, physics typically uses a coordinate system. The coordinate system must have a zero point or origin in order to properly reference position. Since we are discussing one-dimensional motion we will use the simplest coordinate system- a number line with a marked zero, negative values to the left of zero, and positive values to the right of zero.

Distance is a scalar quantity giving the positive length between two points. The total length for a series of distances can be computed by adding the absolute values of each length segment. $X = |P_1 - P_2| + |P_2 - P_3| + \ldots$

Displacement is the difference between final and initial positions.

$\Delta x = P_f - P_i$, where P_f is the final position of the object and P_i is the initial position of the object.

Determining Distance and Displacement

Place a dot anywhere along a line and you have identified a position for an object. Let's imagine a marble on the line at position, P1 = 3 units, that travels to position P2 = 7 units, and then turns around, ending its journey at the origin P3 = 0 units (illustrated in **Figure** 2.3).

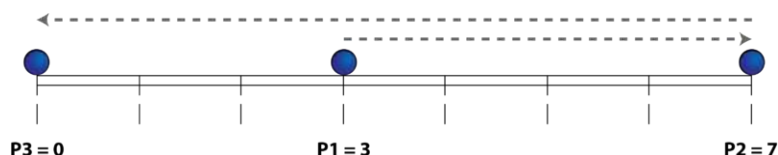



FIGURE 2.3
A marble rolls from P1 to P2 and back to P3.

1. What distance has the marble traveled from P1 to P3?
2. What is the displacement of the marble from P1 to P3?

To answer the first question, we add the distance the marble moved from P1 to P2 and then from P2 to P3 without regard for direction.

|P1 - P2| = 4 units

|P2 - P3| = 7 units

|P1 - P2| + |P2 - P3| = 11 units

To answer the second question we note where the marble started (3 units) and where the marble ended (0 units).

P1 = 3 units

P3 = 0 units

P3 - P1 = 0 - 3 units = -3 units

The displacement of the marble is therefore three units to the left. Notice that the first case (distance) gives no information on the final position of the marble, and the second case (displacement) gives no information about the total distance the marble travels.

The use of negative signs in physics typically indicates direction, rather than quantity. A position of -3 units is not a larger position than -5 units, even though mathematically, negative three is larger than negative five.

Using Graphs to Distinguish Between Distance and Displacement

Mr. Jones lives on the same road as the high school where he works. During his morning commute, Mr. Jones drives two miles in two minutes to reach the donut shop. He spends six minutes at the shop and then realizes he's forgotten his lunch at home. He returns home, again covering two miles in two minutes. How should the data be graphed to represent the motion of Mr. Jones' car?

Which of the two graphs below is correct?

Both of these graphs are correct, but they provide different information. Graph 1 in **Figure** 2.4 displays the distance traveled by the car as a function of time, while Graph 2 in **Figure** 2.5 displays the position of the car as a function

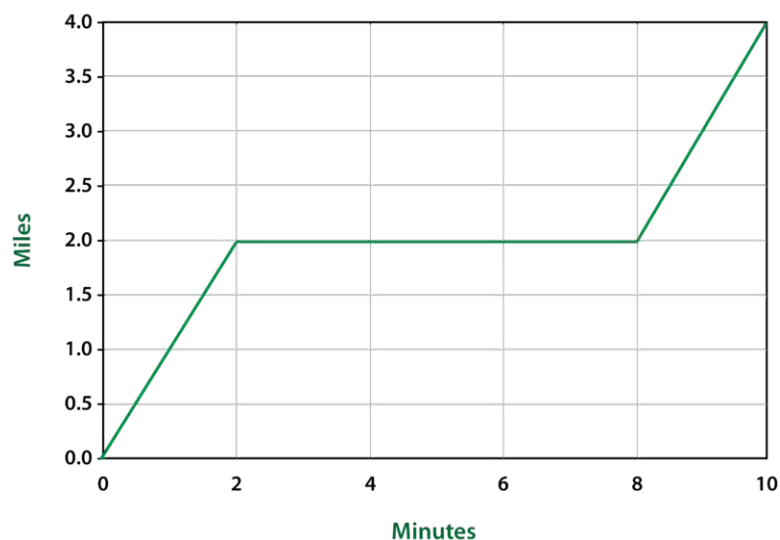



FIGURE 2.4
Graph 1. This graph shows what the odometer would display: Mr. Jones traveled four miles. What it does not display is the current location of Mr. Jones' car.

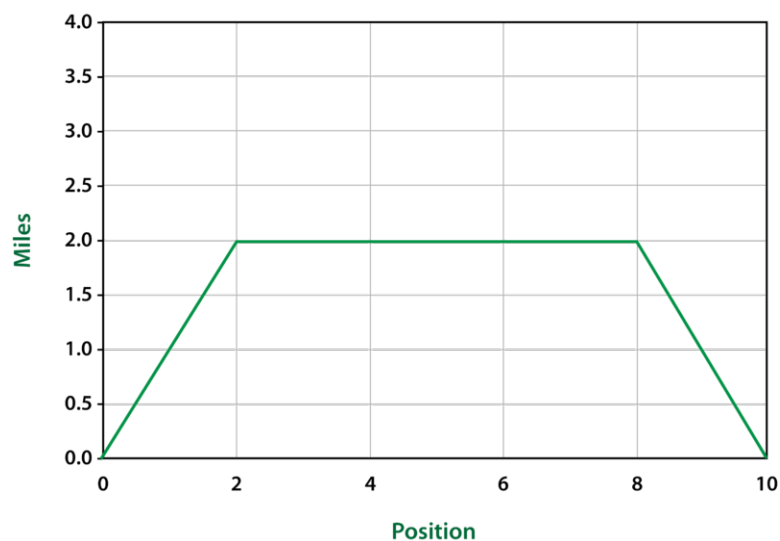



FIGURE 2.5
Graph 2. This graph shows the location of the car. You can tell from reading the graph that the car has returned to where it started. However, determining the distance the car traveled from this graph is not that obvious.

of time. After ten minutes, the car has traveled four miles (Graph 1 in **Figure** 2.4), and it is back where it started (Graph 2 in **Figure** 2.5).

Using Graph 2 in **Figure** 2.5, the total distance the car traveled can be found by adding up the segments of its motion, while the final position of the car can immediately be read from the graph. Using Graph 1 in **Figure** 2.4, the total distance the car traveled can immediately be read from the graph, but there is no way to determine the car's final position. Graph 2 in **Figure** 2.5, the position versus time graph, is more useful.

Check Your Understanding

1. Under what condition will the numerical values of distance and displacement be equal?

Answer: As long as all of the motion takes place in only one direction.

2. Two bicyclists travel from House 1 to House 2 as in seen in the **Figure** 2.6. Path A is straight and Path B is curved. Which path has greater displacement?

Answer: Consider the definition of displacement: $\Delta x = P_f - P_i$. Since the initial and final positions for both paths are identical, the displacement must be the same for paths A and B.

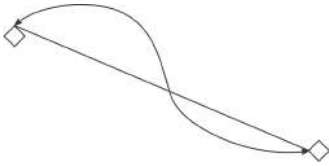



FIGURE 2.6
Distinguishing between distance and displacement.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/TimeDisplacementPlots/

2.2 Speed and Velocity in One Dimension

Objectives

- Define constant speed and velocity.
- Distinguish between speed and velocity.
- Determine velocity from position-time graphs.

Vocabulary

- **average speed:** Total distance traveled divided by total travel time.
- **average velocity:** Change in position divided by change in time.
- **uniform speed**
- **uniform velocity**

Equations

Average speed equation and uniform speed equation:

$v = \frac{x}{t}$, where x is the total distance traveled and t is time.

This equation is equivalent to $r = \frac{d}{t}$ or $d = rt$, where d is distance and r is rate.

Average velocity equation and uniform velocity equation:

$\Delta v = \frac{\Delta x}{(t_f - t_i)}$, where $\Delta x = (P_f - P_i)$

Average Speed and Instantaneous Speed

Suppose you are travelling along a long straight highway. You start driving, and an hour later, you are 100 km away. Your **average speed** is the 100 km/hr. The information you have is time and distance. You can calculate your speed by dividing the distance you've traveled by the time of travel.

$$\text{Speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{100 \text{ km}}{1 \text{ hour}} = 100 \text{ km/hr}$$

During the hour that this trip took, your speedometer may have many different readings. You might have been traveling faster during the first part of the hour, and then slower in the second half. The reading on the speedometer is your instantaneous speed.

If you go back on a return trip, the calculation of the speed is the same. The result is still 100 km/hr (also abbreviated "kph" for "kilometers per hour"). Like distance, speed is a scalar quantity and thus always positive. The speedometer reading is the same no matter what direction you are driving in. Speed cannot provide information about direction.

Average Velocity

Velocity is different than speed because velocity is a vector quantity and as such will have both a magnitude and a direction. Velocity is the combination of speed and direction. We define velocity as the change in position divided by the change in time. Change of position can be either positive or negative, so velocity can be positive or negative.

$$v = \frac{(P_f - P_i)}{(t_f - T_i)}$$

In the example above, the velocity on the outbound trip is +100 km/hr, while the velocity on the return trip is -100 km/hr (**Figure** 2.7). See below for detailed calculations.

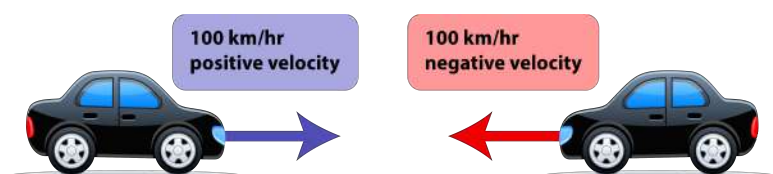



FIGURE 2.7
Velocity vectors on cars indicating direction and magnitude.

Velocity (1): $\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = P_f - P_i = \frac{(100\text{km}-0\text{km})}{(1\text{hr}-0\text{hr})} = +100$ km/hr

Velocity (2): $\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = P_f - P_i = \frac{(0\text{km}-1000\text{km})}{(1\text{hr}-0\text{hr})} = -100$ km/hr

Check Your Understanding

1. In the example above, the round trip speed and velocity are:
   (a) the same
   (b) different

   Answer: B

2. The average speed for the entire trip is:
   (a) 0 km/hr
   (b) 100 km/hr
   (c) 200 km/hr

   Answer: B. The speed is $\frac{200 \text{ km}}{2 \text{ hrs}} = 100$ km/hr.

3. The velocity for the round trip is (*Hint*, consider the displacement.):
   (a) 0 km/hr
   (b) +100 km/hr
   (c) -200 km/hr

   Answer: A. The displacement is zero, therefore $\frac{0 \text{ km}}{2 \text{ hrs}} = 0$ km/hr.

4. Construct a table showing the distance, speed, displacement, and velocity over the time intervals [0, 2], [2, 8] and [8, 10] for Mr. Jones' travels in the last section.

TABLE 2.1: Mr. Jones' Travels

Time Interval (min)	Distance (miles)	Speed miles/min	Time Interval (min)	Displacement (miles)	Velocity miles/min
[0, 2]	2.0	1.0	[0, 2]	+2.0	+1
[2, 8]	0.0	0.0	[2, 8]	0.0	0
[8.10]	2.0	1.0	[8, 10]	-2.0	-1

Look back at the position vs. time graph for Mr. Jones. Mr. Jones' velocity during the time interval [0, 2] is calculated using the definition of velocity: $\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{(2.0-0)}{(2-0)}$. What is the slope of the line for the interval [0, 2]? A bit of thought would lead you to the conclusion that the slope is identical to the definition of velocity, as long as the units are included. In fact, the units of velocity are an aid in determining how to calculate velocity; miles "over" minutes imply division. This is a very important result: any slope in a position vs. time graph has units of distance/time. Therefore, the slope of the line in a position-time graph is velocity. During the interval [8, 10], the slope of the line is negative. We can immediately surmise that the motion is toward the left on a conventional number line. During the interval [2, 8], the line is horizontal, so the slope is zero, which in turn indicates that the velocity is also zero. This conclusion makes sense physically, since Mr. Jones (and his car) are at the same position during the time interval [2, 8]. If his position is not changing, then of course, he's not moving. So his velocity must be zero.

Let's state some general conclusions regarding position-time graphs, using the sign conventions of a number line.

1. A positive slope indicates positive velocity; motion is to the right.
2. A negative slope indicates negative velocity; motion is to the left.
3. A horizontal line indicates zero velocity, the position remains unchanged.

Check Your Understanding

1. An ant travels with constant velocity from position +10 m to position -15 m for a time of 5 s; it instantaneously turns around, and moves from position -15 m to position +3 m with constant velocity, for a time of 6 s. Plot the ant's motion in a position-time graph and indicate the ant's velocity for each interval.

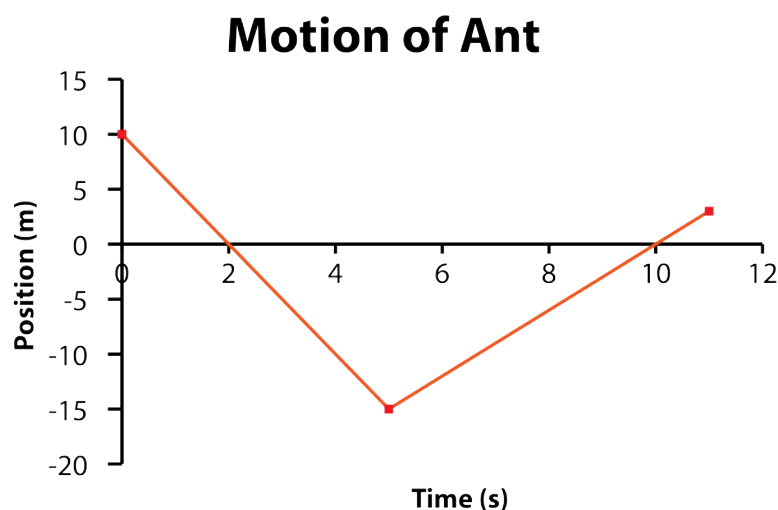



FIGURE 2.8

Answers: The ant has a velocity of -5 m/s over the first five seconds and a velocity of +3 m/s over the last six seconds (**Figure** 2.8).

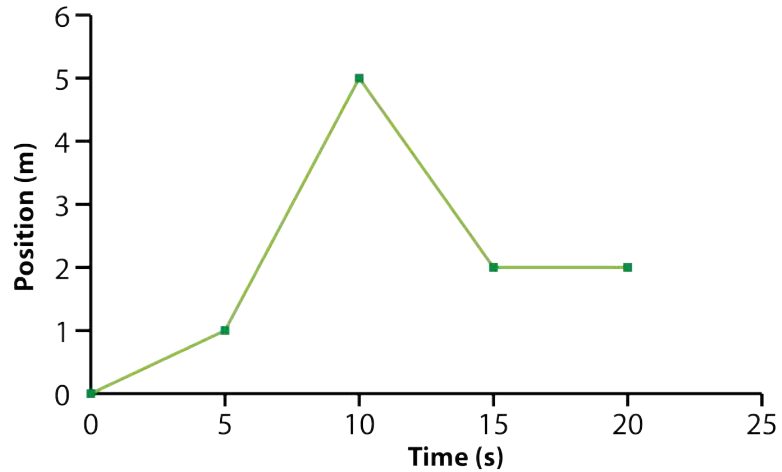



FIGURE 2.9

2. The motion of a rolling marble is represented in the position-time graph in **Figure** 2.9. Write a sentence or two that describes its motion.
   Answers: During the first five seconds the marble rolls to the right, slowly. During the next five seconds, it continues rolling to the right but faster. During the next five seconds, the marble rolls to the left a bit slower than during the previous five seconds. During the last five seconds, the marble is stationary.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LinearMotion/

2.3 Average Speed, Velocity, and Instantaneous Velocity

Objectives

- Calculate average speed for varying rates.
- Explain what is meant by instantaneous velocity.

Vocabulary

- **average speed:** Found by dividing the total distance traveled by the total time required to travel.
- **instantaneous velocity:** Velocity at a specific time, estimated by finding an average velocity over smaller and smaller time intervals.

Equations

Average speed $= \frac{(d_1+d_2+\ldots)}{(t_1+t_2+\ldots)}$

Average velocity $= \frac{(p_f-p_i)}{(t_f-t_i)}$

Introduction

Average speed is always found by dividing the total distance traveled by the total time required to travel. If you are always given numbers in distances and times, this is easy. If you are given speeds, then you need to convert those speeds into distances before taking the average.

Example 1:

A person travels for 60 miles at 20 miles per hour, and then travels another 60 miles at 60 mph. What is their average speed? To find the average speed, we first need the total time.

Time to drive the first 60 miles: 60 miles$/$20 mph $=$ 3 hrs.

Time to drive the second 60 miles: 60 miles$/$60 mph $=$ 1 hr.

The average speed for the trip is then:

$$\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance}}{\text{total time}} = \frac{(60+60)\ \text{miles}}{3+1\ \ \text{hours}} = \frac{120\ \text{miles}}{4\ \text{hrs}} = 30\ \text{mph}$$

There is a common error that the average of 20 mph and 60 mph should be 40 mph, but that is only if they traveled those speed for equal times.

Example 2:

A person travels for two hours at 30 miles per hour and then travels for one hour at 60 mph. What is the person's average speed?

Total distance covered at 30 mph: 30mph $\times$ 2hrs $=$ 60 miles.

Total distance covered at 60 mph: 60mph $\times$ 1hr $=$ 60 miles. Average speed $= \frac{\text{total distance}}{\text{total time}} = \frac{(60+60)\ \text{miles}}{3\ \text{hours}} =$ 40 mph

Check Your Understanding

FIGURE 2.10
The car speeds up along its trip.

1. The first part of a trip is traveled at a speed of 40 mph for 1.5 hours and the second part of the trip is traveled at a speed of 60 mph for three hours. What is the average speed for the trip?

Answer:

$$v = \frac{\textbf{total distance}}{\textbf{time}} = \frac{(40 \times 1.5 + 60 \times 3)}{(1.5 + 3)} = 53\frac{1}{3} \textbf{ mph}$$

FIGURE 2.11
The George Washington Bridge connecting New York and New Jersey.

2. A person travels across the George Washington Bridge (GWB) across the Hudson River between New Jersey and New York at 25 mph and returns at 40 mph. What is the average speed for the round trip?

Answer: There is no mention of the length of the bridge. The information is probably unnecessary. What is known? The length of the bridge is the same regardless of which way it is traversed. Call the length of the bridge L. Since we don't know the time that it takes for each trip over the bridge, let's call the time going: t_1 and the time returning t_2. We use the definition for average speed:$v = \frac{\text{total distance}}{\text{total time}}$

The distance going can be expressed as: $L = 25t_1$, and the distance returning can be expressed as

$L = 40t_2$. Solving each of these equations for time, permits the time of each trip to be expressed as:

$t_1 = \frac{L}{25}$ and $t_2 = \frac{L}{40}$. The total distance for the trip is $L + L = 2L$. Therefore:

$\frac{\text{Total distance}}{\text{total time}} = \frac{(2L)}{\left(\frac{L}{25} + \frac{L}{40}\right)}$.

Notice $\frac{L}{L}$ can be factored out of the equation, which means the length is irrelevant to the problem's solution as we had surmised. A bit of algebraic rearranging gives us:

$\frac{2}{\frac{1}{25} + \frac{1}{40}} = \frac{2}{\frac{40}{(25)(40)} + \frac{25}{(25)(4)}} = 2\left[\frac{(25)(40)}{(25+40)}\right] = 30.769 = 30.8 \text{ mph}$

Determining Average Velocity

If the motion is always in the same direction, the average velocity will have the same numerical value as the average speed, except that a direction of motion must also be given.

If motion changes direction, though, the average velocity will be different than the average speed. Average velocity depends on the total displacement, defined as the line from the final position from the initial position. If we assign the zero position on the New Jersey side of the bridge, then when traveling to New York, the displacement is: $P_f - P_i = L - 0$. Traveling back from New York, the displacement is $P_f - P_i = 0 - L$. The total displacement is $L + (-L) = 0$. The average velocity for the round trip over the bridge is 0 mph.

Check Your Understanding

A car moves due east at 30 mph for 45 min, turns around, and moves due west at 40 mph for 60 minutes. What is the average velocity for the entire trip?

Answers:

East displacement: $30 \times \frac{3}{4} = +22.5$ miles

West displacement: $-40(1) = -40$ miles

Total displacement: $-40 + (+22.5) = -17.5$ miles

Average velocity = $\frac{-17.5}{1.75} = -10.0$ mph

Instantaneous Velocity

As we said earlier, instantaneous speed is like the reading of a car's speedometer. It is the speed at any exact point in time. **Instantaneous velocity** refers to velocity at a specific time, such as $t = 3.0$ s. It is like the reading of a speedometer combined with a pointer for current direction.

In practice, we cannot find a truly instantaneous velocity. Instead, we find an average velocity over smaller and smaller intervals of time. For example, a modern car speedometer works by measuring the fraction of a second it takes for the car's wheels to turn once. For driving, this is close to instantaneous. When we measure average velocity over a smaller and smaller intervals of time (Δt), we get closer and closer to instantaneous velocity.

The diagram below shows the position of an object at the times t_2, 5.00 s and t_1, 3.00 s. If t_1 is held fixed and t_2 permitted to approach t_1, the slope of the line between t_2 and t_1 progressively comes closer to the slope of a tangent line through t_1. The slope of the line through t_1 is called the instantaneous velocity at t_1. In general, the slope of the tangent line to a curve in a position-time graph gives the instantaneous velocity.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/VelocityOfAFallingObject/

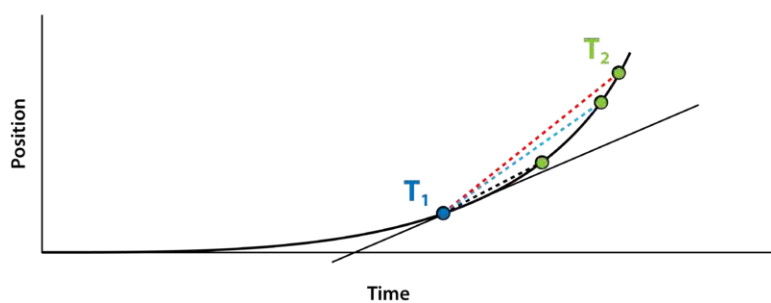



FIGURE 2.12
As T_2 approaches T_1 the tangent line through T_1 is approximated.

2.4 Uniform Acceleration

Objectives

The student will:

- define and explain acceleration.

Vocabulary

- **average acceleration:** The change in velocity divided by the duration of the time period.
- **constant acceleration:** A type of motion in which the velocity of an object changes by an equal amount in every equal time period.

Equation

- $\vec{a}$

avg=$\Delta\vec{v}_{\overline{\Delta t}}$, where the arrows indicate that $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{v}$ are vector quantities

Introduction

In everyday life, we use "acceleration" to refer to an object getting faster and picking up greater speed. In physics, though, we use "acceleration" to mean *any* change in velocity. In physics, acceleration can refer to speeding up, slowing down, or turning. Because velocity is a vector, it has a direction. A change in direction is a change in velocity. In a car, using the gas pedal is accelerating, but so is using the brakes or the steering wheel.

To see what a change of velocity means, it is best to represent an object's motion with a velocity-time graph. This is extremely useful in determining acceleration and displacement.

Average acceleration is a change in velocity, divided by a change in time. It can be calculated with this equation:

$\vec{a}$

avg = $\Delta\vec{v}_{\overline{\Delta t}}$

If the rate of change in velocity is uniform, the acceleration is uniform, as well. Note that uniform acceleration and constant acceleration mean the same thing. We will only consider uniform acceleration unless otherwise stated.

Check Your Understanding

1. How can braking provide for both negative and positive acceleration?

Answer: If the brakes are applied while moving to the right the acceleration is to the left and therefore negative. If the breaks are applied while the car is traveling to the left, the acceleration is to the right and is therefore positive.

2. How can you have a negative acceleration without braking?

Answer: Increase your velocity to the left.

As common as the term acceleration is, there is a good deal of confusion surrounding the concept. An object can have any acceleration and simultaneously have a zero velocity. The velocity of an object at any instant (think of the speedometer in your car) gives no information in determining the object's acceleration, only the *rate of change* of velocity can be used to determine the object's acceleration.

Thinking About Acceleration

Suppose that a cheetah, starting from rest, has an acceleration of over 33 (km/hr/s), or kilometers per hour per second. After one second, the cheetah has a speed of 33 km/h, after two seconds, its speed is 66 km/h, and after three seconds, its speed is 99 km/h and 99 km/h is over 60 mph. So it takes a cheetah only three seconds to "go from zero to 60."

The cheetah increases its velocity by 33 km/h every second. The units help to explain that acceleration depends upon the changing rate of velocity. 33 km/h is the same as 9.2 m/s (meters per second). So an acceleration of 33 km/h per second is 9.2 m/s per second. This is expressed as 9.2 m/s^2. Using dimensional analysis, we can see this from the formula for acceleration, $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \left(\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\text{s}}\right) = \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}$.

FIGURE 2.13
The cheetah is the fastest land animal.

Check Your Understanding

1. Thompson's gazelle can reach a speed of 65 km/h in four seconds. What is its acceleration in km/h/s and m/s^2?

Answer: A useful conversion to remember is 1 km/h $= \frac{5}{18}$ m/s.

$(1 \text{ km/h}) \times \left(\frac{1000 \text{ m}}{1 \text{ km}}\right) \times \left(\frac{1 \text{ h}}{3600 \text{ s}}\right) = \frac{5}{18} \text{ m/s}$

Using this conversion, 65 km/h = 18 m/s, the acceleration is: $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{18 \text{ m/s}}{4 \text{ s}} = 4.5 \text{ m/s}^2$.

2. A Thompson's gazelle has a maximum acceleration of 4.5 m/s^2. At this acceleration, how much time is required for it to reach a speed of 40 km/h?

Answer: Using our conversion from before, 1 km/h $= \frac{5}{18}$ m/s, we can make a conversion fraction for km/h to m/s.

$40 \text{ km/h} \times \frac{\frac{5}{18} \text{ m/s}}{1 \text{ km/h}} = 11 \text{ m/s}$

If the gazelle started from rest, and accelerates at 4.5m/s^2, then after the first second its speed is 4.5 m/s, after the second second, its speed is 9.0 m/s, and after the third second its speed is 13.5 m/s. So we know the answer must be

between two and three seconds. Using the definition of acceleration, $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$; substitution gives: $4.5 \text{ m/s}^2 = \frac{11 \text{ m/s}}{\Delta t}$. Rearranging and solving, gives:

$\Delta t = \frac{11 \text{ m/s}}{4.5 \text{ m/s}^2} = 2.4 \text{ s}$

2.5 The Kinematic Equations

Objectives

The student will:

- interpret area in an acceleration-time graph.
- represent motion using a velocity-time graph.
- interpret slope and area in a velocity-time graph.

Vocabulary

- **linear:** Related to, or resembling a straight line.
- **midpoint:** The point of a line segment or curvilinear arc that divides it into two parts of the same length; a position midway between two extremes.

Equations

1. $\vec{v}_{avg} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}$, always true
2. $\vec{a}_{avg} = \frac{\Delta \vec{v}}{\Delta t}$, always true
3. $\vec{v}_f = \vec{a}t + \vec{v}_i$, constant acceleration only
4. $\vec{v}_{avg} = \frac{(\vec{v}_f + \vec{v}_i)}{2}$, constant acceleration only
5. $\vec{x} = \frac{1}{2}\vec{a}t^2 + \vec{v}_i t + \vec{x}_i$, constant acceleration only
6. $\vec{v}_f{}^2 = \vec{v}_i{}^2 + 2\vec{a}\Delta\vec{x}$, constant acceleration only

Introduction

The units associated with real world variables are a great aid in understanding physical phenomena. In this section it will become clear why labeling variables associated with the slope, or the instantaneous slope (given by the tangent to a curve), and area under a curve, are so useful.

Graphs of Acceleration vs Time

We begin with a car stopped at a red light. When the light turns green, the car begins to move with a constant (uniform) acceleration of 2.0 m/s^2. We define the instant that the car begins to move as $t = 0.0$ s, and the initial position of the car, at the red light, as 0.0 m.

How is the graph of acceleration versus time over the time interval [0.0, 4.0] seconds plotted?

Since the acceleration is uniform, it remains 2.0 m/s^2, the entire four seconds, which suggests a horizontal line for the acceleration-time graph.

Consider the units of the area in the acceleration-time plane. Any area will do. Let's choose a rectangular area. We compute the rectangular area the same way we compute any rectangular area: multiply the rectangle's length by its width. Our interest is not in computing a number. Instead, we wish to determine the units of the area. At first glance, this may seem a confusing goal- after all, area is measured in units of length squared, such as meters

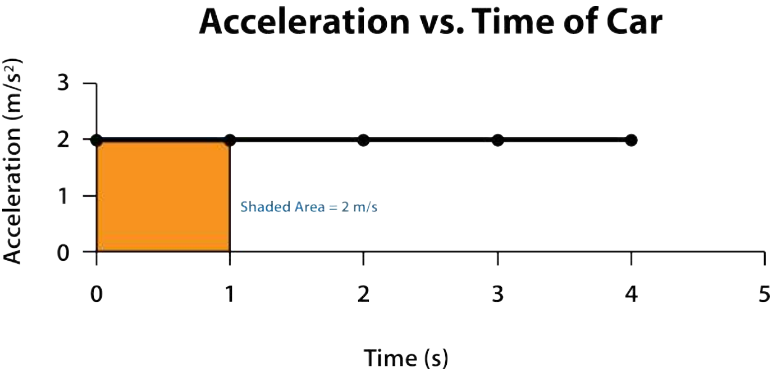



FIGURE 2.14

squared. However, the area in the acceleration-time plane is different because the x and y axes do not have units of length. The $y-$axis has units of acceleration, m/s^2, and the $x-$axis has units of time, s; the area, therefore, has units of $\left(\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right) \times \left(\frac{\text{s}}{1}\right) = \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}$. But m/s are the units for either speed or velocity. If we treat acceleration as a vector, allowing for a change in direction, then the area in the acceleration-time plane is the change in velocity. Using the area to compute speed from an acceleration-time graph is only correct for motion in one direction. However, computing the change in velocity from an acceleration-time graph is always true, and so unless otherwise stated, we will only use this method for velocity calculations.

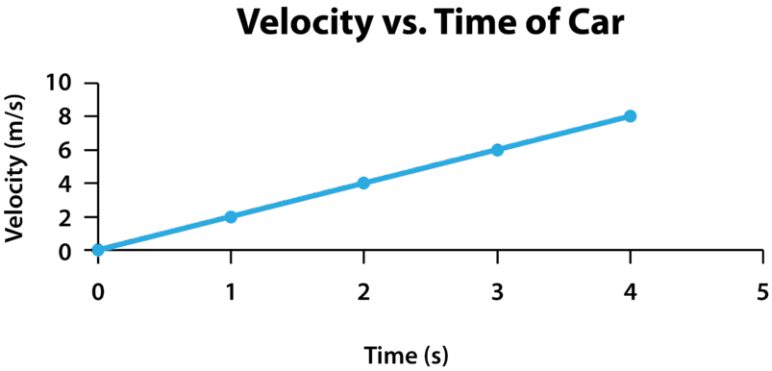
Use the area under an acceleration-time graph to create a velocity-time table. Note the velocity is the instantaneous velocity.

Consider the rectangular area formed for the time interval [0, 1] (horizontal "length") and the corresponding acceleration interval, [0, 2] (vertical "length"). The area for the interval is $(1.0 \text{ s}) \times (2.0 \text{ m/s}^2) = 2.0$ m/s. The result is interpreted, as follows: During the time interval [0, 1] the car has gained a velocity of 2.0 m/s. Thus, at the instant $t = 1.0$ s, the car has an instantaneous velocity of 2.0 m/s. The area of the rectangle for the time interval [0, 2] and the corresponding acceleration interval $[0, 2] = (2.0 \text{ s}) \times (2.0 \text{ m/s}^2) = 4.0$ m/s. Therefore, at $t = 2.0$ s, the car has an instantaneous velocity of 4.0 m/s. Repeated applications of this process for time intervals [0, 3] and [0, 4], leads to the **Table** 2.2.

TABLE 2.2: Velocity-Time Table

$t(s)$	$v(m/s)$
0.0	0.0
1.0	2.0
2.0	4.0
3.0	6.0
4.0	8.0

FIGURE 2.15

Notice that for any interval of 1.0 s, the car gains another 2.0 m/s of velocity, which is exactly what is meant by

Check Your Understanding

1. A bus accelerates at 1.5 m/s^2 from rest, due east. What is the instantaneous speed of the bus at 4.0 s? What is the instantaneous velocity of the bus at 4.0 s?

Answer: We begin by realizing that "from rest" means the initial velocity (and speed) of the bus is zero. Conceptually, we imagine that every second the bus gains 1.5 m/s of additional speed. Therefore, at the end of the fourth second, the bus has a speed of 6.0 m/s and a velocity of 6.0 m/s due east.

2. A toy rocket is launched straight upward with an initial velocity of + 30.0 m/s. If the time interval from launch to highest position reached is 3.0 s, what is the magnitude and direction of the rocket's acceleration during its upward flight?

Answer: At its highest position above ground, before falling back to Earth, its velocity is 0.0 m/s.

$a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{(v_f - v_i)}{(t_f - t_i)}$, $a = \frac{(0-30)}{(3)} = -10 \text{ m/s}^2$

3. A toy rocket falls from the top point, straight down, landing with a velocity of -30.0 m/s. If the time interval from release to ground level is 3.0 s, what is the magnitude and direction of the rocket's acceleration during its downward flight?

Answer: $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{(v_f - v_i)}{(t_f - t_i)}$, $a = \frac{(-30-0)}{(3)} = -10 \text{ m/s}^2$

Questions to consider:

1. What causes the rocket's acceleration?
2. Why is the acceleration the same whether the rocket is ascending or descending?

Gravitational Acceleration

The rate at which a freely falling object increases its velocity is attributed to the gravitational force that the Earth exerts on bodies near its surface. The force of gravity near the Earth's surface is assumed to be constant, and therefore the gravitational acceleration near the Earth's surface is constant, as well. It was Galileo who challenged the accepted wisdom of Aristotle. Aristotle hypothesized that objects fell at a rate proportional to their weight. Galileo, on the other hand, insisted that all objects, regardless of their weight, in the absence of air resistance, fall at the same rate. See the link below regarding Galileo's famous ball drop experiment.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/GalileosExperimentAtTheLeaningTowerOfPisa/

Galileo Galilei (1564-1642) was the first person to determine the numerical value of the acceleration of gravity near the Earth's surface. In order to do this, he needed to convince himself that when an object was released, it continually sped up. Early on, he believed that after a very short time, the speed of a falling object remained fixed. It was not until he "diluted" the effect of gravity by rolling balls down long inclined planes in order to decrease the acceleration of gravity that he convinced himself that objects not only continue to increase their speed, but that they increased their speed by a fixed amount during equal time intervals. For example, a solid ball rolling down an inclined plane fixed at a five degree angle increases its speed about 0.61 m/s every second. That is, it has an acceleration of 0.61 m/s^2. Galileo was able to reason that when the inclined plane is raised to 90 degrees (that is, vertical) falling objects would accelerate at -10 m/s^2. This is the value of the gravitational acceleration, g, near the Earth's surface.

The exact value of gravitational acceleration varies with your position on the Earth, going from -9.75 m/s^2 to -9.83 m/s^2, but the value of -10 will be used for our calculations.

The acceleration-time graph below is for a toy rocket launched upward with an initial velocity of +30 m/s. Note that the initial velocity *cannot* be determined from the graph—it must be a supplied piece of information; or, as we say, "an initial condition."

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_mCC-68LyZM

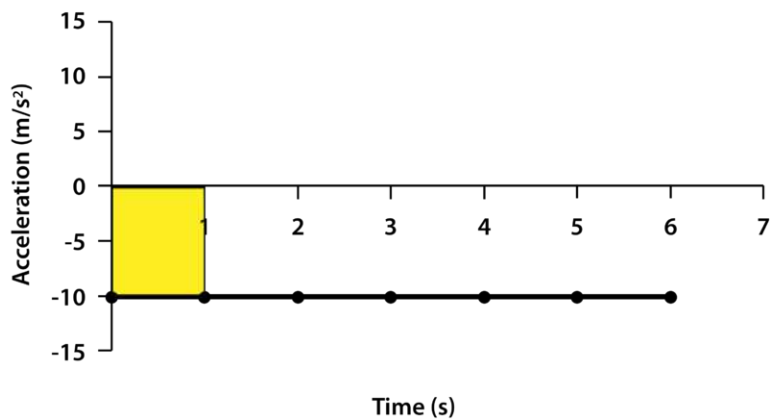



FIGURE 2.16

We can generate a velocity-time table in the same way as before by determining the area in the acceleration-time plane or by using the equation: $v_f = at + v_i$. If we use the area method we see after one second the area is -10 m/s. The negative sign implies that after the first second of travel, the object has lost 10 m/s of its speed. Since the initial velocity was +30 m/s, it has +20 m/s of velocity remaining by the end of the first second of travel. Since the acceleration-time graph is horizontal, each proceeding second of time will again have an area of -10 m/s. Thus, as each second goes by, the rocket loses another 10 m/s of velocity. The equation $v_f = -10t + 30$ shows this very nicely.

See the **Table** 2.3:

TABLE 2.3:

$T(s)$	$V(m/s)$
0	+30
1	+20
2	+10
3	0
4	-10
5	-20
6	-30

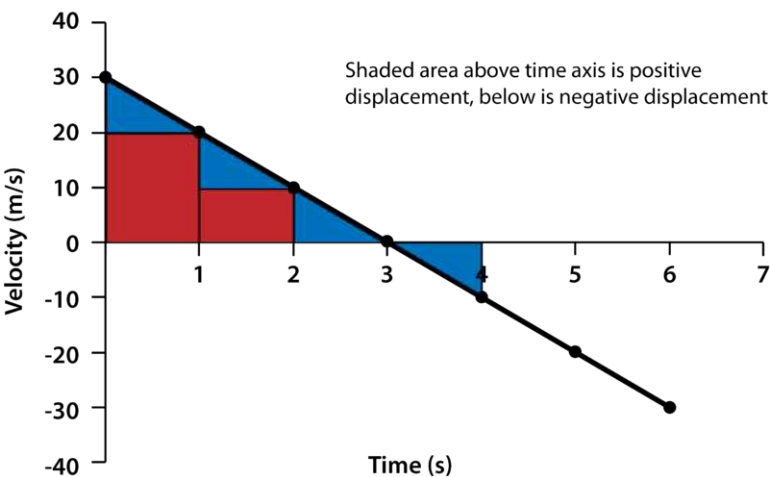



FIGURE 2.17

2. Do the units of the area in the velocity-time plane provide any information concerning the rocket?

Answer: Yes. Using the same method to find the units of the area, multiplying the vertical units by the horizontal units, we have $\left(\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{\text{s}}{1}\right) = \text{m}$. Thus, the area in the velocity-time plane represents the displacement of the rocket at a specific time. Let's use the area in the velocity-time plane in order to generate a position-time graph for the rocket. Let's say the initial position of the rocket is +10 m. Consider the trapezoidal area under the graph for the time interval [0, 1] (see **Figure** 2.17). It is helpful to break the trapezoid into a rectangle and triangle in order to compute the area. The rectangle can be formed with a "horizontal side" (length) of "1.0 second long" and a "vertical side" (height) of "+20 m/s high". The triangular area can be formed with a base of 1.0 second and height of +10 m/s. The area of the rectangular is then $(1.0 \text{ s})(20 \text{ m/s}) = +20 \text{ m}$ and the area of the triangle is $\frac{1}{2}(1.0 \text{ s})(+10 \text{ m/s}) = +5 \text{ m}$. The total area gives a displacement of +25 m. Recall however, that the rocket started at +10 m. Therefore, at $t = 1.0\ s$, the rocket's position is $(+10) + (+25) = +35$ m.

Next, look at the time interval [1, 2]. A rectangle with the length 1.0 s and the height +10 m/s, and a triangle with a base of 1.0 s and a height of 10 m/s can be constructed. The area of the rectangle is +10 m and the area of the triangle is again, +5 m. The position of the rocket at $t = 2$ s is therefore $(+35) + (+10) + (+5.0) = +50$ m. The interval [2, 3] is just composed of a triangle with the same position +5.0 m. Thus the rocket's position at $t = 3.0$ s is, $(+50) + (+5.0) = +55$ m. Notice that the velocity of the rocket is zero at $t = 3.0$ s. So, at $t = 3.0$ s, the rocket has position +55 m (55 m above ground level), zero velocity, and an acceleration of -10 m/s^2. Remember, the acceleration is the slope of the line in the velocity-time plane, and the slope is constant. Since the velocity of the rocket is zero at $t = 3.0$ s, it suggests the rocket has reached its highest position and will begin its descent earthward. If this is indeed the case then the position of the rocket at $t = 4.0$ s must be lower than 55 m. For the time interval [3, 4], we see that the triangle is the same as for the time interval [2, 3]. However, the velocity is a negative quantity for the [3, 4] time interval, and therefore the position will be negative. Hence, instead of the +5 m we determined for the interval [2, 3] we have -5.0 m. Since the rocket is at +55 m at $t = 3.0$ s, at $t = 4$ s, it is at $(+55) + (-5) = +50$ m. See if you can determine that at $t = 5.0$ s, the rocket is at + 35 m and at $t = 6.0$ s, it is at +10 m. In other words, it is in the same position at $t = 6.0$ s as when it was launched, at $t = 0$.

(Why do you think that is the case?)

Deriving the Kinematic Equations

We begin with a familiar problem.

Parachutists can land safely because they are not in free fall (more than the force of gravity acts upon them). Air resistance early on in the jump is responsible for quickly bringing a parachutist to a comparatively small, constant rate of fall, commonly called the terminal velocity. If the terminal velocity is 7 m/s how far will a parachutist fall in 3 seconds?

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/MotionOfAParachuter/

We have: $x = vt = 7 \times 3 = 21$ m. Problems such as this are easy because the velocity is constant.

Consider a question with varying velocity.

A toy rocket is launched with an initial velocity of +30 m/s. How far has the rocket traveled after three seconds if it started from an elevation of +10 m?

We can still solve this problem using $x = vt$ but we need to determine what the appropriate v is. We make use of the area in the velocity-time plane do to this.

Rather than add up the areas in the velocity-time plane, one second at a time, let's find the area under the graph for the interval of time [0, 3]. This area is a triangle, with a base of 3 s and a height of 30 m/s. The area of the triangle is $\frac{1}{2}(3.0)(30) = 45$ m (remember we had an initial position of +10 m in the problem so we end up with +55 m). The equation used to find 45 m can be reinterpreted as $(3.0)\left[\frac{(30)}{2}\right] = 3.0 \times 15$. Geometrically, this represents a rectangle of "length" 3 s and "height" 15 m/s. The average velocity for the time interval [0, 3.0] is $\frac{(30+0)}{2} = 15$ m/s. This result

suggests that whether we find the triangular area under the graph from 0 to 3 seconds, or the area of a rectangular using the average speed times the time interval, the result is the same.

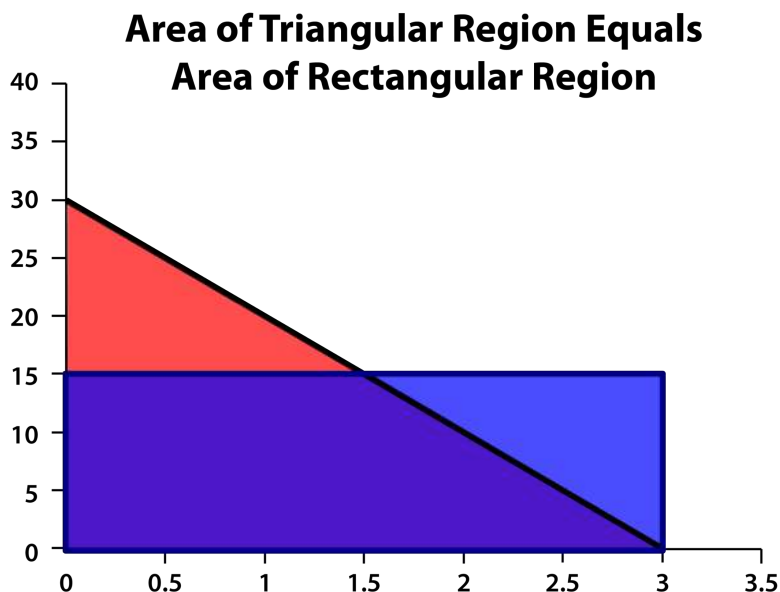



FIGURE 2.18
The big triangle shows the rocket slowing as it goes up. The big rectangle is going up at the average speed. These have the same area because the red and blue areas are the same.

This is not a coincidence since 15 m/s is the **midpoint** of the **linear** function $v_f = at + v_i$ between 0 and 3 seconds. For the first half of the time interval [0, 1.5] the velocity of the rocket is slower than 15 m/s, and for the second half of the time interval [1.5, 3.0] it is faster than 15 m/s. The midpoint of the interval can therefore be used as the average velocity. Thus, $v_{avg} = \frac{(v_i + v_f)}{2}$.

Check Your Understanding

In a circus act, a performer is shot from a vertical cannon with an initial speed of 40 m/s. Using -10 m/s^2 as an approximation for the acceleration due to gravity:

1. Determine the time it takes the performer to reach the highest altitude above the ground.
2. Determine the performer's highest altitude above the ground.
3. What is the performer's displacement at $t = 7.0$ s (Note, the ground is at position 0.0 m)?
4. How far has the performer traveled at $t = 7.0$ s?

Answer: Though many problems can be solved this way, there are more difficult problems requiring a bit more mathematical sophistication. We now derive two useful one-dimensional kinematic equations.

All that is necessary in order to derive the next two kinematic equations are the use of:

Equation A: $x_f = \frac{(v_i + v_f)t}{2} + x_i$ and

Equation B: $v_f = at + v_i$

Substitute v_f from B into A and after rearranging and simplifying we have:

$x_f = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_i t + x_i$

Using B, find $t = \frac{v_f - v_i}{a}$

Substitute t from B into A and after rearranging and simplifying we have:

${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$

Kinematic Equations

1. $v_{avg} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}$, always true
2. $a_{avg} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$, always true
3. $v_f = at + v_i$, constant acceleration only
4. $v_{avg} = \frac{(v_f + v_i)}{2}$, constant acceleration only
5. $x = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_i t + x_i$, constant acceleration only
6. ${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$, constant acceleration only

The link below shows an example using the kinematic equations for horizontal motion under acceleration.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BrakingACar/

- Displacement is the difference between the ending position and starting position of motion. It is a vector quantity.
- Velocity is the rate of change of position. It is vector quantity.
- Average speed can be computed finding the total distance divided by the total time or by a weighted average.
- The slope of a line in the position-time plane represents velocity.
- The area in the acceleration-time plane represents a change in velocity.
- Area in the velocity-time plane represents a change in position (displacement).
- The slope of a line in the velocity-time plane represents acceleration.
- The gravitational acceleration near the surface of the earth is very close to 9.8 m/s^2.
- The kinematic equations of motion in one dimension are:

1. $v_{avg} = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t}$, always true
2. $a_{avg} = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$, always true
3. $v_f = at + v_i$, constant acceleration only
4. $v_{avg} = \frac{(v_f + v_i)}{2}$, constant acceleration only
5. $x = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_i t + x_i$, constant acceleration only
6. ${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$, constant acceleration only

2.6 References

1. Wouter Kiel. http://www.flickr.com/photos/wouterkiel/3443427312/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Nicholas A. Tonelli. http://www.flickr.com/photos/nicholas_t/6963327133/ . CC-BY 2.0
3. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Image copyright lana rinck, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
8. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
9. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
10. Image copyright lana rinck, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
11. John O'Connell. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:George_Washington_Bridge_from_New_Jersey-edit.jpg . CC BY 2.0
12. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Mark Dumont. http://www.flickr.com/photos/wcdumonts/9064685440/ . CC BY 2.0
14. Christopher Auyeung, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 3 Two-Dimensional Motion

Chapter Outline

Two-dimensional motion expands the concepts of motion to cover change in two directions at once. At the core of this are the concept of vectors, and the independence of motion along each axis.

3.1 Independence of Motion Along Each Dimension

Objectives

The student will:

- understand how motion along each axis can be resolved independently
- solve problems involving objects which are simultaneously under the influence of uniform acceleration and constant velocity along different dimensions

Vocabulary

- **free fall:** The condition of acceleration due only to gravity. An object in free fall is not being held up, pushed, or pulled by anything except its own weight. Though objects moving in air experience some force from air resistance, this is sometimes small enough that it can be ignored and the object is considered to be in free fall.
- **instantaneous velocity of a projectile:** The velocity of an object at one instant during its motion. In the case of a projectile, the instantaneous velocity vector would be the result of a constant velocity horizontal motion and an accelerated velocity vertical motion.
- **projectile motion:** Projectile motion is a form of motion where a projectile is thrown near the Earth's surface with some horizontal component to its velocity. The projectile moves along a curved path under the action of gravity. The path followed by a projectile is called its trajectory. Projectile motion is motion in two directions. In the vertical direction, the motion is accelerated motion and in the horizontal direction, the motion is constant velocity motion.
- **range:** A projectile launched with specific initial conditions will travel a predictable horizontal displacement before striking the ground. This distance is referred to as the projectile's range.

Equations

$x_f = v_x t + x_i$

$y_f = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + y_i$ (only for no initial vertical velocity)

Independence of Motion

The key to understanding motion in two or more dimensions is one principle: *Motion in each dimension works independently.*

What does this mean?

If we slide an object along a horizontal surface with little friction, like a hockey puck over ice, it will keep going in the same direction and speed - constant velocity. If we drop an object in the air, it will fall with speed increasing at the same rate - constant acceleration. What happens if we combine these, like if we slide an object off the end of a table so that it falls?

- In the horizontal direction, it continues with the constant speed.
- In the vertical direction, it speeds up with constant acceleration exactly as if dropped.

These two combine to make a path (or trajectory) that curves downward. This is a special case of what is called **projectile motion**.

Free Fall

Free fall is an idealized state of motion in which air resistance is neglected and only gravity acts upon a falling object. We consider situations in which objects are in free fall, after being launched with a certain horizontal velocity. Examples of such motion would be a baseball thrown with an initial horizontal velocity (a "line-drive") or rifle aimed horizontally and shot. We will discuss the more general case of an object fired at some angle above the horizontal in the next section.

Take two pennies and place them on a table top. Position one penny close to the edge of the table. Then, slide the other penny into the stationary penny with a glancing (very off center) blow. Both pennies will fall off of the table, but the one that was motionless will fall almost straight down (you may have to try this several times) while the other penny should slide off the table with an evident horizontal velocity. Have a friend watch the result to confirm that the pennies impact the ground at about the same instant. Gravity does not care how fast an object moves horizontally (just as the forward motion of the boat, in the last section, was unaffected by the current.)

The faster-moving penny follows an obvious parabolic path to the ground. The parabola is the result of the penny engaged in two one-dimensional motions, simultaneously: horizontal motion at a constant velocity (air resistance is negligible) and vertically accelerated motion due to gravity. Because the penny accelerates vertically, it does not move equal distances in equal times, as is the case for the horizontal direction. If the horizontal and vertical distances stayed in a fixed ratio to each other, the penny would appear to fall diagonally, not with the curve of a parabola.

http://groups.physics.umn.edu/demo/mechanics/movies/1D6020.mov

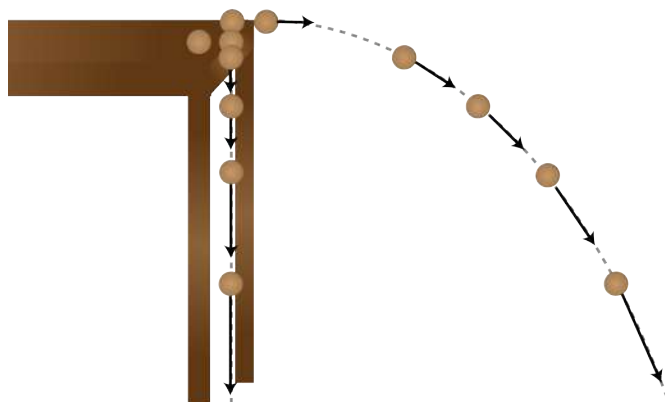



FIGURE 3.1

Check Your Understanding

A gun is positioned horizontally 1.75 m above the ground. A bullet exits with a muzzle velocity of 400 m/s. At the same instant as the bullet leaves the gun, an identical bullet is dropped from the height of the gun barrel. The second bullet falls straight down, landing at the feet of the shooter.

1. Do the bullets hit the ground at the same time?

Answer: Yes, they do.

2. What is the **range** of the fired bullet? By "range" we mean the horizontal distance the bullet has traveled.

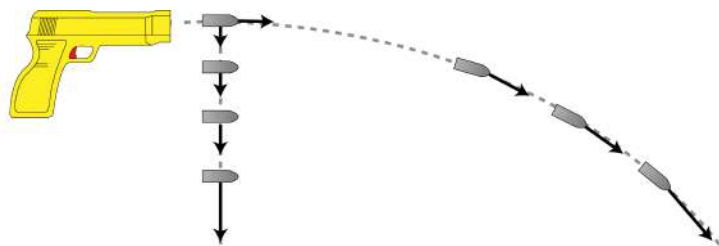



FIGURE 3.2

Answer: The answer to this question relies on two pieces of information: (1) the horizontal velocity of the bullet and (2) the time it takes the bullet to fall to the ground. Since we're told how fast the bullet is moving horizontally (400 m/s) we need to know how much time elapses before bullet hits the ground. Once we have the time, the range is only a matter of using $x = vt$, where x is the range of the bullet. The time is found by using the one-dimensional kinematic equation:

$$y_f = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_i t + y_i$$

Setting $y_f = 0, a = g = -10 \text{ m/s}^2, v_i = 0$ (in the $y-$direction), $y_i = 1.75\text{m}$

Therefore, $0 = \frac{1}{2}(-9.8)t^2 + 1.75, t = 0.598\ s$.

So, the range of the bullet is: $x = vt = (400\text{m/s})(0.589\text{s}) = 239.2 = 239\text{m}$.

By convention we often specify x as R for the range, hence $R = 239\ m$.

Note, this is an idealized example since air resistance is substantial for a bullet traveling at a speed of 400 m/s.

3. Based on the above idealized problem, we can see that the range of a gun fired horizontally is dependent upon:

a. The height at which the gun is fired.
b. The muzzle velocity of the bullet from the barrel.
c. Both the height and the muzzle velocity
d. Both a and b and the weight of the bullet.

Answer: The correct answer is C. Consider a bullet fired from the same height but an exit speed of 500 m/s:

range $= 500(0.598) = 299$ m.

Consider the height of the gun lowered to 1.50 m with the same exit speed of 400 m/s.

Time to ground and time of flight = 0.553 s, $r = 400(0.553) = 221.3$ m.

Here is a video demonstrating this experiment:

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=D9wQVIEdKh8

Lab Example

Students are given the task of finding the muzzle velocity for a toy dart gun. The gun is held horizontally and the distance from the floor to the dart is 1.5 meters. The dart is fired half a dozen times and the average horizontal displacement is 6.0 meters. What is the velocity of the dart as it exits the barrel of the gun? (See **Figure** 3.3.)

This motion has two components: Vertical free-fall and horizontal motion at constant velocity. A chart to keep track of the data is useful.

TABLE 3.1:

Horizontal	Vertical
$x = 6.0\ m$	$y = 1.5\ m$
$v = ?$	$v = 0\ m/s$
$a = 0$	$a = -10\ \text{m/s}^2$
$t = ?$	$t = ?$

The amount of time that the dart takes to hit the ground is also the amount of time it spends traveling horizontally. Therefore, once the time for the dart to fall 1.5 m is calculated, it can be used to determine the dart's horizontal velocity. Furthermore, since we can determine the vertical velocity of the projectile at any point along its trajectory, we can also determine its **instantaneous velocity** at any time during its flight.

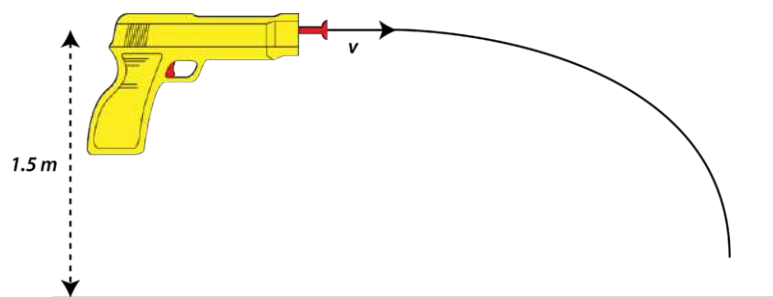



FIGURE 3.3

Using kinematics in one dimension, we find the time for the dart to hit the ground: $y_f = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_i t + y_i y_f = 0, y_i = 1.5\ m$ and $a = g = -10\ \text{m/s}^2$.

Inserting our values, we find the time equals 0.55 seconds. Therefore, the dart has traveled a horizontal distance of 6.0 m in 0.55 seconds. Its horizontal component of velocity is therefore

$$v_x = \frac{6.0\text{m}}{0.55\text{s}} = 10.9\ \text{m/s}$$

When it hits the floor after 0.55 seconds, it has the same horizontal velocity that it started with. Its vertical velocity at that time is

$v_y = at = (-10\text{m/s}^2)(0.55\text{s}) = -5.5\text{m/s}$

The vertical and horizontal velocities are independent, and can be solved separately.

Plotting the Motion of the Dart in the

It would be instructive to graphically display the horizontal and vertical motions of the dart since their graphical forms are different. The horizontal motion of the dart has constant velocity. The dart covers equal horizontal displacements in equal time, and its representation in a position-time graph is linear as seen in **Figure** 3.4.

The vertical motion of the dart has constant acceleration. The dart does not cover equal vertical displacements in equal time, and its representation in a position-time graph is parabolic as seen in **Figure** 3.5.

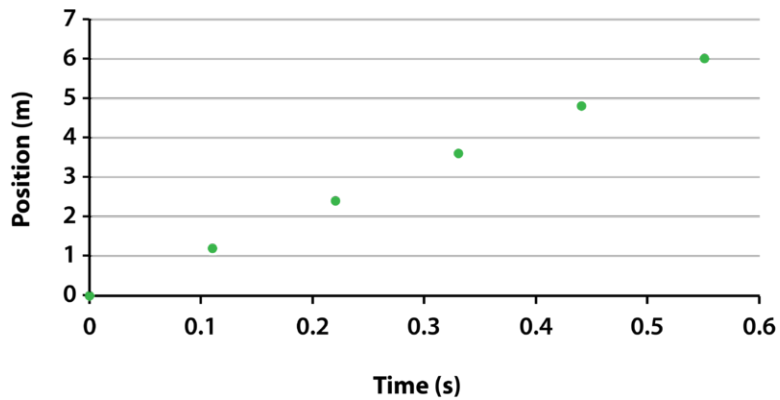



FIGURE 3.4
The horizontal motion of the dart has constant velocity.

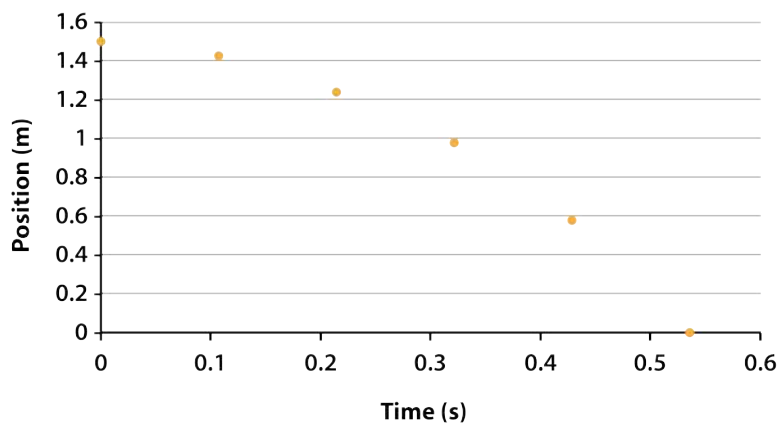



FIGURE 3.5
The vertical motion of the dart undergoes acceleration.

3.2 Vector Representation

Objectives

The student will:

- explain the relationship between coordinates and components.
- use vectors and vector components to add and subtract vectors.
- use trigonometric relationships to express vector components.

Vocabulary

- **resultant vector:** A single vector that is the vector sum of two or more other vectors.
- **trigonometric functions:** sine, cosine, tangent, inverse tangent
- **vector addition:** Vector addition is the process of finding one vector that is equivalent to the result of the successive application of two or more given vectors. Another way to define addition of two vectors is by a head-to-tail construction that creates two sides of a triangle. The third side of the triangle determines the sum of the two vectors.
- **vector components:** Parts of a vector that add up to the whole. In two-dimensional problems, there are usually two components- the horizontal x-component and the vertical y-component. Vector addition of all the components yields the original vector.
- **vector subtraction:** An operation identical to adding a negative inverse of a vector, defined as a vector in the opposite direction to the vector with the same magnitude.

Equations

$r = \cos\theta$

$y = r\sin\theta$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$

Introduction

The key to understanding motion in two or more dimensions is one principle: *Motion in each dimension works independently.*

The real world has three spatial dimensions. Representing motion in two dimensions can model many real world phenomena more completely than modeling in one dimension. Some examples of two-dimensional motion are:

- an arrow shot into the air
- a baseball hit into left field
- a ball rolling off a table top

FIGURE 3.6
Three examples of two-dimensional motion.

Representing Vectors in Two Dimensions

If you were asked to give directions to the point (3, 4) in **Figure** 3.7, you might suggest: Beginning at the origin of the coordinate system, walk along the $x-$axis, 3 units, then, turn left and walk 4 units in the $y-$direction.

The arrow, drawn from the origin to the point (3, 4) is a graphical representation of a vector quantity. By definition, a vector quantity must have magnitude (amount) and direction. The length of the arrow indicates the magnitude of the vector and the inclination of the vector to the $x-$axis indicates its direction. Later on, we will indicate the direction of a vector using the angle, θ, it makes with the positive $x-$axis.

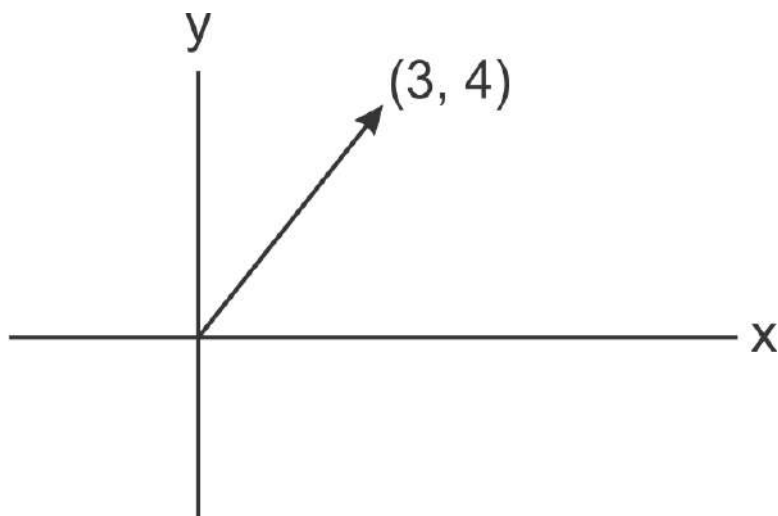



FIGURE 3.7
A coordinate system with an arrow beginning at the origin and ending at the point (3,4).

When we discuss vectors, we often refer to the x and y coordinates of a point as the components of the vector; *"the $x-$component of $\vec{A}$ and the $y-$component of $\vec{A}$,"* where the bolded $\vec{A}$ is read as, *"vector A."* **Figure** 3.8 shows the graphical representation of the x and y components of the vector (3, 4). The components of the vector may represent position, velocity, acceleration, force, and many other concepts.

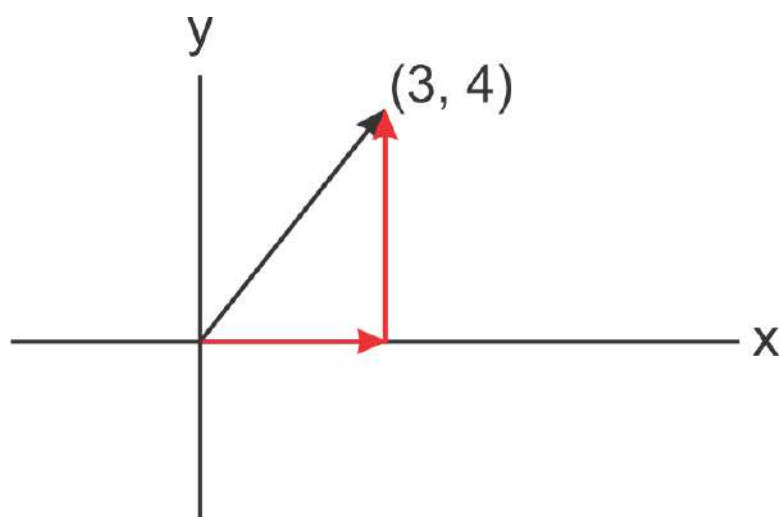



FIGURE 3.8
The red arrows represent the axial components of the vector beginning at the origin and ending at the point (3,4).

Adding Vectors

If we move over $+3$ and up $+4$ as instructed above, we end up standing at the tip of the arrowhead. If are now instructed to move $+6$ more units in the $x-$direction and $+2$ more units in the $y-$direction, where do we end up with respect to the origin of the coordinate system?

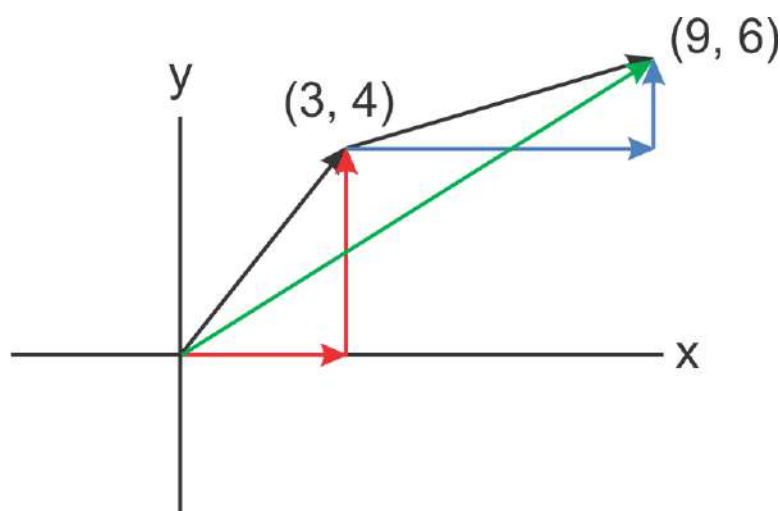



FIGURE 3.9

We can determine our location by finding the total displacement in the x and y directions, separately. $x:(+3+(+6))=+9, y=(+4+(+2))=+6$. Therefore, our final position is $(+9,+6)$. A new vector from the origin to the point $(+9,+6)$ can now be drawn. This vector represents the sum of the two vectors and is called the **resultant vector.** (See the green vector in **Figure** 3.9.)

vector $(+3,+4)+$ vector $(+6,+2)=$ the resultant vector $(+9,+6)$.

We define vector (+3, +4) as $\vec{A}$, and vector (+6, +2), as $\vec{B}$, and vector (+9, +6), as $\vec{C}$. Thus we can state: $\vec{A}+\vec{B}=\vec{C}$, and consider this process as **vector addition.** If vectors $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ had originally been drawn from the origin (see **Figure** 3.10), we could still add the two vectors together. Two methods to do so are presented below.

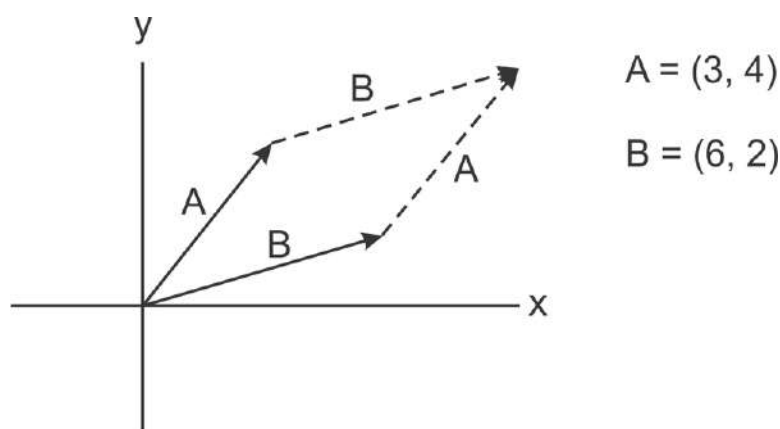



FIGURE 3.10

Method 1: (Numerical) Add each vector's respective x and y components.

Method 2: (Graphical-see **Figure** 3.10) Keep $\vec{A}$ where it is and slide $\vec{B}$ parallel to itself—preserve its direction and length—until the tail (the end) of $\vec{B}$ connects to the tip (head) of $\vec{A}$, as we originally had done. Since the order of addition for Method 1 is irrelevant, that is: $x = +3 + (+6)$ or $6 + (+3)$ and $y = +4 + (+2)$ or $+2 + (+4)$, this suggests that for the graphical method, the same resultant is formed regardless of whether $\vec{B}$ is slid and $\vec{A}$ remains where it or $\vec{A}$ is slid and $\vec{B}$ remains where it is. In using the graphical method an appropriate scale must be devised, such as 1.0 cm = 10.0 m or 1.0 cm = 5.0 m/s. Such a scale ensures that when vectors are drawn, they are correctly represented relative to each other. A protractor can also be used in order to draw the vectors correctly.

In general, both methods are valid for any number of vectors as well as for subtracting vectors.

Vector Subtraction

Method 1: Subtract $\vec{B}$ from $\vec{A}$: Multiply the x and y components of $\vec{B}$ by (-1) and then add our new $\vec{B}$ (let's call it $-\vec{B}$) to $\vec{A}$. Thus, $\vec{A} + (-\vec{B})$, gives: $x = (+3 + (-6)) = -3$, and $y = (+4 + (-2)) = +2$. Recall that $\vec{A} + (-\vec{B})$ can be written as $\vec{A} - \vec{B}$. Therefore, $\vec{A} - \vec{B} = \vec{C'} = (-3, +2)$.

Method 2: Since a vector can be made into its negative by multiplying its components by (-1), the graphical transformation of this multiplication process is a vector of the same length as the original vector but directed opposite to the original vector (see **Figure** 3.11). This is exactly what occurs when an ordered pair of coordinates has both of their signs changed. Therefore, all that is required to subtract vector $\vec{B}$ from vector $\vec{A}$, is to reverse the direction of $\vec{B}$, and add it to $\vec{A}$: $\vec{A} + (-\vec{B}) = \vec{C}$.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/SumOfTwoVectors/

Check Your Understanding

1. Vector $\vec{P}$ has components (2, -7) and Vector $\vec{Q}$ has components (0, -6). Using the mathematical method find the sum of $\vec{P}$ and $\vec{Q}$, call the resultant vector $\vec{R}$.

Answer: $\vec{R} = (+2 + 0, -7 + -6) = (+2, -13)$.

2. Find $\vec{P} - \vec{Q} = \vec{R'}$.

Answer: $\vec{R'} = (+2 - 0, -7 - (-6)) = (+2, -1)$.

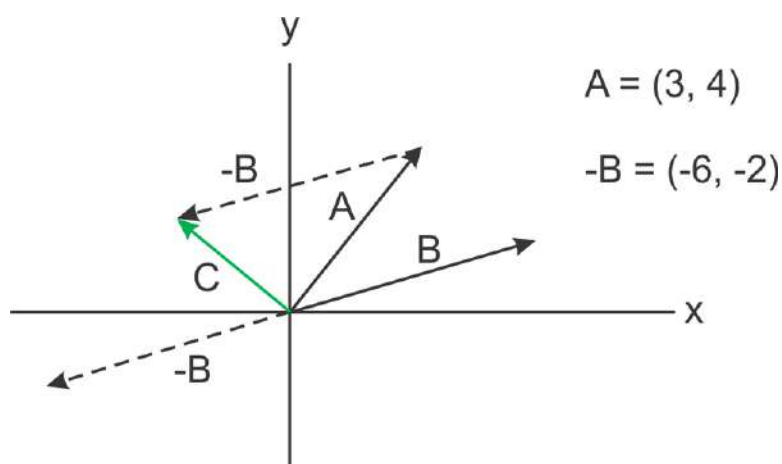



FIGURE 3.11

Using Trigonometric Functions to Express Vector Components

Let's return to the situation we began with: finding our way from the origin to the point (3, 4). There is yet another set of directions that will take us from the origin, (0, 0) to (3, 4). Instead of moving in the x and y directions, we could move some number of units at a certain angle to the $x-$axis. For this particular example, moving 5 units at an angle of 53.13° is equivalent to walking +3 units in the $x-$direction, turning left, and walking +4 units in the $y-$direction. (Why do you think it is exactly 5 units?)

If both methods yield the same result, there must be a way to mathematically show they are identical. And there is. It can be done using a few definitions involving ratios associated with a right triangle.

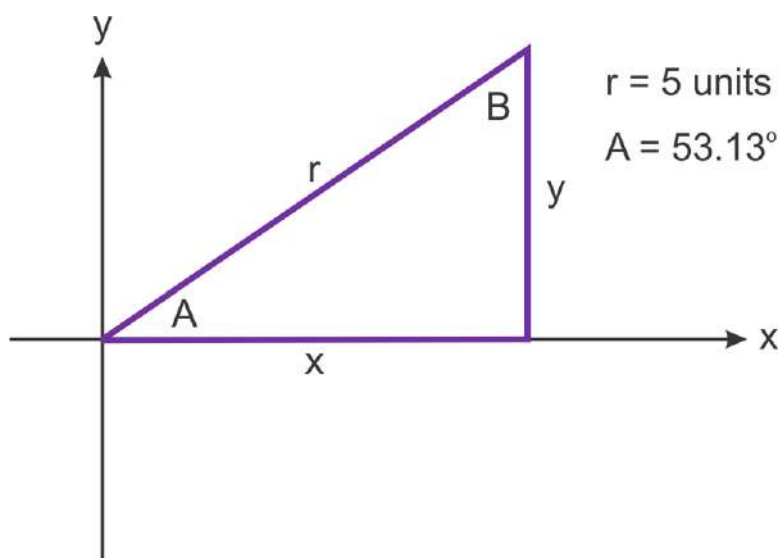



FIGURE 3.12
Angle A = 53.13° and angle B = 36.87°

The reference angle referred to in the sine, cosine, and tangent functions is A. See **Figure** 3.12 and the definitions given below. The reference angle is *usually* the angle formed with the positive $x-$axis, though as we will see, angle B can just as easily be used as the reference angle.

Due to a bit of history, linguistics, and custom, we define these ratios as follows:

The **sine** ratio is $\sin A = \frac{y}{r}; \frac{(\text{side opposite the reference angle}=y)}{(\text{hypotenuse}=r)}$

The **cosine** ratio is $\cos A = \frac{x}{r}; \frac{(\text{side adjacent the reference angle}=x)}{(\text{hypotenuse}=r)}$

The **tangent** ratio is $\tan A = \frac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \frac{y}{x}; \frac{(\text{side opposite the reference angle})}{(\text{side adjacent the reference angle})}$

The reference angle is the angle opposite the y side of the triangle. Once this angle is known, it's the same angle for all the trigonometric functions. Again: $\sin A = \frac{y}{r}, \cos A = \frac{x}{r}$ and $\tan A = \frac{y}{x}$.

Check Your Understanding

1. There are two acute angles in a right triangle. What ratios define sine, cosine, and tangent of angle B in the **Figure** 3.12?

Answer: $\sin B = \frac{x}{r}, \cos B = \frac{y}{r}$ and $\tan B = \frac{x}{y}$

2. $A = 53.13^\circ$ and $c = 5.00$ *units*. Use the above definitions to verify the lengths of two legs of the right triangle.

Answers: $x-$leg: Using the definition of the cosine:$\cos(53.13^\circ) = \frac{x}{5}, \rightarrow 5\cos(53.1^\circ) = x = 3.00$

$y-$leg: Using the definition of the sine: $\sin(53.13^\circ) = \frac{y}{5}, \rightarrow 5\sin(53.1^\circ) = y = 3.999 = 4.00$.

3. Use angle B to do the same:

Answers: $x-$leg: Using the definition of the sine:$\sin(36.87^\circ) = \frac{x}{5}, \rightarrow 5\sin(36.87^\circ) = x = 3.00$

$y-$leg: Using the definition of the cosine: $\cos(36.87^\circ) = \frac{y}{5}, \rightarrow 5\cos(36.87^\circ) = y = 4.00$

In general, when the reference angle is along the $x-$axis: $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$; and the ordered pair$(x,y) = (r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$. A notation used to represent a vector in terms of an angle (direction) and a length (magnitude), is (r,θ). Using the numerical values in the last example we have $(5, 53.13^\circ)$. We interpret$(5, 53.13^\circ)$, to mean the vector makes a positive 53.13 degree angle, when rotated counterclockwise from the positive $x-$axis, and has a length of 5 units from the origin to the tip of the arrowhead.

4. Given: $\vec{C} = (10.0, 30^\circ)$ and $\vec{D} = (20.0, 60^\circ)$, find the components of $\vec{R}$, where $\vec{R} = \vec{C} + \vec{D}$.

Answer: $C_x + D_x = 10\cos(30^\circ) + 20\cos(60^\circ) = 18.7$

$C_y + D_y = 10\sin(30^\circ) + 20\sin(60^\circ) = 22.3$

$\vec{R} = (18.7, 22.3)$

25 What is the magnitude of $\vec{R}$?

Answer: Use the Pythagorean formula: $\sqrt{(18.7^2 + 22.3^2)} = 29.1$

Magnitude of $R = 29.1$

6. Find the direction of $\vec{R}$ as measured counterclockwise from the positive $x-$axis.

Answer: $\vec{R}$ is in the first quadrant, since both x and y are positive. Hence, we know the angle must be between 0 and 90 degrees. Furthermore, since y is larger than x, the angle must be greater than 45 degrees. Using the ratio associated with the tangent function we have:

$\text{Tan } \theta = \frac{22.32}{18.66}$

Therefore, we need to find the angle which gives the ratio $\frac{22.32}{18.66}$. This can be done using the inverse function on your calculator. $\theta = \tan^{-1} 1.196 = 50.10^\circ$. Finally, $\vec{R} = (29.09, 50.10^\circ)$.

3.3 Inertial Frames and Relative Motion

Objectives

The student will:

- explain frames of reference and inertial frames.
- solve problems involving relative motion in one dimension.
- solve problems involving relative motion in two dimensions.

Vocabulary

- **inertial frame:** A reference frame in which the observers are not subject to any accelerating force.
- **reference frame:** A coordinate system or set of axes within which to measure the position, orientation, and other properties of objects in it. It may also refer to an observational reference frame tied to the state of motion of an observer.
- **relative velocity:** The vector difference between the velocities of two bodies, or the velocity of a body with respect to another body which is at rest.

Equations

$\vec{V}_{ba} = \vec{V}_b - \vec{V}_a$ (velocity of b relative to a)

$\vec{V}_{ab} = \vec{V}_a - \vec{V}_b$ (velocity of a relative to b)

Introduction

Velocity is always measured relative to something. We measure how fast a person runs or how fast a car drives relative to the ground. However, we know from astronomy that the Earth itself is both turning around its axis and going around the Sun. A **reference frame** is a fixed point and we measure directions relative to it.

If you are on a bus going north at 60 mph, then the person seated across the aisle from you has velocity 60 mph north relative to the ground and velocity zero relative to you. If the bus is going at a steady speed, you can toss a coin across to them, and it works the same as if you were standing on solid ground. In the bus frame of reference, you and the other passenger have velocity zero, and the coin has a slight velocity east (say 20 mph). In this frame of reference, someone standing to the side of the road would have a velocity 60 mph south.

With the ground as your frame of reference, you and the other passenger are both moving 60 mph north, while the coin is moving diagonally northeast. The coin's velocity vector is 60 mph north and 20 mph east added together.

Both of these frames of reference are correct. You can solve any problem using either one, as long as you use it consistently. Some problems, though, are easier in one frame of reference than in another. If you wanted to solve how long it would take for the coin to go across the aisle, for example, then the bus frame of reference is much simpler.

Inertial Frames

There are endless examples of relative motion. Suppose that you're in an elevator that is rising with a constant speed of 2 m/s relative to the ground. If you release a ball while in this reference frame, how will the motion of the ball differ than had you dropped the ball while standing on the ground?

Had you been asleep in this reference frame and woke after the compartment was in motion, you would have no idea you were in motion. There is no experiment that can be performed to detect constant velocity motion. If you've ever traveled in a jet moving 1000 km/h (about 600 mph) with no air turbulence, then you know from firsthand experience that you felt motionless. After the brief acceleration period, you can no longer sense the motion of the elevator. The ball will move as if it has been released in the reference frame of Earth.

As a general statement, we consider all constant velocity reference frames to be equivalent. This idea is known as The Galilean Principle of Relativity. Constant-velocity reference frames are called **inertial frames** of reference. An "at-rest" reference frame is an arbitrary construct. If you're traveling with a constant velocity in your car, the reference frame of the car is an at-rest frame. The elevator compartment moving 2 m/s is an at-rest frame with respect to the compartment. You- who are sitting and reading this firmly placed on the earth- consider yourself to be in an at-rest reference frame. But you know the Earth itself is in motion. It rotates about its axis with a speed of about 1600 km/h (1000 mph) at the equator, and it orbits the sun with an average speed of 108,000 km/h (67,000 mph). In fact, the Earth isn't even an inertial frame of reference, since it rotates about its axis and its orbital speed varies. (Remember, velocity is constant only if its magnitude and direction do not change—objects in circular motion do not qualify!) We usually approximate the Earth as an inertial frame of reference since we do not readily sense the earth's acceleration. Objects on Earth's surface have a maximum acceleration due to its rotation of about 0.03 m/s^2—which we don't typically concern ourselves with since the acceleration due to gravity is 10 m/s^2.

Relative Motion: Part 1

The **Figure** 3.13, a moving walkway, provides us with our first example of relative motion. Let us consider two Cartesian coordinate systems. One is attached to the "stationary" Earth. The other is attached to a walkway moving with a constant horizontal velocity of 1 m/s with respect to the earth. If a ball is thrown with an initial horizontal velocity of 3 m/s in the direction the walkway is moving by a person standing on the walkway, what horizontal velocity does a person standing on the ground measure for the ball? The person in the Earth frame sees the ball having a combined velocity of 4 m/s. The person in the "moving frame" will measure it as 3 m/s. According to The Principle of Galilean Relativity, the velocity, V, seen from the at-rest frame is additive, that is, $V = 1\ m/s + 3\ m/s$. See **Figure** 3.14.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RelativeMotionInASubwayStation/

Two cars are headed toward each other. Car Amoves with a velocity of 30 mph due east and Car $B$with a velocity of 60 mph due west, relative to "at-rest" earth. See **Figure** 3.15.

a. What is the velocity of car B relative to the velocity of car A?

We define motion to the east as positive (+30 mph), and motion to the west as negative (-60 mph).

From our previous statements regarding **relative velocity** we can "feel" that the relative velocity is greater than either speed: If we define the relative velocity (the velocity of car B relative to the velocity of car A) as: $\vec{V}_{ba} = \vec{V}_b - \vec{V}_a$, then $-60 - 30 = -90\ mph$, a person in car A sees car B moving west at 90 mph. The person in car A sees himself as "motionless" while car B is moving toward him with car B's speed and his own speed which he does not perceive.

b. What is the velocity of car A relative to the velocity of car B? This means we are assuming car B is our "at rest" coordinate system.

$\vec{V}_{ab} = \vec{V}_a - \vec{V}_b = 30 \text{ mph} - (-60 \text{ mph}) = +90 \text{ mph}$. A person in car B sees car A moving east at 90 mph.

The person in car B sees himself as motionless, while car A is moving toward him with car A's speed and his own speed, which he does not perceive.

FIGURE 3.13

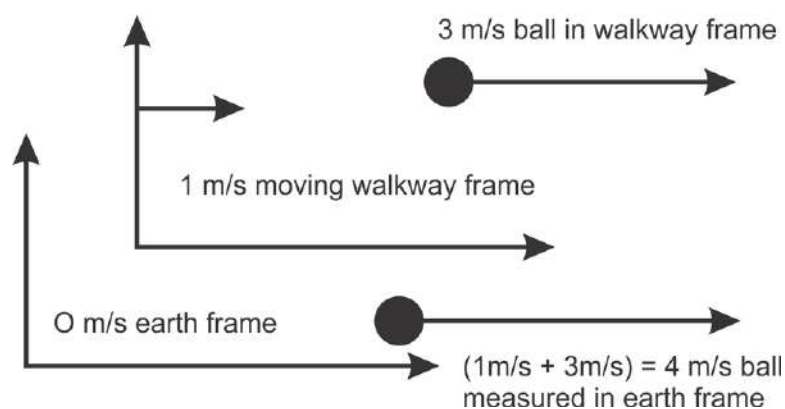



FIGURE 3.14

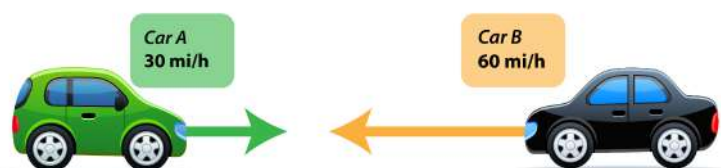



FIGURE 3.15
Part a: Passengers in the Car reference frame assume they are motionless. Part b: Passengers in the Car reference frame assume they are motionless.

Note: The "at-rest" frame sees its motion reversed in the "moving frame."

Car A is moving due east with a speed of 30 mph and Car B is moving due north with a speed of 30 mph.

a. What is the velocity of car A relative to car B?

$\vec{V}_{ab} = \vec{V}_a - \vec{V}_b$ The two vectors are not along the same line so we'll use their components

$\vec{V}_a = (+30, 0)$ and $\vec{V}_b = (0, +30)$, where east is $+x$ and north is $+y$

$-\vec{V}_b = (0, -30)$, therefore, $\vec{V}_a - \vec{V}_b = (30 + 0, 0 - 30) = (30, -30)$. The components are directed east and south, so

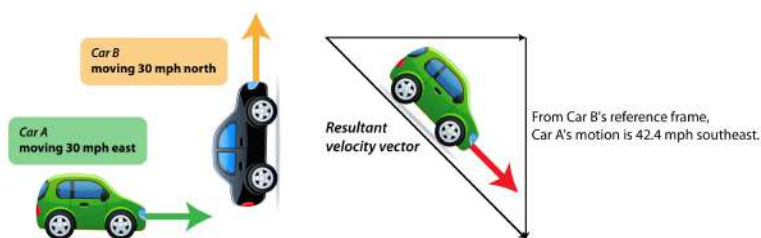



FIGURE 3.16
Diagram for 3a

the direction is southeast. Since both components have the same magnitude, the angle must be 45°. But since the vector is in the southeast direction it is in the 4^{th} quadrant so the angle is 315°, and the magnitude is the Pythagorean sum $(30^2+30^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 42.4\ mph$

Thus: $\vec{V}_{ab} = 42.4$ mph in direction 315°

b. What is the velocity of car B relative to car A?

The magnitude of the relative speed is the same, but the direction is reversed.

Thus: $\vec{V}_{ba} = 42.4$ mph in direction 135°

Relative Motion: Part 2

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ResultantOfAVector/

We begin Part 2 with a boat trip!

FIGURE 3.17
A boat crossing a calm body of water.

A boat moving at 4.0 m/s crosses a still lake, leaving from Point A and arriving at Point B. The distance between points A and B is 100 m.

The path of the boat is directly from A to B and the time of travel is quickly found: $\frac{100}{4} = 25\ s$. (See **Figure** 3.18.)

What if the situation was changed to a river with a current of 3.0 m/s flowing due east, while the boat still leaves from point A, attempting to head due north to reach point B, moving at 4.0 m/s relative to the water? If the person

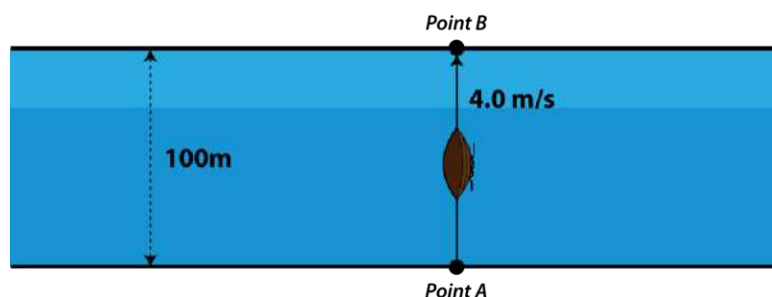



FIGURE 3.18

steering the boat does not take the current of the water into consideration, the boat will not reach point *B*. The boat will arrive somewhere downstream from point *B*. Let's analyze this situation further (see **Figure** 3.19).

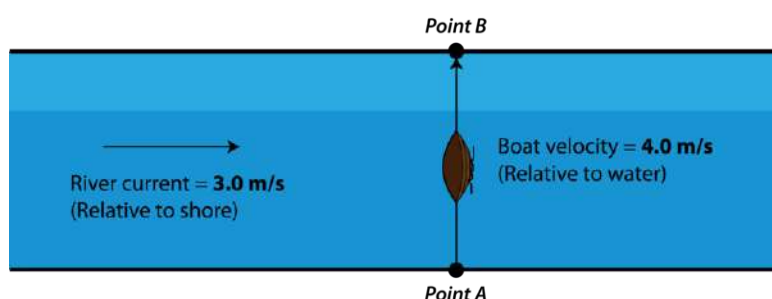



FIGURE 3.19

Assuming the boat is aimed due north with no attempt to compensate for the current:

1. How much time is required for the boat to reach the opposite bank of the river?
2. What distance downstream of Point *B* is the boat when it arrives at the opposite bank of the river?
3. What is the speed of the boat with respect to an observer at Point *A*?
4. What is the direction of the boat's motion with respect to an observer at Point *A*?

In order to answer the first question we must decide if the presence of the current increases or decreases the northerly speed of the boat.

What do you think?

Let's think this through.

If the current were flowing northeast or northwest, the boat's northerly speed would increase (think of a tail wind adding speed to an airplane's motion). We already agree that the eastern (or western) component will cause the boat to veer off course.

If the current, however, were flowing southeast or southwest, then the boat's northerly speed would decrease (think of a headwind, subtracting speed from an airplane's motion). Again, the eastern (or western) component of the current's motion will cause the boat to veer off course. (See **Figure** 3.20.)

We must conclude that a sideways (east or west) current cannot affect the forward (northward) motion of the boat. True, it can change the overall velocity of the boat. In **Figure** 3.21 the boat is moving both east, due to the current, *and* north under its own power. So, as seen from Point *A* or Point *B*, the boat is moving northeast. Since its velocity due north has not been affected by the current, the boat's northern component of speed in still 4.0 m/s, and since the boat moves east with the current, it now has an eastward velocity of 3.0 m/s.

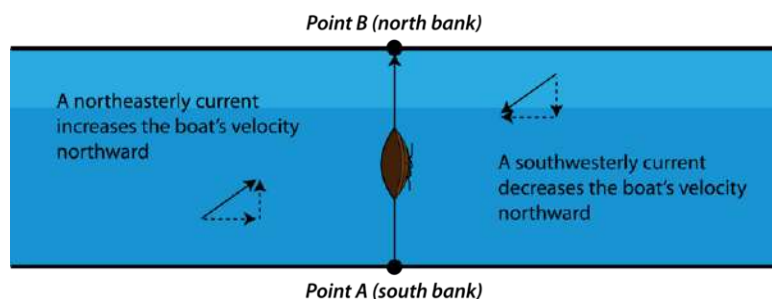



FIGURE 3.20

Answers to questions 1 –4:

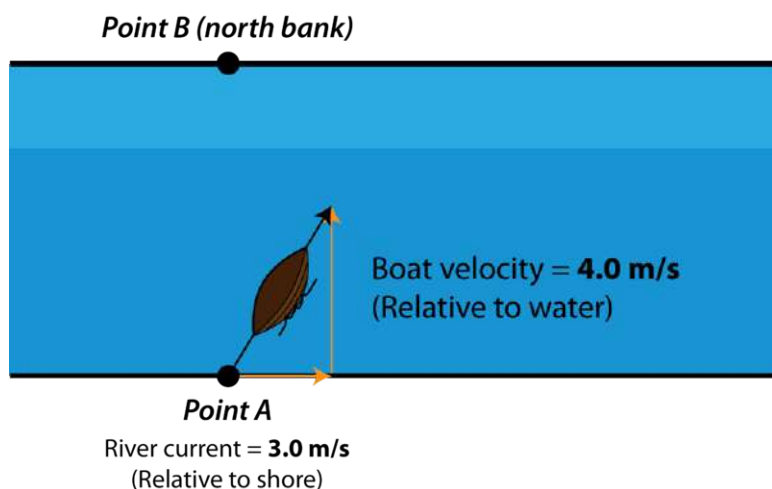



FIGURE 3.21

1. The current only acts perpendicular to the boat's motion, so the boat still moves 4.0 m/s due north. Hence, the time to cross remains $\frac{100}{4.0} = 25\ s$.
2. The boat has the same speed as the current so it travels 3.0 m/s for 25 s eastward. The boat therefore is $(3.0)(25) = 75\ m$ downstream from point B.
3. The boat is moving 4.0 m/s north and 3.0 m/s east. Its resultant speed can be found using the Pythagorean formula: square root of $\sqrt{3^2+4^2} = 5\ m/s$.
4. The angle as measured from a north-south line (line AB) can be determined using any of the trigonometric functions, sine, cosine, or tangent, since all three sides of the right triangle are known. For example, using the tangent function we have: $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) = 36.87°$.

A final consideration is the interesting case of determining how to steer the boat such that it follows a straight course from point A to point B, in spite of the current. Recall that if there were no current the boat could just be aimed due north and it would easily move from point A to point B. We can intuit that the only hope of having the boat go from point A to point B is to aim the boat, somewhat, "into the current", or upstream. In other words, we can effectively travel straight across as we did in the "no-current" situation by aiming the boat some amount into the current. Why does this work?

First, consider what happens if a boat is aimed directly upstream with a speed equal to that of the current. The boat has a velocity of 3.0 m/s west and the water current has a velocity of 3.0 m/s east. What would someone positioned at point A see the boat do? If you think of the motions as two vectors for a moment: +3.0 m/s (current) + -3.0 m/s

(boat), the vector sum is zero. In other words, the boat appears to be motionless to the observer at point A. So if the boat in our problem is aimed into the current such that its westward component is 3.0 m/s, we effectively have a situation equivalent to no current. The boat has a velocity of 4.0 m/s relative to the water and its westward component must be 3.0 m/s relative to the water if it is to cross directly from A to B. Using the Pythagorean formula we find the boat's northern component of motion to be the square root of 7.0 m/s or about 2.65 m/s. The boat will move due north at 2.65 m/s and arrive at the point B in $\frac{100}{2.65} = 37.7\ seconds$. With no current, the trip took 25 seconds. Some of the boat's forward motion had to be sacrificed in order to maintain the correct direction of travel. We can also enquire about the direction the boat was aimed in order to make the trip directly to point B. Since the components of the vector triangle are known, any trigonometric function will do. Let's use the sine and find the angle as measured from the north-south line.

$\sin^{-1}(\frac{3}{4}) = 48.59^\circ$

Note, this was not the same angle that resulted when the boat was aimed due north and the current carried it downstream of B.

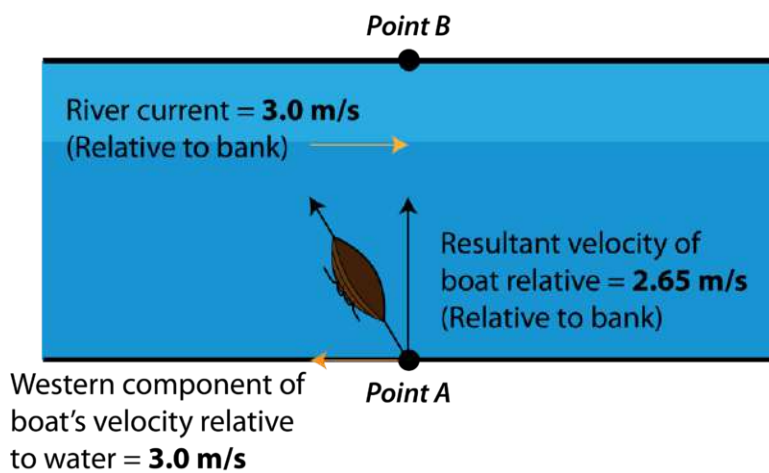



FIGURE 3.22

3.4 Projectile Motion

- Solve problems involving objects experiencing uniform horizontal motion and accelerated vertical motion
- Understand relative motion in a vertical plane

Lesson Objectives

The student will:

- draw and interpret graphs involving two-dimensional projectile motion
- solve for the instantaneous velocity of a projectile
- predict a projectile's range

Vocabulary

Free fall
The condition of acceleration which is due only to gravity. An object in free fall is not being held up, pushed, or pulled by anything except its own weight. Though objects moving in air experience some force from air resistance, this is sometimes small enough that it can be ignored and the object is considered to be in free fall.

Projectile motion
Projectile motion is a form of motion where an object (called a projectile) is thrown near the earth's surface with some horizontal component to its velocity. The projectile moves along a curved path under the action of gravity. The path followed by a projectile is called its trajectory. Projectile motion is motion in two directions. In the vertical direction, the motion is accelerated motion and in the horizontal direction, the motion is constant velocity motion.

Instantaneous velocity of a projectile
Instantaneous velocity is the velocity of an object at one instant during its motion. In the case of a projectile, the instantaneous velocity vector would be the resultant of a constant velocity horizontal motion and an accelerated velocity vertical motion.

Range
A projectile launched with specific initial conditions will travel a predictable horizontal displacement before striking the ground. This distance is referred to as the projectile's range.

Equations

$$y = \left(\frac{v_i + v_f}{2}\right)t$$

$$x_f = (v\cos\theta)t + x_i$$

$$y_f = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + (v\sin\theta)t + y_i$$

$$v_x = v\cos\theta$$

$$v_y = v\sin\theta$$

Introduction

"Independence of Motion along Each Dimension" looks at the special case of throwing an object in a purely horizontal direction. **Projectile motion** is the general case of throwing an object in any direction, from sliding an object off a desk to kicking a soccer ball as shown in the **Figure** below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/JumpingOverRowOfParkedCars/

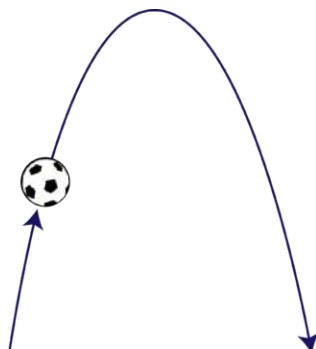



FIGURE 3.23

Author: Soccer player: Image copyright Mandy Godbehear, 2012; Diagram: CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung License: Used under license from Shutterstock.com Source: http://www.shutterstock.com

Finding instantaneous velocity

Let's look back at the case of a dart fired out from a dart gun, using vector mechanics. Consider the trajectory of the dart sometime between pulling the trigger and striking the ground. The diagram below is a representation of the instantaneous velocity components of the dart.

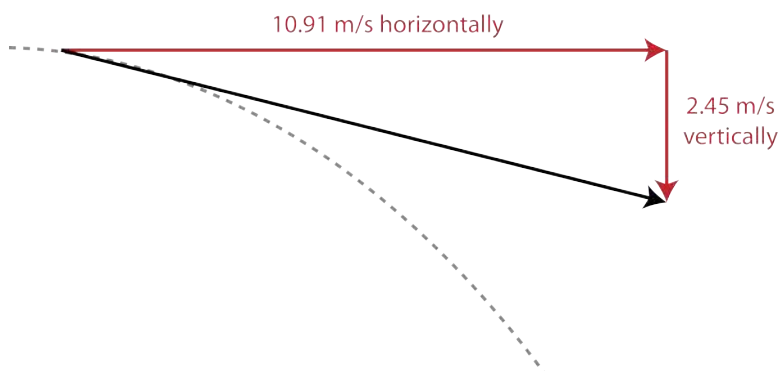



FIGURE 3.24

Author: CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou License: CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0

Using only one-dimensional mechanics, we found that in the y-direction, it takes 0.55 seconds for the dart to hit the floor from a height of 1.5 meters. If the dart traveled a horizontal distance of 6.0 m in 0.55 seconds, then its horizontal component of velocity is therefore

$$v_x = \frac{6.0\text{m}}{0.55\text{s}} = 10.9 \text{ m/s}$$

.

What is the *vector velocity* at time, $t = 0.25\text{s}$?

The x and y velocity components represent the legs of the right triangle (see **Figure** above${v_x}^2 + {v_y}^2 = v^2$, gives the magnitude of the instantaneous velocity of the projectile once the square root is taken.

The x velocity is constant, so we know it is 10.9 m/s at all times. For the y velocity, we know from one-dimensional motion that $v_f = at + v_i$. The acceleration from gravity is constant, giving: $(-10\text{m/s}^2)(0.25\text{s}) + 0\text{m/s} = -2.5$ m/s.

Now that both legs of the right triangle are known, we can apply the Pythagorean Theorem to solve for the instantaneous speed (the hypotenuse of the right triangle) at time, $t = 0.25\ s$.

$$v = \sqrt{v_x^2 + v_y^2} = \sqrt{(10.9\text{m/s})^2 + (2.5\text{m/s})^2} = 11.2 \text{ m/s}$$

If all that was asked for in this problem was the instantaneous speed of the dart at 0.25 s we would be done. However, you may be asked for the dart's instantaneous velocity at $t = 0.25\ s$. In that case, you need to determine the instantaneous direction of the dart as well (recall that velocity is a vector quantity, and as such, has a magnitude *and* a direction).

Finding the instantaneous direction of the velocity of the dart at $t = 0.25\ s$:

Using the tangent function is the most efficient method. The angle that we need to find is somewhat arbitrary; after all, other than the right angle, the triangle has two perfectly good angles to choose from. The angle usually preferred, however, is measured from $x-$direction. Using the inverse tangent relationship which can be found on your calculator, we have:

$\tan\theta = \frac{2.5\text{m/s}}{10.9\text{m/s}}$; $\tan^{-1}\theta = 12.7°$

If you are asked to represent the vector using the trigonometric definition of angle measurement, than either $-12.7°$ or $347.3°$ would do. The final vector result can be stated as $(11.2\text{m/s}, -12.7°)$.

Components of projectile motion

In the problem that follows we imagine the projectile launched from the ground with an angular elevation between 0 and 90 degrees, with an initial $x-$component of velocity of +30 m/s and an initial $y-$component of velocity of +40 m/s.

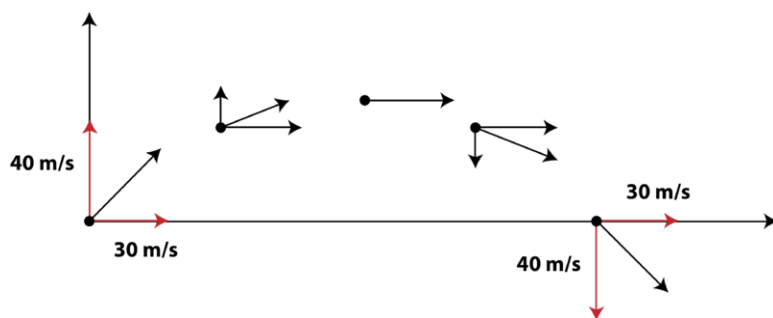



FIGURE 3.25

Author: CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung License: CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0

Some typical questions that can be asked in such a situation are:

1. What is the time the projectile takes to reach the highest position above the ground?
2. What is the projectile's highest position above the ground?
3. What is the velocity of the projectile at its highest position above the ground?
4. What is the range of the projectile?

1. In order to answer the first question, let's consider what determines the amount of time the projectile remains airborne. A velocity of 30 m/s in the $x-$direction, does not affect the time in the air; no more so than the gun or

dart's airborne time was affected by their horizontal motion. The vertical component of motion, however, must determine how much time the projectile spends airborne since only the vertical motion is subject to gravity. If we imagine just the vertical component of +40 m/s we can quickly estimate (if we make the approximation that -9.8 is close enough to -10) the amount of time it takes the projectile to reach its highest position (peak); it's about 4 seconds, or if we need more accuracy; $\frac{40}{9.8} = 4.08\ s = 4.1\ s$. Remember that the projectile loses 9.8 m/s of velocity every second it ascends. Thus,

1. Answer: $t = 4.1\ s$
2. Answer: Once again we can use $x = vt$ that is, $y = \frac{v_i + v_f}{2} t$, as long as we understand that v represents the average velocity for the *ascent* part of the projectile's motion. Since the projectile began with an initial velocity in the $y-$direction of 40 m/s and has a final velocity of 0 m/s, at the top of its motion in the $y-$direction, its average velocity is $\frac{(40+0)}{2} = 20\ m/s$. Its highest position above the ground is therefore, $(20\ m/s)(4.08) = 81.6 = 82\ m$.
3. Answer: It is often incorrectly thought that the velocity of the projectile at its peak position is zero. It must be remembered that until the projectile hits the ground, it is always moving horizontally. Though the vertical velocity is zero at the top of its motion, the horizontal velocity is still +30 m/s. Therefore, the velocity of the projectile at its highest position above the ground is +30 m/s (the + indicating the projectile is moving with a velocity of 30 m/s to the right).
4. Answer: The range of the projectile is determined by finding the total time the projectile is airborne and multiplying that time by its speed in the horizontal direction $(x = vt)$. The projectile's motion is symmetric in the absence of air friction so the total time for the trip is twice 4.08 s or 8.16 s. The range is, therefore, $(30)(8.16) = 244.8\ m = 240\ m$.

Of course, instead of using a bit of physical reasoning and simple arithmetic, we could have used more sophisticated equations to answer all these questions, but why make things more complicated than they have to be?

Before leaving this problem, let's alter the given information, in order to see another way the problem could have been stated.

A projectile is launched from the ground at an angle of 53.13 degrees with a speed of 50 m/s.

Find the answers to questions 1-4 above.

Our claim is that both problems are, in fact, *identical* and have the same answers. If we're not given the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity, it is good policy to find them before trying to solve a problem of this sort.

The $x-$component (horizontal) is: $v_x = v \cos\theta \rightarrow 50 \cos 53.13^\circ = 30\ m/s$

The $y-$component (vertical) is: $v_{yi} = v \sin\theta \rightarrow 50 \sin 53.13^\circ = 39.999 \rightarrow 40\ m/s$,

Since we see that the components are identical to the original problem, we can solve the problem the same way.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ThrowingABaseballFromTheOutfieldToHomePlate/

An interesting aside: If at 4.1 s, (the time when the projectile has reached its maximum height) we pretend to erase the first half of the projectile's motion and label the projectile at its peak position with a vector (rather an a component of a vector) pointing to the right with a speed of 30 m/s, the remaining path of the projectile would be similar to the bullet and dart of the previous section (3.3 "A Special case of Projectile Motion") and the problem would be solved in the same manner as both bullet and dart problems. See **Figure** below.

Let's take a trip!

Check your understanding

Imagine a small airplane flying at a constant elevation of 80 m over your school soccer field, with a velocity of 50 m/s, (about to 110 mph), eastward; see **Figure** above. Ignore air resistance.

1. What would the motion of the package look like to an observer on the ground?

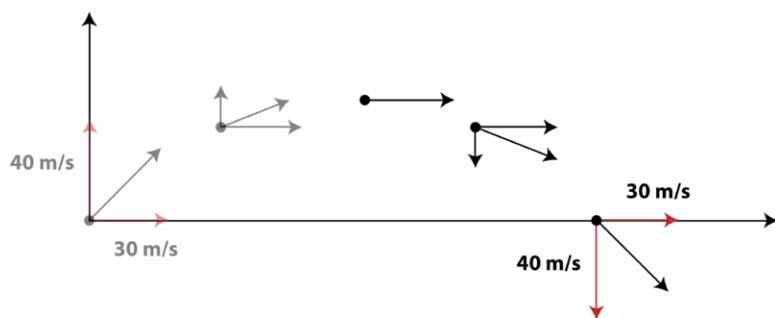



FIGURE 3.26
Author: CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung License: CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0

FIGURE 3.27
The package remains under the plane, but people on ground see the package's descent as a parabola. Author: Image copyright Konstantin Yolshin, 2012; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung License: Used under license form Shutterstock.com Source: http://www.shutterstock.com

Answer: An observer on the ground would see the package fall in a parabolic arc, as if it had been projected horizontally with a speed of 50 m/s; the same motion performed by the bullet and dart; (though the package would remain directly below the airplane).

2. What would the motion of the package look like to an observer on the plane?

Answer: The package would appear to fall straight down, since the package and the airplane both have the horizontal velocity of 50.0 m/s.

3. The plane releases the package when it flies over a target marked A on the ground, will the package land on A?

Answer: No, it will not, since, as the package falls, it is moving at the horizontal velocity 50 m/s.

4. How far from point A does the package land?

Answer:

If we know how much time the package spends traveling at 50.0 m/s after it is released, we can use $x = vt$ to solve the problem.

The time the package remains in the air is found using our one-dimensional equation:

$y_f = \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_{iy}t + y_i$ where $a = g = -10 \text{ m/s}^2$, $v_{iy} = 0$ m/s (at the instant the package is released it has no velocity in the $y-$direction), $y_f = 0$ and $y_i = 100\ m$; therefore, $\frac{1}{2}(-10\text{m/s}^2)t^2 + 0 + 80\text{m} = 0$. Solving for t, we find $t = 4.0$ s.

Thus $x = (50.0\text{m/s})(4.0\text{s}) = 200\text{m}$. The package fell 200 m past target A.

In order for the pilot to hit target A, the package must be released 200m before reaching the target, or 4.0 seconds before reaching target A. See **Figure** below

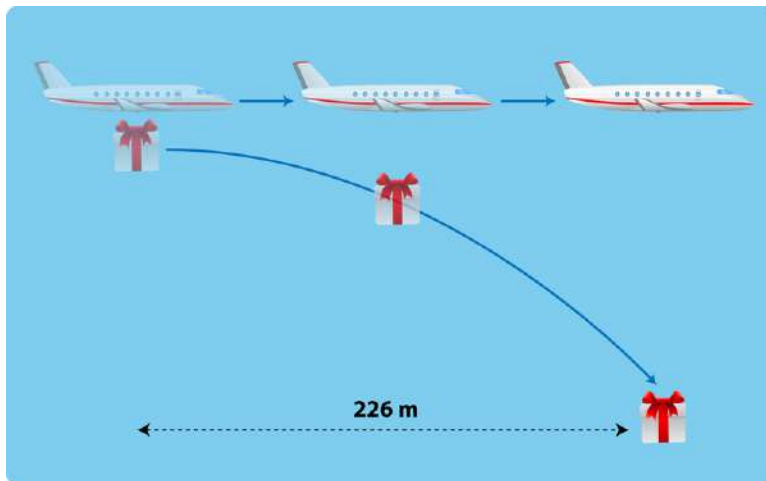



FIGURE 3.28
Author: Image copyright Konstantin Yolshin, 2012; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung License: Used under license form Shutterstock.com Source: http://www.shutterstock.com

Deriving some general results from the projectile equations

From the problems that we discussed, it should be reasonably clear that the equations we derived for one-dimensional kinematics can be used, with caution, for 2-dimentional kinematics. The only difference is that care must be taken in correctly identifying velocity components. Recall that if velocity is stated as V at an angle of θ[U+F02C] then the initial x and y components of the velocity are, $v\cos\theta$ and $v\sin\theta$, respectively. With this in mind, we rewrite our kinematic equations as follows:

1. $x - direction : x_f = R = (v\cos\theta)t + x_i$
2. $y - direction : y_f = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + (v\sin\theta)t + y_i$

The other equations are treated the same way, using the initial velocity in the $y-$direction:

3. $v_{yf} = gt + v\sin\theta$
4. ${v_{yf}}^2 = (v\sin\theta)^2 + 2g\Delta y$
5. $v_{ave} = \frac{v\sin\theta + v_{fy}}{2}$

Special cases

What is the maximum range, R, of a projectile if $y_i = y_f = 0$?

setting y_i *and* $y_f = 0$ in equation 2, and factoring out t, we have:

$t\left(\frac{1}{2}gt + v\sin\theta\right) = 0$

There are two solutions:

$t = 0$ and $t = \frac{-2v\sin\theta}{g}$

The trivial condition is satisfied at launch $(t = 0, y_i = 0)$ and the nontrivial condition is satisfied at landing $\left(t = \frac{-2\sin\theta}{g}, y_f = 0\right)$.

If $t = \frac{-2v\sin\theta}{g}$ is substituted into equation $1 : R = (v\cos\theta)t$

We have: $R = (v\cos\theta)\left(\frac{-2v\sin\theta}{g}\right) = \frac{-2v^2\sin\theta\cos\theta}{g}$

Using the trigonometric identity $2\sin\theta\cos\theta = \sin 2\theta$, we have:

$R = \frac{-v^2\sin 2\theta}{g}$

We can extract a useful result from the range equation. Assuming that g is constant, the range is a function of the V and θ. Let's consider the angle. Since the maximum value of the sine is 1.0 then whatever angle makes $\sin 2\theta = 1$, will also maximize the range. Since $\sin 90^\circ = 1$, $2\theta = 90^\circ$ and the angle which produces the greatest range is 45°. The range continually increases with increasing velocity so there is no "interesting" information we can get out of V, except to say that V must be is at least some minimum value if the intended target is to be reached.

Since 45° gives the greatest range, what kind of range will smaller and larger angles than 45° give? Forty-five degrees is an optimum condition and we notice that for $\theta = 30^\circ$ *and* $\theta = 60^\circ$ (equally distributed about 45° we have $2\theta = 2(30^\circ) = 60^\circ$, *and* $2\theta = 2(60^\circ) = 120^\circ$ which gives $\sin 60^\circ = \sin 120^\circ$. The implication is that the range is the same for angles $(45^\circ + \theta)$ *and* $(45^\circ - \theta)$. This condition can be readily proven with a bit of trigonometry: Is $\sin(2(45^\circ + \theta)) = \sin(2(45^\circ - \theta))$ an identity? The distribution gives $\sin(90^\circ + 2\theta) = \sin(90^\circ - 2\theta)$, which after expansion gives: $\cos(2\theta) = \cos(2\theta)$ and confirms the statement is an identity.

Lastly, we consider expressing y as a function of x, rather than t.

By solving equation 1 for t and substituting the result into equation 2, we have, after recalling $\tan\theta = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$,

$$y_f = \frac{1}{2} g \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{(v\cos\theta)^2} + \Delta x \tan\theta + y_i$$

If $X_i = 0$ then Δx above can be replaced with X, or R.

1. A quantity that has both magnitude and direction (as velocity does) is a vector quantity.
2. Inertial reference frames are constant velocity frames and are equivalent to each other.
3. The relative velocity of one object compared to another can be computed using vector addition once the velocities of each object in their respective reference frame is known. Both frames have their velocities referenced to an "at-rest" reference frame.
4. Vectors can be added graphically from head to tail and numerically by adding all the $x-$components of each vector together and all the $y-$components of each vector together.
5. Projectile motion can be analyzed by considering independently the $x-$ and $y-$components of the motion of the projectile.

3.5 References

1. Laura Guerin, using basketball image by User:Reisio/Wikimedia Commons. CK-12 Foundation (basketball image available from http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basketball.png) .
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Christopher Auyueng, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Christopher Auyueng. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Archer: Michael Pollak; Baseball players: Nan Palmero; Ball on table: Raymond Chou. Archer: http://www.flickr.com/photos/michaelpollak/4507873096/; Baseball players: http://www.flickr.com/photos/nanpalmero/9329047290/; Ball on table: CK-12 Foundation . Archer and Baseball players: CC BY 2.0; Ball on table: CC BY-NC 3.0
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
14. Paul Lowry. http://www.flickr.com/photos/paul_lowry/4914284947/ . CC BY 2.0
15. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Image copyright lana rinck, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyueng, Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
17. Image copyright lana rinck, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyueng, Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
18. Alan Mak. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saikung-boat.png . CC BY 2.5
19. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
24. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA
25. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA
26. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA
27. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA
28. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA
29. CK-12 Foundation. . CCSA

Newton's Three Laws

Chapter Outline

Newton's three Laws of Motion are the core of our understanding of *force*, which is how objects affect each others' motion. In this chapter, we will cover the definition of force, an object's innate resistance to being moved by force –called *inertia* –and how forces interact with each other.

4.1 Newton's First Law

Objectives

The student will:

- Describe what force is and different types of forces
- Understand the meaning of inertia and Newton's First Law

Vocabulary

- **force:** Any effect on the motion of another object. This includes pushing and pulling, as well as resistance to being moved across or through.
- **inertia:** The resistance of any object to changing its state of motion, equal to its mass.
- **mass:** A measure of the amount of matter in an object. Weight on Earth's surface is based on mass, but an object's mass is the same wherever it is taken.
- **net force:** The combination of all the forces on a single object.

Introduction to Newton

Isaac Newton was a 17^{th} century scholar, scientist, and mathematician who formalized our present understanding of **force**. Our everyday experience is that moving objects always tend to stop, but Newton proved that this was the result of other things getting in the way –like air resistance or friction. If you slide a book across a table, it comes to a stop. If you slide it along ice, it will go further before it stops. In the absence any opposing force, an object will slide forever. Newton's work showed that the "natural" state of moving objects in the absence of an opposing force is not rest, but continuous motion.

Force

In everyday English, we use "force" to mean pushing or being pushy. For example, someone is called "forceful" if they insist on getting their way. In physics, pushing is a force, but force also means resisting being pushed. When you are standing, the ground is exerting force on you that keeps you from falling. The ground is not doing anything, but is still exerting a force known as a normal force.

Common types of forces include:

1. The *normal force* is an object's resistance to things going through it. The force always points away from the flat surface –known as the normal or perpendicular to that surface.
2. *Friction* is a force that a surface exerts when something tries to slide across it. A hockey rink has a low friction force. That means it's easy to slide across it. A football field has a medium friction force –if you fall you may slide a little on the grass. A tennis court has a high friction force –you won't slide at all if you fall, though you may tumble. The friction force also depends on your weight –the harder you're pushing on the ground, the harder it is for you to slip.
3. *Air resistance* is the force of drag that the air has on things moving through it, like the force on your hand held out the window of a moving car. The force depends on how fast you're going. If the car is going faster, your hand is pushed back harder. It also depends on the area facing the wind. If you hold your palm sideways, the

wind pushes it harder than if you turn your palm down. A football going point-first has less air resistance than one that's sideways or tumbling.

These three together are known as contact forces. Other forces include:

1. *Gravity* is force that acts at a distance between any two objects. The more massive the object, the greater the force of gravity it exerts. In everyday life, only Earth itself is large enough to create noticeable force, but sensitive instruments can detect the pull of gravity from a mountain or other feature.
2. Other fundamental forces include electrical force, magnetic force, and nuclear forces. These will be studied in other contexts.

A **net force** is not a type of force, but rather the combination of all the forces on a given object.

Newton's First Law: Inertia

Galileo formulated what we now call Newton's First Law of Motion.

Newton's First Law of Motion: An object remains at rest or in a state of uniform motion unless acted upon by an unbalanced force.

A very important idea is implicit in Galileo's statement. Objects at rest and objects in uniform motion (constant velocity) are equivalent. Both states –rest and uniform motion –are *arbitrary*, they are, in effect, interchangeable. Any frame of reference (reference frame) which can be said to exhibit a state of "at-rest" or uniform motion, with respect to any other frame of reference is said to be an inertial frame of reference. We usually associate a coordinate system with a frame of reference. If you're standing on a street corner and a bus passes, you see the passengers on the bus in motion and they see you in motion. If you're seated on the bus and a passenger gets up from her seat and walks down the length of the bus, you assume you're at rest and she's in motion.

Typically, an at-rest reference frame is understood to mean a frame of reference attached to Earth. (In fact, the Earth is not a perfectly inertial frame of reference since it rotates, but it's a good approximation for most uses.) Any reference frame moving with constant velocity relative to you can be used as an at-rest reference frame. If you're in an elevator moving with constant velocity, up or down, and conduct an experiment to determine the acceleration of gravity, you'll measure the same value of the acceleration if you conduct the experiment standing on Earth –no matter what experiment you use! All inertial frames give rise to the same laws of physics.

Check Your Understanding

1. You're in an elevator which is moving upward with a constant velocity of 3.0 m/s. You release a ball from waist height. You then perform the same experiment when you're standing on the ground. The time of fall to the elevator floor compared to the time of fall to the ground is:

a. Less

b. More

c. The same

Answer: C. All experimental results are the same regardless of which inertial frame is used to conduct the experiment.

Inertia is one of the most baffling ideas in physics. One of the common choices in the question above is option A. Many people reason that since the elevator floor is moving upward, the ball will impact it sooner than it would the ground. Perhaps we can explain what is happening in the elevator by asking what we would see while standing on the Earth and viewing only the motion of the ball. Initially, we see the ball rising with a constant velocity of 3 m/s. At the instant the ball is dropped, we see the ball begin to slow down, as it continues to briefly ascend no differently

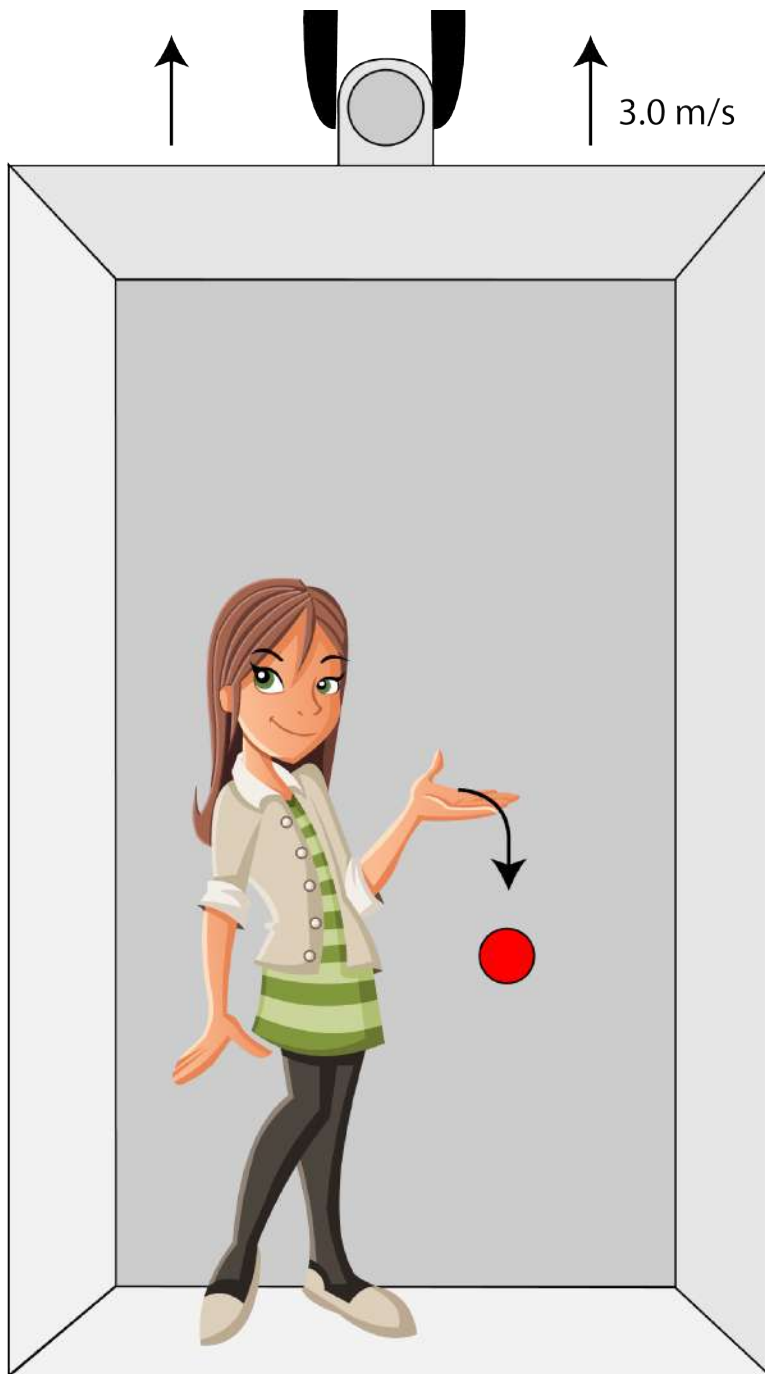



FIGURE 4.1

than had the ball left own hand with a velocity of 3 m/s. The acceleration of gravity that the ball experiences is the same whether you toss the ball into the air or simply drop the ball. In the reference frame of the elevator, the ball simply appears to drop to the floor. The elevator floor is no more "rushing up" to meet the ball then the "stationary" Earth does. (We will be more precise with this statement when we discuss Newton's Third Law.)

We associate inertia with **mass**: the more mass, the more inertia. The more mass an object has, the more force is required to alter its state of motion. Pulling a table cloth out from under the dishes, putting a coin on your elbow and quickly retracting your elbow and catching the coin, and removing the support under a coin with a fast horizontal motion allowing the coin to drop through an opening it was suspended above, are all examples of tricks where an object's inertia is responsible for the perceived magic. An unfortunate example of inertia in action is so-called

"whiplash injury." Suppose a moving car rear-ends another car that is at rest. Imagine that the driver's seat of the "front" car does not have a head rest. In that case, the car, and the driver's body, lurch forward, but the driver's head tends to stay in place due to its inertia, straining the neck. The resulting damage to the neck is called a whiplash injury. This bit of physics often creeps into the courtroom.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/Inertia/

It's not uncommon in science fiction shows to show a space ship "towing" another disabled ship. As long as the towing ship is moving with constant velocity, there is no reason to keep towing. The disabled ship's inertia will maintain the same velocity since there is negligible friction in deep space. In reality, we can send unmanned probes into deep space with only enough fuel to break out of Earth's orbit. Once the probe is moving fast enough to escape the Earth's gravity, its thrusters are turned off for months or years depending upon how far the journey.

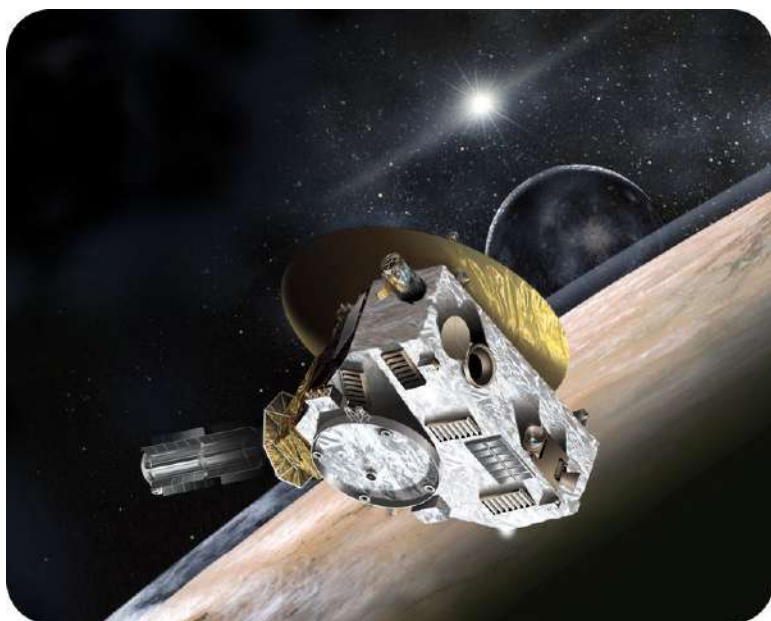



FIGURE 4.2

The New Horizons space probe will spend most of its year journey traveling nearly 60,000 km/h without a need of fuel as a result of its inertia. It will arrive at Pluto July 14, 2015.

We use the symbol F to mean force in physics and we use the Greek letter sigma, $\sum$, read as "the sum of" to express the condition under which Newton's First Law holds, that is:

$\sum F = 0$; the sum of all forces acting on an object is zero (in other words, the net force, F_{net} on the object is zero, $\sum F = F_{net} = 0$). Under this condition the object may be at rest or have a constant velocity.

Check Your Understanding

A student holds a physics text book out the window of a helicopter ascending with a speed of 10 m/s. When the helicopter reaches a height of 100 m, she releases the text. The highest position above the ground that the book achieves is:

a. 100 m

b. Greater than 100 m

Answer: The correct answer is B. Due to the book's inertia it continues moving upward after being released. The unbalanced force of gravity slows the book down until it reaches its highest position above the ground. (The book's highest position is approximately 105 m.)

4.2 Newton's Second Law

Objectives

- Define Newton's Second Law and net force
- Calculate acceleration from force and mass
- Calculate force from acceleration and mass
- Calculate mass from force and acceleration

Newton's Second Law

Kick a small stone and it moves fairly fast. Kick a larger stone with the same force and it doesn't move so fast. We hypothesize that force is capable of producing acceleration and the size of acceleration is dependent upon the mass of the object to which the force is applied. If we use, without stating a precision definition, the term "mass," we see a relationship between the net force, acceleration, and mass.

Newton's Second Law: The acceleration, a, of an object is directly proportional to the net force, ΣF, upon it and inversely proportional to its mass, m.

As long as one force is involved, this is pretty simple. The more massive something is, the harder you have to push it –and the harder you push it, the more you can accelerate it. These are all linearly proportional, which means that they are found by simple multiplication. Suppose on a muddy day, an opposing player with the ball loses his footing and starts slipping toward you, and you bring him to a stop. Because he slipped, he's not pushing back, so your push is the only force on him. Suppose later that game, a similar case happens. Here are some cases of how linear proportionality works in a case like this:

- If you use twice as much force, you can accelerate the next player twice as quickly, bringing him to a stop in half the time.
- If you use twice as much force, you can accelerate a player twice as massive, bringing them to a stop in the same time. If the new player is twice as massive, it would take twice as much force to accelerate them the same amount. Alternately, if the new player is twice as massive and you apply the same force, he will only accelerate half as much. He would come to a stop more slowly, taking twice as long.
- If the new player comes to a stop twice as quickly (twice the acceleration), then he may have had twice the force applied to him. Alternately, if the new player comes to a stop twice as quickly (twice the acceleration), then he may have the same force applied to him, but he is only half as massive.

Units of Force

When you calculate force, if you use mass in kilograms (kg) and acceleration in meters per second squared (m/s^2), then the resulting force comes out in a unit called the "Newton," after Isaac Newton. If you're using other units, you'll need to convert. In American Imperial units, the pound is used as a measure of both mass and force. The conversions are:

- 1 pound (lbs) = 0.45 kilograms (kg)
- 1 pound (lbs) = 4.4 Newtons (N)

Side Note: The unit "Newton" is written with a capital N. Units that are named after people are capitalized just like that person's name, while other units, like meter and kilogram, are not.

Calculating Acceleration From Force

Mass is the "stuff" (matter) that an object possesses. The pull of gravity on mass is the mass's weight. The more mass an object has, the more inertia it has, and the more weight it has at a particular location.

However, we do not need gravity to define mass. Imagine, for instance, a rectangular block of wood of mass m resting upon a horizontal frictionless surface.

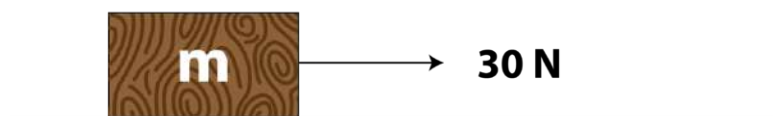



FIGURE 4.3

A block accelerates along a frictionless table due to a horizontal force of 30.0 N acting upon it. (The force of gravity and the normal force also act upon the block, but these forces do not enter into our discussion. We will have more to say about these when we discuss free-body diagrams.)

Measuring the position of the block as a function of time, we are able to determine the acceleration of the block is 2.00 m/s^2. Since $F = ma$, we have 30 $N = m(2.0\ m/s^2)$ and $m = 15\ kg$. Notice we did not use gravity to determine the mass of the block.

Had we weighed the block we would have found its weight to be 147 N. Using $W = mg$, we find the block's mass as 15 kg.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/NewtonsSecondLaw

Things to consider:

1. Newton's First Law defines what we mean by an inertial frame. Physics is easier to interpret from the point of view of an inertial frame.
2. One object may be subject to many forces. In a situation where an object has forces acting upon it yet the object moves with a constant velocity, the net force on the object is zero. For example: A person places a 100 N force upon a box while moving it with a constant velocity of 2 m/s. This statement is indirectly stating that another 100 N force (or forces adding up to 100 N) is directed opposite the 100-N force that the person is applying.

Mass vs. Weight

Mass is a scalar quantity having units of kilograms. Weight is a vector quantity measured in Newtons. Your mass does not change regardless of where you are in the universe. Your weight on the other hand is dependent upon gravitational acceleration. Hence, your weight changes depending upon which planet you're on.

We use the word gravity to represent the force that keeps our feet on the ground. When we jump, we don't just keep moving upward. We reach a high point, depending on how much effort we put into the jump, and then fall back to Earth. Galileo determined that the acceleration, g, due to gravity for all falling bodies close to Earth's surface has a numerical value of about 10 m/s^2. It is important not to confuse the acceleration due to gravity, g, and the force of gravity W or mg.

Weight, W, is defined as the product of mass, m, and acceleration due to gravity, g: $W = mg$. The weight of a 1.0 kg mass is: $W = (10\ \text{m/s}^2)(1.0\text{kg}) = 10\ \text{kg} \times \text{m/s}^2 = 10\text{N}$. The weight is 10 Newtons.

Check Your Understanding

1. The mass of a 1.00-N weight is:

a. 1.0 kg
b. 10. kg
c. 0.10 kg

Answer: C. $W = mg$ so $m = \frac{W}{g}$. Putting in the weight of 1 Newton and g, we get $\frac{1\ N}{10\ m/s^2} = 0.10\text{kg}$.

2. What is the force of gravity acting on a 15.0-kg mass?

Answer: $W = mg = (15.0)(9.81) = 147\ N$

3. Find the acceleration due to gravity in the following cases.

a. A 70.0 kg astronaut weighs 261.1 N on the Mars. Find the acceleration of gravity on the surface of the Mars.
b. A 70.0 kg astronaut weighs 113.4 N on the Moon. Find the acceleration of gravity on the surface of the Moon.

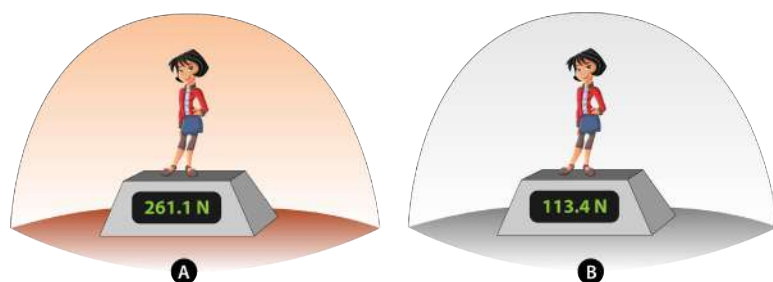



FIGURE 4.4
(A) Person weighing on Mars. (B) Person weighing on Moon.

Answers:

a. $W = mg$; $g = \frac{261.1\ N}{70.0\ kg} = 3.73\ m/s^2$.

b. $W = mg$; $g = \frac{113.4\ N}{70.0\ kg} = 1.62\ m/s^2$.

http://www.flashscience.com/motion/weight_on_planets.htm

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/FreeFallOnTheSolarSystemPlanetsAndTheMoon/

4.3 Newton's Third Law

Objectives

- Understand Newton's Third Law
- Understand the difference between countering force and action-reaction
- Use Newton's three laws to solve problems in one dimension

Vocabulary

- **center of mass**: The point at which all of the mass of an object is concentrated.
- **dynamics**: Considers the forces acting upon objects.
- **free-body diagram (FBD)**: A diagram that shows those forces that act upon an object/body.

Equations

$\sum F = Ma$

Newton's Third Law: Forces or Pairs of Forces

It was Newton who realized singular forces could not exist: they must come in pairs. In order for there to be an "interaction" there must be at least two objects, each "feeling" the other's effect.

Newton's Third Law: Whenever two objects interact, they must necessarily place equal and opposite forces upon each other.

Mathematically, Newton's Third Law is expressed as $F_{AB} = -F_{BA}$, where the subscript AB means the force exerted on A by B and the subscript BA means the force exerted on B by A. Forces F_{AB} and F_{BA} are identical forces and never act upon the same object. Forces that are equal and opposite and act upon the same object are not a pair.

Problem Solving

We use Newton's laws to solve **dynamics** problems. Dynamics, unlike kinematics, considers the forces acting upon objects. Whether it is a system of stars gravitationally bound together or two colliding automobiles, we can use Newton's laws to analyze and quantify their motion. Of Newton's three laws, the major mathematical "workhorse" used to investigate these and endless other physical situations is Newton's Second Law (N2L): $\sum F = Ma$.

In using Newton's laws, we assume that the acceleration is constant in all of the examples in the present chapter. Newton's laws can certainly deal with situations where the acceleration is not constant, but for the most part, such situations are beyond the level of this book. A notable exception to this is when we investigate oscillatory motion. As a last simplification we assume that all forces act upon the **center of mass** of an object. The center of mass of an object can be thought of as that point where all of the mass of an object is concentrated. if your finger were placed at this point, the object would remain balanced. The 50 cm point is, for example, the center of mass of a meter stick.

Free-Body Diagrams

A diagram showing those forces that act upon a body is called a **free-body diagram (FBD)**. The forces in a FBD show the direction in which each force acts, and, when possible, the relative magnitude of the each force by the length of the force vector. Each force in a FBD must be labeled appropriately so it is clear what each arrow represents.

Example 1: Sitting Bull

In the **Figure** 4.5, a 1.0 kg bull statue is resting on a mantelpiece. Analyze the forces acting on the bull and their relationship to each other. There are two vertical forces that act upon the bull:

1. The Earth pulling down on the center of mass of the bull with a force of $W = mg = (1.0)(9.8) = 9.8\ N$
2. The floor pushing back against the weight of the bull, with a normal force F_N. The term normal force comes from mathematics, where normal means that the force is perpendicular to a surface. The normal force vector (often stated as "the normal") is drawn perpendicular to the surface that the bull rests upon. Normal forces are usually associated with a push upon an object, not a pull.

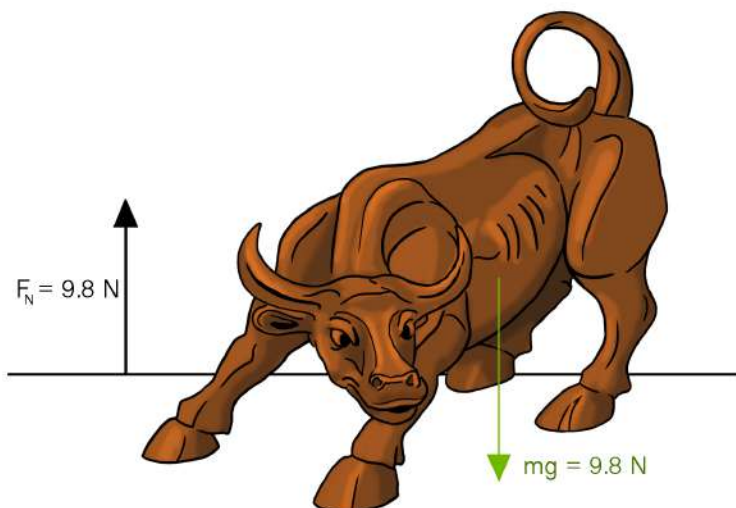



FIGURE 4.5

Answer: Using N2L we write: $\sum F = Ma$, where $\sum F = F_N - mg = ma = 0$, where $a = 0$. The negative sign $(-mg)$ indicates that the Earth pulls on the statue downward. Usually, when solving problems with N2L, forces that point down and to the left are expressed negatively and forces that point up and to the right are expressed positively. These are just conventions and any consistent set of conventions is permissible. It is also important (when enough information is provided) to draw the length of a vector in proportion to its magnitude. In the diagram above, F_N and mg are drawn the same length, reflecting the fact that they have the same magnitude. Important: in the diagrams, the arrows must originate inside the object, pointing "outward"

The statue is stationary so it has zero acceleration. This reduces the problem to $F_n = mg$, which intuitively seems reasonable. When the problem is solved, it shows the magnitudes of the forces are equal. It must be kept in mind that their directions are opposite and that they are not a N3L pair.

Example 2: Hanging Loose

In the **Figure** 4.6, Mr. Joe Loose is hanging from a rope for dear life. Joe's mass is 75 kg. Use $g = 9.8\ m/s^2$.

2a. Draw Joe's FBD.

FIGURE 4.6

2b. What is the tension in the rope?

Answer: We assume the mass of the rope is negligible. Including the mass of the rope is not particularly difficult, but we're just starting out!

The convention in physics is to use label T, for "tension". A tension force is transmitted through a string, cord, or rope.

Once again, we apply $\sum F = Ma$, where $\sum F = T - mg = ma = 0$ since $a = 0$.

$T = mg = (75.0)(9.8) = 735\ N = 740\ N$

Example 3: Sliding Away

A 4900 N block of ice, initially at rest on a frictionless horizontal surface, has a horizontal force of 100 N applied to it.

Answer: Always begin by drawing an FBD of the problem.

Typically, applied forces are either written as F or F_{ab}. If there are multiple forces, depending on the wording of the problem, each force may have a subscript that reflects its meaning, or may just be numbered.

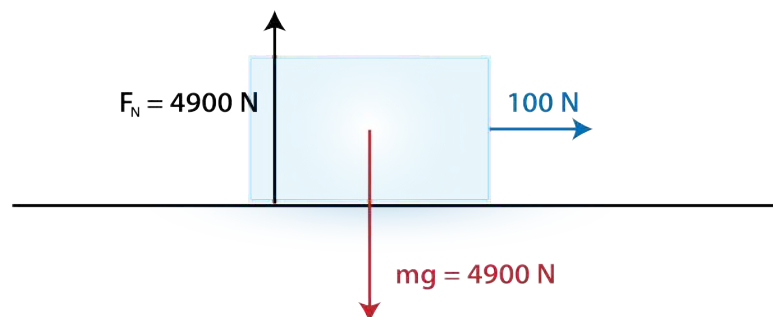



FIGURE 4.7

3a. Find the mass of the block of ice in **Figure** 4.7, use 9.8 m/s^2 for g.

Answer: $W = mg,\ m = \frac{4900\ N}{9.8\ m/s^2} = 500\ kg$

3b. Find the acceleration of the block of ice in **Figure** 4.7.

Answer: $\sum F = Ma,\ \sum F = F_{ap} = ma.$

$100\ N = (500\ kg)a,\ a = 0.20\ m/s^2$

3c. Find the velocity of the block at $t = 100\ s$

Answer: $V_f = at + V_i,\ (0.20)(100) + 0 = 20\ m/s$

3d. Find the displacement of the block at $t = 100\ s$.

Answer: $\Delta x = \frac{1}{2}(V_i + V_f)t = \frac{1}{2}(0 + 20)(100) = 1000\ m$

Example 4: A Touching Story

In **Figure** 4.8, Block A has a mass of 10.00 kg and Block B has a mass of 6.00 kg. Both blocks are in contact with each other, with Block A experiencing an applied 70.0 N force to the right as shown. Note that both blocks have the same acceleration.

Note: When referring to more than one mass we often use the word "system."

FIGURE 4.8

4a. Draw the FBD's for Block A and Block B

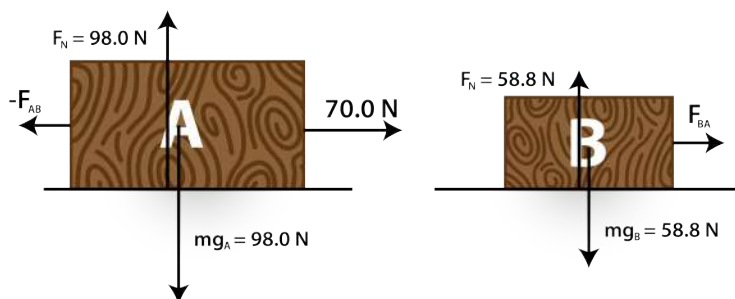



FIGURE 4.9

Answer: As Block A moves to the right it experiences a force from Block $B$to the left.

This force is labeled: $-F_{AB}$ (force on A by B)

Block B is pushed to the right with the same force that it exerts upon block A, according to N3L

This force is labeled: F_{BA} (force B by A); the magnitudes of F_{AB} and F_{BA} are, of course, equal, according to N3L.

4b. Find the acceleration of the system.

Answer: We use N2L applied to each block:

Block $A: \sum f = MA. \sum F = 70.0 - F_{AB} = 10.00a.$

Block $B: \sum F = MA. \sum F = F_{BA} = 6.00a.$

We have a system of two equations and two unknowns since the magnitudes of F_{AB} and F_{BA} are identical.

Adding F_{BA} to left side of the Block A equation and $6.00a$ to the right side of it, we have:

$70.0 = 16.00a,\ a = 4.375 = 4.38\ m/s^2.$

Notice that on the left side of the resulting equation, the sum of $-F_{AB}$ and F_{BA} is zero and on the right side of the equation the sum is $10.00a + 6.00a$. The N3L pair of forces, $-F_{AB}$ and F_{BA} is considered as a pair of internal forces with respect to the system. When solving a system of equations having an N3L pair of forces, these internal forces add up to zero. Additionally, the right-hand side of the equation must always equal the total mass of the system. For this example $(m_A + m_B)a$. In more complicated problems, care must be taken if different parts of the system have different accelerations.

4c. What is the magnitude of the force between Block A and Block B (F_{AB} or F_{BA})?

Answer: This is answered by solving either the Block A or Block B equation. The Block B equation is certainly easy to solve. Dropping the subscript: $F = 6.00(4.375) = 26.25 = 26.3\ N$

The Atwood Machine

The Atwood Machine (invented by English mathematician Reverend George Atwood, 1746-1807) is used to demonstrate Newton's Second Law, notably in determining the gravitational acceleration, g.

Example 5:

One end of the rope in **Figure** 4.11 is attached to a 3.2-kg mass, m_1 and the other end is attached to a 2.0-kg mass m_2. Assume the system is frictionless and the rope has negligible mass.

5a. Draw FBDs for the m_1 and m_2.

Answer:

5b. Determine the acceleration of the system. Use $g = 9.8\ m/s^2$.

Answer: Before we begin, we decide in which direction the system accelerates. Since the mass of the m_2 is smaller than the mass of m_1, m_2 will accelerate up and m_1 will accelerate down. Therefore the tension in the rope is greater than the weight of m_1 but smaller than the weight of m_2. Using N2L we write the equations of motion for $m_1$and m_2.

$\sum F = (3.2)(9.8) - T = 32a$ (since $T < mg_1, a > 0$)

$\sum F = T - (2.0)(9.8) - T = 2.0a$ (since $T < mg_2, a > 0$)

The equations are set up so that the acceleration has a consistent sign.

Had we chosen the direction of the acceleration incorrectly, our answer would have been a negative number, informing us of our error.

Solving the system of equations we have:

$(3.2)(9.8) - (2.0)(9.8) = 5.2a$, solving for the acceleration gives: $a = 2.26\ m/s^2 = 2.3\ m/s^2$.

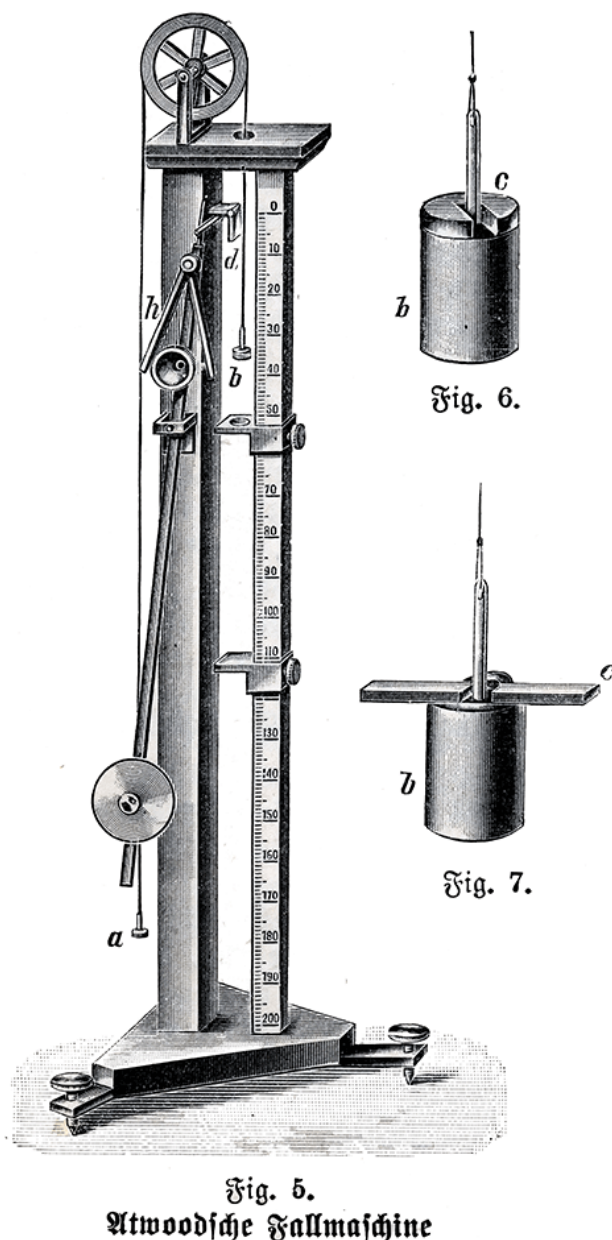



FIGURE 4.10
Atwood used a pendulum mechanism for timing the system of masses and adjusted the distances of the masses to ensure an integral number of seconds.

5c. Find the tension in the rope.

Answer: Again, either equation will provide the answer. Using the second equation above, we have:

$T = (2.0)(9.8) + (2.0)(2.26) = 24.12\ N = 24\ N$

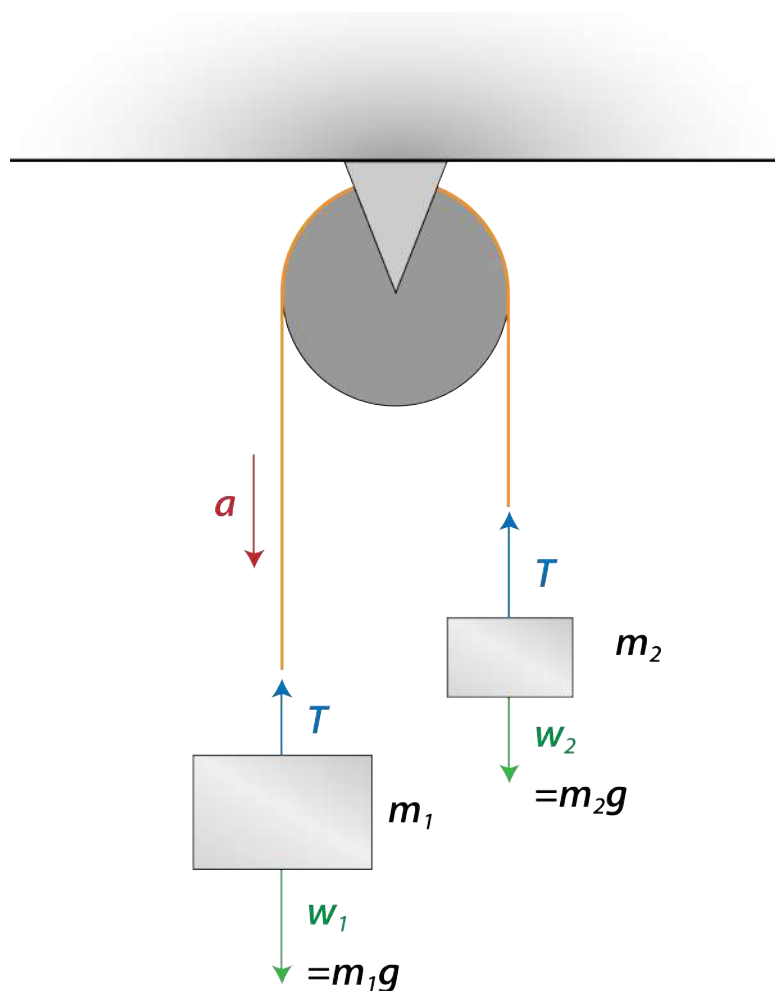
One possible check on the problem is to insure that: $mg_2 < T < mg_1$

$mg_{ax} = (2.0)(9.8) = 19.6\ N = 20\ N$ and $mg_{log} = (3.2)(9.8) = 31.36\ N = 31\ N$.

Therefore: $20 < 24 < 31$.

It is always wise to check your results for consistency.

FIGURE 4.11

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NnYG2cnRwgQ

Newton's Three Laws

1. Newton's First Law of Motion: An object remains at rest or in a state of uniform motion unless acted upon by an unbalanced force.
2. Newton's Second Law of Motion: The acceleration, a, that an object experiences is directly proportional to the net force acting on the object, $\sum F$ or (F_{net}), upon it and inversely proportional to its mass, m. $\sum F = F_{net} = Ma$
3. Newton's Third Law of Motion: Whenever two objects interact they must necessarily place equal and opposite forces upon each other. $F_{ab} = -F_{ba}$

Solving Problems Using Newton's Laws

Steps:

1. Read the problem carefully and draw a rough sketch of what is happening.
2. Draw a careful free-body diagram for each object in the problem.
3. Write an equation associated with each free-body diagram using Newton's Second Law.
4. Add other equations if necessary.

5. Solve the system of simultaneous equations.
6. Check your results to see if they are physically reasonable.

4.4 References

1. Image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
2. Courtesy of Johns Hopkins University Applied Physics Laboratory/Southwest Research Institute/NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:New_horizons_Pluto.jpg . Public Domain
3. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
5. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Christopher Auyeung, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Christopher Auyeung, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. From Emmanuel Muller-Baden, Ed. (1905). http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Atwoods_machine.png . Public Domain
11. Christopher Auyueng, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 5 Forces in Two Dimensions

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 5.1

Just as motion in two dimensions introduced vectors, forces in two dimensions also involve more involved issues. Besides vector foces, there is also the particular case of the forces involved in circular motion.

5.1 Normal Force and Friction Force

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to solve problems involving the normal force.
- Understand how to solve problems involving friction.

Vocabulary

- **friction:** A force that opposes two objects sliding against each other. Friction acts in a direction along the flat surface of an object.
- **normal force:** The force exerted by the ground or other object that prevents other objects from going through it.
- **vector components**

Introduction

Just as velocity and acceleration are vectors that can point in any direction, force is a vector that has both a magnitude and a direction.

The Normal Force

As discussed in one-dimensional forces, a **normal force** is the force exerted by the ground or other object that prevents other objects from going through it. In the **Figure** 5.2, a block that rests upon the ground is pulled in a diagonal direction up and to the right. Just as velocity and acceleration can be x and y components, we will need the same skills in resolving the force vector in the **Figure** 5.2.

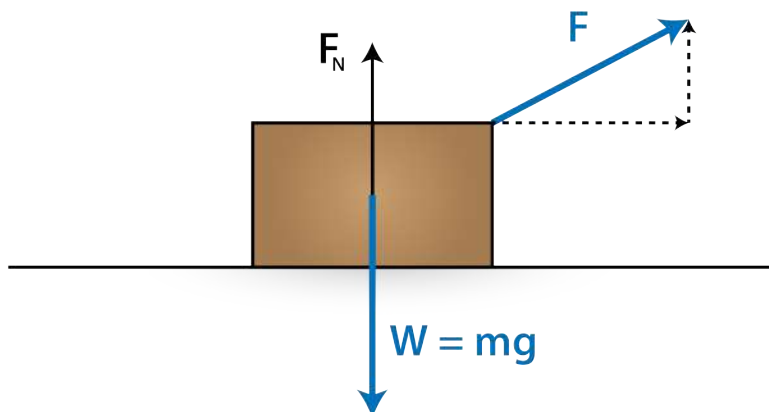



FIGURE 5.2

The applied force, $\vec{F}$, acts at an angle to the horizontal. Knowing the value of the angle is not necessary to understand the effect on the normal force. Recall that the normal force, $\vec{F}_N$, is the reaction force to the force that the block exerts on the ground. The applied force, $\vec{F}$, has two components. One component acts toward the right (the $x-$component) and the other component acts upward (the $y-$component). Consider the effect that the $y-$component has on the normal force. Since $y-$component of the force $\vec{F}$ acts in the upward direction, it effectively "eases" some of the block's weight off the ground. If the $y-$component were equal in magnitude to the weight of the block, the ground would not experience any force upon it due to the weight of the block. We can see that upward forces reduce the reaction force on the block. Thus, upward forces acting on the block reduce the normal force.

Check Your Understanding

In the **Figure** 5.2, the weight, mg, of the block is 100 N and the force, $\vec{F}$, has a $y-$component, F_y, of 25 N.

1. What normal force, $\vec{F}_N$, does the ground exert upon the block?

Answer: We know that gravity and the normal force act only in the $y-$direction, and that the block is not moving (velocity and acceleration zero). We can use Newton's Third Law, which can be applied to the net force in the $y-$direction and the acceleration in the $y-$direction.

$\sum_y F = F_N + F_y - mg = ma_y = 0.$

Therefore, $F_N = 100 - 25 = 75\ N$

Ilustrative Examples

1a. A 25.0 kg block experiences an applied force $\vec{F}$, of 100 N acting at an angle 30° above the horizontal. What is the normal force, F_N, on the block?

Answer: The first thing to do is to resolve the applied force into its x and y components:

$$F_x = F\cos\theta = F\cos 30^\circ = 100\cos 30^\circ = 86.6\ N$$
$$F_y = F\sin\theta = F\sin 30^\circ = 100\sin 30^\circ = 50.0\ N$$

Next, since we were given the mass of the block, we need to find its weight:

$W = mg = (25.0\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) = 250\text{ N}$

The question concerns the forces in the $y-$direction.

$\sum F_y = F_N + 50\text{N} - 250\text{N} = ma_y = 0$, therefore, $F_N = 200\text{ N}$

1b. What is the horizontal acceleration of the block in 1a?

Answer: This question concerns the forces in the $x-$direction.

$\sum F_x = 86.6\text{ N} = ma_x = (25.0\text{kg})a_x$, therefore, $a = 3.46\text{ m/s}^2$

Check Your Understanding

Had the applied force been directed as shown in this diagram, what effect do you think it would have had on the normal force? See diagram below.

(a) The normal force is greater than the weight of the block.

(b) The normal force is less than the weight of the block.

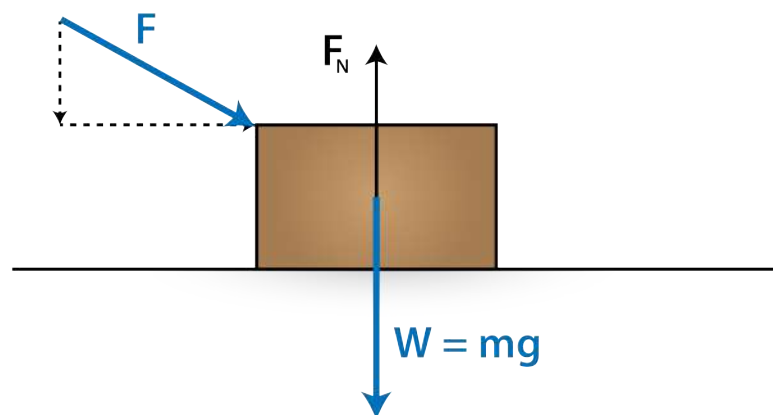



FIGURE 5.3

(c) The normal force equals the weight of the block.

Answer: The answer is A. See if you can convince yourself that the normal force in this situation would be 295 N if the values of the given quantities were the same as in the previous question, but with the direction of F as shown above.

Friction

Friction is a force that opposes two objects sliding against each other, and is a contact force like the normal force. While the normal force acts perpendicular to the flat surface, friction acts in a direction along the flat surface of an object.

We generally speak of two kinds of friction: kinetic friction and static friction. We will begin our discussion of friction with kinetic friction.

Kinetic Friction

"Kinetic" means *moving*. Kinetic friction means friction between two objects sliding against each other, such as: (1) sliding a book across a desktop and (2) your foot slipping on an icy pavement. The force from kinetic friction is abbreviated f_k. (Friction forces by convention use a lower case f.)

We know a force must exist on the book because it eventually stops moving. Newton's Second Law implies there must be some force acting on the book to slow it down and eventually bring it to rest. We call this force kinetic friction. Friction arises because no matter how smooth the surface of the book or the surface it is in contact with may look or feel, microscopically the two surfaces are rough. The smallest unevenness of the surfaces acts to impede the motion of the book. In fact, a force must be applied to the book just to overcome this "roughness" before it can be set into motion. The force that acts on the book before it is set into motion is called the static friction force, which we will discuss after dealing with kinetic friction.

Kinetic friction follows three basic rules:

1. The frictional force is independent of the relative velocity between the two surfaces for conventional speeds.
2. The frictional force is independent of contact surface area. If you slide a book lying flat or turn it on edge, the force of friction is the same.
3. The frictional force, f_k, is directly proportional to the normal force the two objects press against each other with, F_N, and also directly proportional to the roughness or stickiness of the surface, called its coefficient of friction. We write this as $f_k = \mu_k F_N$, where μ_k is the coefficient of friction. The symbol, μ, is the Greek letter

mu and pronounced "myoo" in English. The rougher or stickier the contact between two surfaces, the larger the value of μ_k. A frictionless surface would have $\mu_k = 0$.

As you well know, it's easier to push an object from one point to another than to carry it from one point to another. We usually just accept this observation as obvious. But why is this so?

This observation leads to the conclusion that the force of kinetic friction is usually less than the weight of the object to be moved. If not, why push when you could more easily lift?

The coefficients of friction, μ_k, are measured experimentally. A typical experimental set-up, which is often encountered in school physics laboratories, is to use a spring scale to pull increasing weights at a constant velocity, **Figure** 5.4. Since the velocity is constant, the force that the spring scale exerts is equal to the magnitude of the kinetic friction. As the weight that is pulled increases, so too does the minimum force required to set the weight in motion. But as noted above, we would expect the force reading on the spring scale to be smaller than the weight being pulled. The ratio of the force on the spring scale to the weight of the object is found to be constant, and is μ_k.

The Set-Up:

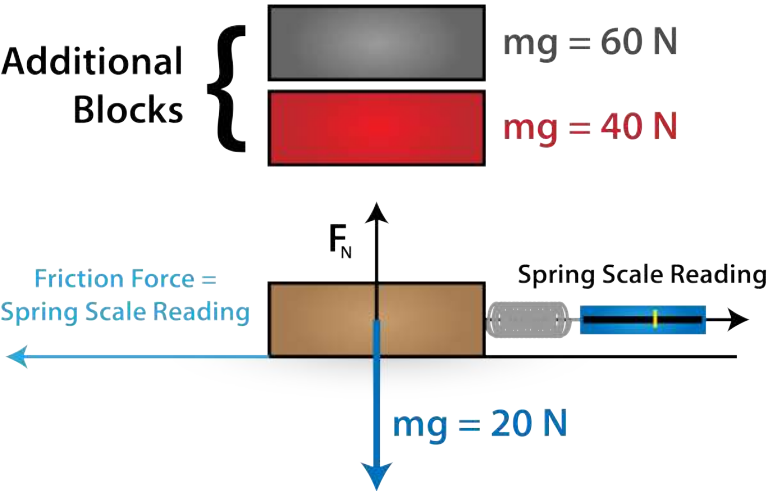



FIGURE 5.4

$mg = 20\ N$

TABLE 5.1:

Weight (N)	Spring reading = friction force (N)
20	10
40	20
60	30

If we graph kinetic friction force vs. weight, we would find a straight line with a slope of 0.5. The slope of this graph represents the coefficient of friction, μ_k. Notice that friction is measured in Newtons since it is a force. What are the units of μ_k?

Figure 5.5 shows two experiments measuring the coefficient of kinetic friction for brick and wood on polished oak.

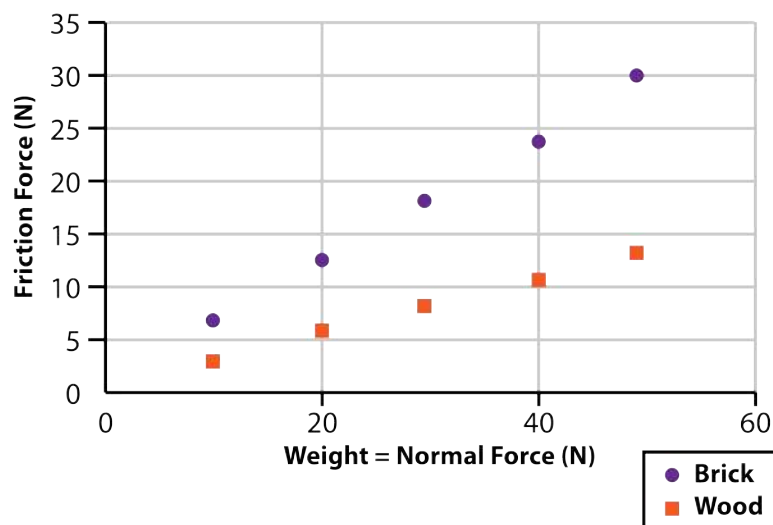



FIGURE 5.5

Check Your Understanding

1. What are the units of μ_k?

Answer: Since $\mu_k$is defined as the ratio $\frac{f_k}{F_N}$, it must be a "pure" number. It has no units since it is a ratio of force units: $\frac{N}{N}$which "cancel out."

2. It is typically stated that μ_k is less than 1 for common materials. There are exceptions, of course. Sliding rubber on rubber, for example, can result in $\mu_k > 1$. How can $\mu_k = 1$be interpreted if the motion takes place along a horizontal surface?

Answer: The force needed to slide the object is the same as the force needed to lift the object.

$f_k = (1)(F_N) = mg$

Since u_k is usually found to be less than 1, it substantiates the notion that it's easier to push (or drag) an object than lift it!

Illustrative Example 1

In **Figure** 5.6, a force F of 60 N acts at an angle of 30 degrees above the horizontal upon a block of weight 100 N moving it with constant velocity.

(a) Draw the Free Body Diagram (FBD) for the problem.

(b) Determine the friction force between the block and the surface.

(c) Determine the normal force on the block.

(d) Determine the coefficient of kinetic friction, μ_k.

Answers:

(a) See **Figure** 5.6. Notice how the friction force is represented in FBDs. It is drawn as an "interface" vector.

(b) Since the block moves at constant velocity $\sum_x F = 0$.

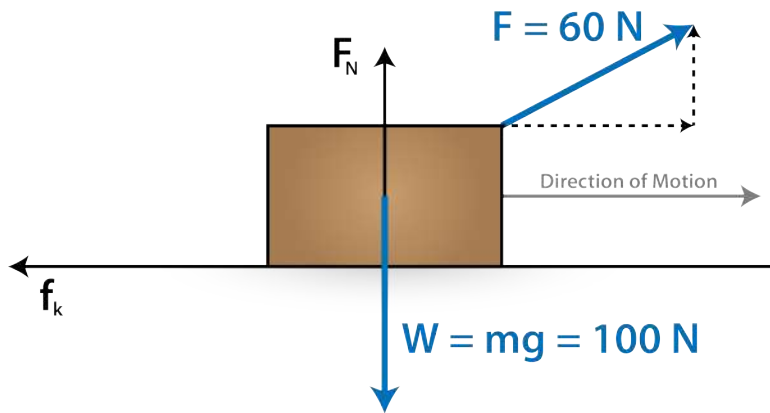



FIGURE 5.6

Therefore $\sum_x F = F\cos\theta - f_k = 0, 60\cos 30^\circ = f_k; f_k = 51.96 = 52\ N$.

(c) We assume the block has no vertical motion, therefore, $\sum_y F = 0$

$\sum_y F = F_N + F\sin\theta - mg = 0; F_N = mg - F\sin\theta = 100 - 60\sin 30^\circ = 70\ N$

(d) Since $f_k = \mu_k F_N; \mu_k = \frac{f_k}{F_N} = \frac{52}{70} = 0.74; \mu_k = 0.74$

Static Friction

The original meaning of "static" is "not moving". Static friction, f_s, exists when the contact surfaces do not slide relative to one another. Two examples would be: (1) a coin on an inclined surface that remains stationary and (2) exerting a force on a heavy couch that refuses to move.

For a given pair of surfaces, the coefficient of static friction μ_s is larger than the coefficient of kinetic friction, μ_k. Put simply, there is less friction when objects are in motion. We mentioned earlier in the section that regardless of how smooth the surfaces of two objects appear, at the microscopic level they are very rough. Atoms actually interact along the irregular contact areas between the surfaces forming electrical bonds. As soon as there is relative motion between the surfaces, the bonds begin to break. Heat due to friction continues to aid in breaking the bonds, making it easier to maintain motion. Kinetic friction is smaller than static friction; and $\mu_k < \mu_s$.

Consider **Figure** 5.7.

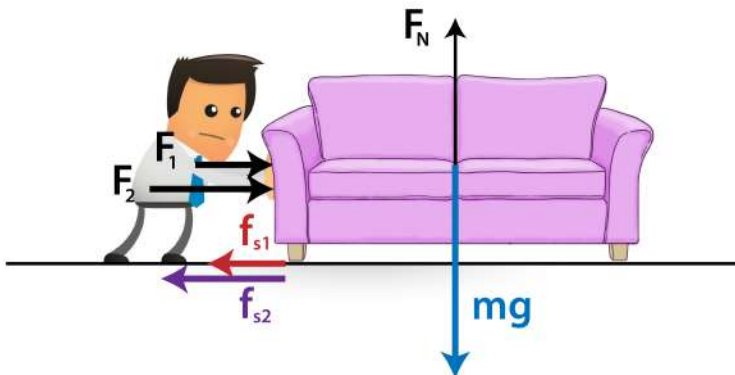



FIGURE 5.7

The man in the figure is trying to slide a heavy couch. He exerts a force F_1 which is insufficient to set the couch in motion. He then applies a greater force F_2 and the couch still does not move. In each case, since a force was placed upon the couch, and it remained stationary, an equal and opposite force must have acted upon the couch (f_{s1} and f_{s2}, respectively) such that the net force on the couch remained zero, and the couch remained at rest. We call this force static friction. But unlike kinetic friction, the static friction force is not confined to one value. For example, if F_1 was 100 N and F_2 was 150 N in **Figure** 5.7, then the static friction forces were $f_{s1} = 100\,N$ and $f_{s2} = 150\,N$, respectively. In fact, the static friction force can take on any value greater than or equal to zero up to the maximum force at which the couch is set into motion. At the point the couch is set into motion, static friction is gone and kinetic friction begins. Because static friction can take on any value up to the point of motion, we define static friction using an inequality: $f_s \leq \mu_s F_N$

The coefficient of static friction, μ_s, is found by determining the maximum force, $f_{s\,max}$, just before the instant an object is set into motion. We will generally drop the subscript on the static friction force when the context is clear.

Illustrative Example 2

The couch in **Figure** 5.7 just begins to move when a force of 175 N is applied to it.

(a) What is the maximum static friction force, f_s, between the couch and the floor?

(b) What is the coefficient of static friction, μ_s, if the couch weighs 1000 N?

Answers:

(a) Since the maximum force applied before the couch moves is 175 N, this must be the maximum static friction: $f_s = 175\,N$.

(b) $\mu_s = \frac{f_s}{F_N} = \frac{175N}{1000N} = 0.175$

Notice that the coefficient of static friction, μ_s, is a pure number (it has no units) just as the coefficient of kinetic friction, μ_k. This is because the coefficient of static friction, μ_s, depends upon the nature of the materials in contact and it is a ratio of two forces, as is the coefficient of kinetic friction, μ_k.

Kinetic and static friction oppose motion. Friction acts to oppose the motion caused by an applied force, thus opposing the relative motion between two surfaces.

If you attempt to accelerate your car and there is insufficient static friction between the tires and the road (for example, if you're on ice), the tires would spin and the car would gain no additional speed. Kinetic friction would oppose the motion of the tires, even on ice, and you'd "burn rubber." However, during those moments when your tires made contact with the asphalt, static friction would oppose the applied force your tires put upon the road and send the car forward. At the area of contact between the tire and the road, the tire pushes back on the pavement and the pavement pushes on the tire in the forward direction (Newton's Third Law in action!). The force of static friction is responsible for pushing the car forward. The force of static friction opposes the motion of the tire relative to the road, but has the same direction as the velocity of the car.

Check Your Understanding

1. How does the magnitude of the force of friction change as the angle of F increases from the horizontal?

Answer: As the angle increases, the normal force decreases so the friction force must also decrease. If the normal force goes to zero, so does the friction force.

2. If the man in the **Figure** 5.8 were taller and he applied the force of the same magnitude to the weight, how would the normal force on the weight change?

Answer: The taller he is, the more vertical the force, so the normal force would decrease.

3. A student pushes a calculator along a table with a horizontal force of 1 N, but the calculator remains motionless (

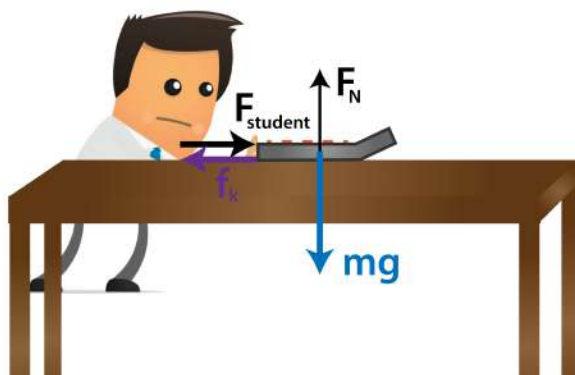
FIGURE 5.8

Figure 5.9).

(a) What is the magnitude of the static friction force on the calculator?

(b) Can the static friction force ever be smaller or larger than 1 N?

FIGURE 5.9

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/forces-and-motion

Answers:

2a. Since the calculator remains stationary, the force of static friction and the force that the student exerts must be equal and opposite.

2b. The static force can easily be smaller. Any force less than 1 N that the student exerts upon the calculator will be equal and opposite to the static friction force. The static friction can take on an infinite number of values below the threshold force that sets the calculator in motion.

The static friction force may possibly be larger than 1 N if the student applies a bit more force and the calculator remains motionless. The force at which the calculator just begins to move is the maximum force that static friction can provide.

5.2 Inclined Planes

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to analyze and work with forces on inclined planes
- Understand how to apply Newton's Second Law to the inclined plane problems

Vocabulary

- **inclined plane:** Any flat surface tilted somewhere between horizontal and vertical.

Introduction

An **inclined plane** is any flat surface tilted somewhere between horizontal and vertical, like a ramp, a flat side of a hill, or a playground slide. Problems using inclined planes shows us how to divide up vector forces including gravity, normal force, and friction.

Using Inclined Planes

For objects in motion along inclined planes, it is convenient to establish the $x-$axis along the plane. An object undergoing motion along an inclined plane has at least two forces acting upon it: the force of gravity and the normal force from the inclined plane.

As we will see, the normal force is always less than the weight when the object is placed on an inclined plane. To understand this, consider two extremes for an inclined plane:

1. A horizontal inclined plane ($\theta = 0$ degrees)
2. A vertical inclined plane ($\theta = 90$ degrees).

In the first case, the object is at rest because the net force on it is 0. In the second case the object has a net force on it of mg and therefore accelerates at g.

Figure 5.11 shows an example between the two extremes. An object of weight 100 N is sliding down a frictionless 30-degree inclined plane. We expect the acceleration of the object to be between 0 and g, and the normal force to be between 0 and 100 N.

Consider the following questions.

1a. What normal force does an inclined plane provide in supporting a 100 N crate accelerating down a 30-degree inclined plane?

1b. What acceleration, in the absence of friction, does the crate have along the inclined plane?

1c. What is the velocity of the crate after three seconds?

1d. What is the displacement of the crate after three seconds?

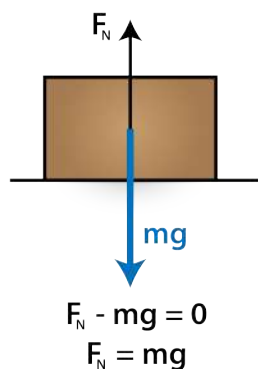
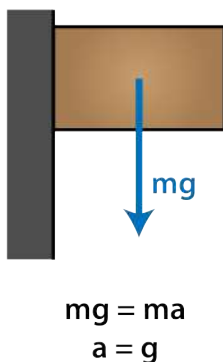
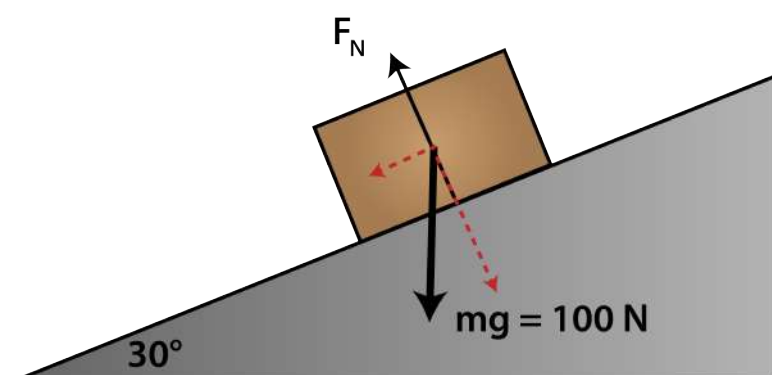



FIGURE 5.10

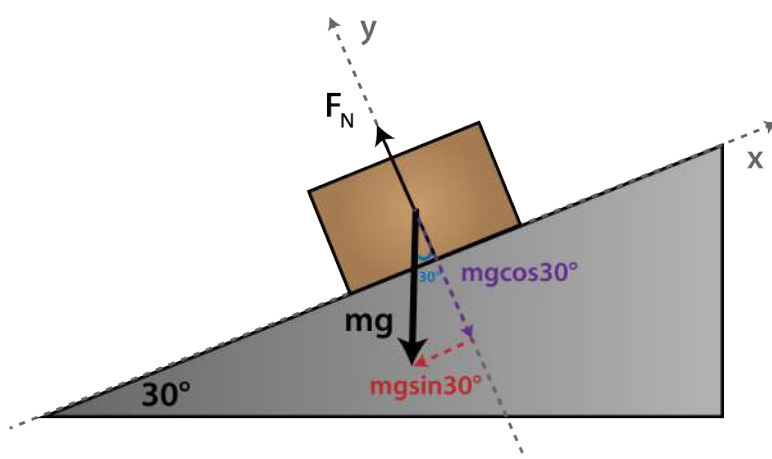



FIGURE 5.11

FIGURE 5.12

In order to answer these questions, we establish a coordinate system such that the $x-$axis is along the inclined plane and the $y-$axis is perpendicular to the plane. Next, we construct a Free-Body-Diagram (FBD) for the crate.

What to notice:

1. The components of mg in the diagram above are dashed.

2. The angle of the incline is the same as the angle between the $y-$axis and mg.
3. The $x-$component of mg is $mg\sin 30^\circ$ and the $y-$component of mg is $mg\cos 30^\circ$.

We use Newton's Second Law in the x and y directions in order to answer questions 1 and 2.

1. To determine the normal force that the inclined plane provides we use Newton's Second Law for the forces in the $y-$direction.

$$\begin{aligned}\sum F_y &= F_N - mg\cos\theta = 0\\ F_N &= mg\cos\theta\\ F_N &= 100\text{N}\cos 30^\circ\\ F_N &= 100\text{N}(0.87) = 87\text{ N}\end{aligned}$$

2. To determine the acceleration of the crate down the plane, we use Newton's Second Law for the forces in the $x-$direction.

$$\begin{aligned}\sum F_x &= mg\sin\theta = ma,\\ a &= g\sin\theta,\\ a &= (10\text{m/s}^2)\sin 30^\circ = 5.0\text{ m/s}^2\end{aligned}$$

3. To determine the velocity of the crate at $t = 3.0$ s we use the fact that $a = 5.0$ m/s^2.

Every second the crate gains another 4.9 m/s of velocity, so after 3.0 s: $(5.0\text{m/s}^2)(3.0\text{s}) = 15$ m/s

In other words, $v_f = at + v_i$, where the initial velocity is zero.

4. To determine the displacement of the crate at $t = 3.0\ s$, we can use either acceleration or average velocity. For the former, $a = 5.0$ m/s^2 and for the latter, $\frac{Vi+Vf}{2} = \frac{0+15}{2} = 7.5$ m/s,

Using the acceleration:

$$\begin{aligned}x_f &= \frac{1}{2}at^2 + v_it + x_i,\\ x_f &= \frac{1}{2}(5.0\text{m/s}^2)(3.0\text{s})^2 + 0 + 0 = 22.5\text{ m}\end{aligned}$$

Using the average velocity: $x = v$

avgt = (7.5m/s)(3.0s) = 22.5 m

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BlockOnAFrictionlessInclinedPlane/

Check Your Understanding

1. True or False: The direction of the normal force the inclined plane exerts on an object is opposite to the direction of mg.

Answer: False. The normal force is perpendicular to the inclined plane.

2. True or False: The weight of a crate is 200 N. Its weight on an inclined plane will be smaller than 200 N.

Answer: False. Its weight is always 200 N.

3. True or False: The weight of a crate is 200 N. The normal force exerted on it when placed on an inclined plane will be smaller than 200 N.

Answer: True. The normal force is $F_N = mg\cos\theta$. Since the cosine function decreases as the angle increases, the normal force decreases, as well.

3. What is the acceleration of an object sliding down a frictionless inclined plane?

Answer: $a = g\sin\theta$

Friction and Inclined Planes

There's a quick activity that can be used to show the effect of static friction on an inclined plane. You will need a book and a coin (see picture below). Place the coin on the top of the cover of the book and slowly begin to lift the cover. You'll notice that as you raise the cover the coin stays put. If the cover were a frictionless surface, the coin would slide down immediately as you began to lift the cover. Static friction keeps the coin stationary. However, there is a point at which the coin will begin to slide. There's a critical height (angle) at which the component of the force of gravity down the inclined cover exceeds the force of static friction. If you play with this set-up for a while, you'll notice that once the coin begins to slide you can slightly lower the cover and the coin continues sliding, even though the cover is raised to a less extent than what was needed to have the coin begin its slide. This is another reminder that static friction tends to be greater than kinetic friction. We like to quantity how static and kinetic friction affect objects on inclined planes. We will take the case of static friction first.

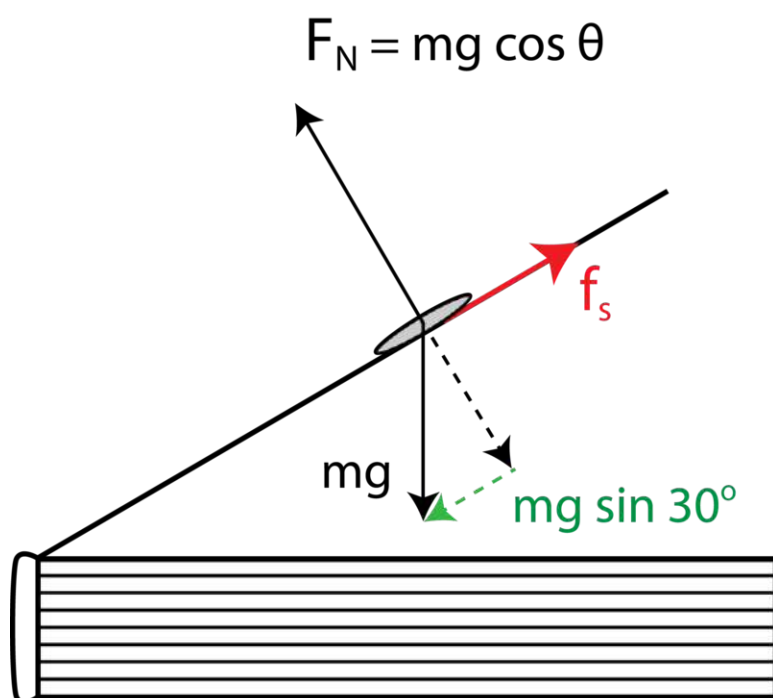



FIGURE 5.13

Figure 5.13 shows the coin at the point where it is just about to slide. Up to this point static friction, f_s, is equal and opposite to the component of force due to gravity down the inclined plane, $mg\sin\theta$. We can use Newton's Second Law to solve for the coefficient of static friction μ_s.

$$\sum_x F = f_s - mg\sin\theta = 0, \ replacing\ f_s\ with\ \mu_s F_N,$$
$$\mu_s F_N * mg\sin\theta = 0, \ replacing\ F_N\ with\ mg\cos\theta,$$
$$\mu_s(mg\cos\theta) - mg\sin\theta = 0,$$
$$\mu_s = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta},$$
$$\mu_s = \tan\theta$$

Check Your Understanding

1. A coin rests on a 30-degree inclined plane. It is determined that if the plane's angle is increased further, the coin will slide down the plane. What is the coefficient of static friction between the coin and the plane?

Answer: Since $\mu_s = \tan\theta, \mu_s = \tan 30^\circ = 0.577, \mu_s = 0.58$

2. True or False: Since the friction force is dependent upon the normal force, the coefficient of friction must have units of newtons.

Answer: False. As you can see from the inclined plane problem, the coefficient of friction is dependent only upon the tangent of the angle. Recall that the definition of μ_s is the ratio of the friction force to the normal force and therefore as no units (it is a pure number).

If we exceed the maximum angle at which the static friction can hold the coin, the coin will slide and kinetic friction will act upon the coin. We consider this situation next. **Figure** 5.14 is almost identical to **Figure** 5.13. The only differences are that the coin is represented as a dot and the kinetic friction vector has been drawn a bit smaller than the static friction vector.

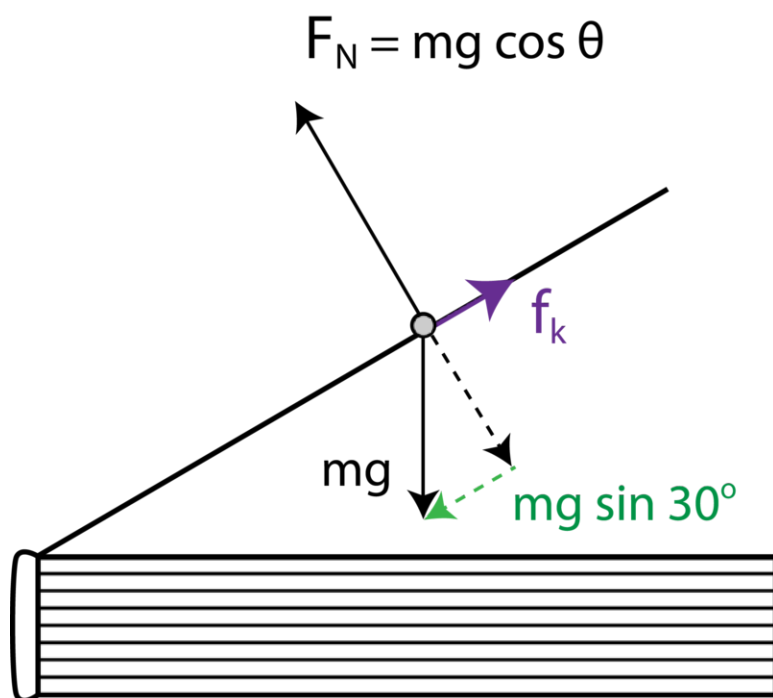



FIGURE 5.14

In this case, the coin will accelerate down the book cover. We wish to determine the acceleration. We choose the

direction down the book cover as positive. Using Newton's Second Law:

$$\Sigma F_x = mg\sin\theta - f_k = ma_x$$

, replacing f_k with

$$\mu_k F_N$$

$$mg\sin\theta - \mu_k F_N = ma_x$$

, replacing F_N with

$$mg\cos\theta$$

$$mg\sin\theta - \mu_k(mg\cos\theta) = ma_x$$

$$a_x = g(\sin\theta - \mu_k\cos\theta)$$

Check Your Understanding

1. A block slides down a 25-degree incline with a constant velocity. What is the coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and the incline?

Answer: $\mu_k = 0.466 = 0.47$. Hint: Consider the result of the last example.

2a. A skier of mass 60 kg skies down a slope of 18 degrees with an acceleration of 2.1 m/s^2. What is the force of friction on the skis?

Answer:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum F &= mg\sin\theta - f_k = ma \\ f_k &= mg\sin\theta - ma \rightarrow (60)(9.8)\sin 18^\circ - (60)(2.1) \\ f_k &= 55.7 = 56\ N\end{aligned}$$

2b. What is μ_k?

Answer: $f_k = \mu_k F_N = \mu_k(60)(9.8)\cos 18^\circ = 55.7\ N$ and therefore $\mu_k = 0.099 = 0.10$

2c. The skier is hurt and a member of a rescue team pulls the skier up the slope at a constant velocity.

(i) What force must he exert?

(ii) Of this force, what percentage is the skier's weight?

Answers:

(i) $F = (60)(9.8)\sin 18^\circ + 0.099(60)(9.8)\cos 18^\circ = 237 = 240\ N$

(ii) $W = mg = (60)(9.8) = 588 = 590\ N \rightarrow ratio = \frac{F}{W} = \frac{237}{588} = 0.403 = 40\%$

2d. What is one benefit of using an inclined plane to lift heavy objects?

Answer: A smaller force is usually required to move objects up the plane than lifting against gravity.

An Incline Plane-Pulley System

Illustrative Example

How do we determine the acceleration and the tension between two masses when one of the masses is on the inclined plane and the other hangs over the plane, as in **Figure** 5.15?

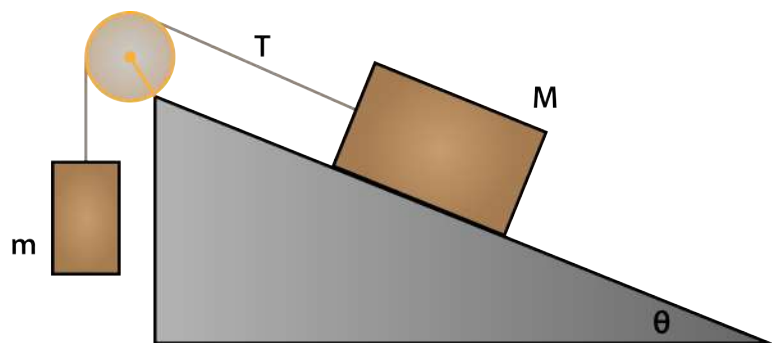



FIGURE 5.15

Again, we call on Newton's Second Law in order to solve the system. Let's assume there is no friction in the system and the rope between the masses does not stretch and has negligible mass. The values for the masses and the angle of the incline are given below.

$M = 40.0\ kg$

$m = 30.0\ kg$

$\theta = 25.0^\circ$

Find, (A) the acceleration of the system and (B) the tension in the rope.

Finding the acceleration of the system

We always start by drawing FBDs and resolving vectors.

1. Draw an FBD for each mass.

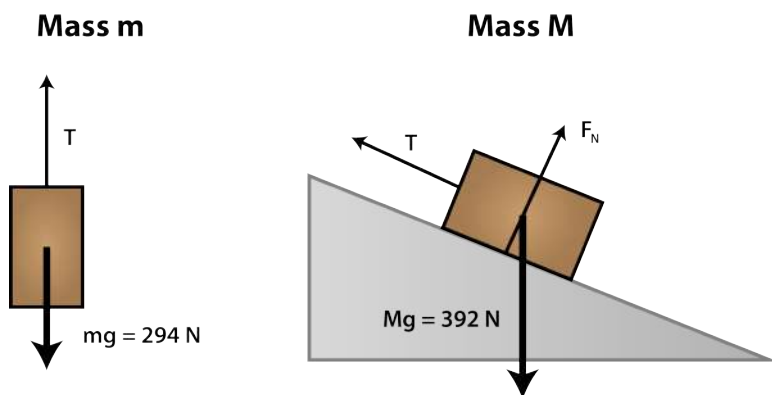



FIGURE 5.16

2. Resolve any vectors that are not along the x or y axes.

The $x-$component of Mg: $Mg \sin\theta$

The $y-$component of Mg: $Mg\cos\theta$

Newton's Second Law equation for the mass m:

We assume that mg moves down and therefore $mg > T$. (This is an arbitrary choice.)

$\sum_m F = mg - T = ma; \rightarrow \sum_m F = (30\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) - T = 30a$

Newton's Second Law equation for M

Since m moves down, M moves up the incline. Therefore $T > Mg$.

$\sum_M F = T - Mg\sin\theta = Ma \rightarrow \sum_M F = T - (40)(9.8)\sin 25^\circ = 40a$

Solving the two equations above simultaneously for the acceleration gives:

$(30)(9.8) - T + T - (40)(9.8)\sin 25^\circ = 70a; a = 1.83 = 1.8\ m/s^2$

Had the answer come out negative it would have indicated that we had chosen the direction of the acceleration incorrectly. It is also helpful to note that the tensions, T and $-T$, add to zero. The tensions T and $-T$ are a Newton's Third Law (N3L) pair of forces. Such a pair cannot act on the same object. The object in this case is the system. From the point of view of the system, a Newton's Third Law pair of forces is considered internal to the system. Internal forces must always add to zero when a simultaneous set of Newton's Second Law equations are solved. The only forces remaining (on the left side of the equation) are the "external" forces acting on the system.

Finding the tension in the rope

Since the acceleration is known, we can substitute its value in either the Newton's Second Law equation for the mass m or the mass M. Using the equation for the mass m is a bit simpler so:

$T = (30)(9.8) - (30)(1.83) = 239.1 = 240\ N$

As a check for reasonableness we can determine if the tension is greater than $Mg\sin\theta$ and less than mg. Try it and see!

Check Your Understanding

1. True or False: In order for a hanging mass M_1 to move a mass M_2 up along an inclined plane, M_1 must be greater than M_2.

Answer: False. As we saw in the last problem, m was smaller than M and M still moved up the plane. There is, however, a "special" value of the mass $m$which can keep the system stationary or have the system move up or down the plane with constant velocity. We consider this situation in question 2.

2. For a given mass M, what value of the mass m would keep the system at rest or moving with a constant velocity?

Answer: We go back to the equations for m and M in the last problem and assume the acceleration is zero. Simplifying, we have:

$mg - Mg\sin\theta = 0$

Thus $m = M\sin\theta$ is the condition for which the system remains at rest or moves with constant velocity. A mass m of 16.9 kg would satisfy this condition in the last problem. (Can you see why?)

A Pulley System with Friction along the Inclined Plane

Illustrative Example

Refer back to **Figure** 5.16. Assume that friction exists between the mass $M = 40\ kg$ and the plane. A diagram of this situation is identical to **Figure** 5.16 except that friction is included opposing the motion of M. (See **Figure** 5.16).

Let's find the acceleration of the system and the tension in the rope for this problem. We'll assume that the mass $m = 30\ kg$ accelerates down the plane.

Since friction is directed along the plane, it has only an $x-$component, directed opposite the tension T and in the same direction as $Mg\sin\theta$. The Newton's Second Law equation for the hanging mass m remains the same. Let's assume that $\mu_k = 0.20$ and keep all other values the same as in the last problem.

a. Find the acceleration of the system.

Newton's Second Law m:

$$\sum_m F = (30)(9.8) - T = 30a\ Equation\ m$$

NSL M:

$$\begin{aligned}&\sum_M F = T - (40)(9.8)\sin 25^\circ - f_k = 40a,\ replacing f_k\ with\ \mu_k F_N,\\&T - (40)(9.8)\sin 25^\circ - \mu_k F_N = 40a,\ replacing\ F_N\ with\ mg\cos\theta,\\&T - (40)(9.8)\sin 25^\circ - 0.20(40)(9.8)\cos 25^\circ = 40a\ Equation\ M\end{aligned}$$

Solving Equations m and M simultaneously we find, $a = 0.818 = 0.82\ m/s^2$.

b. Find the tension.

Using Equation m we have $T = 269 = 270\ N$

Check Your Understanding

In the absence of friction, if $m = M\sin\theta$, the system may either move with constant velocity or remain stationary. If kinetic friction is present, is it possible for the system to move with constant velocity if $m \neq M\sin\theta$?

Answer: Yes. Try solving the equations with acceleration equal to zero, but keep μ_k as an unknown. The value that you find for μ_k will give the coefficient of friction necessary to keep the system moving with constant velocity while m and M remain 30 kg and 40 kg, respectively. If you've done the work correctly, you should find $\mu_k = 0.47$.

5.3 Circular Motion

Objectives

Students will learn that in circular motion there is always an acceleration (and hence a force) that points to the center of the circle defined by the objects motion. This force changes the direction of the velocity vector of the object but not the speed. Students will also learn how to calculate that speed using the period of motion and the distance of its path (circumference of the circle it traces out).

Vocabulary

- **centripetal acceleration:** The inward acceleration that keeps an object in circular motion.
- **centripetal force:** The inward force that keeps an object in circular motion.

Introduction

A satellite orbits around the Earth in **Figure** 5.17. A car travels around a curve in **Figure** 5.18. All of these objects are engaged in circular motion. Let us consider the satellite first. The satellite is held in place by the Earth's gravity. The gravity holds the satellite in its orbit. In what direction does this force act? If the earth were "magically" gone, the satellite would fly off tangent to its motion at the instant gravity no longer held it. The force preventing this from happening must keep pulling the satellite toward the center of the circle to maintain circular motion.

FIGURE 5.17

What is the force in **Figure** 5.18 that prevents the car from skidding off the road? If you guessed "the friction between the tires and the road" you'd be correct. But is it static or kinetic friction? Unless the tires skid, there can be no kinetic friction. It is static friction that prevents the tires from skidding, just as it is static friction that permits you to walk without slipping. In **Figure** 5.19, you can see the foot of a person who walks toward the right

FIGURE 5.18

by pushing their foot backward with a horizontal component of force F. They move forward because the ground exerts a horizontal component force f_s in the opposite direction. (Note that vertical forces are ignored.) The force the ground exerts on the person's foot is a static friction force. Because the foot does not slide, we know that F and f_s are equal opposed forces. We can easily see which direction the static friction force must act when we walk, but what about a car performing circular motion? In what direction does the static friction act on the car in **Figure** 5.18?

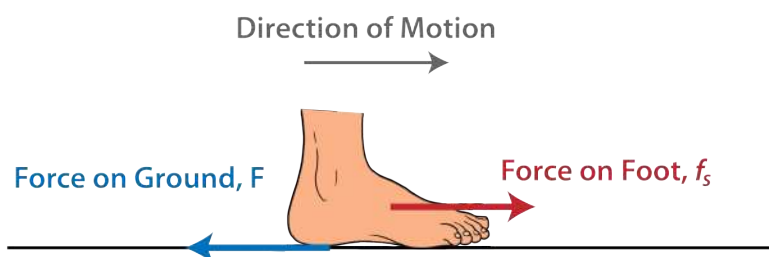



FIGURE 5.19

Figure 5.20 shows the top view of a car moving around a circular track with a constant speed. Since acceleration is defined as $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$, you may be tempted to say that since the speed remains constant, $\Delta v = 0$, the acceleration must also be zero. But that conclusion would be incorrect because Δv represents a change in velocity, not a change in speed. The velocity of the car is not constant since it is continuously changing its direction. How then do we find the acceleration of the car?

Figure 5.20 shows the instantaneous velocity vectors for the car in two different positions a very small time apart.

Notice that the vector ΔV points toward the center of the circle. (Recall that ΔV can be thought of as the sum of the vectors $V_2 + (-V_1)$.) The direction of the acceleration points in the direction of ΔV since acceleration is defined as $a = \frac{\Delta \vec{v}}{\Delta t}$. This is reasonable, since if there were no force directed toward the center of the circle, the car would move off tangent to the circle.

We call the inward force that keeps an object in circular motion a "center seeking", or **centripetal** force and the acceleration, centripetal acceleration. The centripetal acceleration is often denoted as a_c In order to find the correct expression for the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration we'll need to use a little geometric reasoning. **Figure**

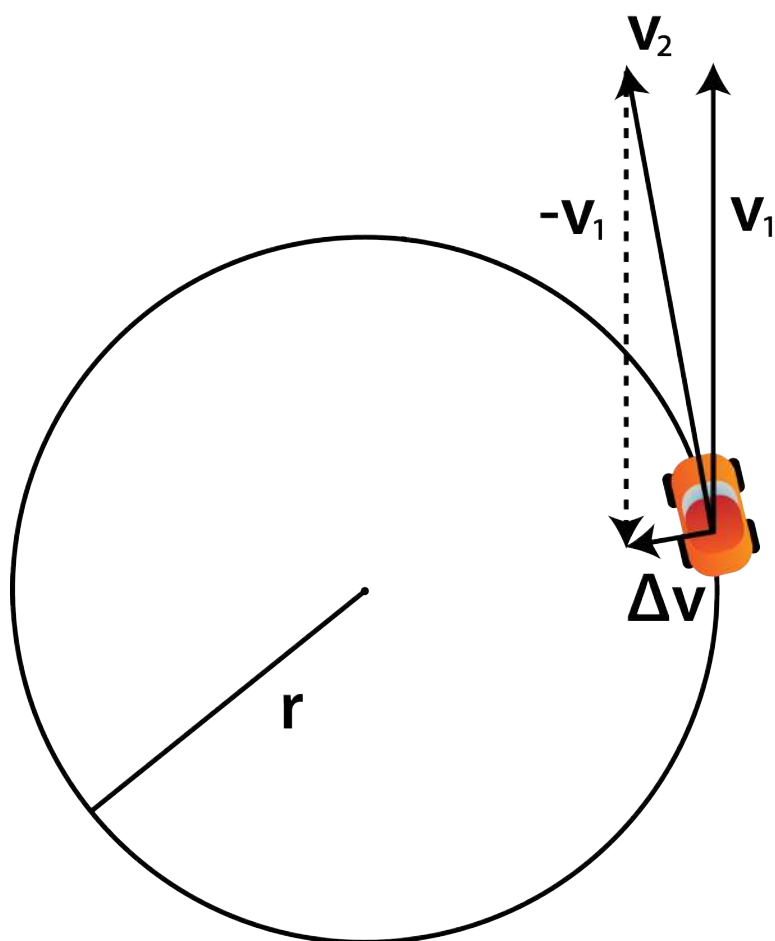



FIGURE 5.20

5.21 show two "almost" similar triangles.

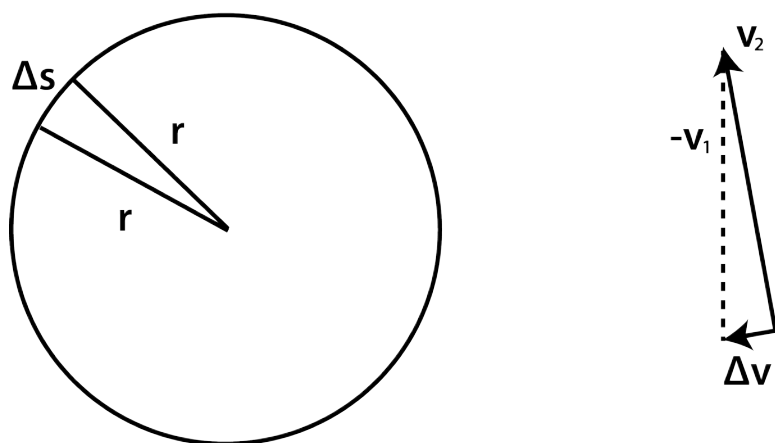



FIGURE 5.21

The magnitudes of $-V_1$ and V_2 are equal, and the change in location of the car occurs over a very small increment in time, Δt. The velocities are tangent to the circle and therefore perpendicular to the radius of the circle. As such, the "radius" triangle and the "velocity" triangle are approximately similar (see the **Figure** 5.21). We construct an

approximate ratio between the two triangles by assuming that during the time Δt, the car has traveled a distance Δs along the circle. The ratio below is constructed in order to determine the acceleration.

$\frac{\Delta s}{r} \doteq \frac{\Delta v}{v}$, which leads to, $v\Delta s \doteq r\Delta v$.

Dividing both sides of the equation by Δt, we have: $v\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t} \doteq r\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$.

But $\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta t}$ is the speed v of the car and $\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t}$ is the acceleration of the car.

If we allow the time to become infinitesimally small, then the approximation becomes exact and we have:$v^2 = ra, a = \frac{v^2}{r}$. Thus, the magnitude of the centripetal acceleration for an object moving with constant speed in circular motion is $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}$, and its direction is toward the center of the circle.

Illustrative Examples using Centripetal Acceleration and Force

Example 1A: A 1000 kg car moves with a constant speed 13.0 m/s around a flat circular track of radius 40.0 m. What is the magnitude and direction of the centripetal acceleration?

Answer: The magnitude of the car's acceleration is $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r} = \frac{132}{40} = 4.225 = 4.23\ m/s^2$ and the direction of its acceleration is toward the center of the track.

Example 1b: Determine the force of static friction that acts upon the car in **Figure** 5.22.

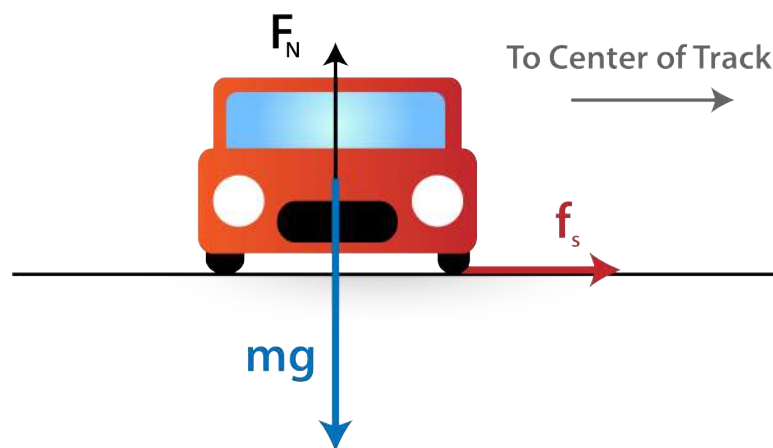



FIGURE 5.22

Answer:

Using Newton's Second Law: $\sum F = f_s = ma = 1000(4.225) = 4225 = 4230\ N$

Example 1c: Determine the minimum necessary coefficient of static friction between the tires and the road.

Answer:

$\sum_y F = F_N - Mg = 0, F_N = Mg$ but $f_s = \mu_s F_N = ma$

Thus, $\mu_s Mg = Ma, \mu_s g = a, \mu_s = \frac{a}{g} = \frac{4.225}{9.8} = 0.431 = 0.43$

Check Your Understanding

True or False?

1. Kinetic friction is responsible for the traction (friction) between the tires and the road.

Answer: False. As long as the car does not skid, there is no relative motion between the instantaneous contact area of the tire and the road.

2. True or False? The force of static friction upon an object can vary.

Answer: True. In attempting to move an object, a range of forces of different magnitudes can be applied until the maximum static friction between the object and the surface it rests upon is overcome and the object is set into motion. Recall that the magnitude of static friction is represented by the inequality: $f_s \leq \mu_s F_N$

3. The greater the mass of the car, the greater the coefficient of friction.

Answer: False. The coefficient of friction is independent of the mass of an object. Recall that it is the ratio of the friction force to the normal force. As such, it is a pure number dependent only upon the nature of the materials in contact with each other- in this case rubber and asphalt.

5.4 Forces in Translational Equilibrium

Objective

The student will:

- Understand how to apply Newton's Second Law under equilibrium conditions in two dimensions.

Vocabulary

- **static equilibrium:** Objects in static equilibrium are motionless.

Introduction

FIGURE 5.23

There are many objects we do not want to see in motion. In the **Figure** 5.23, the mountain climbers want their ropes to keep them from moving downward. We construct buildings and bridges to be as motionless as possible. We want the acceleration (and velocity) of these objects to be zero. For an object to be in **static equilibrium** (that is, motionless) the right-hand side of Newton's Second Law, $\sum F = ma$, must be zero. Thus, $\sum F = 0$. This equation is simple enough when an object is held with a single support. In an earlier example, we depicted Joe Loose hanging by a single rope (**Figure** 5.24). Joe's goal was to remain hanging in equilibrium (just like the climbers in the photograph). The force of gravity pulling Joe down was exactly balanced by the tension in the rope that supported him.

But Joe won't be hanging for very long, will he? You can see that the rope is slowly fraying against the mountainside (recall the original problem). Soon it will snap. But Joe's in luck, because a rescue team has come to his aid. They arrive just in time to secure two more ropes to the mountain side and toss Joe the slack to tie around his waist before his rope snaps! Joe is saved. But does Joe thank the rescue team like any sane person would? No. Instead, still in midair, he pulls out a pad and pencil from his back pocket in order to analyze the forces acting on him (**Figure** 5.25).

FIGURE 5.24

Static Equilibrium—Saving Joe

In order for Joe to remain in equilibrium, he must not move in the $x-$ or $y-$directions. This means that the sum of all forces in the $x-$direction must add to zero. And the sum of all forces in the $y-$direction must add to zero.

The procedure for solving problems with forces in equilibrium is as follows:

1. Place **Figure** 5.25 in a coordinate plane with the object at the origin.
2. Resolve the tension vectors T_1 and T_2 into their $x-$ and $y-$components.
3. Use Newton's Second Law: $\sum F_x = 0$ and $\sum F_y = 0$.

In order to solve this problem, we'll need more information, including the angles that the ropes make with the vertical. The information is provided below, along with **Figure** 5.26.

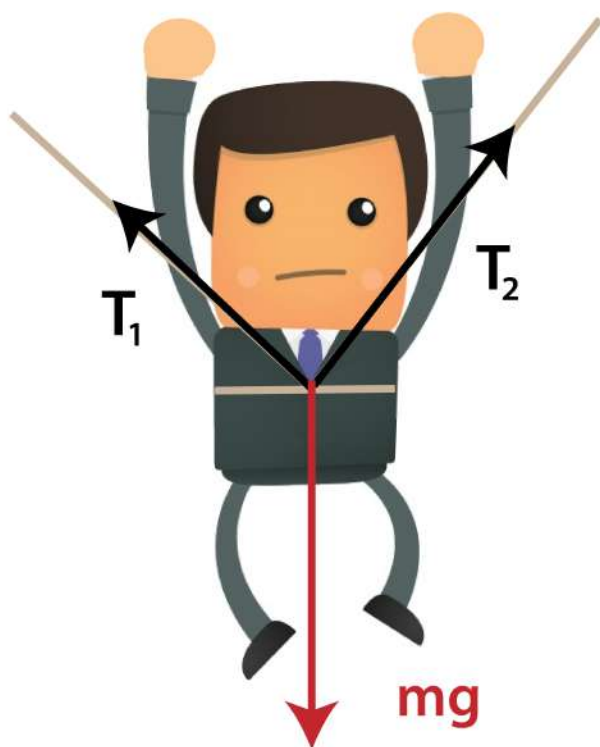



FIGURE 5.25

$\theta_1 = 45^\circ$

$\theta_2 = 30^\circ$

$Mg = 800\ N$

Find T_1 and T_2

The solution requires solving a set of simultaneous equations.

First, we find the components of vectors T_1 and T_2.

$$T_{1x} = T_1 \sin 45^\circ \text{ and } T_{1y} = T_1 \cos 45^\circ$$
$$T_{2x} = T_2 \sin 30^\circ \text{ and } T_{2y} = T_2 \cos 30^\circ$$

Next we apply Newton's Second Law.

$$\sum F_x : T_2 \sin 30^\circ - T_1 \sin 45^\circ = 0$$
$$\sum F_y : T_2 \cos 30^\circ - T_1 \cos 45^\circ = 800$$

The first equation can be quickly simplified to give $T_2 = \sqrt{2}T_1$. T_2 is then substituted in the second equation and T_1 is found. Once T_1 is found, T_2 can easily be computed using $T_2 = \sqrt{2}T_1$.

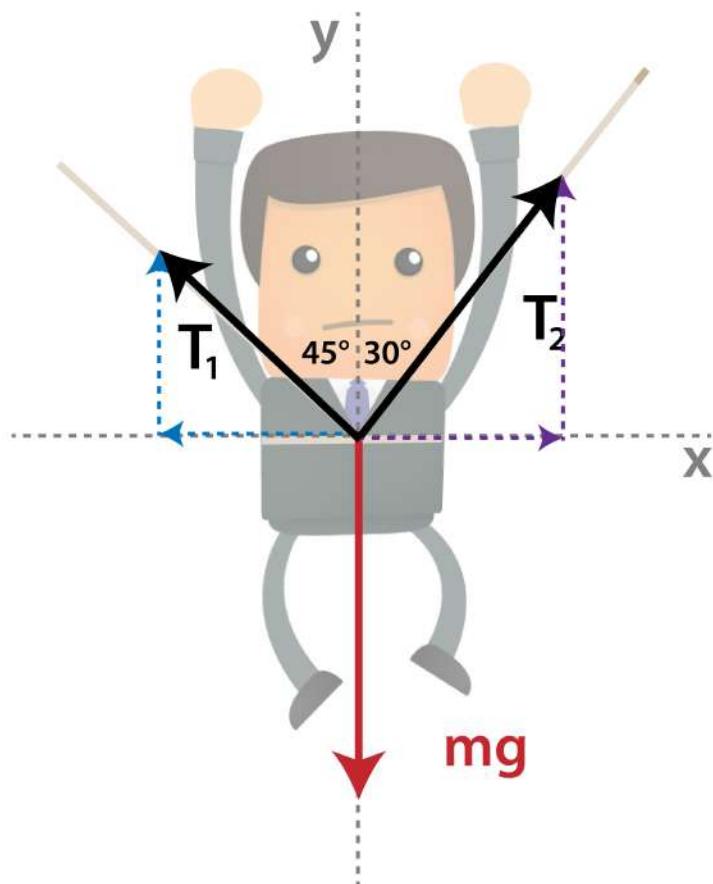



FIGURE 5.26

$$T_1 = 414.11 = 414 = 410\ N$$
$$T_2 = 585.56 = 586 = 590\ N$$

Check your understanding

What general equation can be written for $\sum_y F$ if the angles in **Figure** 5.26 are equal?

Answer: The sum of the $y-$components is responsible for supporting the weight. If the angles are equal, the ropes have equal tension. Therefore, the tension in the $y-$direction of either rope can quickly be found since:

$$\sum_y F = 2T_y = mg \rightarrow T_y = \frac{mg}{2}$$

1. The normal force depends upon many different forces.
2. Maximum static friction is greater than kinetic friction.
3. Friction acts to oppose the motion that would be caused by an applied force thus opposing the relative motion between two surfaces. When an object slides along a surface, friction acts opposite to its motion. When you

walk or a car tire turns, the force of friction opposes the direction your foot or the tire attempts to move. In the latter cases it is the static friction that is responsible for moving you and the car forward.

4. Do not confuse the coefficient of friction with the force of friction. The coefficient of friction is not a force!
5. In solving problems on inclined planes, we usually place the $x-$axis along the plane so the acceleration is coincident with the $x-$axis.
6. A sliding object on a frictionless inclined plane has acceleration $a = g\sin\theta$ and is subject to a normal force $F_N = mg\cos\theta$.
7. The magnitude of the centripetal acceleration is $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}$ and its direction is toward the center of the circle.
8. In solving static problems, it is useful to set up a coordinate system such that the object in equilibrium is at the origin and then resolve all forces into components. Use $\sum F_x = 0$ and $\sum F_y = 0$ to generate two equations with two unknowns.

5.5 References

1. Daniel Oines. http://www.flickr.com/photos/dno1967b/5523824150/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Christopher Auyeung, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Christopher Auyueng, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Christopher Auyeung, Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou and Laura Guerin. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
8. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
14. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Britt Griswold. http://www.flickr.com/photos/gsfc/10860068536/ . CC BY 2.0
18. Tim White (Flickr: TWHITE87). http://www.flickr.com/photos/tjwhite87/8102931300/ . CC-BY 2.0
19. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Image copyright Greg Epperson, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com .
24. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
25. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
26. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com

Work and Energy

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 6.1

Energy is a common concept in the modern world. A key to understanding energy in detail is how different kinds of energy transform from one to the other, such as circular motion being changed into electrical power.

6.1 Work

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how work is defined in physics
- Be able to solve problems involving work

Vocabulary

- **scalar quantity**
- **work:** Force applied over a distance.

Introduction

In the language of physics, **work** is force applied over a distance. Note that the force may be slowing the object down, speeding it up, or maintaining its velocity — any number of things. It is an amount equal to the distance the object moves multiplied by the component of force in that direction. For example, suppose you climb a ladder. On average, the force you apply upwards to climb a ladder is equal to your weight. The total work done then is your weight, mg, multiplied by the height of the ladder, h, giving the equation: $W = mgh$.

This work is important because it is one way of measuring **energy**. By climbing the ladder, you have developed energy that can be used for other purposes.

Units of Work: The Joule

The SI unit for work and energy is the Joule. This is pronounced like "jewel", and is named after an English physicist, James Joule (1818-1889). James Joule was a small-town brewer whose pioneering discoveries about work, energy, and heat led to the metric standard unit of work being named in his honor. Joule discovered the relationship between heat and mechanical work.

One Joule is defined as one Newton of work applied through one meter of distance. It is abbreviated as a capital J.

$1\text{J} = 1\text{N} \times 1\text{m}$

Vector Definition

Work can also be done where the force is applied in a different direction to the displacement. If an object has traveled a distance d under force $\vec{F}$, the work done on it will be equal to d multiplied by the component of $\vec{F}$ along the object's path. The component of the force on the path will be $Fd\cos\theta$, where θ is the angle between the direction of the force and the direction of the object's movement. Consider three special cases: 1. A force is pushing the object in the direction that it is going, so

$\theta = 0°; \cos 0° = 1$ and that force is said to be doing positive work upon the object. 2. The force is pushing opposite the object's motion, so

$\theta = 180°; \cos 180° = -1$ and the force is said to be doing negative work upon the object. 3. The force is perpendicular to the object, making it turn but not speed up or slow down, so

$\theta = 90°; \cos 90° = 0$ and no work is done upon the object.

In general, for any angle [0, 90) between the force and displacement, positive work is done upon the object. For any angle (90, 180] between the force and displacement, negative work is done upon the object.

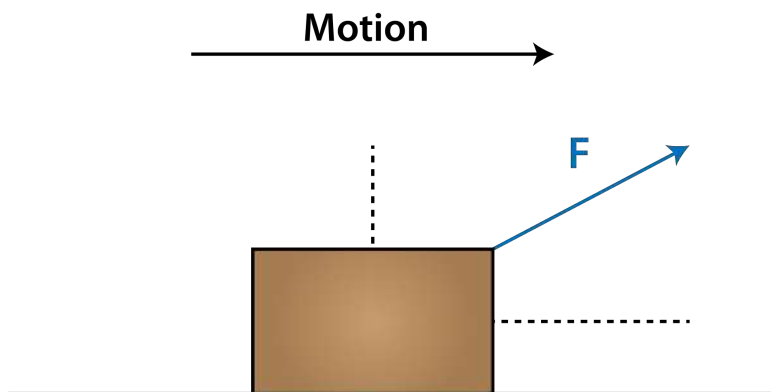



FIGURE 6.2
Positive work is done when is in the range [0, 90) with the respect to the displacement.

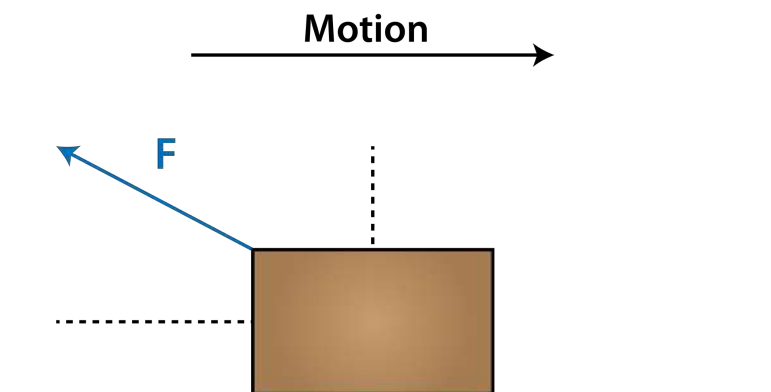



FIGURE 6.3
Negative work is done when is in the range (90, 180] with respect to the displacement.

Computing Work

Illustrative Example 6.1

In **Figure** 6.5 a man is pushing a crate with a force of 500 N over a distance of 3.0 meters.

How much work does the man do on the crate?

$W = (F \cos\theta)x$, where the angle θ between F and x is $0°$.

Answer: $W = (500\text{N})(3\text{m}) = 1500\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$.

One thing we immediately see from this exercise is the units of work.

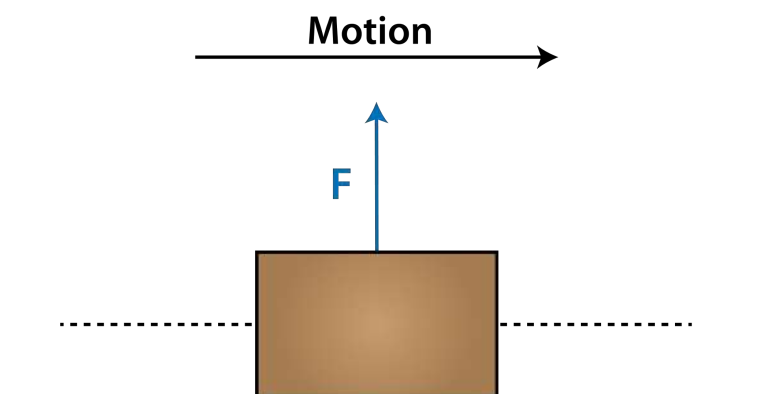



FIGURE 6.4
No work is done upon the object when acts perpendicular to the displacement of the object.

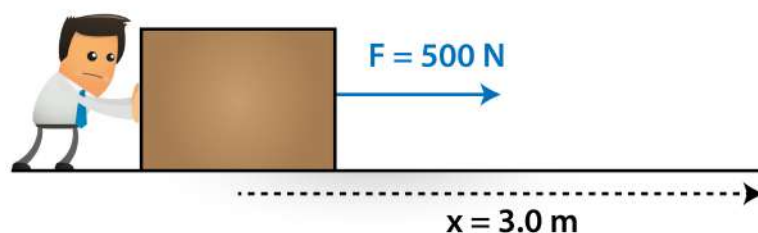



FIGURE 6.5

A N*m is the same as $\frac{kg \cdot m^2}{s^2}$ which is given the name "Joule," abbreviated "J."

Therefore, the man in **Figure** 6.5 has done 1500 J of work on the crate.

The Joule takes its name from the 19^{th}-century British physicist James Prescott Joule (1818-1889), which we will have more to say about in Chapter 14 (Thermodynamics).

Illustrative Example 6.1.3

The weightlifter in **Figure** 6.6 is about to lift a barbell of mass 120 kg through a height of 0.85 m. How much work will he do on the barbell?

Answer: $W = Fx = (mg)x = (120)(9.8)(0.85) = 999.6 = 1000\ J$

Illustrative Example 6.1.4

The man in **Figure** 6.7 is exerting a force of 300 N at angle of 25 degrees to the floor in order to pull the tire a distance of 3.25 m. How much work is he doing on the tire?

Answer: Let's sketch **Figure** 6.7 in order to analyze the problem.

FIGURE 6.6

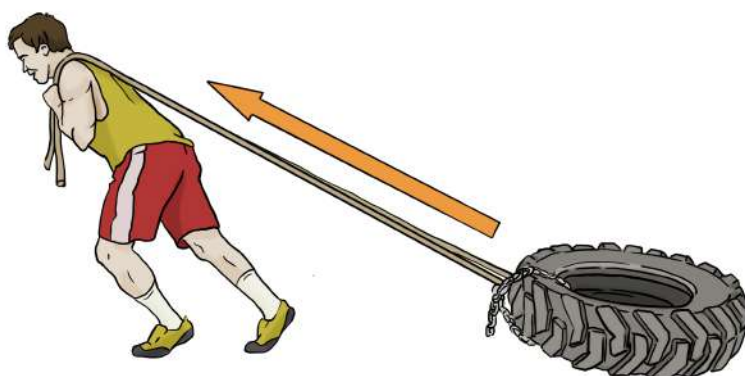



FIGURE 6.7

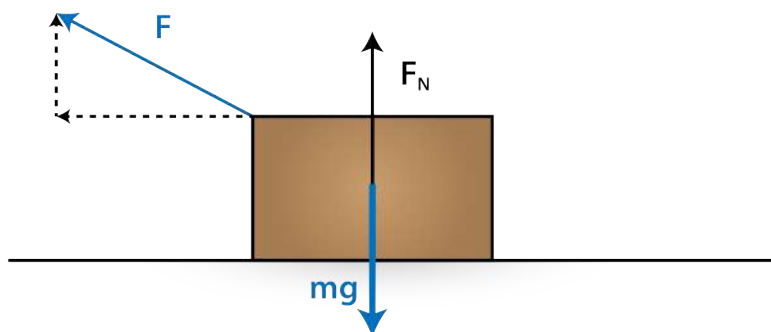



FIGURE 6.8

In the **Figure** 6.8, force *F* has the magnitude of 300 N and makes a 25.0-degree angle with the floor. Care must be taken in computing the work the girl does on the block. The force she is applying to move the block is not directed in the direction the block will move. We must find the component of the force acting parallel to the floor. Using vector resolution, we find:

$$F_x = F \cos\theta = 300 \cos 25.0^\circ = 271.89 = 272\ N$$

The work she is doing on the block is therefore:

$$W = F_x x = (271.9)(3.25) = 883.68 = 884\ J$$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/MechanicalWork/

Check Your Understanding

1. In **Figure** 6.9, is the woman who is holding her bag doing more work than the man whose suitcase is on the ground?

FIGURE 6.9

Answer: No, she's not. It doesn't matter if the woman holding the bag will tire of holding it eventually. As long as she doesn't move the bag, she does no work on it no matter how much her arm aches or how much the bag weighs.

2. If the woman holding the bag is walking at a constant speed, is she then doing work on the bag?

Answer: No, she's not. The force she's exerting on the bag is perpendicular to the direction of motion. It cannot cause or impede the motion of the bag, so it can do no work upon it.

(Recall that $W = (F\cos\theta)x,\ if\ \theta = 90^\circ,\ W = 0.$)

6.2 Energy

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the relationship between work and energy
- Be able to distinguish between kinetic and potential energy
- Understand the role of friction as it pertains to work and energy
- Be able to solve problems involving kinetic and potential energy and friction.

Vocabulary

- **energy:** The ability to do an amount of work. Different forms of energy can do work indirectly.
- **kinetic energy:** Energy of an object from its motion.
- **potential energy:** Energy from an object's position.
- **Work-Energy Principle:** The net work done on an object is equal to its change in kinetic energy.

Introduction

In the language of physics, **energy** is the ability to do work. Remember that we previously defined work as force applied over distance. Doing work creates energy, and energy can be used to do work. Force and work can come in endless forms, from nuclear to microscopic to everyday objects. **Figure** 6.10 are some icons portraying different types of energy. From left to right, there is a lightning bolt, a campfire, a speeding bullet, a battery, a log, and a rock on a hill.

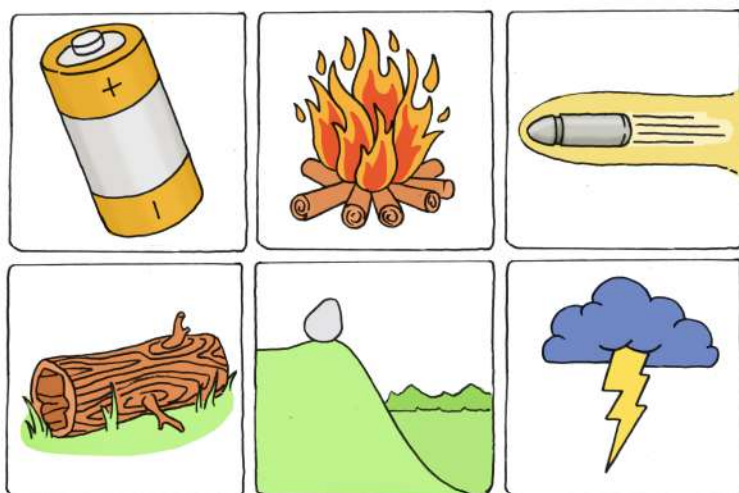



FIGURE 6.10

In ordinary language, only the first two are energy. However, within physics there are two kinds of energy: **kinetic**

energy and **potential energy**. The three on the left represent types of kinetic energy, where the word "kinetic" means related to motion.

- lightning $\rightarrow$ moving electrical charge $\rightarrow$ electrical energy
- campfire $\rightarrow$ moving molecules $\rightarrow$ thermal energy or heat
- bullet $\rightarrow$ moving object $\rightarrow$ mechanical kinetic energy or just "kinetic energy"

The three on the right represent less obvious forms of energy, known as potential energy.

- battery $\rightarrow$ can release electrical energy $\rightarrow$ chemical potential energy
- log $\rightarrow$ can release thermal energy $\rightarrow$ chemical potential energy
- rock on hill $\rightarrow$ can release kinetic energy $\rightarrow$ gravitational potential energy

Kinetic Energy

The simplest result of work is kinetic energy. If you have a stationary object and you push it with some force over a distance, then it is moving and thus has kinetic energy. Suppose you push a baseball of mass m with force F over distance d. The work done would be $F \times d$. We know from our previous mechanics that $F = ma$. If it started from rest and accelerated from only this force, then the distance it went is $d = \frac{1}{2}at^2$ and its final velocity is $v = at$. This tells us that the work done is:

$W = F \times d = (ma)(\frac{1}{2}at^2) = \frac{1}{2}m(at)^2 = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$

This expression is true for all kinetic energy, regardless of how it was accelerated. Kinetic energy is abbreviated KE and is found by the standard formula:

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

The units of energy are the same as for work, the Joule. 1 Joule is 1 Newton $\times$ 1 meter, or more fully, since 1 Newton is $\frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}$, a Joule is $\frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{s}^2}$.

Example 1

a. Aroldis Chapman of the Cincinnati Reds is credited with throwing the fastest baseball during a game. The ball had a speed of 46.95 m/s and a mass of 145.0 g. What was the kinetic energy of the ball?

Answer: $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$, $KE = \frac{1}{2}(0.145 \text{ kg})(46.95 \text{ m/s})^2 = 159.8 \text{ J}$

b. How would the kinetic energy compare for a ball with half the mass thrown with the same speed?

Answer: The kinetic energy would be $\frac{1}{2}$ as great.

c. How would the kinetic energy compare for a ball thrown with half the speed but the same mass?

Answer: The kinetic energy would be $\frac{1}{4}$ as great.

Example 2

a. A race car of mass 900 kg is at rest on the starting line, then uniformly accelerates at 5 m/s^2 over a distance of 60m67.1 m. What was its change in kinetic energy?

Answer: We can solve the change in velocity from the kinematic equation: ${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$.

FIGURE 6.11

From our kinetic energy formula, the initial kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{2}mv_i^2$, while the final kinetic energy is $\frac{1}{2}mv_f^2$. Combining this with the previous kinematic equation, we have:

$KE_f = \frac{1}{2}mv_f^2 = \frac{1}{2}m(v_i^2 + 2a\Delta x) = \frac{1}{2}mv_i^2 + (ma)\Delta x$

We know from Newton's Second Law that $\Sigma F = F_{net} = ma$, so this final term is just $F\Delta x$, which is the *net work* done on the object.

The equation $W_{net} = \Delta KE$ is referred to as the **Work-Energy Principle**.

What we have learned from the above is that the change in kinetic energy can easily be found by computing the work done. The change in kinetic energy of the race car is therefore:

$W = Fx = (ma)x = (900\text{kg})(5\text{m/s}^2)(60\text{m}) = 270,000 \text{ J}$

Check Your Understanding

1a. Let's revisit Example 6.1.4, where we're told that the man is pulling a tire with a force of 300 N. We'll assume he is pulling the tire at a constant speed in a fixed direction. If so, what is the net work done on the tire? See **Figure** 6.12.

Answer: If the speed remains constant, then the change in kinetic energy is zero by the Work-Energy Principle and therefore the net work done on the tire must be zero.

1b. True or False: Since the net work done on the tire is zero, there must be negative work done on the tire.

Answer: True

1c. What force is responsible for doing negative work on the tire?

Answer: Friction

1d. Explain how friction does negative work.

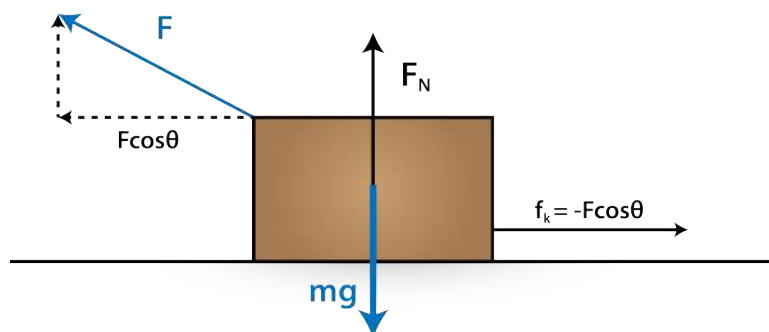



FIGURE 6.12

Answer: Work is defined as $W = (F\cos\theta)x$. Since the friction force opposes the motion of the tire it acts oppositely to the tire's displacement. The angle, θ between the force of friction and the displacement is 180-degrees, and the $\cos 180^\circ = -1$.

Recall that the displacement of the tire was 3.25 m and the force which the man applied in the direction of the tire's motion was 272 N. The force of friction therefore must have been -272 N: $f_k = F\cos 180^\circ = 272(-1) = -272\ N$. The work done by friction is therefore $(-272)(3.25) = -884\ J$.

The work done by friction is transformed into heat energy. (The bottom of the tire is warmer than its surroundings.) Eventually, the heat dissipates but it does not "disappear." The work due to friction is transformed into thermal energy, which increases the internal energy of the universe. Energy can neither be created nor destroyed, but it can be transformed from one form of energy into another form of energy.

Potential Energy

In understanding force, we know that an object close to the surface of the Earth experiences a force equal to mg, where g, is called the intensity of the field. In introductory physics, g is more commonly known as the gravitational acceleration and has an average value of approximately 10 m/s^2.

When an object is lifted in the gravitational field, work is done upon it since a force F lifts the object a height h. See **Figure** 6.13. If $F = Mg$, the work the force F does on the object in lifting it a height h is Mgh.

Lifting the object increases its potential energy by Mgh. In general, we establish an arbitrary zero point for the potential energy. This zero point is usually set at the lowest level at which the object finds itself in the situation described.

In **Figure** 6.13, suppose you lifted a volleyball from the ground to over your head. The volleyball has a weight of $mg = 3$N and the height it is lifted to is $h = 2.0$m above the ground. Your lifting force F has done 6J of work upon the object.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PotentialEnergyOfObjectsFromDailyLife/

Check Your Understanding

1a. What is the net work done on the object in **Figure** 6.13?

Answer: The net force, $\sum F$ on the object is zero since gravity is exactly matched by the lifting force. We know this because the ball is not accelerating - it is only lifting at a constant speeed. Since the net force is zero, the net work, $W = (\sum F)h = Fh - mgh = 0$.

1b. True or False: Gravity does negative work on the object in **Figure** 6.13.

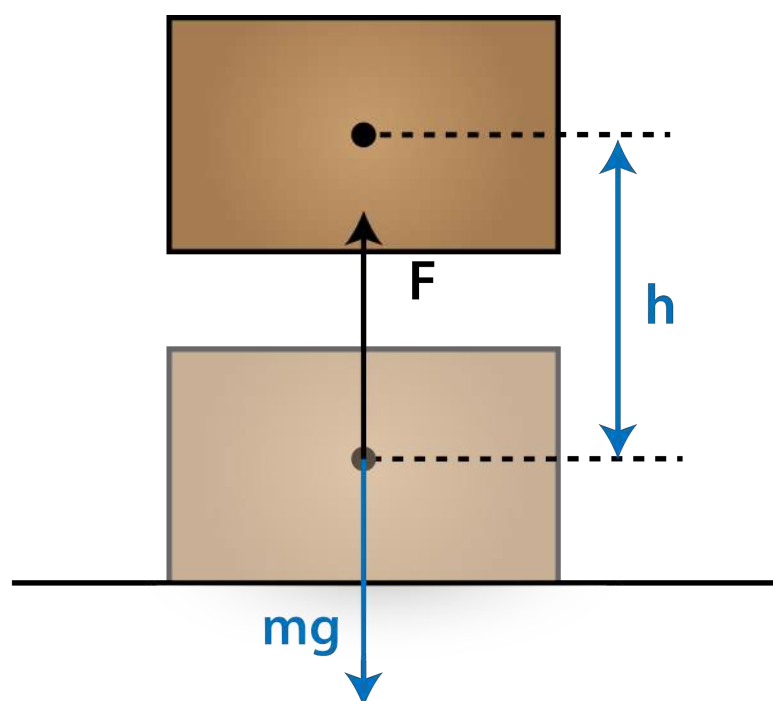



FIGURE 6.13
The change in as measured from an object's center of mass.

Answer: True. Gravity acts in the opposite direction of the motion of the object and therefore does negative work on the object.

1c. True or False: Gravity does positive work on the object in **Figure** 6.13 if the object is released from the height h.

Answer: True. In this case the force of gravity is in the same direction as the motion of the object.

Potential Energy and Springs

The spring is a useful and ubiquitous invention that is often overlooked. There are spring-loaded screen doors and toys and a host of other devices that hide the springs away so we are privy only to their "magical" movements. In a "clockwork universe," springs may not be kings, but you'd be hard pressed to find many other things so important! But it is more than just the mechanical workings of springs that are important to physicists. As we will see in later chapters, the spring behavior has rich analogies in many other branches of physics.

A force must be applied in order to stretch or compress a spring. Work therefore must be done on the spring. The work done on the spring is stored in the form of potential energy in the spring. In order to find the work done on the spring, we calculate the product of the applied force and the distance the spring moved. But the force applied to a spring is *not* constant; it does not, for example, take the same force to stretch a spring 5 cm as it does to stretch it 10 cm. Fortunately, the relationship between the force and the distance a spring is stretched is a simple one. Robert Hooke (1635, 1703) discovered that the force is directly proportiona*l* to the distance the spring is stretched (or compressed). In other words, it takes twice the force to stretch the spring twice the distance, three times the force to stretch it three times the distance, and so on. Mathematically, we have $F = kx$, where F is the applied force, k, is the *spring constant* with units N/m and x is the distance the spring is stretched.

Illustrative Example

A plot of the applied force, F vs. x, the distance the spring is stretched, is shown in **Figure** 6.15.

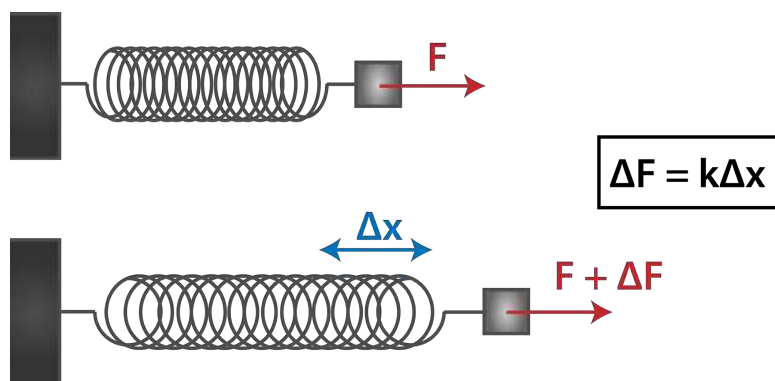



FIGURE 6.14
This shows how the applied force is related to the distance the spring is stretched.

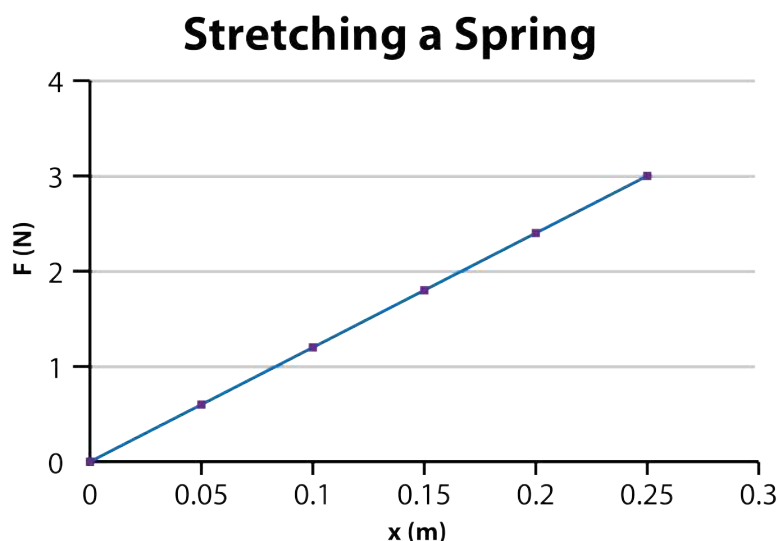



FIGURE 6.15

Writing the equation for the potential energy stored in the spring requires finding the value of the force. Since the relationship is linear, we can use the average force. Using **Figure** 6.15 as an example, we notice that the initial force is 0.0 N and the final force is 3.0 N. The average force is therefore $\frac{0+3.0}{2} = 1.5\text{N}$ and so the total work in stretching the spring 0.25 m (and hence the amount of energy stored in the spring) is:

$$W = F_{avg}x = (1.5)(0.25) = 0.375\ J$$

An equation for the potential energy stored in a spring can be derived as follows:

Taking the initial force as zero and the final force as F_f, we have, $W = F_{avg}x = \frac{(0+F_f)}{2}x = \frac{(0+kx)}{2}x = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$. This is the equation for the potential energy (PE) stored in a spring: $W_{applied} = PE = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$.

Check Your Understanding

1. Why is a spring with a 200 N/m spring constant more difficult to stretch than a spring with a 100 N/m spring constant?

Answer: A spring constant of 200 N/m is understood to mean that it requires a force of 200 N to stretch or compress the spring 1 meter. A spring constant of 100 N/m requires half the force (100 N) to stretch or compress the spring the same distance, 1 meter.

2a. The force required to stretch a spring 10 cm is 20 N. What force is needed to stretch the spring 20 cm?

Answer: Since the force is directly proportional to the distance the spring is stretched, twice the force must be applied to stretch the spring 20 cm or 40 N.

2b. What is the value of the spring constant, k of the spring?

Answer: $F = kx: \ 20 = k(0.10), \ k = 200 \ N/m$

2c. What is the energy stored in the spring when it is stretched 10 cm?

Answer: $PE = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \frac{1}{2}(200)(0.10)^2 = 1.0 \ J$

2d. What is the energy stored in the spring if it is stretched another 10 cm?

Answer: $PE = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \frac{1}{2}(200)(0.20)^2 = 4.0 \ J$. Notice, by reviewing (2c) and (2d) that the PE is directly proportional to the square of the distance.

6.3 Energy Conservation

Objectives

- Understand the meaning of energy conservation
- Be able to use energy conservation in solving problems.

Vocabulary

- **Conservation of Mechanical Energy:** The total of kinetic energy and potential energy in a system remains constant as long as there are no dissipative forces or interaction with outside the system.
- **Conservation Principle:** A conserved quantity is a quantity where the total cannot increase or decrease.
- **dissipative forces:** Forces such as friction that change mechanical energy into other types of energy, such as heat energy.

Introduction

In the language of physics, a conserved quantity is a quantity where the total can never increase or decrease. Conservation of energy means that energy is transformed from one type to another, but is never added or removed. Consider climbing up to the top of a half-pipe at a skate park.

FIGURE 6.16
Climbing up the ladder in a skate park.

By climbing up a ladder, a person is adding in mechanical energy. There is chemical potential energy within their body that is expended by using their muscles. In physics terms, they do work climbing to the top of the half-pipe. This creates gravitational potential energy.

Suppose the half-pipe is 4 meters tall and the person has a weight (mg) of 900 Newtons. This means that there is $(900\text{N})(4\text{m}) = 3600\text{J}$ of gravitational potential energy created by climbing up.

If the person skates off the edge, they are lowering their height (reducing potential energy) but also speeding up (gaining kinetic energy). This is a basic energy transformation and illustrates the principle of **Conservation of**

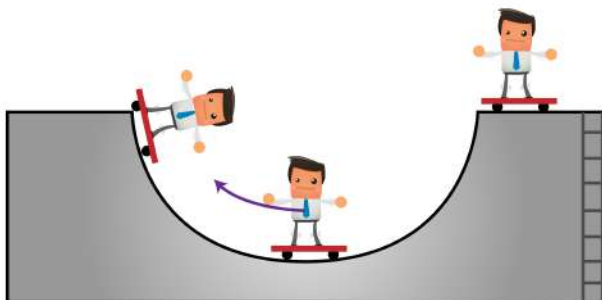



FIGURE 6.17
Mechanical energy transformations on a skateboarding half-pipe.

Mechanical Energy. The total energy- both kinetic and potential- will remain constant as long as there is no friction and the person does not expend more muscle energy pushing off.

Friction is often referred to as a **dissipative force**. If the skater falls down and skids to a stop, then friction has taken effect. The friction does negative work, reducing the kinetic energy. The dissipated kinetic energy is turned into heat energy. This is why rubbing two objects together makes them warmer. Mechanical energy is conserved only when dissipative forces are absent.

The conservation of mechanical energy can be rephrased as follows: Assuming there aren't any non-conservative forces acting upon a system, the initial kinetic and potential energy contained within a closed system equals the final kinetic and potential energy contained within that system.

Mathematically:

$KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f$

The initial sum of kinetic energy and potential energy is equal to the final sum of kinetic energy and potential energy.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/energy-skate-park

Illustrative Example 1

A 0.145 kg ball leaves the earth with an upward velocity of 15.0 m/s.

a. Qualitatively describe the changes in kinetic and potential energies of the ball during its ascent and descent in **Figure** 6.18. Take the ground as the point of zero gravitational potential energy.

Answer: At the instant the ball is released, all of its energy is in the form of kinetic energy. As the ball ascends, its kinetic energy is transformed to gravitational potential energy. When the ball reaches its highest position, its speed is zero and, therefore, its kinetic energy is zero. All of the energy of the ball is now in the form of gravitational potential energy. As the ball begins its descent, gravitational potential energy is transformed back into kinetic energy. At all times the sum of kinetic and potential energy is constant.

b. What is the total energy of the ball at half of its maximum height?

Answer: The total energy of the ball remains constant, so it is irrelevant at which position the total energy of the ball is found. Therefore:

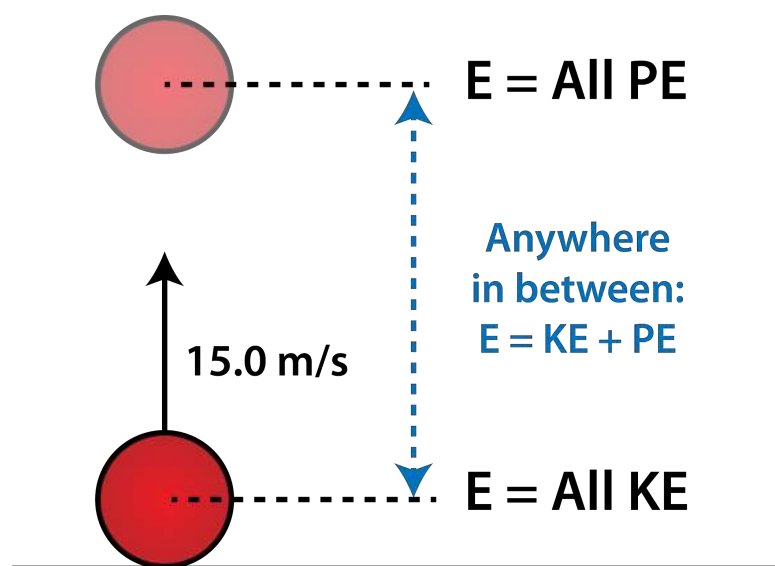



FIGURE 6.18

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(0.145\text{kg})\left(15.0\text{m/s}^2\right)^2 = 16.3 \text{ J}$$

c. Use the Conservation of Mechanical Energy to find the maximum height the ball reaches.

Answer: $E_i = E_f$,

$$E_i = KE_i + PE_i = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + 0$$
$$E_f = KE_f + PE_f = 0 + mgh$$
$$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = mgh,\ \frac{1}{2}v^2 = gh,\ h = \frac{v^2}{2g} = \frac{(15\text{m/s})^2}{(2)(10\text{m/s}^2)} = 11.2\text{m}$$

d. What is the KE of the ball at position 5.00 m?

Answer: The PE of the ball at this position is: $PE = mgh = (0.145\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2)(5.00\text{m}) = 7.2\text{J}$

The total energy of the ball is 16.3 J and therefore the KE is: $16.3 - 7.1 = 9.2$ J

e. What is the speed of the ball at position 5.00 m?

Answer:

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2,$$
$$7.11 = \frac{1}{2}(0.145\text{kg})v^2$$
$$v = 9.9 \text{ m/s}$$

Notice that the equation in part (c),

$\frac{1}{2}mv^2 = mgh$, can be solved as $v^2 = 2gh$, and is identical to the kinematic equation:

${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$, where $v_f = 0$, and $a = -g$.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PotentialAndKineticEnergiesOfAFallingObject/

Illustrative Example 2

Qualitatively describe the kinetic and potential energies for the bob on the pendulum in **Figure** 6.19 at positions P_1, P_2, P_3.

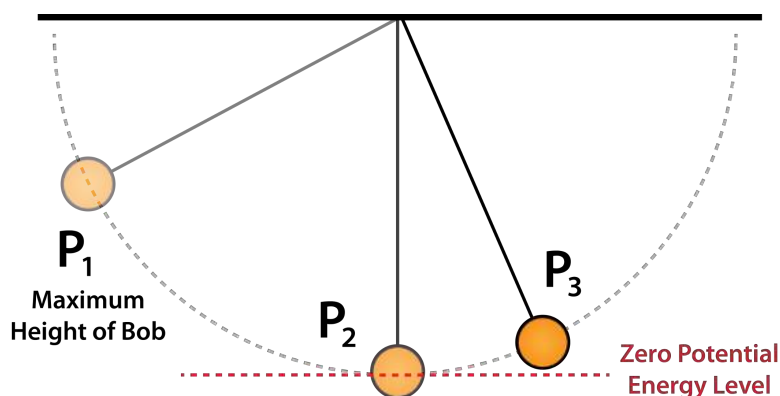



FIGURE 6.19

Answers

a. P_1: The bob is momentarily at rest at its highest position, so all the energy is in the form of gravitational potential energy.

b. P_2: The bob is at its lowest position, so all of the energy is in the form of kinetic energy.

c. P_3: The bob is between its lowest and highest positions, so it has a combination of kinetic and potential energies.

Illustrative Example 3

The kinetic and potential energies used to solve problems related to the gravitational field of the earth can often be reduced to kinematic equations. Why then, you might wonder, do we bother with energy in the first place? Perhaps the next example will clarify this.

A sled slides from rest from a height of 4.00 m down a frictionless curved ramp. What is the maximum speed that the sled can achieve? See **Figure** 6.20

Answer: The sled begins its ride with all potential energy and has its maximum speed when all of its potential energy has been transformed to kinetic energy. This occurs when the sled comes off the ramp, thus: $E_i = E_f,\ KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f : 0 + mgh = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + 0$

$$mgh = \frac{1}{2}mv^2,\ gh = \frac{1}{2}v^2,\ v^2 = 2gh,\ v = \sqrt{2gh}$$
$$v = \sqrt{2(9.81)(4.00)}$$
$$v = 8.86\ m/s$$

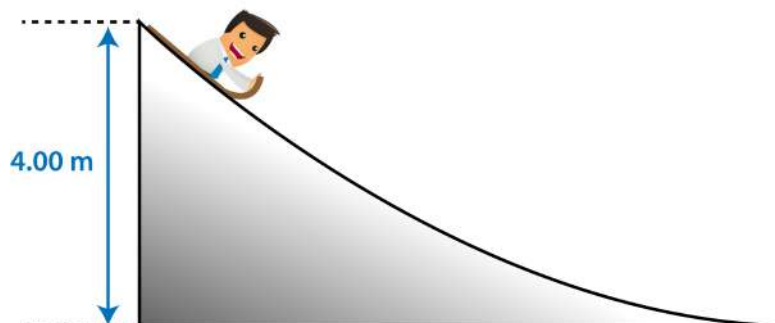



FIGURE 6.20

Consider trying to solve this problem using Newton's Laws. What acceleration would you use along the ramp? Since the ramp is curved, the acceleration is changing at every instant. This problem would be very difficult to solve using Newton's Laws and more information would be required as well. We would need to know the function that describes the shape of the ramp and then we would need to make use of calculus, which is beyond the scope of this book.

Check Your Understanding

1. If the sled had fallen straight down from a height of 4.00 m, what speed would it have upon reaching the ground?

Answer: If you were to use the kinematic equation: ${v_f}^2 = {v_i}^2 + 2a\Delta x$

where $a = -9.81\frac{m}{s^2}$, $v_i = 0$, and $\Delta x = -4.00m$

$${v_f}^2 = 0 + 2(-9.81)(-4.00) = 78.4,\ v_f = 8.86\ m/s$$

The speed at the bottom of the ramp is identical to the speed the sled would have had, had it fallen straight down. Energy conservation is independent of the path the object takes, as long as there are no non-conservative forces present.

Illustrative Example 4

In **Figure** 6.21, an amusement park ride is constructed such that a car carrying passengers is initially locked against a huge compressed spring. When the spring is released, the car is projected along a straight horizontal segment of track before encountering a curved ramp. The system is assumed to have negligible friction.

What is the maximum height the car meets above the ground if the spring is compressed 0.75 m, the spring constant is 25,000 N/m, and the car and passengers have a mass of 500 kg?

Answer: The initial energy is contained in the compressed spring which upon release will be communicated to the car. After the car is free of the spring it will have its maximum kinetic energy which remains constant along the horizontal until the car begins its rise along the curved ramp. At the height, *h*, all of the kinetic energy has been transformed into potential energy.

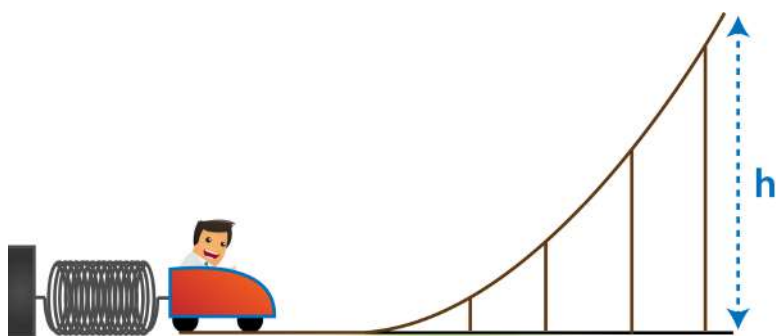



FIGURE 6.21

Illustrative Example 5

In this example, we will introduce the effect of a dissipative force. Though the mechanical energy will not be conserved, the total energy will be conserved. To solve problems that involve friction, we have to keep track of the energy that is transformed into heat. In **Figure** 6.22, the 20.0-kg block is pushed 0.50 m against a spring with a spring constant of 500 N/m. The ground underneath the spring is frictionless, but at the point the mass is free of the spring, the coefficient of kinetic friction, μ_k between the mass and the ground is 0.20. Find the distance x the mass travels before stopping.

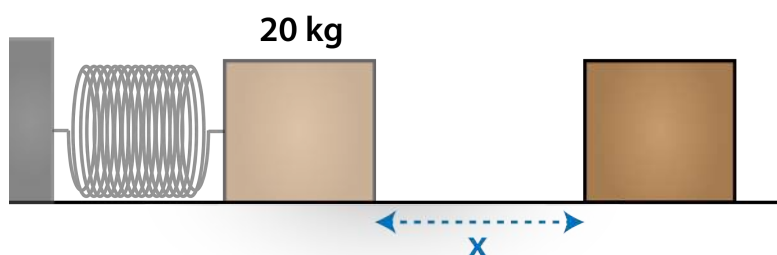



FIGURE 6.22

Answer:

As in the last example, the initial energy is all potential energy and it is stored within the spring. As soon as the block is free of the spring it has its greatest kinetic energy, but it also begins to immediately transform that energy into heat. When all of the block's kinetic energy has been transformed into heat, it will no longer have kinetic energy and it will come to a stop. We write the initial energy, E_i of the system (spring plus mass) as: $KE_i + PE_i = 0 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$ and the final energy E_f of the system as $KE_f + PE_f + Q$, where Q is the mechanical energy lost to heat. Q is the work done by friction: $W = Q = fx$, where $f = \mu N = \mu mg$.

Thus,

$$E_i = E_f \to KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f + Q$$
$$E_i = 0 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2 \text{ and } E_f = 0 + 0 + Q = \mu mgx$$

$Therefore;\ \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \mu mgx, \to x = \frac{kx^2}{2(\mu mg)} = \frac{(500)(0.50)^2}{2(0.20)(20)(9.81)} = 1.59 = 1.6\ m$

Check Your Understanding

1. True or False: When dissipative forces are present, the mechanical energy of the system is not conserved.

Answer: True. Dissipative (or non-conservative) forces transfer the kinetic and potential energies of large-scale objects to small-scale objects such as atoms.

2. True or False: In the presence of non-conservative forces the final kinetic and potential energies of the system can never be determined.

Answer: False. In the case where all of the mechanical energy has been transformed into heat we know the resulting kinetic and potential energies are zero. In cases where we can measure the instantaneous velocity and position of the objects in the system, the kinetic and potential energies can be found, as well as the energy "lost to heat."

6.4 Power

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how power is defined in physics
- Be able to solve problems involving power

Vocabulary

- **power:** The rate at which work is done.

Introduction

In the language of physics, work is defined as force applied over a distance $(W = F\Delta x)$. No mechanical work is done when holding a heavy weight for a long period of time. You may grow tired but no mechanical work is done unless there is a displacement.

Power is defined as the rate at which work is done. The faster work is performed, the more power is delivered. The average power is found by dividing the work done (or energy used or energy produced) by the time it takes to perform the work: $P_{avg} = \frac{W}{t}$. If the rate at which the work is done is constant, then P, of course, is constant.

Power has standard metric units of Joules per second, called Watts (W). These units are named for the Scottish engineer James Watt (1736-1819), picture in the **Figure** 6.23, who, among many other achievements, perfected the steam engine.

Check Your Understanding

1. In the example above, what power is required for the first lift and for the second lift?

Answer:

$$First\ lift: P_{avg} = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{Fx}{t} = \frac{(2500)(2.40)}{3.00} = 2000\ W$$
$$Second\ lift: P_{avg} = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{Fx}{t} = \frac{(2500)(2.40)}{6.00} = 1000\ W$$

2. A weightlifter lifts a barbell a height h over a period of time t. If he lifts the same weights to the same height over a period of time $2t$, which lift requires the greater power?

Answer: Since the first lift required only half the time of the second lift, the first lift required twice the power of the second lift. (See 1 above.)

It is also useful to re-express the equation for power in terms of average speed and constant force. Since power is defined as $P_{avg} = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{Fx}{t}$ we can also write $\frac{Fx}{t}$ as $F\frac{x}{t}$ where $\frac{x}{t}$ is average speed and F is constant. Thus: $P_{avg} = Fv$.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PowerVersusWork/

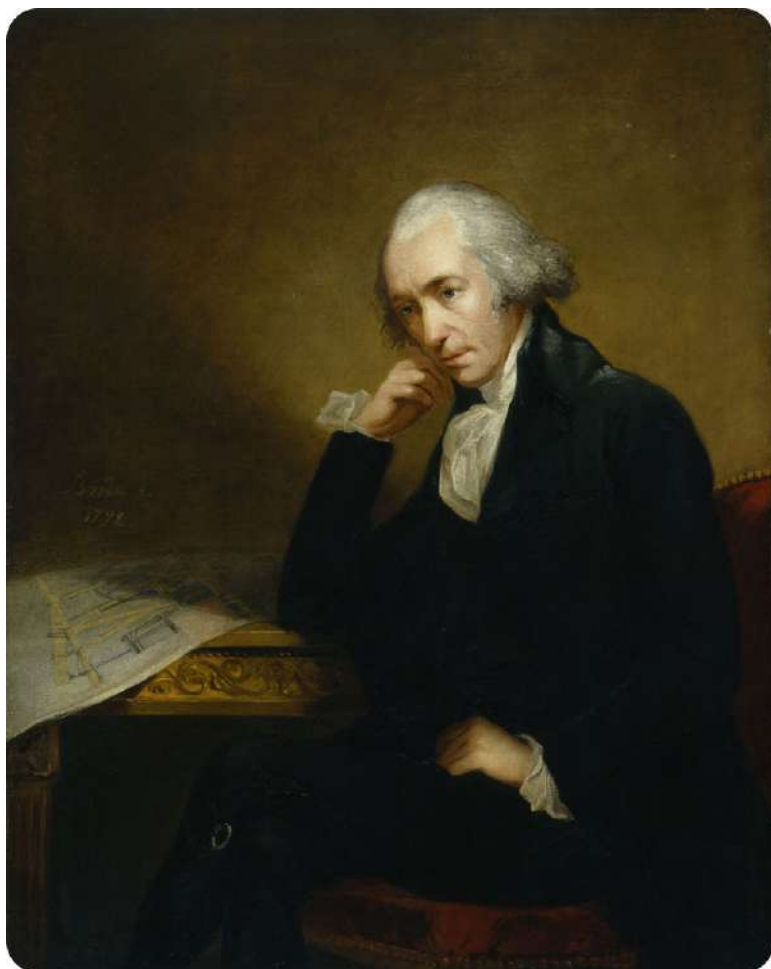



FIGURE 6.23

Illustrative Example 1

A jogger of mass 65.0 kg wishes to run up a hill of height 10 meters in 16 seconds (**Figure** 6.24). What power must the jogger produce?

Answer: If we assume only conservative forces, then the work the runner does running along the incline a distance *x*, to a height of 10 m, is no different than the work he would do lifting his weight directly to a height of 10 m. In other words, the work is independent of the path taken. The calculation below is done along the incline but the final result is identical to lifting his weight a height of 10 m in a time of 16 s. See **Figure** 6.24.

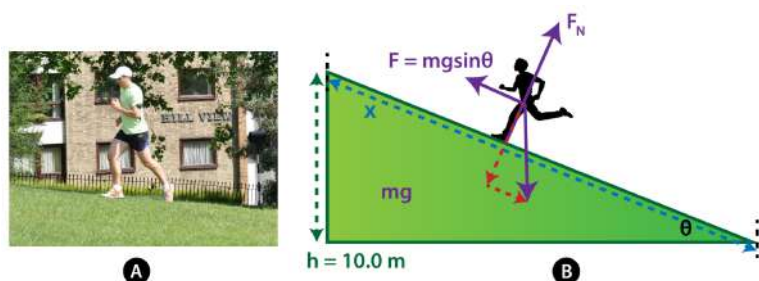



FIGURE 6.24

$P = \frac{Fx}{t} = \frac{(mg \ \sin\theta)(x)}{t} = \frac{mg(x\sin\theta)}{t} = \frac{mgh}{t} = mg\left(\frac{h}{t}\right) = mgv$

Note: $h = x\sin\theta, \ v = \frac{h}{t}$

The average vertical speed the jogger must have is $v = \frac{10\text{m}}{16\text{s}} = 0.62$ m/s and the force required is the jogger's weight, $mg = (65.0\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) = 650$ N, thus, $P = mgv = Fv = (650\text{N})(0.62\text{m/s}) = 406$ W

Horsepower

The term horsepower is often associated with automobiles. It is not uncommon for car salespeople to make a point of including horsepower rating as a selling point. If they are trying to sell a sport car then horsepower definitely enters the conversation. For more fuel efficient cars, a sales person is apt to make comments regarding "miles per gallon" and then add "and it still manages" and then quote some number of horsepower. So what exactly do we mean by the term "horsepower?"

James Watt (see **Figure** 6.23) is credited with the invention of the unit of horsepower. Supposedly, he created the term in order to measure the power output of the steam ships he was marketing. He wanted a unit that anyone during the early 19^{th} century would understand. So Watt chose the given amount of work a horse could do over a given period of time, settling on the definition that one unit of horsepower was equal to the power output of a horse lifting 550 pounds a height of one foot in one second, that is 1.00 hp = 550ft-pounds/s. In SI units, this is equivalent to 1.00 hp = 746 W.

Illustrative Example 2

The Le Mans car race lasts 24 hours. It is not uncommon during that time for a car to travel at a constant speed of 240 km/h in straight line motion while experiencing a drag force of 4600 N due to air resistance. What power, under the given conditions above, does a race car engine develop in units of horsepower?

FIGURE 6.25

Answer:

Since the speed of the car is constant and its direction of travel unchanging, the net force on the car must be zero. The force the engine provides, therefore, must be equal in magnitude to the drag force.

Since power can also be expressed as $P = Fv$, the units of power are also N*m/s. Before we begin, we must remember to convert 240 km/h to m/s:

$$\left(240\ \frac{\text{km}}{\text{h}}\right)\left(\frac{1000\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{km}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{h}}{3600\ \text{s}}\right) = 66.666 = 66.7\ \text{m/s}$$

The power the engine develops is $P = Fv = (4600\text{N})(66.7\text{m/s}) = 307,820 = 308,000\ \text{W}$

Converting to horsepower: $\left(\frac{308{,}000\ \text{W}}{1}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{hp}}{746\ \text{W}}\right) = 411.287 = 411\ \text{hp}$

Illustrative Example 3

1a. If you look at your utility bill, you'll see that you're charged, typically, between 8 and 12 cents per kilowatt-hour (kWh). Are you being charged for your power consumption or the energy you use?

1b. What is the cost to run a 100-Watt light bulb for 24 hours at 12 cents per kWh?

Answers:

1a. You're charged for the energy you use. Since a kilowatt is a unit of power (1000 W = 1000 J/s), multiplying energy/time by time results in just units of energy (joules).

Note: $1.00\ kWh = \left(1000\frac{J}{s}\right)\left(3600\frac{s}{h}\right) = 3,600,000 = 3.60 \times 10^6\ J$

1b. We first convert 100 W into kW and then multiple by the number of hours, 24.

$100\ W = 0.100\ kW$, therefore, $(0.100\ kW)(24\ h) = 2.4\ kWh \rightarrow (2.4kWh)\left(\frac{\$0.12}{kWh}\right) = 0.288 = \$0.29$ or 29 cents.

- Work is defined as $W = F_x x = (F\cos\theta)x$, the product of the component of the force along the line of motion and displacement.
- Work has units of N*m, or $(\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}^2)$, also known as Joules (J).
- Energy comes in two forms: kinetic and potential

Kinetic energy is the energy of motion and potential energy is the energy of position. Potential energy can also have many forms. For example: gravitational potential energy, elastic potential energy, chemical potential energy, and nuclear potential energy to name a few.

- Energy is the ability to do work and has units of joules, J.
- Kinetic energy has the form: $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$
- Gravitational potential energy has the form: $PE = mgh$
- The potential energy stored in a spring has the form: $PE = \frac{1}{2}kx^2$
- The relationship between the applied force and the distance a spring is stretched or compressed is: $F = kx$ (Hooke's Law)
- The Work-Energy principle is $W = \Delta KE$
- Dissipative forces such as friction are considered non-conservative forces. Mechanical energy is not conserved in the presence of non-conservative forces.

- The conservation of mechanical energy can be written as: $KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f$
- In the presence of dissipative forces the conservation of energy can we written as:
- $KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f + Q_f$, where Q_f is the energy that has been transformed into heat.
- In the event of an explosion, heat, Q_i, is added to the initial KE and PE energies and in the most general case, heat can also be lost, Q_f, after the explosive, thus:
- $KE_i + PE_i + Q_i = KE_f + PE_f + Q_f$
- The average power is the rate at which work is done or consumed or produced : $P = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{(Fx)}{t} = Fv$ and has units of Watts (W)

6.5 References

1. Vik Walker. http://www.flickr.com/photos/eidoloon/2570238282/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
6. Jon Clegg. http://www.flickr.com/photos/jonclegg/4457694598/ . CC BY 2.0
7. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
9. Image copyright Venus Angel, 2014, modified by CK-12 Foundation. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
10. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
11. SD Dirk. http://www.flickr.com/photos/dirkhansen/4516563353/ . CC BY 2.0
12. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
13. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
17. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
18. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
19. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
21. Image copyright artenot, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
22. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Thomas Lawrence. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:James_Watt_Thomas_Lawrence_%281812%29.jpg . Public Domain
24. (A) Flickr:morebyless; (B) Raymond Chou and Laura Guerin. (A) http://www.flickr.com/photos/morebyless/3617396395/; (B) CK-12 Foundation . (A) CC BY 2.0; (B) CC BY-NC 3.0
25. Adrian Hoskins. http://www.flickr.com/photos/firststoptyres/5093218674/ . CC BY 2.0

Momentum

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 7.1

Momentum is another way of looking at how objects affect each others' motion. Rather than looking at how forces change over the time of the interaction, we can look at how objects are moving before they interact and then after they interact.

7.1 Momentum

Objectives

The student will:

- Know how momentum is defined
- Be able to solve problems using momentum

Vocabulary

- **momentum:** An object's tendency to stay in motion, calculated as the product of its mass and velocity. Momentum has both magnitude and direction, so is a vector quantity.

Introduction

Heavier objects are harder to stop. The same is true of faster-moving objects. These observations are described well in Newton's Laws. An alternate way of analyzing the same tendency, though, is the property of **momentum**. Within a given reference frame, an object's momentum is defined as the product of mass and velocity, and is represented by the letter p, making the formula $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$. The arrows indicate that both momentum $\vec{p}$ and velocity $\vec{v}$ have direction, and thus are vector quantities.

Most poeople understand that being hit by a 100-kg person running at 3.0 m/s is less desirable than being hit by a 50-kg person running at 3.0 m/s. Intuitively, we recognize that being hit by a small mass is preferable to being hit by a large mass when they are moving with the same velocity.

FIGURE 7.2
100-kg moving 3.0 m/s.

FIGURE 7.3
50-kg moving 3.0 m/s.

Check Your Understanding

What momentum do the football players in **Figure** 7.2 and **Figure** 7.3 have?

Answer:

$$p_{large} = m_{large}v \rightarrow (100 \text{ kg})(3.0\text{m/s}) = 300 \frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}}$$
$$p_{small} = m_{small}v \rightarrow (50 \text{ kg})(3.0\text{m/s}) = 150 \frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}}$$

As can be seen above, the SI unit of momentum is $\frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$. There is no special name for this unit.

Illustrative Example 7.1.1

The cat in **Figure** 7.4 has a mass of 6.1-kg and the mouse in **Figure** 7.5 has a mass of 0.074 kg. What velocity would the mouse require in order to have the same momentum as the cat, if the cat walks with a velocity of 0.50 m/s?

FIGURE 7.4
A 6.1-kg cat.

Answer:

The cat's momentum is $p_c = (6.1 \text{ kg})(0.50 \text{ m/s}) = 3.05 \frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$

The mouse's momentum is : $p_m = (0.74 \text{ kg})(v_m)$

FIGURE 7.5
A 0.074-kg mouse.

In order to find the velocity of the mouse we equate their momenta (plural form of momentum).

$$p_c = p_m \rightarrow 3.05 = (0.074 \text{ kg})v_m \rightarrow v_m = \frac{3.05 \frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}}{0.074 \text{ kg}} = 41\text{m/s}$$

This is about 92 mph. Massive objects moving at low speeds can easily have more momentum than light objects traveling at their fastest. (An economy car, for example, would need a speed of about 67 m/s to have the same momentum as an 18-wheeler with a speed of 4.5 m/s. What is the ratio of their masses?)

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=y2Gb4NIv0Xg

A Change in Momentum

It is important to remember that momentum is a vector quantity. This can best be illustrated by considering a change in momentum.

Illustrative Example 7.1.2

Earlier, we stated that Aroldis Chapman of the Cincinnati Reds was credited with throwing the fastest baseball during a game. The ball had a speed of 46.95 m/s and a mass of 145.0 g. We will calculate the change in momentum for two cases. In Case 1, Chapman makes his throw, it's a "swing and a miss" by the batter, and the ball is caught by the catcher. In Case 2, the ball is "bunted" by the batter. A bunt means that the bat is brought to rest at about waist level and the ball is permitted to bounce off it. We will assume that the bunted ball leaves the bat opposite to the direction it was thrown and at the same speed it was thrown.

Case 1: We calculate initial momentum of the ball as it leaves Chapman's hand and the final momentum of the ball in the catcher's mitt. The work is shown below:

$$p_i = mv_i = (0.145 \text{ kg})(46.9\text{m/s}) = 6.81\frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$$
$$p_f = mv_f = (0.145 \text{ kg})(0.00\text{m/s}) = 0.00\frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$$

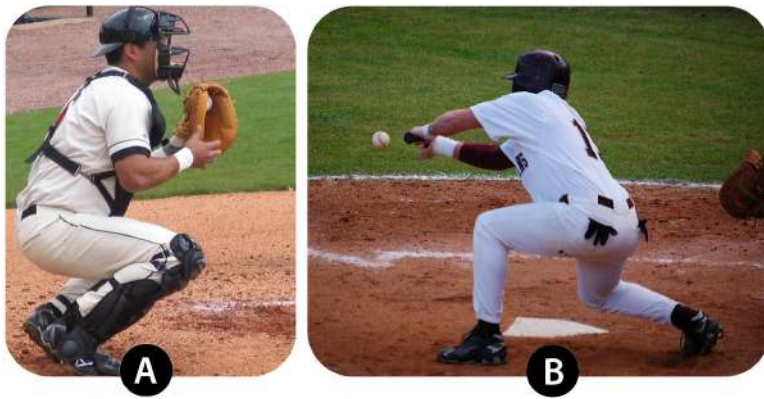



FIGURE 7.6
(A) Ball caught by catcher. (B) Batter bunting ball.

The change in momentum of the ball, Δp, is: $p_f - p_i = 0 - (+6.81) = -6.81 \frac{\text{kg·m}}{\text{s}}$

Case 2: The ball hits the bat with a horizontal speed of 46.95 m/s and it leaves the bat with a horizontal speed of 46.95 m/s.

What would you guess is the magnitude of the horizontal momentum change of the ball?

a. 0

b. $6.81 \frac{\text{kg·m}}{\text{s}}$

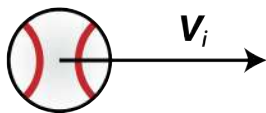
c. $13.6 \frac{\text{kg·m}}{\text{s}}$

It is not uncommon to choose answer A but that is incorrect. Had the problem been stated using velocity instead of speed and direction, the correct answer may have been more obvious. That is:

The ball hits the bat with a horizontal *velocity of 46.95 m/s* and it leaves the bat with a horizontal velocity of *-46.95 m/s*.

Remember that speed is only the magnitude of velocity, but momentum is a vector quantity. Therefore, we must always consider the velocity of objects when working with momentum.

Let's work out Case 2 with **Figure** 7.7 in mind.

Positive Velocity Toward Batter

Negative Velocity Away from Batter

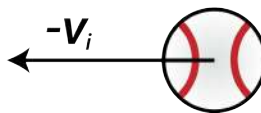



FIGURE 7.7

If we arbitrarily assume the ball's velocity to the batter is positive, as in **Figure** 7.7, then

$$p_i = mv_i = (0.145 \text{ kg})(46.9 \text{ m/s}) = 6.81 \frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}}$$

The final momentum of the ball is negative since it moves in the opposite direction.

$$p_f = mv_f = m(-v_i) = (0.145 \text{ kg})(-46.9 \text{ m/s}) = -6.81 \frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}}$$

The change in momentum of the ball is therefore:

$\Delta p = p_f - p_i = -6.808 - (+6.808) = -13.6 \frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$ or a magnitude of $13.6 \frac{\text{kg}\cdot\text{m}}{\text{s}}$

7.2 Impulse

Objectives

Students will learn the meaning of impulse force and how to calculate both impulse and impulse force in various situations.

Vocabulary

- **impulse**

Introduction

Earlier, we solved a problem dealing with change in momentum. We emphasized that momentum is a vector quantity and that care must therefore be taken in dealing with the direction of velocity. Now, we will again discuss a change in momentum, but we will investigate it from the point of view of Newton's Second Law (N2L). The connection between the change in momentum and N2L will help to explain some everyday occurrences involving collisions, for example, why it is a good idea to bend your knees when landing on the ground, why it is a good idea to bring your arm back as you catch a fast ball, or why it hurts more to land on concrete than on a mattress bed.

We can explain the reasons for these statements by defining a quantity called an **impulse**.

Newton's Second Law Revisited

Recall that N2L can be stated as $\sum F = F_{net} = ma$. We will rewrite this equation dropping the "net" subscript. We will also assume that F represents the average net force (we will see why in a moment) and express the acceleration as $a = \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta t} = \frac{(v_f - v_i)}{\Delta t}$, giving us:

$$F = m\frac{(v_f - v_i)}{\Delta t} = \frac{mv_f - mv_i}{\Delta t} \rightarrow F\Delta t = mv_f - mv_i = \Delta p \rightarrow F\Delta t = \Delta p$$

We call $F\Delta t = \Delta p$ the impulse-momentum equation. The left-hand side is referred to as the impulse and the right-hand side is referred to as the change in momentum. The equation suggests that we needn't only use the unit $\frac{kg*m}{s}$ to express momentum since the change in momentum is equivalent to $F\Delta t$, expressed in the unit $N - s$.

In typical collisions there is a rapid buildup of force between the objects colliding and a rapid diminishing of the force as they either come to rest or separate from each other. In either case the force is not constant and the time of interaction is brief. **Figure** 7.8 shows a baseball as it compresses and expands as it's being hit by a bat. **Figure** 7.8 shows a graph of the force on the baseball as function of time during the interaction with the bat. The times for such interactions are measured in milliseconds and the force is in kilo-newtons.

Illustrative Example 7.2.1

If a ball thrown by Aroldis Chapman remains in contact with a baseball bat for 0.70 milliseconds:

(a) What is the impulse the ball experiences?

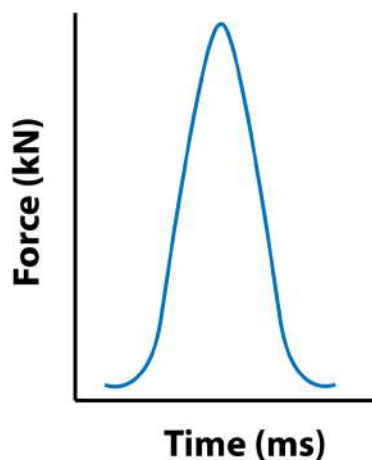



FIGURE 7.8
Impulse experienced by ball. The graph on the right shows that the force on the baseball is not constant.

(b) What is the magnitude of the average force the ball experiences?

Recall the mass of the ball is 0.145-kg and the velocity is 46.95 m/s.

Answers:

a. In an earlier example, we showed that the change in momentum Δp was:

$\Delta p = p_f - p_i = -6.808 - (+6.808) = -13.62 \rightarrow -13.6\frac{kg*m}{s}$ or a magnitude of $13.6\frac{kg*m}{s}$

(Note-the negative sign indicates that the direction of the force on the ball is opposite to the ball's incoming direction.)

Since $\Delta p = F\Delta t$,the impulse the ball experiences is -13.6 N-s

b. The magnitude of the average force is $\bar{F} = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t} = \frac{13.6\ N-s}{0.70\times 10^{-3}} = 19428 = 1.9 \times 10^4\ N$

Illustrative Example 7.2.2

We continue with our baseball example with a question for the catcher. It is a very good idea when catching a fastball to move your arm back as you catch the ball. Let's determine the force on the catcher's mitt under two conditions:

(1) The catcher moves his arm back 1.00-cm in catching the ball and

(2) The catcher moves his arm back 10.00-cm in catching the ball.

We use the values given in the original problem: $m = 0.145 - kg$ and $v_i = 46.95\frac{m}{s}$, in addition to the two displacements-1.00-cm and 10.00-cm- to solve the problem.

Case 1

There are several ways to work the problem. We will find the time it takes the ball to come to rest in each case and then use the change in momentum to solve for the force.

To find the time we divide the displacement of the ball by its average velocity, that is,

$$v_{avg} = \frac{(0+46.95)}{2} = 23.475 \rightarrow 23.48\frac{m}{s}$$
$$x = v_{avg}\Delta t \rightarrow \Delta t = \frac{x}{v_{avg}} = \frac{0.010\ m}{23.475\frac{m}{s}} = 4.26\times 10^{-4} \rightarrow 4.3\times 10^{-4}\ s$$

Recall that the change in momentum was calculated already as $-6.81\frac{kg*m}{s}$. We now use $F = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t} = \frac{-6.81\frac{kg*m}{s}}{4.26\times 10^{-4}\ s} = -15,986 \rightarrow -1.60\times 10^4\ N$

This is a very large force, equivalent to 3,600 pounds. In all likelihood, this would result in serious damage to the catcher's wrist.

Case 2

Since the displacement is ten times greater in this case, the time to bring the ball to rest will be ten times longer $\rightarrow \Delta t = \frac{0.10\ m}{23.475\frac{m}{s}} = 4.26\times 10^{-3} \rightarrow 4.3\times 10^{-3}\ s$

And as before $F = \frac{\Delta p}{\Delta t} = \frac{-6.81\frac{kg*m}{s}}{4.26\times 10^{-3}\ s} = -1,599 \rightarrow -1.60\times 10^3\ N$. Even though the force in Case 2 is ten times smaller, you wouldn't want to do this without a really good catcher's mitt!

Check Your Understanding

Why is it less painful to fall on a mattress bed than on concrete?

Answer: Let's say you're standing up and decide to let yourself fall over like a slightly tipped bowling pin. In one case, at floor level, there is a mattress and in another case there is concrete. We'll assume in each case you have the same initial velocity (close to zero) as you begin your fall. The velocity v_1 with which you hit both the mattress and the concrete is the same, since you fall through the same displacement. Let's define velocity v_1 as the initial velocity of impact and the final velocity as zero, since the mattress and concrete have brought you to rest. In each case, the change in your velocity is the same as you're brought to rest, and your mass is the same, as well. Therefore, the change in your momentum (and therefore impulse) is the same in both cases. The only difference is, since the mattress "gives" more than the concrete, it will take more time for the mattress to bring you to rest than the concrete. As we saw above, if the change in momentum is constant, force is decreased the longer it takes to come to rest.

7.3 Conservation of Momentum and Center of Mass

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand conservation of momentum
- Be able to solve problems using the conservation of momentum
- Understand the motion of the center of mass of a system

Vocabulary

- **center of mass:** The balancing point of a system, or the point at which all of the mass in a system is concentrated.
- **Conservation of Momentum:** The change in the total momentum of a system is zero.

Introduction

A conservation principle states that there is a quantity which remains constant within a system. Earlier, we concentrated on the conservation of mechanical energy. We now consider the conservation of momentum by once again referring back to Newton's Second Law (N2L). As a reminder, N2L states that a net force on a mass m will accelerate the mass m, that is $\sum F = F_{net} = ma$.

When we discussed impulses, we rewrote N2L as $F = \frac{mv_f - mv_i}{\Delta t} \rightarrow F\Delta t = mv_f - mv_i = \Delta p$. Recall that F represents the net force on the object (or system) in question. The equation states that if the net force on the system is zero, the change in momentum of the system must also be zero since $0 = \frac{mv_f - mv_i}{\Delta t} = \Delta p \rightarrow \Delta p = mv_f - mv_i = 0$. We can write this result as a conservation principle by stating $\Delta p = p_f - p_i = 0 \rightarrow p_i = p_f$. We claim that it represents a conservation principle because we're led to a similar conclusion as we saw with the conservation of energy. The initial energy of the system equaled the final energy of the system $(E_i = E_f)$. Here, we have been lead to the conclusion that the initial momentum of the system equals the final momentum of the system $(p_i = p_f)$.

In general, for any isolated system, the change in the total momentum of the system is zero. As long as this condition holds, the momentum of a system with any number of interacting objects is conserved.

Illustrative Example 7.3.1

This is a very familiar example of momentum conservation. You may have seen this using a "Newton's Cradle" apparatus (**Figure** 7.9), but the same conservation principle can be easily demonstrated using two identical marbles or two identical coins.

MEDIA

Click image to the left or use the URL below.

URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/112394

FIGURE 7.9

As seen in **Figure** 7.9, the ball on the left is permitted to swing into the remaining hanging balls, and the ball on the right swings out. We say the momentum of the left ball has been transferred to the momentum of the right ball. The momentum is actually transferred through each of the balls.

The same can be demonstrated with two identical marbles. One is at rest and one is in motion, causing a head-on collision with the marble at rest. We solve this problem (and all others, unless stated otherwise) assuming that the interacting objects form an isolated system. In **Figure** 7.10, marble A has mass m and moves with velocity v_i along a horizontal surface toward marble B with mass m, and initial velocity $v_{Bi} = 0$. After the collision (**Figure** 7.11), marble A is at rest and marble B is moving with the final velocity v_{Bf}.

Initial

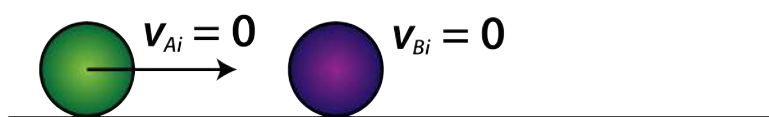



FIGURE 7.10

Using **Conservation of Momentum,** we first write the initial momentum of the system, p_i and then write the final momentum of the system p_f. Once these quantities are known, we use the conservation of momentum $p_i = p_f$.

$$p_i = mv_{Ai} + m_{Bi} = mv_{Ai} + m(0) = mv_{Ai}$$
$$p_f = mv_{Af} + mv_{Bf} = m(0) + mv_{Bf}$$
$$p_i = p_f \rightarrow mv_{Ai} = mv_{Bf} \rightarrow v_{Ai} = v_{Bf}$$

We find the final velocity of marble B is the same as the initial velocity of marble A. In other words, all of the momentum of marble A has been transferred to marble B. You can get a feel for the truth of this result using two identical coins. What you'll see when you have them collide head-on is that the first coin will stop and the second

FIGURE 7.11

coin will move. However, because of the effect of friction between the coins and the surface, you will not be able to see the target coin move along with the same velocity as the incoming coin.

Check Your Understanding

Two identical marbles of mass m are moving directly toward each other with equal speeds v. The momentum of the system is:

a. zero

b. mv

c. $2mv$

Answer: The correct answer is A. Since the marbles are moving directly toward each other, they must have opposite velocities. Therefore, one marble has momentum mv and the other marble has momentum $-mv$. The momentum of the system is $mv + (-mv) = 0$.

Illustrative Example 7.3.2

A car of mass 1000-kg at rest at a stop light is hit from behind when a second car of mass 900-kg moving at a speed of 13.4 m/s, collides with it. If the two cars lock bumpers, what common speed do they move off with after the collision?

We use Conservation of Momentum to solve the problem, writing the initial and final momenta of the system and then setting them equal.

$$p_i = (1000\ kg)(0) + (900\ kg)\left(13.4\frac{m}{s}\right)$$
$$p_f = (1000\ kg + 900\ kg)v_f$$
$$p_i = p_f \rightarrow (1000\ kg)(0) + (900\ kg)\left(13.4\frac{m}{s}\right) = (1900\ kg)v_f$$
$$v_f = \frac{(900\ kg)\left(13.4\frac{m}{s}\right)}{1900\ kg} = 6.347 \rightarrow 6.35\frac{m}{s}$$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PhysicsOfARearEndCollision/

Check Your Understanding

1. In the last Illustrative Example, what would v_f have been if both cars had mass 900-kg?

Answer: If we redo the problem, we find that v_f is half of the initial speed of the car that caused the accident, $\frac{13.4}{2} = 6.7\frac{m}{s}$.

2. If the accident had been between two identical trucks having masses of 8500-kg each, where one truck, moving with a speed of 13.4 m/s, collided with the other at rest, what would be their common speed after the collision?

Answer: The result is the same as in number 1, namely, $\frac{13.4}{2} = 6.7\frac{m}{s}$.

As long as two objects have the same mass, they will move off together with half the incoming speed after the collision, as shown below.

$$p_i = (mv_i) + (m)(0) = mv_i$$
$$p_f = mv_f + mv_f = 2mv_f$$
$$p_i = p_f \rightarrow mv_i = 2mv_f \rightarrow v_f = \frac{v_i}{2}$$

Illustrative Example 7.3.3

Consider the case of two objects, m_1 moving with initial velocity v_{1i} and m_2 having an initial velocity $v_{2i} = 0$, colliding head-on and moving together after the collision. Find their final common speed.

$$p_i = m_1 v_{1i} + m_2(0) \text{ and } p_f = (m_1 + m_2)v_f$$
$$p_i = p_f \rightarrow m_1 v_{1i} = (m_1 + m_2)v_f \rightarrow v_f = \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} v_{1i}$$

Note that for $m_1 = m_2 \rightarrow v_f = \frac{v_{1i}}{2}$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/InelasticCollisionsOfTwoSpheres/

Illustrative Example 7.3.4

In **Figure** 7.12, a girl of mass 30-kg stands motionless upon a frictionless horizontal surface with a bag of ten baseballs. The baseballs have a mass of 0.145 kg each and the total mass of the balls and bag is 1.70-kg. The girl takes one baseball out of the bag and throws it with a velocity of 7.00 m/s due west relative to the ground. What is the velocity of the girl after she throws the baseball?

Answer:

We assume that momentum conservation holds and therefore determine the initial and final momenta of the system.

The initial momentum of the system, (girl + bag + baseballs) is zero since the girl, baseballs and bag are at rest; $p_i = 0$

The final momentum of the system is composed of two motions, the baseball's momentum and the momentum of the girl, remaining baseballs, and bag. We find the final momentum of the baseball first:

$p_{bf} = (0.145\ kg)\left(7.00\frac{m}{s}\right)$

The final momentum of the rest of the system belongs to the girl, baseballs, and bag. But we must remember that the bag contains one fewer baseball. Thus, the mass of the remaining baseballs + mass of the bag is $1.70\ kg - 0.145\ kg = 1.555\ kg$. The mass of the girl is 30-kg and therefore the total mass is 31.1555-kg. The final momentum of this part of the system is:

$p_{gf} = (31.555\ kg)v_{gf}$

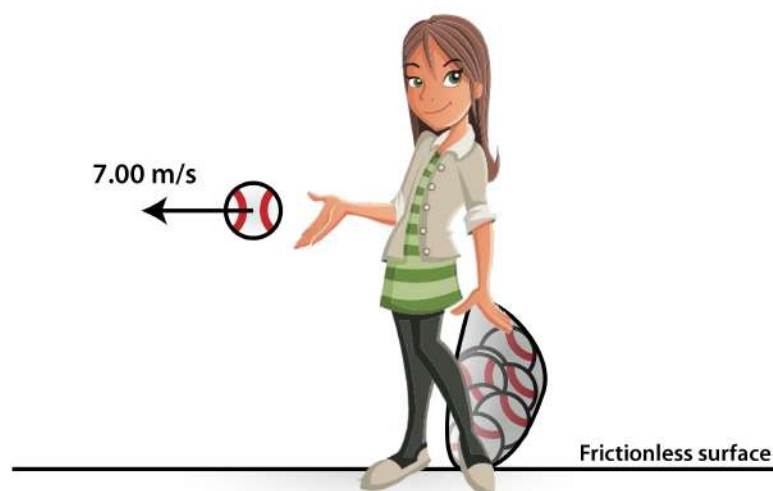



FIGURE 7.12

Using Conservation of Momentum, $p_i = p_f$ we have:

$$0 = (0.145\ kg)\left(7.00\frac{m}{s}\right) + (31.555\ kg)v_{gf}$$

$$v_{gf} = \frac{(-0.145\ kg)\left(7.00\frac{m}{s}\right)}{31.555\ kg} = \frac{-1.015\frac{kg*m}{s}}{31.555\ kg} = -0.03216 \rightarrow -0.0322\frac{m}{s} \rightarrow -3.22\frac{cm}{s}$$

Notice that the solution is a negative number. This indicates that the girl is moving opposite the baseball. She's moving due east. The girl's motion is, in principle, the same kind of motion that occurs when a spacecraft fires its thrusters in outer space. The thrusters eject mass (exhaust gases) in one direction, and the spaceship is propelled in the opposite direction, thus insuring that the momentum of the system is conserved. (The force on the exhaust gases and the force on the spacecraft are a Newton's Third Law pair of forces). Airplanes and jets use momentum conservation as well but they do not rely on the exhaust gases as a spacecraft must. Instead, the propellers of an airplane act to push air toward the back of the plane, thus pushing the plane forward. A jet does effectively the same thing, only it uses its turbine to move the air backward. Though ejection of the exhaust in each case gives the airplane and jet a bit of forward motion, this is not the primary cause of their forward motion as it is with a spacecraft. The resulting motion that occurs due to mass ejection is often referred to as recoil.

A final comment on Example 7.3.4: It is clear that throwing one baseball did not give the girl an appreciable velocity. Had she kept throwing balls, her velocity would continue to increase. Even so, considering the very small increase in her velocity after throwing one ball, it seems clear that in order to increase her velocity appreciably, she would need to throw many baseballs. This highlights the enormous fuel requirements for spacecraft. The recoil needed for a spacecraft to leave earth is considerable. In fact, 90% of the mass of a spacecraft is fuel! It is an interesting problem, though, beyond the scope of this book, to show that ejecting mass continuously rather than all at once (for example, throwing one baseball at a time as opposed to all of them at once) will achieve a greater recoil velocity.

Check Your Understanding

1a. If a second baseball is thrown from the bag, and another computation is done in order to determine the girl's resulting velocity, what is the initial momentum of the system?

Answer: It depends!

(1) If she takes the ground as her reference frame she now has a nonzero momentum. In fact, her momentum (along with the remaining 9 baseballs and bag) has the same magnitude as the momentum of the first baseball that she threw: $1.015\frac{kg*m}{s}$

(2) Nothing prevents her from assuming that she is at rest with an initial momentum of zero and the ground is in motion moving away from her with a speed of 3.22 cm/s.

1b. Is it as easy for the girl to throw the second ball with a velocity on 7.00 m/s due west relative to the ground as it was for her to throw the first ball?

Answer: No, she must throw the baseball with a bit more force. Remember that she is moving 3.22 cm/s due west and she throws the baseball due east. If she threw the baseball exactly as before, its velocity relative to the ground would be a bit less:

$7.00\frac{m}{s} - 0.0322\frac{m}{s} = 6.968 \rightarrow 6.97\frac{m}{s}$

(3) The resulting velocity of the girl of Example 7.3.3 is quite small. However, should she keep throwing more baseballs, her speed relative to the ground will keep increasing

Center of Mass

The fact that momentum is conserved only if the net force on the system is zero has a rather interesting implication. Recall Newton's First Law:

An object at rest stays at rest or an object in motion stays in the same state of motion, unless acted upon by an unbalanced force, that is, a net force not equal to zero.

In other words, if the net force on the system is zero, the system must remain moving without change. At first glance this appears a strange statement in light of what we've seen in these examples. After all, the motion of the objects in the system clearly seemed to change in these situations. The car that was hit from behind in Example 6 certainly did not remain at rest, and neither did the girl in Example 7. The key to understanding that everything remains in the same state is to look at the system, not the parts of the system.

In order to analyze the motion of the system, we must focus our attention on the **center of mass** of the system. It turns out that it is the center of mass of the system that obeys Newton's First Law.

The location of the center of mass of a system can be thought of as the balancing point of the system. For example, if you place your figure at the 50-cm mark under a meter stick, the meter stick will balance on your finger. In effect, it is the point at which all of the mass of the system is concentrated. Say, we have two identical 5-g marbles placed 16 cm apart from each other. If we imagine a fine wire rigidly connecting the two marbles, we could balance the system by placing our finger at a distance of 8-cm from each marble. The 50-cm position of the meter stick and the 8-cm position between the two marbles are the center of mass of each system. For the simple case of two-mass systems where the masses are identical, the center of mass will always be at the geometric center of the system. If the masses are not identical, finding the exact location of the center of mass becomes a bit more challenging and we will not consider it here.

The Center of Mass and Newton's First Law

Illustrative Example 7.3.5

In **Figure** 7.13, block A with mass m is moving with a velocity 10 m/s and block B with the same mass m is at rest. The two blocks are initially separated by a distance of 100 m. (a) Where is the center of mass (CM) of the two-block system? (b) What is the velocity of the center of mass of the two-block system?

Answers:

a. Since both blocks have the same mass and are separated by a distance of 100-m, the center of the two-block

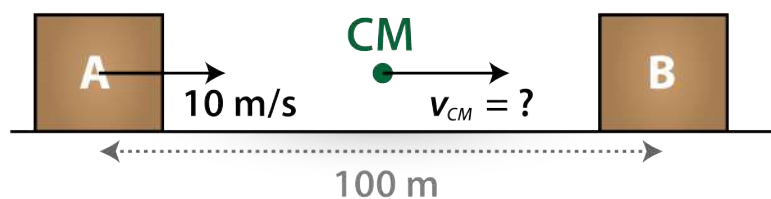



FIGURE 7.13

system is located at the 50-m position.

b. In order to determine the velocity of the center of mass we will allow an arbitrary amount of time to pass, say 2.0 s, and then determine the new position of block *A*. Once we have this position we will find the new location of the center of mass of the two-block system and find the displacement of the center of mass. Then, the velocity of the center of mass can easily be determined.

7.4 Collisions and Conservation Principles

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the difference between elastic and inelastic collisions.
- Be able to solve problems using both energy and momentum conservation.

Vocabulary

- **elastic collisions:** Collisons in which we assume the kinetic energy is conserved.

- **inelastic collisions:** Collisions where kinetic energy is not conserved.

Introduction

There is a common misconception in the study of the conservation of momentum. It is often believed that if the kinetic energy of a system is not conserved, neither is the momentum. This is not true. Kinetic energy can be lost in many ways. When objects collide, some of their kinetic energy invariably is transformed into heat and sound. However, if the losses are negligible we often assume that the kinetic energy is conserved. Collisions in which we assume the kinetic energy is conserved are called **elastic collisions.** Collisions where the kinetic energy is not conserved are called **inelastic collisions**.

Elastic Collisions

We have already encountered elastic collisions, but we haven't used the term yet. The collision between the two marbles in a previous example was an elastic collision. The kinetic energy of the first marble was completely transferred to the second marble.

As we have already seen, conservation principles are very useful in solving problems that would be very difficult to solve using Newton's Laws. It is much simpler if we need only concern ourselves with the initial and final state of a system rather than needing a detailed mathematical description of the intervening motion.

Illustrative Example 7.4.1

A cube of mass 10.0-kg moving with a velocity of 7.00 m/s along a frictionless horizontal surface collides elastically with a stationary ball of mass 4.00-kg as shown in **Figure** 7.14. What are the final velocities of the cube and the ball?

Answer:

There are two unknowns in the problem, v_{cf} and v_{bf}. We will therefore need a system of two equations to solve the problem. We can readily assume that the net force acting on the system is zero and therefore the momentum of the system is conserved. Additionally, we can further assume that the kinetic energy of the system is conserved since the collision is elastic. Thus, we can generate two equations and two unknowns using the Conservation of Momentum

and the Conservation of Energy. It will be easier to solve this problem in general terms rather than using the given values at first.

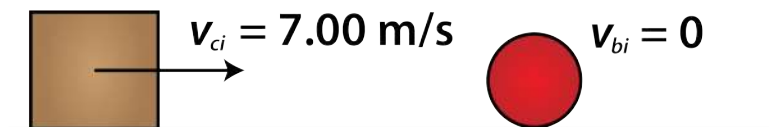



FIGURE 7.14

Using Conservation of Momentum:

$$p_i = m_c v_{ci} + m_b(0)$$
$$p_f = m_c v_{cf} + m_b v_{bf}$$
$$p_i = p_f \rightarrow m_c v_{ci} + m_b(0) = m_c v_{cf} + m_b v_{bf}$$
$$\text{EQUATION 1} \rightarrow m_c v_{ci} = m_c v_{cf} + m_b v_{bf}$$

Using Conservation of Energy:

$$KE_i = \frac{1}{2} m_c {v_{ci}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_b (0)^2$$
$$KE_f = \frac{1}{2} m_c {v_{cf}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_b {v_{bf}}^2$$
$$KE_i = KE_f \rightarrow \frac{1}{2} m_c {v_{ci}}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m_c {v_{cf}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m_b {v_{bf}}^2 \rightarrow m_c {v_{ci}}^2 = m_c {v_{cf}}^2 + m_b {v_{bf}}^2$$
$$\text{EQUATION 2} \rightarrow m_c {v_{ci}}^2 = m_c {v_{cf}}^2 + m_b {v_{bf}}^2$$

Equation 2 can be re-expressed as: $m_c(v_{ci} - v_{cf})(v_{ci} + v_{cf}) = m_b {v_{bf}}^2$

Equation 1 can be re-expressed as: $m_c(v_{ci} - v_{cf}) = m_b v_{bf}$

By dividing Equation 2 on the left by $m_c(v_{ci} - v_{cf})$ and on the right by $m_b v_{bf}$ we arrive at:

$v_{ci} + v_{cf} = v_{bf} \rightarrow$ EQUATION 3

The velocities v_{cf} and v_{bf} can be found by using Equation 3 and Equation 1.

$$v_{cf} = \frac{m_c - m_b}{m_c + m_b} v_{ci} = \frac{10.0\ kg - 4.0\ kg}{10.0\ kg + 4.0\ kg}\left(7.00\frac{m}{s}\right) = 3.00\frac{m}{s}$$
$$v_{bf} = \frac{2m_c}{m_c + m_b} v_{ci} = \frac{2(10.0\ kg)}{10.0\ kg + 4.0\ kg}\left(7.00\frac{m}{s}\right) = 10.0\frac{m}{s}$$

Check Your Understanding

1a. Verify the equations found for v_{cf} and v_{bf} of Example 7.4.1

1b. Verify that both momentum and energy are conserved in Example 7.4.1.

Answers: You should be able to show that $p_i = p_f = 70\frac{kg*m}{s}$ and $KE_i = KE_f = 245\ J$

2a. If both masses in Example 7.4.1 are identical, does the equation for v_{cf} yield a reasonable result?

Answer: Yes. If the masses are identical, then v_{cf} must be zero as the equation shows. The result of the collision is that all the momentum of m_c is transferred to m_b.

2b. If m_c and m_b of Example 7.4.1 can be altered as we wish, is possible for the final velocity of m_b to be three times the initial velocity of m_c?

Answer: No. The limiting value of v_{bf} is $2v_{ci}$. In principle, it can take on values in the range $(0, 2v_{ci})$.

(Hint: Consider what happens as m_c grows infinitely large and m_b remains constant in the equation for v_{bf}.)

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ElasticCollisionOfTwoSpheres/

Inelastic Collisions

If the collision is elastic, then the sum of the kinetic energies of the objects after the collision must be equal to the kinetic energy of the moving object before the collision.

Illustrative Example 7.4.2

In **Figure** 7.15 block B is initially at rest and block A is moving with a velocity of 10.00 m/s. Both blocks have masses of 3.00-kg and move together after the blocks collide. Determine if the kinetic energy of the system is conserved, and if not, determine the amount of heat generated in the collision.

FIGURE 7.15

Answer:

The initial kinetic energy of Block A is

$$KE_i = \frac{1}{2}mv_{Ai}{}^2 = \frac{1}{2}(3.00\ kg)\left(10.0\frac{m}{s}\right)^2 = 150\ J$$

The final kinetic energy of the system is

$$KE_f = \frac{1}{2}(m_A + m_B)\left(\frac{v_{Ai}}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(6.00\ kg)(5.00)^2 = 75.0\ J$$

Clearly, the kinetic energy is not conserved and, therefore, the collision is not elastic. In fact, 50% of the kinetic energy is lost in the collision and 75.0 J of kinetic energy is transformed into heat. Do you think it is possible to lose more than 50% of the energy is an inelastic collision?

Illustrative Example 7.4.3

Awesome Physics Man (A) and his evil twin brother Bad Physics Man (B) each have mass m and speed v. They approach each other at right angles as shown in **Figure** 7.16. The two collide in mortal combat and fly off together. What is their final momentum $\vec{p}$ immediately after the collision? We are asked for a vector quantity and therefore must provide both magnitude and direction.

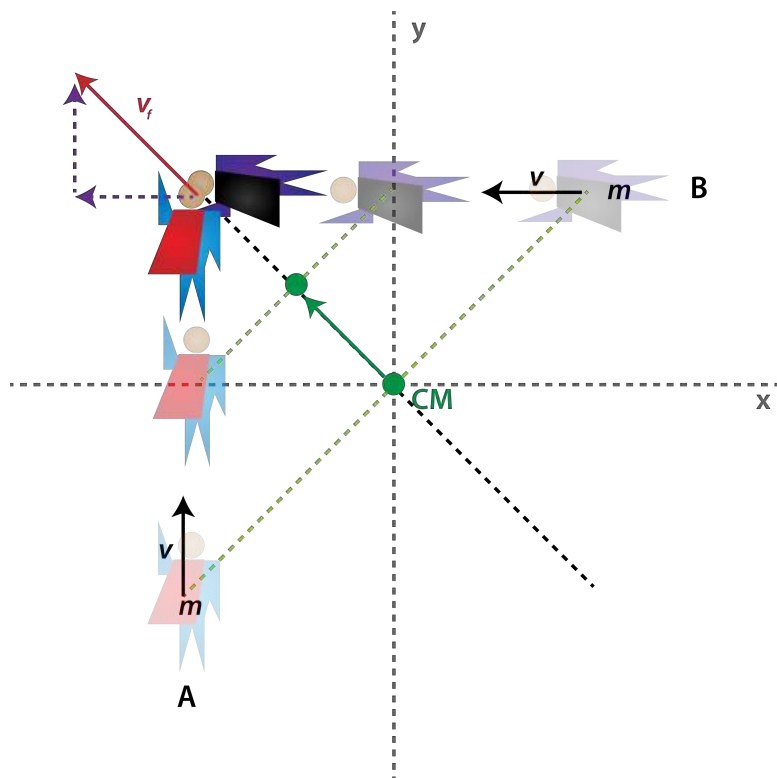



FIGURE 7.16

Answers:

Magnitude of momentum

This example is a bit different than the previous ones we have encountered because it takes place in two-dimensions. Still, the net force on the system is zero, so the total momentum of the system remains conserved. A has momentum mv directed due north and B has momentum mv directed due west before they collide. After the collision, they must still have the same momentum north and the same momentum west (momentum must stay conserved). We have set up a coordinate system is **Figure** 7.16 showing the direction of motion after the collision. The final momentum must be composed of a northern-component of momentum of mv_{north} and a western-component of momentum mv_{west}. Since the components are at right angles, we can use the Pythagorean Theorem to calculate the magnitude of the momentum. Dropping the subscripts on the velocities, we have $\sqrt{(mv)^2+(mv)^2} = \sqrt{2}mv$.

Direction of momentum

Remember that in the absence of a net force, the center of mass of a system cannot change direction or speed. This implies that the center of mass must continue to travel along the black dashed line of **Figure** 7.16, both before and after the collision. Since the components of the resultant vector are equal in magnitude, the direction of the resultant vector must be a 45-degree angle. Using the orientation of the axes in **Figure** 7.16, the direction of the brothers after colliding is $90° + 45° = 135°$ counterclockwise as measured from the positive $x-$axis. We note that the orientation of the axes are arbitrary; the $x-$axis could just as well have been along the direction of motion of the center of mass. The solution could have also been found using any of the trigonometric functions.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CenterOfMassOfNPoints/

1. Momentum is a vector quantity; $\vec{p}$ defined as the product of mass and velocity: $\vec{p} = m\vec{v}$
2. The impulse $F\Delta t$ is equal to the change in momentum $\Delta p : F\Delta t = \Delta p$
3. Momentum is a conserved quantity. For any isolated system the change in momentum of the system is zero: $\Delta p = 0$
4. The center of mass of an isolated system always moves with constant velocity.
5. The kinetic energy of a system is conserved in elastic collisions.
6. The kinetic energy of a system is not conserved in inelastic collisions; however, momentum is still conserved!
7. In solving for momentum in two dimensions, the momentum must be conserved in each direction.

7.5 References

1. Tinou Bao. http://www.flickr.com/photos/tinou/243678728/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Thomas Gass. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Greycat.jpg . CC BY 2.5
5. Mark Bray. http://www.flickr.com/photos/braydawg/185092747/ . CC BY 2.0
6. (A) Brent Moore; (B) Brian (Flickr:bsv1990). (A) http://www.flickr.com/photos/brent_nashville/132579466/; (B) http://www.flickr.com/photos/bsv1990/2435674084/ . CC BY 2.0
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Bat and ball: Image copyright Wally Stemberger, 2014; Graph: CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. http://www.shutterstock.com . Bat and ball: Used under license from Shutterstock.com; Graph: CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
9. Image copyright Johanna Goodyear, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014; modified by Raymond Chou (CK-12 Foundation). http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
13. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 8 Angular Motion and Statics

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 8.1

We have looked at circular motion using the same measures as linear motion. To look at rotation in more detail, though, we need to work in rotational units - measuring the angle rotated through, the angular sped, and angular acceleration.

8.1 Angular Momentum

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand what angular momentum is and how to use it in solving problems.

Vocabulary

- **angular momentum:** The product of rotational inertia and angular velocity.
- **angular velocity:** How quickly an object is turning.
- **axis of rotation:** The center around which an object turns, which might or might not be outside of the object.
- **radian:** The distance around the edge of a circle of radius 1.
- **revolution:** An object turning around a center that may or may not be outside of the object.
- **rotation:** An object turning without moving its center of mass, like a spinning top.
- **rotational inertia:** The difficult required to turn an object.

Introduction

Besides moving through space in a given direction, a solid object can spin or turn. This requires new measures of motion beyond position, velocity, and acceleration – as well as some new terminology. Starting with the new terms:

- **Rotation** means an object turning without moving its center of mass, like a spinning top.
- **Revolution** means an object turning around a center (or **axis**) that might or might not be outside of the object.

So what makes an object more difficult to turn? The difficulty it requires to push an object through space is called inertia or more precisely translational inertia. Inertia is equal to mass. The dificulty required to turn an object is called **rotational inertia** or sometimes "moment of inertia". This is symbolized by the letter I (for inertia).

Try this out. Take a long object like a broomstick or baseball bat. Lay it flat and try to spin it with one hand. This can be difficult. Now instead, stand it upright and just give a twist with your fingers to turn it around. The same object is more difficult to spin one way than the other. Rotational inertia depends on both the mass and the mass distribution of an object. Mass closer to the axis is easier to turn. Mass farther from the axis is harder to turn.

Angular velocity is defined as how quickly an object is turning, and is symbolized by the Greek letter omega: ω. In physics, angular velocity is generally measured in one of two units:

- Revolutions per second, or rev/s. A complete rotation or revolution is equivalent to motion through 360-degrees. An object that turns around 30 times in one minute has an angular velocity of 0.5 rev/s.
- Radians per second or rad/s. A **radian** is the distance around the edge of a circle of radius 1. It takes 2π radians to complete one circle, so $2\pi-$radians are equivalent to 1 revolution (360 degrees).

Click the following link for a demonstration: http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/AngularVelocityOfACompactDisc/ .

Linear momentum is defined as the product of mass and linear velocity $(p = mv)$. In the same way, **angular momentum** is defined as the product of rotational inertia and angular velocity. The formula for angular momentum is stated as:

$$L = I\omega$$

where I is the rotational inertia (a term related to the distribution of mass) and the Greek letter omega ω is the angular velocity. Just like momentum in a given direction, objects undergoing rotation obey a similar conservation principle called conservation of angular momentum, which can be expressed as $I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f$.

An important difference is that in linear momentum, the inertia is always the same. In angular momentum, the rotational inertia I and the angular velocity ω can change. Perhaps you've noticed that when a spinning figure skater pulls in her arms close to her body, her rotational velocity increases. Or perhaps you've seen a high driver spring off the diving board, tuck his legs close to his body, and spin quickly. What's going on? In each case the person brings more of their mass closer to the axis about which their body spins. The result is that their angular velocity increases.

The conservation of angular momentum ensures that, should the mass in the system move closer to the axis of rotation, the system will spin (rotate) more quickly. A classic demonstration of the conservation of angular momentum is shown in the following video. As the student in the figure moves the weights inward toward his body, his angular velocity increases, but his angular momentum stays constant.

Check Your Understanding

Observe the following video:

MEDIA

Click image to the left or use the URL below.

URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/109737

The system (which includes the student, weights, and spinning seat) pictured in the video above has an initial rotational inertia I_i and an initial angular velocity ω_i 2.00 rev/s. After the student pulls the weights toward his chest, the final rotational inertia of the system is only 80% of its initial rotational inertia- that is $0.800I_i$. Assuming that the angular momentum of the system is conserved, find the final angular velocity of the system.

Answer:

$L_i = L_f \rightarrow I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f \rightarrow I_i\left(2.00\frac{rev}{s}\right) = 0.800I_i\omega_f \rightarrow \omega_f = 2.50\frac{rev}{s}$

8.2 Torque

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand what torque is and how to use it in solving problems.

Vocabulary

- **axis of rotation:** A line drawn perpendicular to the plane of the object's rotation through the point about which the object rotates.
- **lever arm and moment arm:** The handle/arm of a wrench.
- **rigid bodies:** Objects that do not undergo any deformation when subject to a force (or forces). Rigid bodies are in an idealized state.
- **torque:** The component of a force applied perpendicular to a lever arm. Torque is the product of the length of a lever arm and the force applied perpendicular to a lever arm. Torque is a scalar quantity and can have clockwise or counter-clockwise direction.

Rigid Bodies and Torque

We define a **rigid body** as an object that does not undergo any deformation when subjected to a force (or set of forces). This is an idealized state since all objects deform a bit under the application of any force. Even a block of steel resting on a slab of concrete is deformed slightly by the force of gravity- it tends to flatten. But unless the block is subject, for example, to a huge compressive force, the amount of deformation (flattening) is considered negligible under "normal" conditions, and the block is assumed a rigid body. With the introduction of rigid bodies, we also remove the restriction that the forces experienced by such bodies are applied at their geometric center.

We will now consider forces applied at any point. For example, we might be asked to describe the resulting motion of a meter stick resting on a frictionless tabletop that is subject to a force F applied at its 10-cm mark, as in **Figure** 8.2. How do you think the meter stick will move? What does experience or intuition tell you? Even though we do not have a frictionless tabletop in our possession, we can certainly imagine what the motion would be like. Did you guess the meter stick would rotate about its center? The off-center force F in **Figure** 8.2 causes the stick to rotate about this point (we will ignore any possible translation).

A line drawn perpendicular to the plane of the object's rotation through the point P about which the object rotates is called an **axis of rotation** (see **Figure** 8.2).

As the force F moves closer to the point P, its ability to rotate the meter stick decreases. If the force F is applied at point P, the meter stick can only translate. Thus the point of application of the force F with respect to the axis of rotation determines the ease with which we can turn (rotate) an object. This brings us to the notion of torque.

Torque: Force and Lever Arm

The amount of force applied, as well as the location and the direction of the force with respect to the axis of rotation, determines the relative difficulty in causing a rotation. Have you ever seen someone extend the handle of a wrench in an effort to turn a stubborn screw or bolt? The longer the arm of the wrench the easier it is to turn the bolt. We

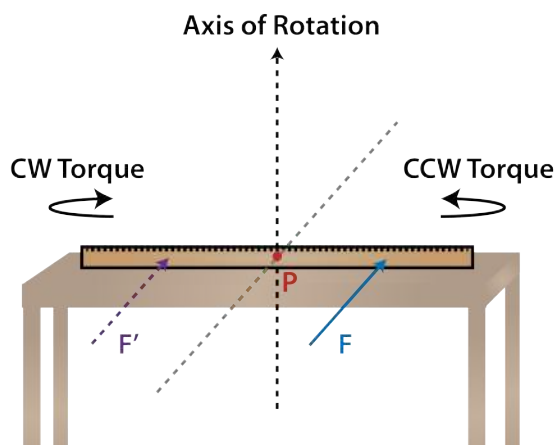



FIGURE 8.2

call the arm a **lever arm** or a **moment arm**. The component of a force applied perpendicular to a lever arm produces a **torque**. The torque is the product of the length of the lever arm and the force applied perpendicular to the lever arm. In **Figure** 8.2 the force F is applying a torque. For our purposes, we will consider torque to be a scalar quantity possessing clockwise and counterclockwise directions.

The Direction of Torque

We define the direction of the torque by noting clockwise (CW) and counterclockwise (CCW) motion of an object as a result of an applied force. Whether the object actually rotates or not is unimportant. We ask how the object *would* move were it free to do so. For example, in **Figure** 8.2 the force F would rotate the meter stick in a counterclockwise direction. This is the same direction we turn a jar lid in order to loosen it.

Check Your Understanding

If a force F' was applied parallel to F, but to the left of P (see **Figure** 8.2), in what direction would the meter stick turn?

Answer: The meter stick would turn clockwise.

You may be familiar with the expression: "Righty tighty, lefty loosey."

We define the counterclockwise direction as positive and the clockwise direction as negative. The sign of the direction is based upon the Right Hand Rule. To understand this rule, hold your right hand with your thumb pointed up and curl your fingers into a fist. Notice that the direction your fingers curl in is counterclockwise (you're looking down). We define the upward direction in which the thumb points as positive, and the corresponding counterclockwise torque as positive. If you turn your hand such that your thumb now points down and curl your fingers into a fist, you'll see your fingers turn clockwise. We define the downward direction in which your thumb points as negative, and the corresponding clockwise torque as negative. (For those readers who have grown up using only digital clocks, the term clockwise originated from the rotational direction that the hands of an analog clock move; counterclockwise being the reverse rotational direction.)

Mathematical Definition of Torque

We can state the magnitude of the torque in two ways:

(1) The product of the perpendicular distance from the axis of rotation r (to the applied force) and the perpendicular component of the force $F \sin\theta$.

(2) The product of the perpendicular distance $r \sin\theta$ to the direction in which the force acts, and F.

Both (1) and (2) are equivalent to the product of r, F, and the sine of the angle between them. The symbol for torque is the Greek letter tau (τ). Thus, we can write $\tau = rF \sin\theta$, where the angle θ is the angle between vectors r and F. If the angle between r and F is 90° then the torque is simply $\tau = rF$. We can see by the definition of the torque that the units of torque are *m*N* though they are usually expressed as *N*m* but never as joules even though they are dimensionally equivalent.

Check Your Understanding

1. An engineer is trying to turn a difficult nut. Using a long wrench, he applies a 105 N force at a distance 30.0-cm from the nut shown in **Figure** 8.3. What is the magnitude of the torque applied by the plumber?

Answer: The lever arm is 30 cm and the angle between the force and the lever arm is 90-degrees. $\tau = Fr \sin\theta = (105\text{N})(0.30\text{m}) \sin 90^\circ \rightarrow 31.5\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}$

FIGURE 8.3

2. If the minimum torque required turning the pipe in **Figure** 8.3 is 31.5 N·m,, could a force smaller than 105 N be used? **Answer:** Yes. The workman could extend the length of the handle of the tool he's using to turn the pipe. The longer the arm of the tool, the smaller the force required. You have probably experienced this phenomenon yourself. If you have ever had a problem turning a screw, increasing the thickness of the screw driver handle enables you to provide the same torque with a smaller force. The fatter the handle, the farther your hand is from the axis of rotation, and so the smaller the force needed to turn the screw. This is how a lever works. For example, the longer the lever arm on a bottle opener, the smaller the force needed to pry the bottle cap open. You may have heard the famous dictum of Archimedes: "Give me a place to stand on and with a lever I will move the world." In other words, with a long enough lever arm, even the weakest person can move a tremendous weight.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PrincipleOfTheLever/

Illustrative Example 8.1.1

A door of width 0.810 m requires a minimum torque of *14.47 m*N* in order to open. The door knob is positioned 5.70 cm from the left edge of the door.

(a) What minimum force is required to open the door?

(b) If the doorknob is moved to the center of the door, what is the minimum force required in opening the door? Assume that the force acts perpendicular to the plane of the door. See **Figure** 8.4.

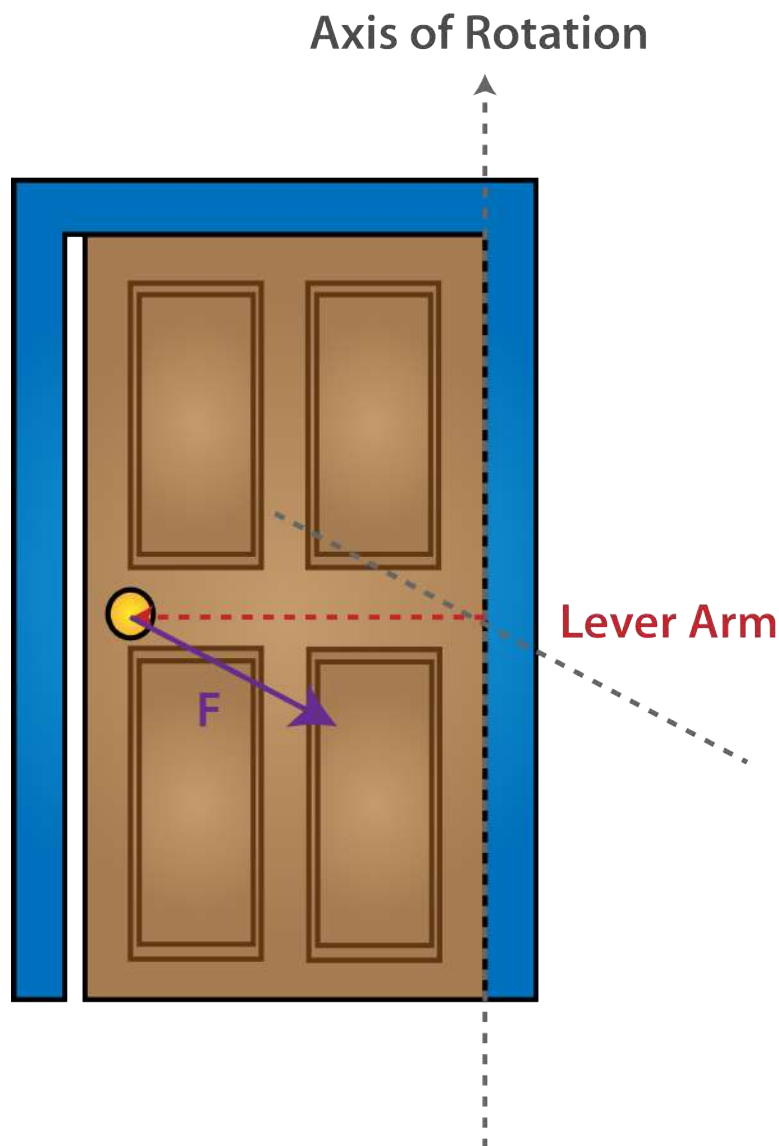



FIGURE 8.4

Answers:

(a.) The force is perpendicular to the lever arm so $\tau = rF = 14.47\ m*N$. Since the doorknob is 5.7 cm from the left edge of the door, the distance from the axis of rotation is $r = 0.81m - 0.057m = 0.753m$. The force required is then:

$F = \frac{14.47\ m*N}{0.753\ m} = 19.216 \rightarrow 19.2\ N$

(b.) Since the doorknob is now in the center of the door, it is $\frac{0.81\ m}{2} = 0.405\ m$ from the axis of rotation. Therefore, the force required is $\frac{14.47\ m*N}{0.405\ m} = 35.73 \rightarrow 35.7\ N$

How much force would be necessary to open the door if the doorknob were placed along the axis of rotation?

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/TorqueExertedOpeningADoor/

Illustrative Example 8.1.2

In **Figure** 8.5, a force F of 95.0 N is applied to a hinged rod of length $r = 2.2$ m. The angle between F and r is 130-degrees. Find the magnitude of the torque that the force F exerts upon the rod.

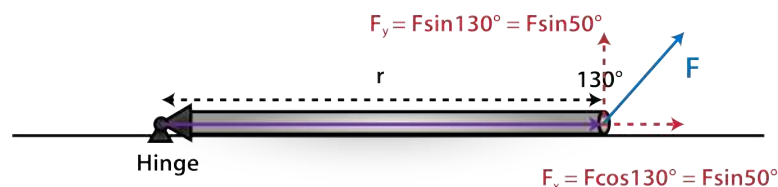



FIGURE 8.5

Answer:

Once again, $\tau = r(F\sin\theta)$, but this time since $\theta \neq 90°$, the equation does not reduce to $\tau = rF$.

Therefore, $\tau = (2.20m)(95.0N)\sin 130° = 160.1\ m*N$

Check Your Understanding

1. Why do we not calculate the torque using the cosine of the angle between r and F?

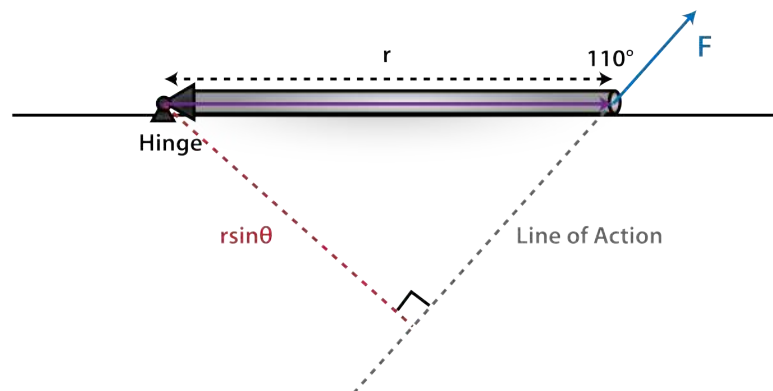
Answer: The cosine of the angle would give the component of force that acts to pull an object, not turn it. The components of F in **Figure** 8.5 are drawn with red dashes. It should be clear that the perpendicular component (F_y) is the component of force used for rotation. Hence, $\tau = r(F\sin\theta)$

2. Mathematically, the definition of torque can also be expressed as $\tau = (r\sin\theta)F$. In other words, we can always assume that F, rather than a component of the force, is responsible for rotation. How can this be?

Answer: It helps to look at what is often referred to as the line of action of the force. The line of action is represented in **Figure** 8.6 as the black dashed line that represents the direction in which F acts.

We can see from the figure that $r\sin\theta$ is the perpendicular distance to the line of action . Thus we can consider the torque as $\tau = (r\sin\theta)F$.

FIGURE 8.6

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/torque

8.3 Two Conditions of Equilibrium

Objective

The student will:

- Understand the necessity for two conditions of equilibrium to ensure static equilibrium.

Vocabulary

- **rotational equilibrium:** A state in which net torque is equal to zero.
- **static equilibrium:** The state in which a system is stable and at rest. To achieve complete static equilibrium, a system must have both rotational equilibrium (have a net torque of zero) and translational equilibrium (have a net force of zero).
- **translational equilibrium:** A state in which net force is equal to zero.

Introduction

The word equilibrium means balance. In particular, **static equilibrium** means that a system is stable and at rest. This means that the net force must be zero –called **translational equilibrium**. However, to be complete the net torque must also be zero –called **rotational equilibrium**. For complete static equilibrium, both of these two conditions must be fulfilled.

Consider the Free Body Diagram (FBD) in the **Figure** 8.7. A meter stick is lying on a smooth flat surface with two equal and opposite forces acting upon it. It is clear that the horizontal forces $\sum F_x = F_{net\ x} = 0$ and the vertical forces $\sum F_y = F_{net\ y} = 0$, and therefore, the meter stick is either at rest or moving with constant velocity. We will assume that it is at rest.

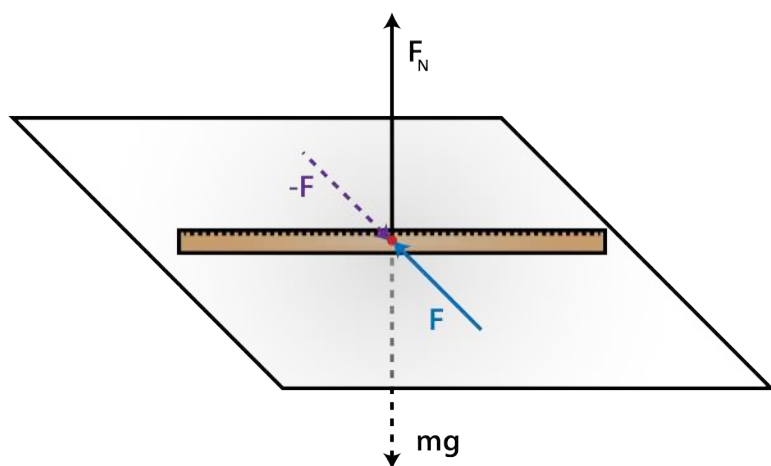



FIGURE 8.7

We will now apply the forces to the ends of the meter stick.

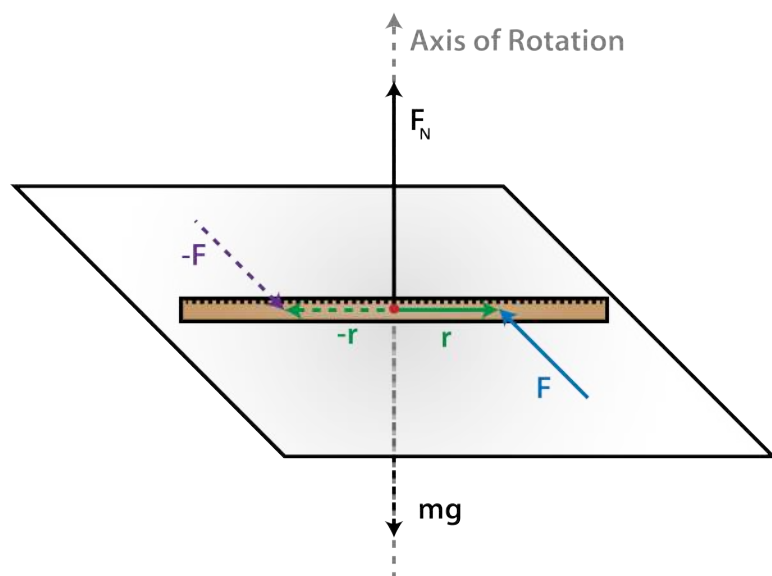



FIGURE 8.8

As we can see in **Figure** 8.8, forces $-F$ and F will cause the meter stick to rotate with an increasingly angular velocity since both forces now act to turn the meter stick in the same counterclockwise direction. The meter stick has a net torque working on it equal to $\tau = 2rF \sin 90^\circ = 2rF$.

It should be noted that just as an object in translational equilibrium can be at rest or moving with constant translational velocity, so too an object in rotational equilibrium can be at rest or rotating with constant angular velocity. Here, though, we will concern ourselves only with the special case of static equilibrium.

Two conditions of equilibrium must be imposed to ensure than an object remains in static equilibrium. Not only must the sum of all the forces acting upon the object be zero, but the sum of all the torques acting upon the object must also be zero. That is, both static translational and static rotational equilibrium conditions must be satisfied.

Condition 1: $\sum F_x = 0, \sum F_y = 0$, translational equilibrium

Condition 2: $\sum \tau = 0$, rotational equilibrium

8.4 Applications of Equilibrium Conditions

Objective

The student will:

- Use the conditions of equilibrium to solve problems.

Vocabulary

- **fulcrum/pivot:** The point about which a seesaw rotates.

Introduction

If you're planning to study structural engineering or have hopes of becoming an architect, then at some point in your education you will need to take up the study of statics. Structural engineers are involved in designing roads, bridges, and large buildings. Architects must have an understanding of what is structurally possible when they design a structure. It is not uncommon for beginning structural engineering students to design structures that fail. The forces necessary to maintain the structure they have designed are improperly balanced and the conditions for static equilibrium are not achieved. Fortunately, with the advent of computers, very fast feedback for students is possible with the dynamic mathematical modeling of computer-aided design and drafting (CADD) software systems. Students can quickly see if their designs are feasible.

The study of statics also involves topics such as the strength of the materials. A building may be designed correctly and it may be in static equilibrium, but if the materials used in construction are of poor quality, failure may occur from a "stress overload." Very bad weather conditions may also add too much weight in the form of ice to a structure, causing the structure to fail. Every once in a while, we hear about such tragedies on the news.

In this section we look at some simple systems that we wish to keep in static equilibrium. In solving the problems of this section, we will always use the location of the center of mass of each object in order to determine the distance between the axis of rotation and the applied force.

Illustrative Example 1: The Seesaw

In **Figure** 8.9 Jessica has mass m_e of 27.0-kg and is located 0.500 m from the left end of the seesaw. Boris has a mass m_b of 33.0-kg and is located on the right end of the seesaw. If the seesaw is to remain balanced as in **Figure** 8.9, how far from the center of seesaw must Boris be seated? The seesaw is 5.50 m long and has a uniformly distributed mass m_s of 8.30-kg.

Let us first draw a Free Body Diagram of the situation showing the forces on the seesaw.

The point, P in **Figure** 8.10 is called the **pivot**, or the **fulcrum**. It is the point about which the seesaw rotates. The axis of rotation is perpendicular to your computer screen, through P. If we choose the pivot P, then the torque

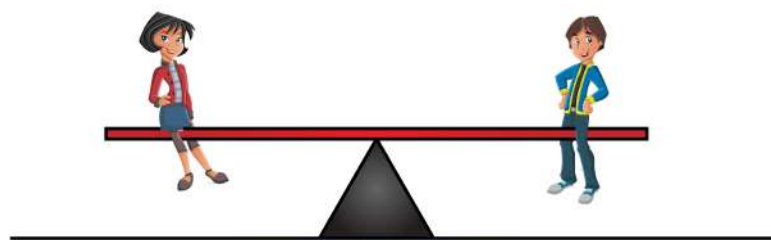



FIGURE 8.9

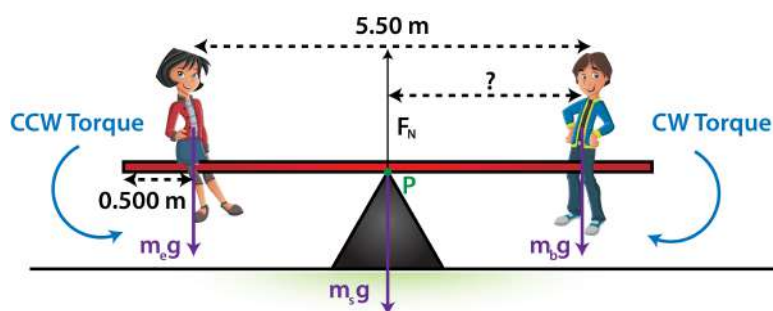



FIGURE 8.10

contributed by the seesaw will be zero since the center of mass of the seesaw is at the pivot P, thus simplifying our calculations. Since the problem has unknown distance, we will use the equilibrium condition $\sum \tau = 0$.

Let us first find the weights of Jessica, Boris, and the seesaw:

$m_e g = (27.\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) = 270\text{N}$

$m_b g = (33.\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) = 330\text{N}$

$m_s g = (8.3\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) = 83\text{N}$

Jessica is 0.50 m from the left edge and therefore $2.75\text{m} - 0.50\text{m}$ from the pivot P.

She contributes a (negative) clockwise torque about the pivot

P of $\tau_E = -rF \sin\theta = (2.75\text{m} - 0.50\text{m})(270\text{N}) \sin 90^\circ = -607 \text{ m} \cdot \text{N}$

Boris contributes a (positive) counterclockwise torque about the pivot

P of $\tau_B = rF \sin\theta = (x)(330\text{N}) \sin 90^\circ = (x)(330\text{N})$

$\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow (-607\text{m} \cdot \text{N}) + (330\text{N})x = 0$

$x = \frac{607\text{m} \cdot \text{N}}{330\text{N}} = 1.84m$

In order to balance the seesaw, Boris must sit 1.84 m from the pivot while Jessica sits 2.25 m from the pivot. Does this seem reasonable to you, given that Boris has a greater mass than Jessica?

Check Your Understanding

What is the value of F_N in Example 1?

Answer: Even though only one equation of equilibrium $\sum \tau = 0$ was explicitly used to solve the problem, both conditions must still be satisfied. Therefore:

$$\sum_y F = F_{net\ y} = 0 \rightarrow F_N - 264.9 - 81.4 - 323.7 = 0$$

$$F_N = 670\ N$$

Illustrative Example 2: The Daredevil

A daredevil with mass m_d of 60.0-kg walks along a uniform steel beam with mass m_b of 270.0-kg, and unknown length L. One-third of the length of the beam hangs over the edge of a tall building. How far can the daredevil walk along the beam without the beam tipping over the edge of the building? Express the answer in terms of the length L of the beam. See **Figure** 8.11.

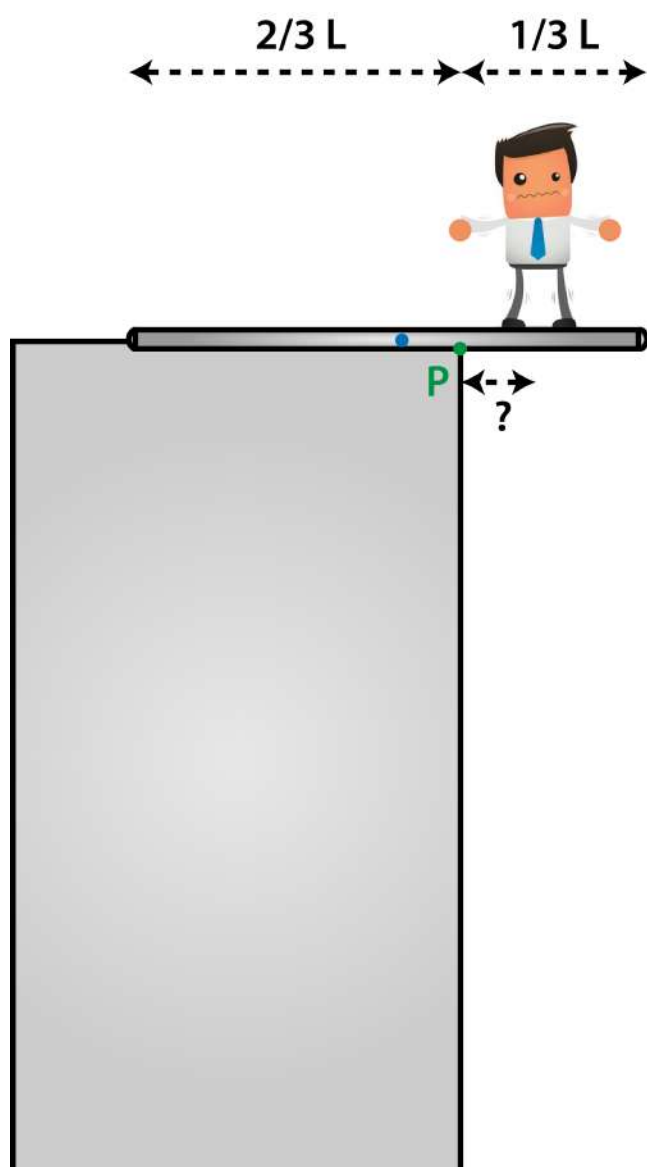



FIGURE 8.11

Answer: We begin by drawing a Free Body Diagram of the steel beam.

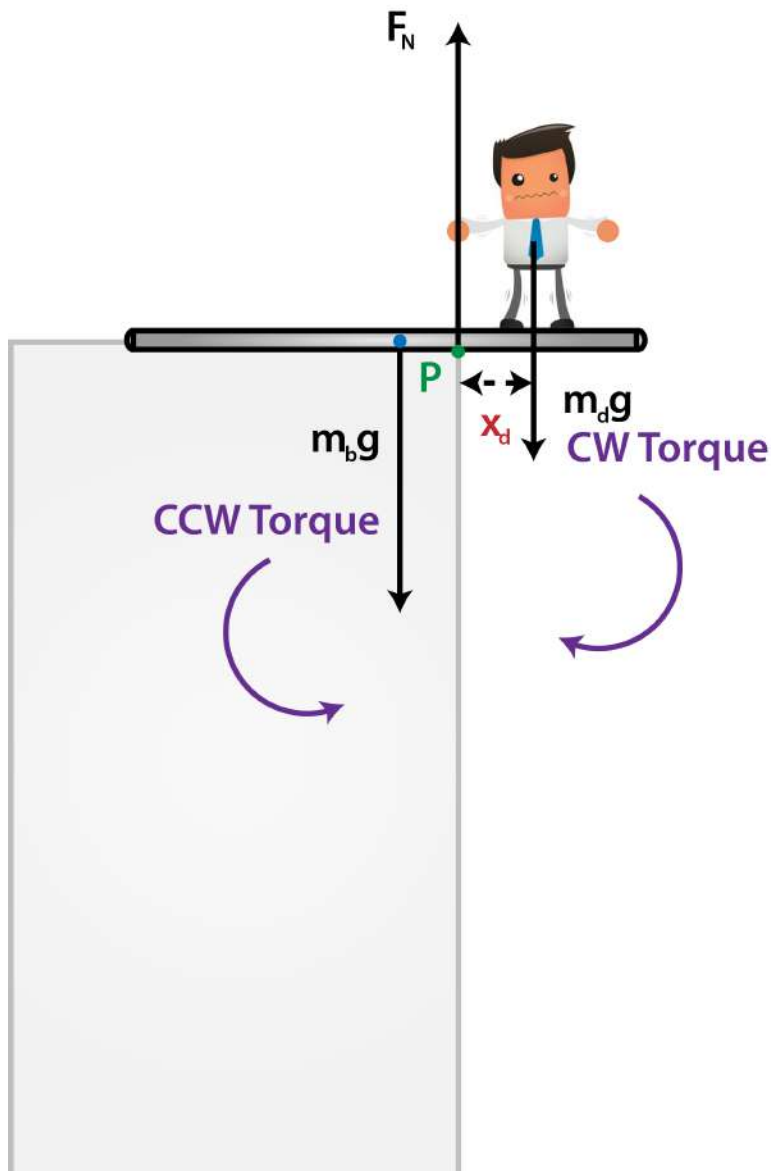



FIGURE 8.12

Once again, there is only one unknown in the problem- distance. Therefore, we will use the equilibrium condition $\sum \tau = 0$. We'll take the pivot P as our point of rotation. The clockwise torque due to the weight of the beam must balance the counterclockwise torque due to the weight of the daredevil. The angle between r and F is 90° throughout the problem so write the torques as just rF.

We must determine the distance, x_b from the center of mass of the beam to the pivot, P.

Since the location of the center of mass is $\frac{1}{2}L$ and the location of the pivot is $\frac{2}{3}L$, (see **Figure** 8.12) the distance between the center of mass and the pivot is $x_b = \frac{2}{3}L - \frac{1}{2}L = \frac{1}{6}L$. The condition for rotational equilibrium gives $\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow m_b g \frac{L}{6} - m_d g x_d = 0$.

After canceling g and substituting the givens we have

$\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow (270kg)\left(\frac{1}{6}L\right) - (60kg)x_d = 0 \rightarrow x_d = \frac{3}{4}L$

Well, just how much of a daredevil is he?

Check Your Understanding

The result of Example 2 shows that the "daredevil" cannot tip the beam. The beam only extends one-third of its length beyond the building. Even at the very edge of the beam, there is no chance of it tipping, since he would need to be $\frac{3}{4}L$ beyond the point, P.

What weight beam would he need in order to ensure that tipping begins at the end of the beam, thus making this feat a bit more worthy of a daredevil?

Answer: We wish the beam to be on the verge of tipping when the daredevil reaches the end of the beam, that is, when he is $\frac{1}{3}L$ past the pivot point. At this point, the torque due to the weight of the beam must just balance the torque due to the weight of the daredevil. The distance between the center of mass of the beam and the pivot $\frac{1}{6}L$ is one-half the distance from the pivot to the edge of the beam; note, $\frac{1}{6}$ is one-half of $\frac{1}{3}$. Therefore the beam must weigh twice that of the daredevil.

Illustrative Example 3 Trucking

A loaded 18-wheeler of mass $m_t = 3.6 \times 10^4$ kg is traveling across a flat bridge of length L, 75.0m and mass m_b of 6.0×10^6 kg. The Free Body Diagram for the bridge is shown in **Figure** 8.13. At the point the truck is 10.0m from point P what forces, F_A and F_B must the supports provide in order for the system to remain in static equilibrium?

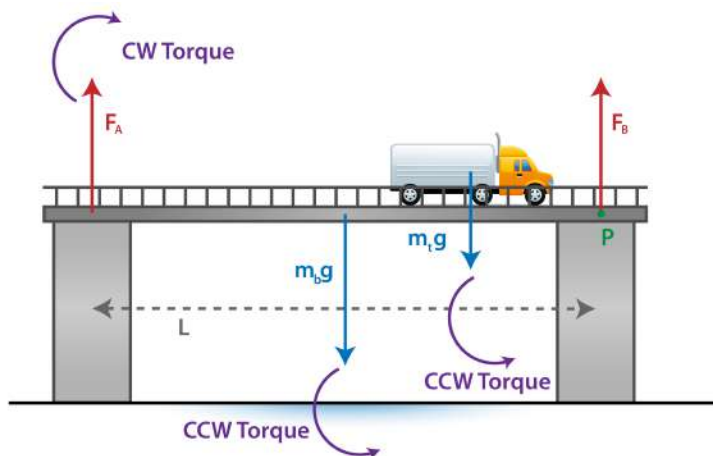



FIGURE 8.13

Answer: There are two unknowns in the problem, so we will need two independent equations in order to solve for F_A and F_B. Equation 1 below maintains that the translational equilibrium condition is satisfied, that is, that the net force on the bridge is zero.

Equation 1: $\sum F = 0 \rightarrow F_A + F_B - m_t g - m_b g = 0$

Equation 2 provides that the rotational equilibrium condition is satisfied, that is, that the net torque is zero. We will compute the torques about the point, P in **Figure** 8.13. Doing so, F_A will provide a clockwise torque and the weight of the bridge and truck will provide counterclockwise torques. Again, the angle between r and F is 90°.

Equation 2: $\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow -F_A L + m_t g x_t + m_b g \frac{L}{2} = 0$

Equation 2 is used to solve for F_A; use $g = 10\text{m/s}^2$.

$$\begin{aligned} F_A &= \frac{m_t g x_t + m_b g \frac{L}{2}}{L} = \frac{(m_t x_t + m_b \frac{L}{2})\, g}{L} \\ &= \frac{\left((3.6\times 10^4 kg)(10.0\text{m}) + (6.0\times 10^6\ \text{kg})\left(\frac{75.0\text{m}}{2}\right)\right)(10\text{m/s}^2)}{75.0\text{m}} \\ &= 3\times 10^7\text{N} \end{aligned}$$

We solve for F_B using Equation 1.

$$\begin{aligned} F_B &= m_t g + m_b g - F_A = (m_t + m_b)g - F_A \\ &= (3.6\times 10^4\text{kg} + 6.0\times 10^6\text{kg})(10\text{m/s}^2) - (3\times 10^7\text{N}) = 3.\times 10^7\text{N} \end{aligned}$$

thus $F_B = 3\times 10^7\ N$.

Does it seem reasonable that F_A and F_B should be the same to only one significant figure? In the Check you understanding section below, we do an example in which the support forces are very different.

Check Your Understanding

1a. Consider a similar example to Example 3 in **Figure** 8.14, where a uniform plank with a mass m_p of 6.00-kg and length L of 3.0 m is suspended from two bathroom scales, A and B. A set of books with mass m_b 4.00 kg rests upon the plank a distance x_b of 0.75 m from Scale A. Find the reading on each scale.

Choose your own pivot point and use $g = 10\frac{m}{s^2}$.

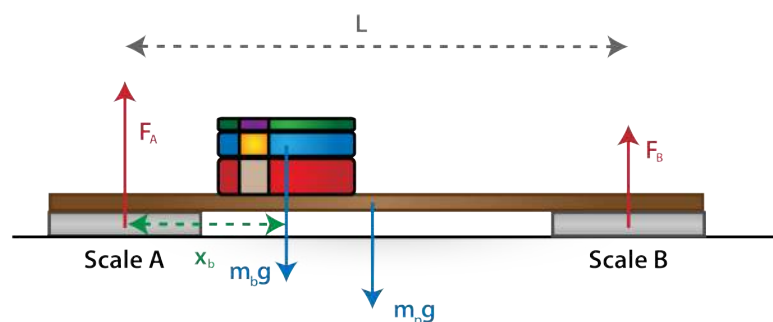



FIGURE 8.14

Forces F_A and F_B have the same magnitudes that scales A and B read.

Answers: $F_A = 60\ N$ and $F_B = 40\ N$ (Hint: use the same equations as in Example 3.)

1b. If the books were sitting on the plank over Scale A, what would each scale read?

Answer: Scale A now sees all of the weight of the books and Scale B sees none of the weight. However, each scale still supports half of the weight of the plank. Therefore Scale A reads $F_A = 40\ N + 30\ N = 70\ N$ and Scale B reads $F_B = 0\ N + 30\ N = 30\ N$.

1c. Here's a challenge! Try this on your own before looking at the solution.

The books in the above example are substituted with a remote-controlled toy tank with the same mass as the books.

Assume the tank begins at Scale A and moves with a constant velocity of 0.50 m/s from one end of the plank to the other. Find an equation that gives the reading of Scale A as a function of time.

Answer: The distance of the tank from Scale B can be expressed as $L-x$, where, $x=vt$. Thus,

$$F_A L = m_b g(L-x) + m_p g\frac{L}{2} \rightarrow m_b g(L-vt) + m_p g\frac{L}{2} \rightarrow F_A = \frac{(40)(3-0.5t)+60\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)}{3} \rightarrow$$
$$F_A = 40 - \frac{20t}{3} + 30 \rightarrow F_A = 70 - \frac{20t}{3}$$

Does the result satisfy the condition $t=0$ in part 1b? How about when the books are on Scale B at time $t=6\ s$?

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/EquilibriumOfARigidBar/

Illustrative Example 4: A Sign of the Times

A sign of weight 100.0 N hangs from a rod of weight 80.0 N and length 1.2 m. A cable with unknown tension T at an angle of 60° from the horizontal and a hinge H supports the sign and rod. See **Figure** 8.15 and **Figure** 8.16.

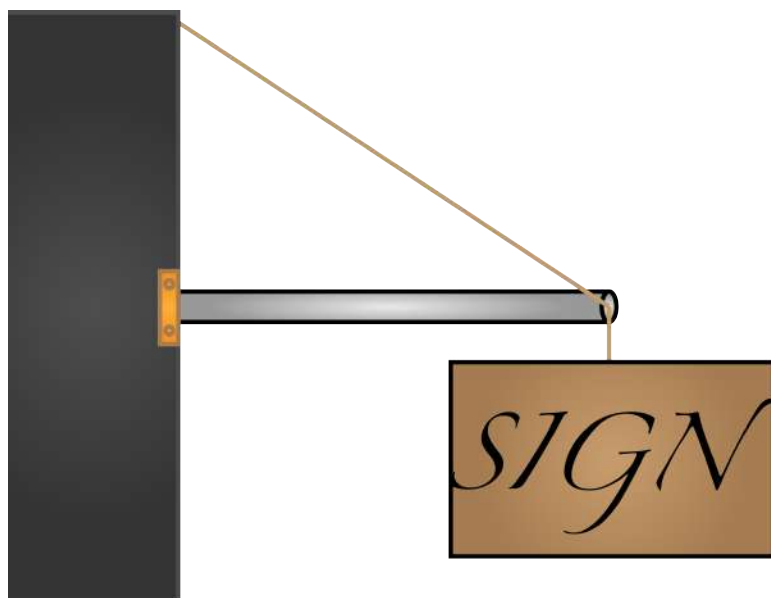



FIGURE 8.15

Find the components of the force F_H that the hinge places upon the rod.

Answer:

The equations for the x and y forces in translational equilibrium are (see **Figure** 8.16):

Equation 1: $\sum F_x = 0 \rightarrow H_x - T_x = 0$

Equation 2: $\sum F_y = 0 \rightarrow H_y + T_y - W_s - W_r$

We can also write the equation for rotational equilibrium:

Equation 3: $\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow T_y L - W_r \frac{L}{2} - W_s L = 0$

It will be more efficient to work with Equation 3 first since the only unknown in the equation is T_y. Solving for T_y, we have $\sum \tau = 0 \rightarrow T_y = (80.0)\left(\frac{1.20}{2}\right) + 100.0(1.20) = 168N \rightarrow T_y = 168\ N$.

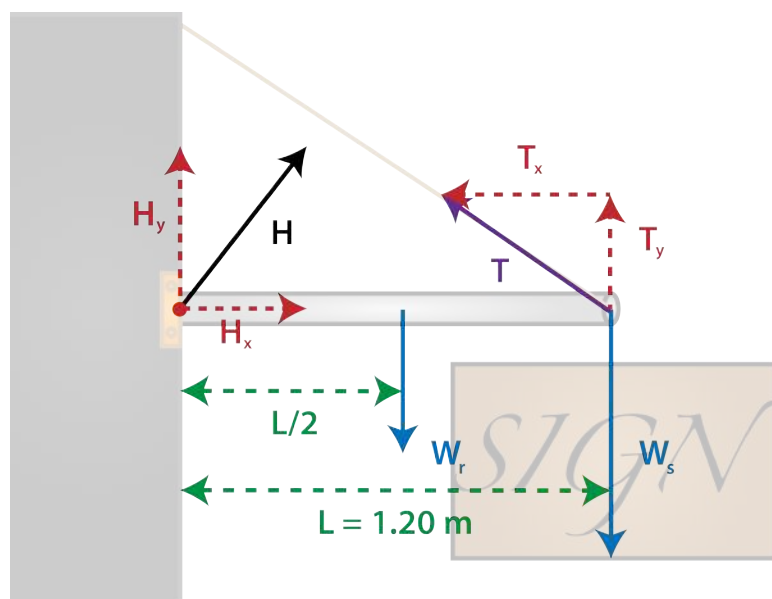



FIGURE 8.16

Using Equation 2, we can use T_y to solve for H_y

$\rightarrow H_y + T_y - W_s - W_r = 0 \rightarrow H_y = -168\ N + 100\ N + 80\ N = 12\ N$

Using Equation 1 we can solve for H_x by finding T_x.

Let us resolve the components of the tension T:

$T_y = T \sin\theta$ and $T_x = T \cos\theta$ or $T_y = T \sin 60^\circ$ and $T_x = T \cos 60^\circ$

Since $T_y = 168\ N$, we can solve for $T \rightarrow 168 = T \sin 60^\circ \rightarrow T = \frac{168N}{\sin 60^\circ} = 193.99 \rightarrow 194N$

Finally, using Equation 1 we have $T_x = H_x \rightarrow T \cos 60^\circ = H_x \rightarrow (194N)(0.50) = 97N$

Thus $(H_x, H_y) = (97N, 194N)$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ForcesActingOnALadder/

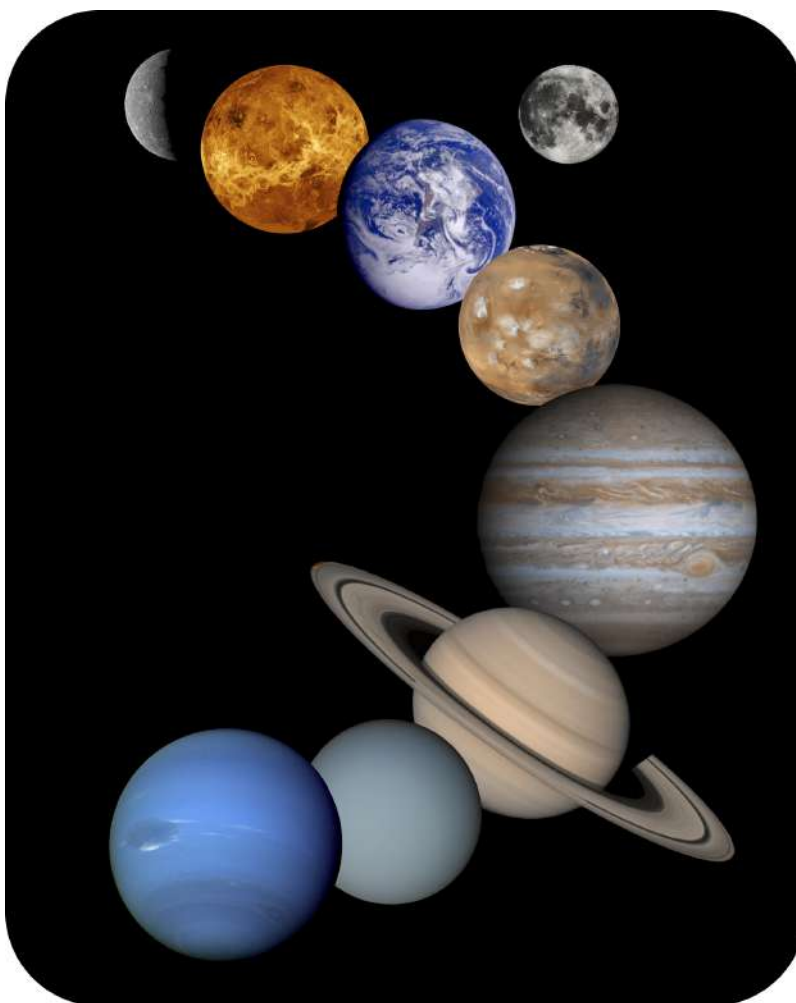
1. Angular momentum is defined as the product of rotational inertia and angular velocity.
2. Torque is defined as $\tau = rF \sin\theta$, where the angle θ is the angle between the lever arm r and force F. The symbol for torque is the Greek letter tau (τ)
3. By definition a counterclockwise torque is positive and a clockwise torque is negative.
4. Two conditions of equilibrium:

    i. Translational equilibrium: $\sum F = F_{net} = 0$
    ii. Rotational equilibrium: $\sum \tau = \tau_{net} = 0$

8.5 References

1. Charles Hutchins. http://www.flickr.com/photos/celesteh/3266906452/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. US Army Corps of Engineers photo by Jon Fleshman. http://www.flickr.com/photos/louisvilleusace/6147567219/ . CC BY 2.0
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using images copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
10. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using images copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
11. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using image copyright artenot, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
12. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using image copyright artenot, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
13. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using image copyright lana rinck, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Truck image used under license from Shutterstock.com
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0

CHAPTER 9 Newton's Universal Law of Gravity

Chapter Outline

We know gravity as the force pulling downwards on everyday objects. The principles of gravity, however, apply on a much larger scale, and were discovered from study of the solar system. This chapter will cover Kepler's Laws of Planetary Motion, Newton's Universal Law of Gravity, and the mechanics of circular orbits.

9.1 Kepler's Laws

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand Kepler's Laws.
- Use Kepler's Third Law to solve problems.

Vocabulary

- **epicycle**
- **geocentric:** A model of the planets in which Earth is at the center of all other planets.
- **heliocentric:** The model of the planets in which all planets revolve around the Sun. This is the model that was eventually proven correct.
- **period**

Johannes Kepler (1571 - 1630) (**Figure** 9.1) was a German mathematician and astronomer. He read Nicholas Copernicus's *De Revolutions*, which proposed that both Earth and the other planets revolved around the Sun. The problem was that up until that point, there was no proof of Copernicus's ideas. In fact, the **geocentric** model, which placed the Earth at the center of the rest of the planets, gave better predictions. Copernicus had intriguing ideas, but he assumed that the orbits were perfect circles. It was up to Kepler, a superior mathematician as well as a profound thinker, to put his idea on a firmer basis.

Kepler's life story is one of triumph over adversity. He was born into a time when religious wars between Catholics and Protestants ravaged central Europe. Kepler held the very modern view that no one should be persecuted for their religious beliefs.

In 1600, Kepler met Tycho Brahe (1546 - 1601) (**Figure** 9.2), arguably the greatest naked-eye astronomer who ever lived (the telescope had not yet been invented). Tycho had accumulated a wealth of planetary data over a period of twenty years of painstaking observations. In particular, the data he collected on Mars was the most extensive ever compiled. Through a rather roundabout series of events, Kepler acquired Tycho's Mars data, and eventually, after Tycho's death, acquired (by theft) the remainder of the data. Both Tycho and Kepler were fascinating historical figures, and certainly deserve more time than this lesson can afford.

Over the next twenty years Kepler used that data to fully establish the **heliocentric** model and overthrow the geocentric model of Ptolemy. Kepler's work established what has come to be known as Kepler's Three Laws of Planetary Motion. We state them below.

1. The orbital paths of the planets about the sun are ellipses with the sun at one focus. A circle is the set of

FIGURE 9.1
Johannes Kepler.

FIGURE 9.2
Tycho Brahe.

all points that are equal distance from a single point. An ellipse is the set of all points where the sum of the distance to two foci is always equal. See **Figure** 9.3.
2. If an imaginary line is drawn from the sun to a planet as the planet orbits the sun, this line will sweep out equal areas in equal times. (A planet moves faster when it is closer to the sun and slower when it is farther away from the sun.) See **Figure** 9.4.
3. The square of the time T^2 for one orbital **period** of a planet about the sun is proportional to the cube of the average distance r^3 between the sun and the planet. That is, $T^2 \propto r^3$ (where $\propto$ is read as "proportional to"). As an equation we write $T^2 = kr^3$ where the value of k is the constant of proportionality, and its corresponding form in the SI system of units.

For the time being, we can treat k as unity if we choose time in units of years and distance in units of astronomical units (AU) –where 1.0 AU is the average distance between the sun and the earth). For example, since Mars is, on average, about one and one half times farther from the sun than the Earth, Mars is 1.5 AU from the sun, or, more precisely 1.52 AU.

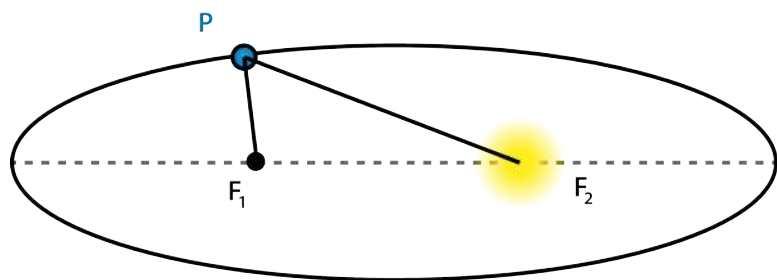



FIGURE 9.3
Kepler's First Law: Planet P follows an elliptical path as it orbits the sun at focal point F_2.

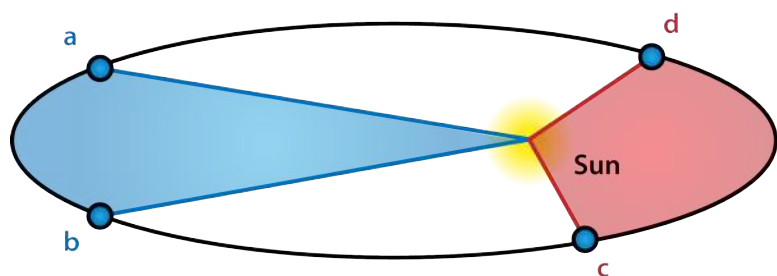



FIGURE 9.4
Kepler's Second Law

Check Your Understanding

1. Show, given the information above, that k must have a value equal to 1.

Answer: Since the period of the Earth about the sun is one year and by definition it is a distance of one AU from the sun, we have:

$T^2 = kr^3 \rightarrow (1)^3 = k(1)^2 \rightarrow k = 1$

2. Mars is 1.52 AU from the sun. How long, in years, does it take Mars to complete one orbit about the sun? In other words, how long is a Martian year?

Answer:

Using Kepler's Third Law: $T^2 = r^3 \rightarrow T^2 = (1.52)^3 \rightarrow T = \sqrt{(1.52)^3} \rightarrow 1.874 \rightarrow 1.87\ years$

3. It takes Pluto 248 years to make one orbit about the sun. What is Pluto's average distance from the sun in AU?

Answer: $r^3 = T^2 \rightarrow r^3 = (248)^2 \rightarrow r = \sqrt[3]{(248^2)} = 39.47 \rightarrow 39.5\ AU$.

Kepler's Third Law, in the form that we have presented it, is valid as long as the central body (the object that is being orbited) is much more massive than the orbiting object. For example, we could time the period for a moon of Jupiter and then use Kepler's Third Law to find the average distance that the moon is from Jupiter (Jupiter would then be the central body). Or we can use Kepler's Third Law to determine the period of a satellite in orbit about the earth if we knew its distance from the Earth (the Earth would now be the central body). Later we will learn that r represents the distance between the center of the orbiting body and the center of the central body. For the time being, though, we will simply accept this as true without explanation.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gG7M7Rf3xN4

Illustrative Example 1

A satellite is to be placed in orbit about the Earth halfway between the Earth and the moon. The period of the moon about the Earth is 27.3 days. What is the period of the satellite?

Answer:

Let us call the distance between the Earth and moon R and the distance from the Earth to the satellite $\frac{R}{2}$. Using Kepler's Third Law for the Earth and Moon, we first solve for k.

$T^2 = kr^3 \rightarrow (27.3)^2 = kR^3 \rightarrow k = \frac{(27.3)^2}{R^3}$. Now that we know k we solve for the period T_s of the satellite.

$T_s{}^2 = k\frac{R^3}{2^3} \rightarrow$ substitute for $k \rightarrow \frac{(27.3)^2}{R^3} \rightarrow T_s{}^2 = \frac{(27.3)^2}{R^3}\frac{R^3}{2^3} \rightarrow$ solve for $T_s = \frac{\sqrt{(27.3)^2}}{\sqrt{2^3}} = 9.65\ days$

Check Your Understanding:

Two exoplanets (planets that orbit stars other than the sun), Close and Far, orbit their parent sun such that Close is 2.0 AU from its sun and Far is 4.0 AU from its sun. If Close takes n years to orbit its sun, then Far will take:

a. Less than $\frac{1}{2}n$ years

b. $\frac{1}{2}n$ years

c. $2n$ years

d. More than $2n$ years

Answer: This problem is, essentially, the same as Example 1. In that problem, two bodies orbited the Earth, one twice as far from the Earth as the other. We saw that the period of the moon which was twice as far away as the satellite had a period of 27.3 days and the satellite had a period of 9.65 days. Clearly, the relationship (which we can see from the equation) is not linear. Since the moon's period is greater than twice the satellite's period, in fact, almost three times as much, it will take Far longer than $2n$ years to orbit its sun. The answer is therefore, D.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/OrbitalSpeedAndPeriodOfASatellite/

9.2 Newton's Universal Law of Gravity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand Newton's Universal Law of Gravity.
- Use Newton's Universal Law to solve problems.

Vocabulary

- **eccentricity**
- **empirical**

Introduction

Humanity has always known that objects fall to the ground, but for many years, no one understood why gravity works. A key breakthrough came from the work of Isaac Newton (1642-1727), (**Figure** 9.5). In 1687, Newton published his most important book, *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, which connected the falling of objects on Earth with the motion of the planets. Prior to his book, those two concepts were thought to be completely unrelated.

FIGURE 9.5
Isaac Newton.

The possibility that gravity extended beyond the Earth first occurred to Newton in 1666. According to his personal accounts, he watched an apple fall from a tree and wondered if the same force that acted upon the apple also acted

upon the Moon and other bodies of the solar system. As he expressed it, gravity acts between all objects according to their mass. On Earth, only the force of gravity with the Earth itself is noticeable because the Earth is much more massive than all other objects. However, there is a tiny gravitational force between all other objects as well. Newton expressed the force of gravity as follows:

The Universal Law of Gravity

The force, F between two objects is directly proportional to the product of their masses $m_1 m_2$ and is inversely proportional to the square of the distance r^2 between their centers:
$F = \frac{Gm_1 m_2}{r^2}$
where G is a constant of proportionality called the *universal gravitational constant* and has a value of $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}$.
(Note: In using the Universal Law of Gravity we will assume that the mass of each body is concentrated at its geometric center.)

Check Your Understanding

What is the gravitational force between the two objects in **Figure** 9.6 if each object has mass of 10.0kg and they are separated by a distance $r = 2.00\text{m}$?

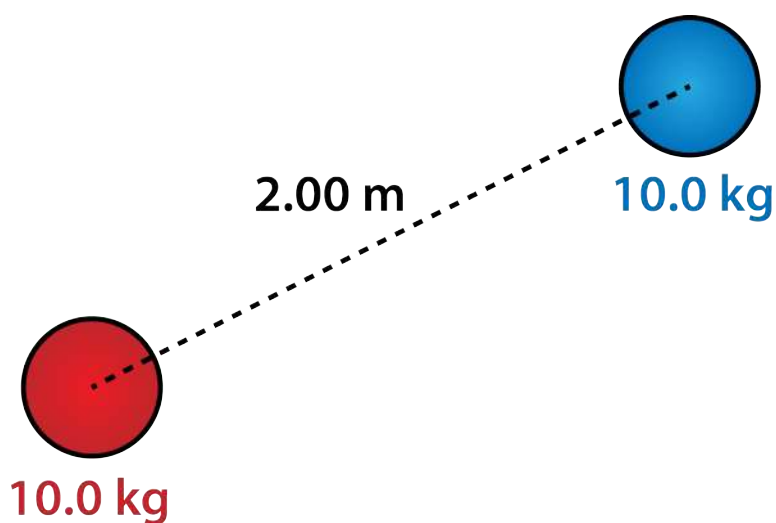



FIGURE 9.6

According to Newton's Universal Law of Gravity,

$$F = \frac{Gm_1 m_2}{r^2} = \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11} \frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2})(10.0\text{kg})(10.0\text{kg})}{(2.00\text{m})^2} = 1.6675 \times 10^{-9} \rightarrow 1.67 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{N}$$

This is an amazingly small force. It is a little bit larger than one-billionth of a Newton or about four-tenth of one-billionth of a pound. Gravity is a very weak force unless there is a huge amount of mass involved, or the distance between the masses is very small. In fact, gravity is the weakest of the four fundamental forces we discussed earlier.

A natural question at this point is- How did Newton arrive at this equation describing the forces between objects? No doubt, Newton was a genius, but even a genius seeks reassurance. We will see that Kepler's work helped to convince Newton that his final form for the Universal Law of Gravity was quite reasonable.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=391txUI76gM

Newton's Verification of His Inverse Square Law

In order to understand why Newton believed in the validity of the Universal Law of Gravity, we need to go back to an earlier lesson in which we learned that the acceleration of an object in circular motion is directed toward the center of the circle it travels in and has acceleration, a, of magnitude $a = \frac{v^2}{r}$.

We will assume the orbit of the moon is circular in the example below (it is really slightly elliptical), that the distance between the Earth and Moon from center to center is R, that the magnitude of the Moon's velocity is v, and that the period of the Moon's orbit about the earth is T. Recall that the circumference of a circle is $C = 2\pi R$. See **Figure** 9.7.

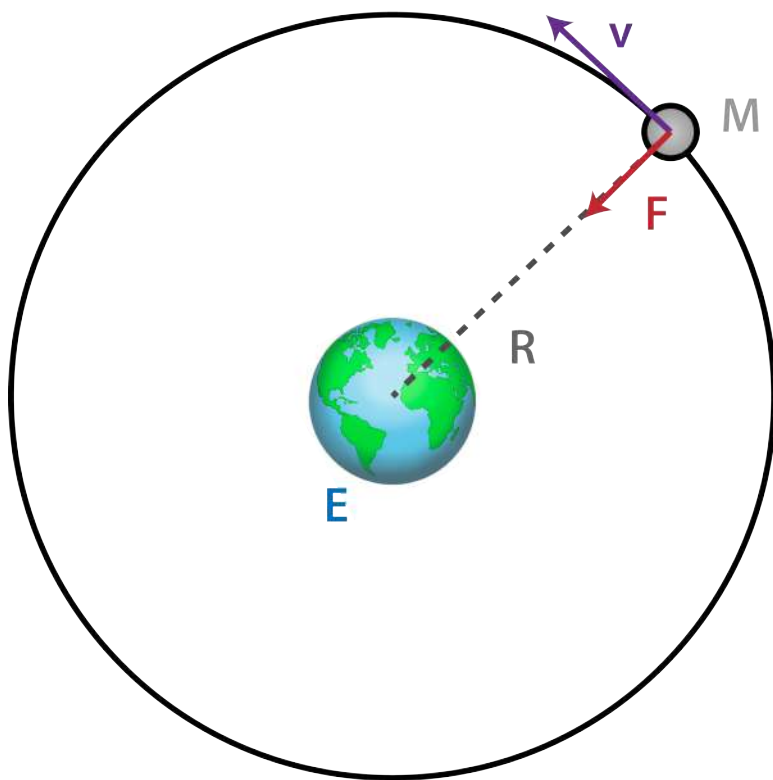



FIGURE 9.7
The Moon in orbit about the Earth with velocity v.

Since $x = vt$, we can substitute C, the distance the moon travels during one orbit about the Earth, for x, and substitute $2\pi R$ for C Thus, $x = vt \rightarrow C = vT \rightarrow 2\pi R = vT$ solving for $v \rightarrow v = \frac{2\pi R}{T}$.

If we now replace v with $\frac{2\pi R}{T}$ in $a = \frac{v^2}{r}$ and r with R, we have, $a = \frac{\frac{(2\pi R)^2}{T^2}}{R} \rightarrow \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2}$, thus $a = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2}$. This is the centripetal acceleration of the Moon relative to the Earth. The force that the Earth exerts upon the Moon, according to Newton's Second Law, is $\sum F = m_m a = m_m \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2}$, (Equation 1), where m_m is the Moon's mass.

On the other hand, according to the Universal Law of Gravity, the F in Equation 1 (see **Figure** 9.7) is the same as the F as in $F = \frac{G m_m m_e}{R^2}$, Equation 2, where m_e is the mass of the Earth.

Thus, we can equate the two forces:

$$\frac{Gm_m m_e}{R^2} = m_m \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2} \text{ and solve for } T^2 \rightarrow T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 R^3}{Gm_e}.$$

The derived expression, not coincidentally, looks a lot like Kepler's Third Law (applied to circular orbits), where the constant k mentioned above is equal is $k = \frac{4\pi^2}{Gm_e}$. The fact that the Universal Law of Gravity yielded Kepler's Third Law gave a good deal of support to its validity. It also explained that Kepler's Third Law had the form it did as a result of an inverse square force law.

It is important to note that the mass in the denominator of k is the mass of the central body. In the work above, it is the mass of the Earth. The mass of the orbiting body does not enter the equation. It is beyond the scope of this book, but a more general statement of Kepler's Third Law does use both masses.

http://m.wolframalpha.com/input/?i=Kepler%27s+third+law%2C+4+solar+masses%2C+5+Earth+masses%2C+2.5+AU

Illustrative Example 1

1a. Use the Universal Law of Gravity to find the period of the Moon about the Earth.

Note, $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \frac{N*m^2}{kg^2}$, the distance between the centers of the Earth and Moon is $R = 3.84 \times 10^5\ km$ and the mass of Earth is $m_e = 5.97 \times 10^{24}\ kg$.

Answer:

From the above we have $T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{Gm_e} R^3$. We must remember that the SI system of units uses meters and seconds, and therefore we must convert $R = 3.84 \times 10^5\ km \rightarrow R = 3.84 \times 10^8\ m$.

Substituting into the above equation we have:

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{Gm_e} R^3 \rightarrow \frac{4\pi^2}{(6.67 \times 10^{-11})(5.97 \times 10^{24})} (3.84 \times 10^8)^3 = 5.614 \times 10^{12}$$
$$\rightarrow T^2 = 5.614 \times 10^{12} \rightarrow T = 2.369 \times 10^6\ s$$

Let us go one step further and represent this result in days instead of seconds. One day has 86,400 seconds, therefore $\frac{2.369 \times 10^6\ s}{86{,}400 \frac{s}{d}} = 27.42\ days$. The actual period of the Moon is closer to 27.3 days. Still, a good enough result to assure us that the Universal Law of Gravity yields correct results!

1b. Show that the gravitational acceleration g varies as the inverse square with the distance from the center of the Earth.

Answer:

For an object of mass m at rest upon the surface of the Earth, the object experiences a force F due to the Earth, of $F = mg$. But force F must be the same as that given by the Universal Law of Gravity, namely $F = \frac{Gm_e m}{R^2}$, where R is the radius of the Earth. Thus, $mg = \frac{Gm_e m}{R^2} \rightarrow g = \frac{Gm_e}{R^2}$. This is why in all of our work so far we have always made the statement that $g = 9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}$ near the Earth's surface. Try substituting the values for G, m_e, and R in the above equation for g to show that $g = 9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}$.

Check Your Understanding

What gravitational acceleration does an object experience at the instant it is released at one Earth radius above the surface of the Earth? See **Figure** 9.8.

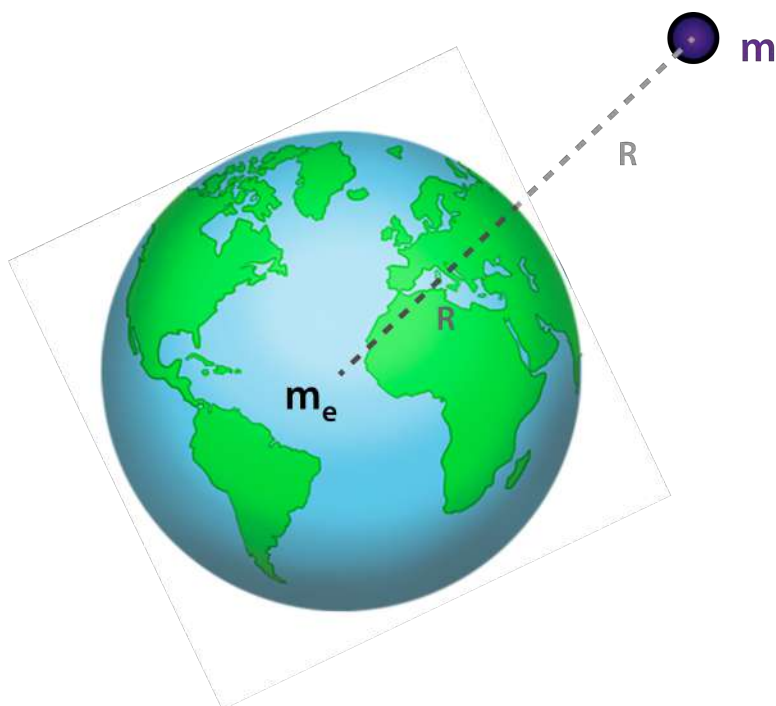



FIGURE 9.8

Answer:

Since $g = \frac{Gm_e}{r^2}$, we substitute $r = 2R$

$$g = \frac{Gm_e}{r^2} = \frac{Gm_e}{(2R)^2} = \frac{Gm_e}{4R^2} = \frac{1}{4}\frac{Gm_e}{R^2} = \frac{1}{4}g = \frac{1}{4}(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}) = 2.45\frac{m}{s^2}$$

Remember that the distance r is measured from the center of the Earth!

Illustrative Example 2

Another support for the Universal Law of Gravity comes from computing the acceleration of the Moon toward the Earth. The distance from the center of the Moon to center of the Earth is 60.27 Earth radii (R_e), so the acceleration of the Moon toward the Earth should be $\frac{1}{(60.27)^2}g_e$, where $g_e = 9.81\frac{m}{s^2}$ the acceleration of gravity at the Earth's surface.

a. Find the acceleration of the Moon $(g_{at\ moon})$ relative to the Earth using the equation $a = \frac{v^2}{r}$.

Answer: We have already shown that $a = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2}$, that the period of the Moon about the Earth in seconds is $T = 2.369 \times 10^6\ s$, and the distance between their centers in meters is $R = 3.84 \times 10^8\ m$. Substituting these values into $a = \frac{4\pi^2 R}{T^2}$, we have $a = \frac{4\pi^2(3.84\times10^8\ m)}{(2.369\times10^6\ s)^2} = 0.00270\frac{m}{s^2}$

b. Find the acceleration of the Moon relative to the Earth if the distance between their centers is $60.27R_e$ using Newton's Universal Law of Gravity. As discussed above, the Universal Law of Gravity gives the acceleration of the Moon at a distance of $60.27R_e$ as $\frac{1}{(60.27)^2}g$.

Answer:

$\frac{1}{(60.27)^2}g = \frac{9.81}{(60.27)^2} = 0.00270\frac{m}{s^2}$

A more complete solution is:

$$g_{at\ moon} = \frac{Gm_e}{r^2} = \frac{Gm_e}{(60.27R)^2} = \frac{Gm_e}{(60.27)^2 R^2} = \frac{1}{(60.27)^2}\frac{Gm_e}{R^2} \rightarrow g_{at\ moon} = \frac{1}{(60.27)^2} g_e$$
$$= \frac{1}{(60.27)^2}\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right) = 0.00270\frac{m}{s^2}$$

We see the results are same, to three significant figures, using the equation for the centripetal acceleration we derived earlieir and Newton's Universal Law of Gravity.

Another Inverse Square Law

It often happens in Physics that the form of an equation which describes one phenomenon is found describing a seemingly different phenomenon. This is the case with static electricity. Fifty-eight years after the death of Isaac Newton, in 1785, the French physicist, Charles Augustin de Coulomb (1736 - 1806), **Figure** 9.9, published a work giving the force of attraction between two charge particles as $F = \frac{kq_1 q_2}{r^2}$. In this equation, q_1 and q_2 are two charges measured in units of coulombs (C), k is a constant of proportionality, and r the distance between the two charges.

FIGURE 9.9
Charles Augustin de Coulomb.

You can very quickly get an idea of the force of electric charges by ripping a small piece of paper into even smaller, tinier pieces. If you then have a plastic pen, try rubbing the pen on your shirt and then hold the pen over the tiny pieces of paper. You will probably see some of the tiny pieces attach themselves to the pen. This is the result of an electrical attraction. Clearly, the force of gravity was unable to keep the tiny bits of paper from sticking to the pen and therefore we can conclude that the electrostatic force involved in this activity is greater than the gravitational force. Electrostatics will be discussed in much greater detail later. We will note, however, that the force between a positive and negative charge of $10^{-6}\ C$, the typical unbalanced charges produced by the kind of action described above, at a distance of 2.00 m, gives rise to an attractive force of $2.5 \times 10^{-2}\ N$. Recall that the gravitational force between two 10.0-kg objects was of the order of $10^{-9}\ N$. In other words, the electric attraction is of the order of ten million times larger in comparing these two examples. Had we used the actual masses of $10^{-6}\ C$ and computed the gravitational attraction, we would have found that the electric force is some 40 orders of magnitude (10^{40}) greater than the gravitational force!

Even though mathematically Newton's Universal Law of Gravity and Coulomb's Law are similar, the forces they describe have different natures and, usually, very different magnitudes. Also, whereas gravity is always an attractive force, the electrostatic force can either attract (opposite charges) or repel (like charges).

9.3 Circular Orbits

Objective

The student will:

- Use Newton's Universal Law of Gravity and Kepler's Third Law to solve problems.

Vocabulary

- **geosynchronous:** An orbit where the satellite remains over the same position on the Earth.
- **orbit:** The path of one object revolving around the other, such as the Moon around the Earth, or the Earth around the Sun. Orbits can be circular or elliptical.

Introduction

Putting together the principles of gravity and the principles of circular motion allows us to solve problems relating to circular **orbits**. The planets and their moons do not have circular orbits, but many artificial satellites do.

The first artificial satellite was the Russian satellite Sputnik, which was launched October 4, 1957 and successfully orbited the Earth at an altitude of 228 km, circling the Earth every 98 minutes. Sputnik was considered a challenge to American military and technological dominance, and thus started the Space Race. Since 1957, the United States has landed twelve men on the Moon, had an active Space Shuttle program, been a partner in building the International Space Station, and has been one of several countries to send robotic probes all over the solar system. Currently, the US maintains numerous artificial satellites in Earth orbit for the purposes of navigation, communication, monitoring the weather, scientific studies, and spying.

Solving problems with a circular orbit combines centripetal acceleration and universal gravity.

- An object moving at constant speed has acceleration toward the center of a circle of $a_c = \frac{v^2}{r}$.
- Any object has the force of gravity from another object of $F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2}$.

Putting these together with Newton's Second Law, $F = ma$, we can solve problems regarding orbits. When dealing with the Earth, we can simplify gravity because we know the acceleration due to gravity at the surface of the Earth:

$F = \frac{Gmm_e}{R_e^2} = mg = m(9.81\text{m/s}^2) \rightarrow \frac{Gm_e}{R_e^2} = 9.81\text{m/s}^2$

In orbital calculations, we use the more exact figure for the acceleration due to gravity g.

Check Your Understanding

1. What is the acceleration due to gravity for a satellite at the height of one-half the Earth's radius, $\frac{1}{2}R_e$?

Answer: With this height above the surface of the Earth, the satellite has a distance from the center of the Earth of $1.5R_e$. The force of gravity is then

$$F = ma = \frac{Gmm_e}{(1.5R_e)^2} = \frac{1}{1.5^2}\frac{Gmm_e}{R_e^2} = \frac{1}{1.5^2}mg$$
$$a = \frac{1}{1.5^2}g = \frac{1}{1.5^2}(9.81\mathbf{m/s}^2) = 4.36\mathbf{m/s}^2$$

2. If the satellite is in a circular orbit at this height, what is its velocity?

Answer: In this case, the acceleration due to gravity is the centripetal acceleration.

$$a = \frac{v^2}{r} \rightarrow v^2 = ar \rightarrow v = \sqrt{ar}$$
$$v = \sqrt{(4.36\text{m/s}^2)(6370\text{km})}$$
$$v = \sqrt{(4.36\text{m/s}^2)(6.37\times 10^6\text{m})}$$
$$v = 5.27\times 10^3\text{m/s}$$

Orbital Altitudes

Satellite orbits are typically split into three groups: low, medium, and high. Low orbits extend to a height of 2000 km, while medium go up to approximately 20,000 km.

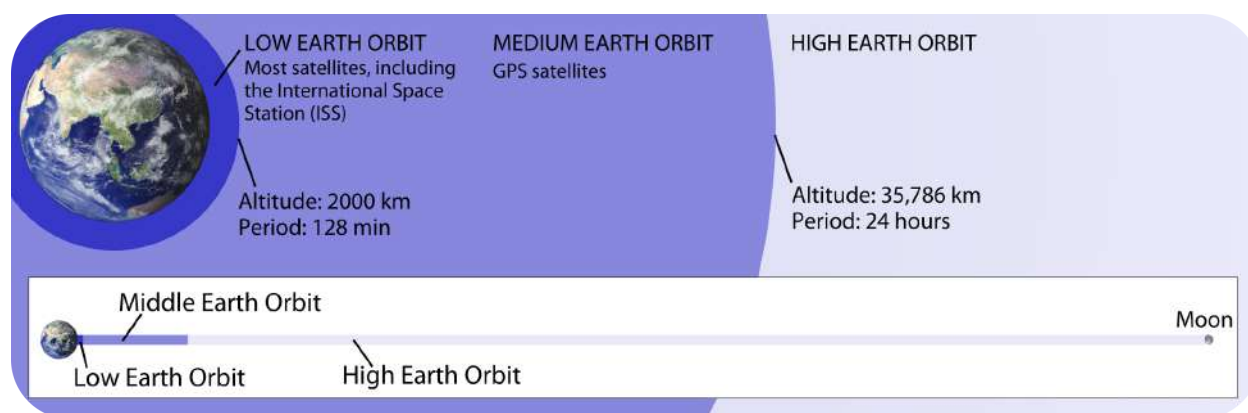



FIGURE 9.10

Illustrative Example 1

The satellite in **Figure** 9.11 is in orbit at a height h of 250 km above the surface of the Earth. The radius of the Earth varies. For this, use $R_e = 6370\text{km}$.

FIGURE 9.11
A satellite in orbit about the Earth.

a. What is the orbiting satellite's acceleration due to gravity g_s at this location?

Answer: Using a familiar formula for g_s we have, $g_s = \frac{Gm_e}{r^2}$.

But what value should we use for r? The distance from the center of the Earth to the satellite is: $r = R_e + h = 6370\text{km} + 250\text{km} = 6620\text{km}$.

We can express this in terms of a ratio to the radius of the Earth, $\frac{r}{R_e} = \frac{6620 \text{ km}}{6370 \text{ km}} \rightarrow r = 1.039R_e$. Substituting into the equation for g_s we have:

$$a = \frac{Gm_e}{(1.039R_e)^2} = \frac{1}{(1.039)^2}\frac{Gm_e}{R_e{}^2} = \frac{1}{(1.039)^2}\, g = 9.08\text{m/s}^2$$

b. What is the speed of the satellite?

Answer: We know that $a = \frac{v^2}{r}$ and we have just found that $a = g_s = 9.08\text{m/s}^2$. We also know $r = 6630$ km $= 6.63 \times 10^6$ m, thus

$v = \sqrt{ar} = \sqrt{(9.08\text{m/s}^2)(6.63 \times 10^6\text{m})} = 7.76 \times 10^3\text{m/s}$

This is about 17,353 miles per hour, a typical "near-Earth" orbital velocity.

c. We often see pictures of astronauts floating within their spacecraft. It is not unusual for their craft to have a similar orbit about the Earth as the satellite in this example. Sometimes you'll hear someone claim that the reason the astronaut is floating is because "there is no gravity up there," or because the astronaut is "weightless." Is it true that the astronaut no longer experiences a gravitational force and is, by extension, weightless?

Answer: No, it is not true. As we can see from part A, the gravitational acceleration is close to 93% as much as it is on the surface of the Earth $\rightarrow \frac{9.08}{9.81} \times 100 = 92.6\%$. If we were on a planet with a gravitational acceleration of $9.08\frac{m}{s^2}$, an astronaut who weighs 600 N on Earth would weigh 555 N on this planet. She would hardly be weightless. The same 600 N astronaut does indeed have a 555 N force acting on her within the spacecraft. The gravitational force from the Earth is what maintains her orbit about the Earth. If gravity were somehow to "turn-off" while she was in orbit, the astronaut would move off tangentially to the orbit that she had been following- note the dashed red line in **Figure** 9.12. The fact that she does not fly off tangentially reinforces the notion that a force must be present to maintain her circular motion path (recall Newton's First Law). In fact, the distance h in **Figure** 9.12 represents the distance she effectively has fallen in her orbit about the Earth. Astronauts are in a perpetual state of free fall about the Earth and this is why they "float." They have an apparent weight of zero, only in that a scale reading of their weight, while in orbit, would read zero.

You can see an example of apparent weightlessness in free fall by trying a simple experiment. Get an empty soda

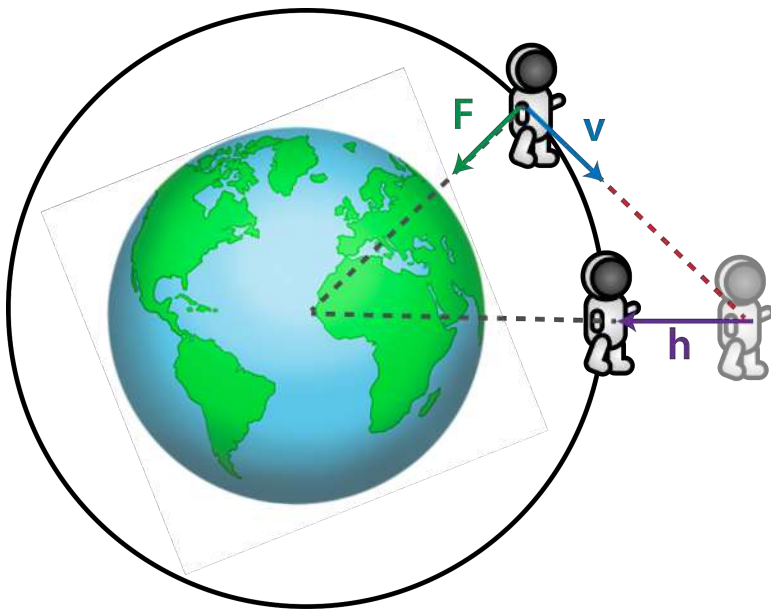



FIGURE 9.12

can and poke a hole in the side of the can, small enough so your finger can easily cover it, but large enough so water can easily flow out. Fill the can with water, holding your finger over the hole to prevent the water from flowing out. Now, hold the can at arm's length and remove your finger for a moment to convince yourself the water will freely flow. Then release the can. As soon as the can is in free fall the water will stop flowing out. The apparent weight of the water is zero—there is no normal force on the water and there is no apparent water pressure. The can and water, however, still have a force of gravity acting on them, because that is, of course, the force causing the can to fall in the first place!

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ConditionForFreeFallAroundEarth/

Illustrative Example 2

A **geosynchronous** satellite is one which remains above a fixed point on the Earth's surface in its revolution about the planet. What distance R_s from the surface of the earth must a satellite be placed in order to achieve such an orbit?

Answer:

First, we must ask ourselves, what period T must a satellite have in order to remain positioned over the same point on the Earth's surface?

Since the satellite appears fixed in space as seen from the surface of the Earth, it must have a period of revolution equal to the period of rotation of the Earth, that is $T_e = 1.00$ days $\rightarrow 24.0\ h \rightarrow 86,400\ s$.

Again, $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \frac{N*m^2}{kg^2}$ and $m_e = 5.97 \times 10^{24}\ kg$

Recall, $T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{Gm_e} r^3$ or $r^3 = \frac{Gm_e}{4\pi^2} T_e{}^2$

$$r^3 = \frac{Gm_e}{4\pi^2} T_e{}^2 \rightarrow r = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11})(5.97 \times 10^{24})}{4\pi^2}(86,400)^2} = 42,226,910 \rightarrow$$
$$r = 4.22 \times 10^7\ m \rightarrow 4.22 \times 10^4\ km$$

But this result is measured from the center of the Earth, not the surface of the Earth. Thus,

$$R_s = r - R_e = 42,227\ km - 6,378\ km = 35,849\ km \rightarrow 3.58 \times 10^4\ km$$

http://www.geo-orbit.org

Illustrative Example 3

a. Exoplanet Gliese 1214b has a mass 6.35 times greater than Earth's and a radius 2.78 greater than Earth's. What is the gravitational acceleration at the surface of Gliese 1214b?

Answer: We use Newton's Universal Law of Gravity.

We know that the acceleration at the surface of the Earth is $g_e = \frac{Gm_e}{R_e{}^2}$, and therefore, in general, the acceleration of gravity on the surface of any planet is $g = \frac{Gm}{R^2}$. In this case, the mass m and the radius R is of Gliese 1214b. We are given that $m_{gliese} = 6.35m_e$ and $R_{gliese} = 2.78R_e$.

Substituting, we have $g_{gliese} = \frac{G(6.35m_e)}{(2.78R_e)^2} = 0.8216\frac{Gm_e}{R^2{}_e} \rightarrow 0.8216(9.81) = 8.059 \rightarrow 8.06\frac{m}{s^2}$.

b. What would a person who weighs 700 N on Earth weigh on Gliese 1214b?

Answer: Let's solve this two ways.

i. Use the person's mass and multiply it by the acceleration of gravity on Gliese 1214b.

The mass of the person is $m = \frac{W}{g_e} = \frac{700\ N}{9.81\frac{m}{s^2}} = 71.356\ kg$. Therefore, the weight of the person on Gliese 1214b is $W = mg = (71.36)(8.06) = 575.1 \rightarrow 575N$

ii. Find the ratio of the gravitational acceleration on Gliese compared to the Earth, and multiply the weight of the person on Earth by that ratio.

$\frac{8.06}{9.81}(700) = 575.1 \rightarrow 575N$

1. Kepler's Three Laws of Planetary Motion are:
   i. The orbital paths of the planets about the sun are ellipses with the sun at one focus.
   ii. If an imaginary line is drawn from the sun to a planet as the planet orbits the sun, this line will sweep out equal areas in equal times. (A planet moves faster when it is closer to the sun and slower when it is farther away from the sun.)
   iii. The square of the time T^2 for the orbital period of a planet about the sun is proportional to the cube of the average distance r^3 between the sun and the planet. That is, $T^2 \propto r^3$ or $T^2 = kr^3$ where k equals $\frac{4\pi^2}{GM}$ and M is the mass of the central body $\left(T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2}{Gm}r^3\right)$. If T is expressed in years and r in astronomical units than $k = 1$ and $T^2 = r^3$
2. **The Universal Law of Gravity** The force F between two objects is directly proportional to the product of their masses, m_1m_2, and inversely proportional to the square of the distance, r^2between their centers:

$$F = \frac{Gm_1m_2}{r^2}$$

   where G is *the universal gravitational constant* equal to $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}$.
3. The gravitational acceleration near a massive body of mass m is $g = \frac{Gm}{r^2}$ where m is the mass that creates the gravitational acceleration and $r$is the distance from the center of the planet to a point outside the planet.
4. The electrostatic force between two charged bodies is $F = \frac{kq_1q_2}{r^2}$.

9.4 References

1. Courtesy of NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Solar_system.jpg . Public Domain
2. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Johannes_Kepler_1610.jpg . Public Domain
3. Eduard Ender. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tycho_Brahe.JPG . Public Domain
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Sir Godfrey Kneller. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:GodfreyKneller-IsaacNewton-1689.jpg .
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
8. Laura Guerin and Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Laura Guerin and Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Charles_de_coulomb.jpg .
11. Joy Sheng, using image courtesy of NASA. CK-12 Foundation (Earth image from http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nasa earth.jpg) .
12. Courtesy of NASA Goddard Space Flight Center. http://www.flickr.com/photos/gsfc/7630269434/ . CC BY 2.0
13. Laura Guerin and Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 10 Periodic Motion

Chapter Outline

Periodic motion is any motion that repeats itself. This chapter covers a particular case of such called *simple harmonic motion* - for motion back and forth in a straight line such as a pendulum. The properties of simple harmonic motion include the basics of wave properties.

10.1 Simple Harmonic Motion

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand periodic motion.
- Understand simple harmonic motion.

Vocabulary

- **periodic motion:** Motion that repeats the same path at a regular time.

- **simple harmonic motion:** A kind of one-dimensional (back-and-forth) periodic motion in which the farther the object moves from the center, the more it is pulled back toward the center.

Introduction

The word periodic simply means something that repeats at regular intervals, such as days of the week (weekly), birthdays, and holidays (yearly). **Periodic motion** is motion that repeats the same path –round-and-round, back-and-forth, or similar. Familiar cases of periodic motion include the Earth orbiting the Sun (**Figure** 10.1) and an elastic collision of a ball rebounding off of a flat surface (**Figure** 10.2). Two very important vibrating motions discussed in this chapter are objects vibrating on the end of springs and pendulums.

A special case of periodic motion is **simple harmonic motion (SHM)**. This is a particular kind of back-and-forth motion, in which the farther the object moves from the center, the more it is pulled back. Two common cases of SHM are:

- A pendulum on a string (called a simple pendulum). The farther out the pendulum swings, the more gravity pulls it back.
- A mass vibrating on a spring. The more the string is stretched or squashed, the more force it exerts.

SHM is especially important because it serves as a model for related processes. Similar vibrations of molecules are responsible for sound, and similar vibrations of electrically-charged particles at a microscopic scale are responsible for radio waves, light, and x-rays.

Simple Harmonic Motion from Uniform Circular Motion

An object vibrating back and forth on the end of a spring is an example of simple harmonic motion (SHM). For such motion, the force responsible for the vibration is directly proportional to the object's displacement. Other examples of objects performing SHM are the tuning fork in **Figure** above, a lightly plucked taut string, some forms of molecular vibrations, and pendulum motion close to the bottom of its swing. It is by no means obvious but as we shall see, SHM is related to uniform circular motion.

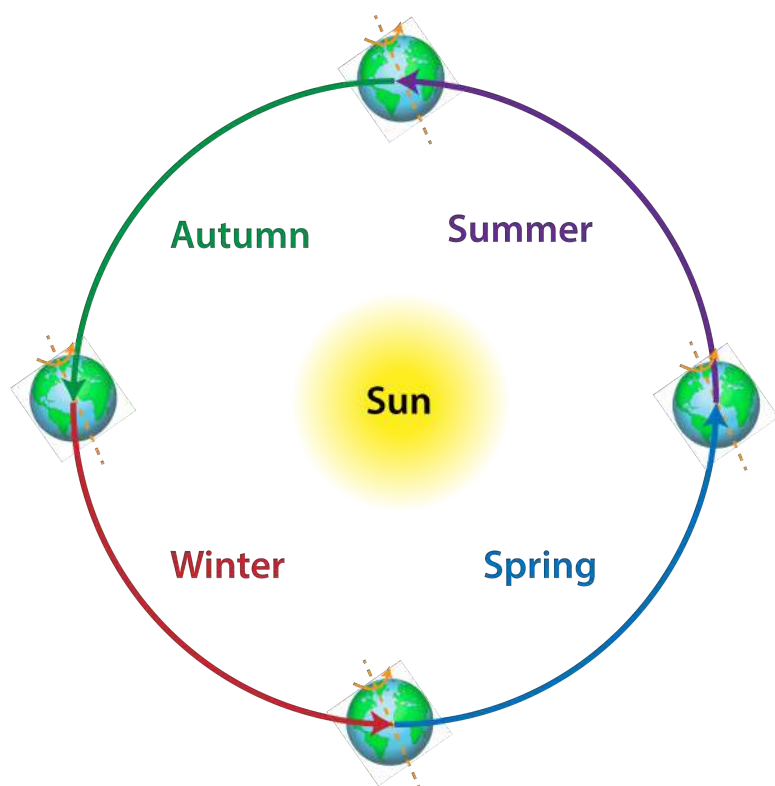



FIGURE 10.1

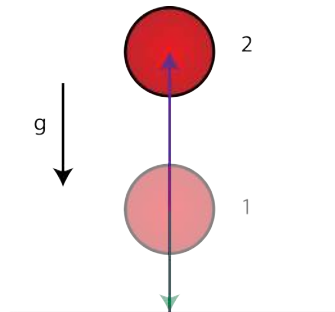



FIGURE 10.2

Recall that in uniform circular motion, an object travels with a constant speed around a circle. If the object's motion is projected onto a vertical or horizontal line, it resembles the motion of a vibrating object on the end of a spring. In other words, it is equivalent to SHM.

Projected Motion

Imagine viewing one of the cars (shown as blue dots below) of a Ferris wheel edge-on as in **Figure** 10.3. *T*he car appears to move up and down. Effectively, we are projecting the circular motion of the car onto a vertical line. If we were watching from above, we would be projecting the motion onto a horizontal line. In either case, the projected motion of the car would appear as an up-and-down or back-and-forth motion.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?feature=player_detailpage&v=BaIquQNHYpQ

http://www.animations.physics.unsw.edu.au/jw/SHM.htm

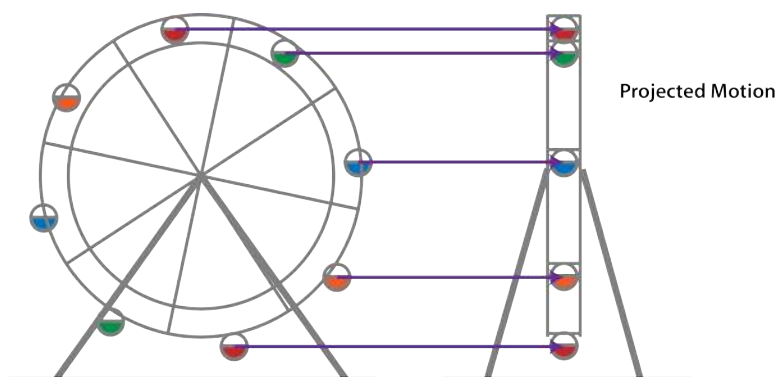



FIGURE 10.3

Though the typical (calculus-based) mathematical derivation showing the relationship between the projection of uniform circular motion and simple harmonic motion is beyond the scope of this book, we will nonetheless give a plausible mathematical argument for it later.

Conditions for Simple Harmonic Motion

For the moment, we state without proof that the motion of a mass (the block in **Figure** 10.4, for example) moving back and forth on the end of a spring, is the same as the projected motion of the Ferris wheel car in **Figure** 10.3.

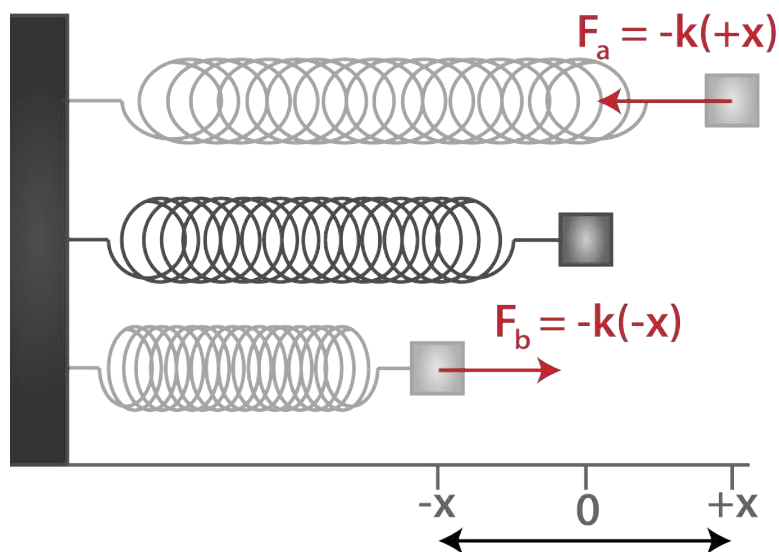



FIGURE 10.4

In **Figure** 10.4, the equilibrium point of the mass on the spring is labeled 0. The spring is assumed to have negligible mass and the mechanical energy of the mass-spring system is assumed to be conserved. (Unless otherwise stated, we will always assume that the mass of the spring is negligible and the mechanical energy of the system is conserved.) When the mass is pulled sideways and released, the spring will cause the mass to move back toward its equilibrium position. The tension force F_a of the spring upon the mass is, therefore, directed toward the equilibrium position and

is proportional to the displacement of the mass (recall Hooke's Law). The mass will pass through the equilibrium position and as it does, the spring will begin to slow the mass down until it is brought to rest at position–x, opposite to where the mass started.

After the mass passes its equilibrium position, force F_b of the spring upon the mass changes direction so that it keeps pointing toward the equilibrium position. In other words, the force on the mass by the spring is always directed toward the equilibrium position of the mass. We call this force a restoring force.

These observations lead us to the conditions for simple harmonic motion:

An object performing SHM must have a restoring force acting upon it that seeks to return it to its equilibrium position. The magnitude of that force is directly proportional to the object's displacement. That is, $F = -kx$ where the negative sign indicates that the restoring force and displacement are oppositely directed and k is a constant of proportionality.

Motivating the Conditions for Simple Harmonic Motion

Let us return to uniform circular motion. **Figure** 10.5 shows an object P in uniform circular motion along with its acceleration a and radius r indicating the location of the object P along the circle. We have dropped the subscript on the centripetal acceleration a_c we used earlier.

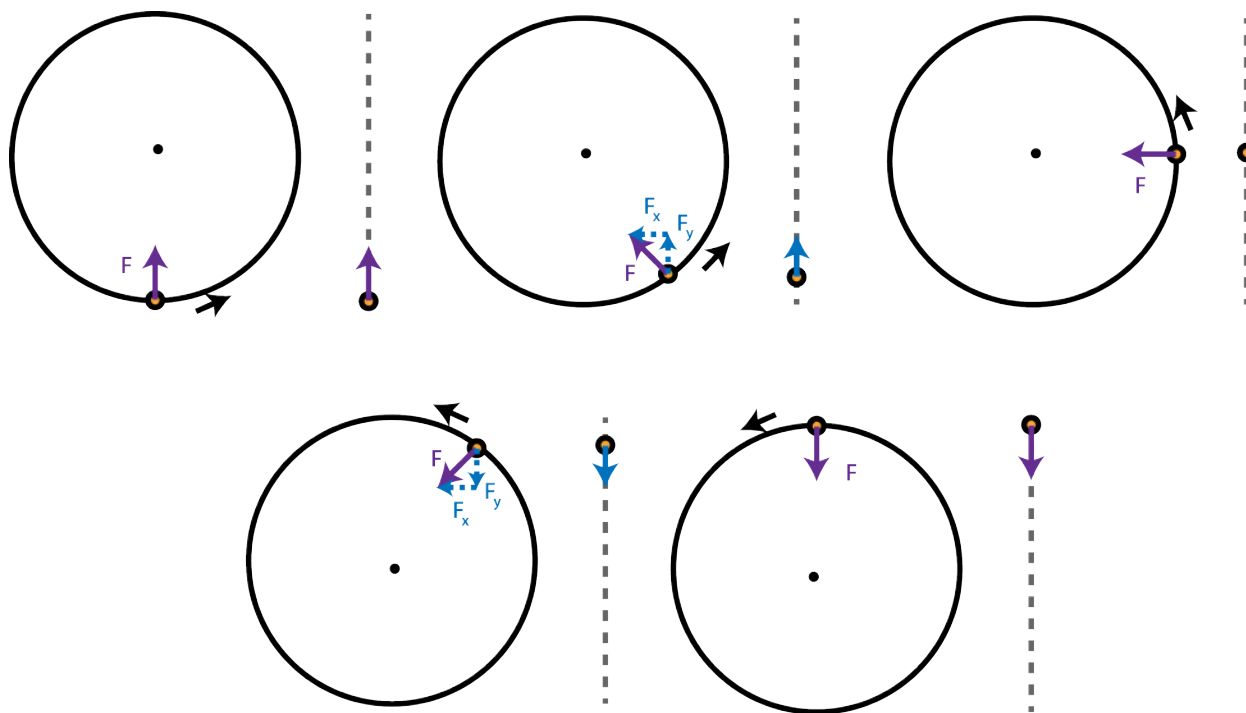



FIGURE 10.5

We see in **Figure** 10.5, the acceleration a and position vector r have components in the $x-$direction and $y-$direction. We have not bothered to label the $y-$components, though everything that is true for the $x-$components is equally true for the $y-$components.

Notice that when the object is in the first quadrant, the $x-$component of the acceleration $-a_x$ is negative whereas the $x-$component of the displacement $+x$ is positive and that when the object is in the second quadrant, the $x-$component of the acceleration is positive $+a_x$ and the $x-$component of the displacement $-x$ is negative.

Since $F = ma, F_x$ and a_x must be in the same direction, and therefore F_x is oppositely directed to x as we have insisted for SHM. We have also shown that the acceleration for uniform circular motion can be expressed as $a = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}r$. But we can write the acceleration a_x as $a_x = a\cos\theta$ and rearranging write $a = \frac{a_x}{\cos\theta}$. Substituting $\frac{a_x}{\cos\theta}$ for a in $a = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}r$ yields $a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}r\cos\theta$. Since $r\cos\theta = x$ substitution yields, $a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x$. But a_x and x are oppositely directed thus $a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x \rightarrow a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}(-x)$ (Equation 1). The quantity $\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}$ is a constant and so a is directly proportional to the displacement $-x$. But the force F is directly proportional to the acceleration a as well since $F = ma$. Therefore, the force is directly proportional to the opposite of the displacement.

We have shown two conditions for uniform circular motion: (1) the force and displacement are oppositely directed and (2) the force and displacement are directly proportional. These are the same conditions for SHM.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/topic.html?topic=College+Physics&start=261&limit=20&sortmethod=recent

10.2 Mass on a Spring

Objective

The student will:

- Solve problems dealing with simple harmonic motion.

Vocabulary

- **amplitude:** The maximum distance from equilibrium of an object's periodic motion.
- **frequency**: The reciprocal of the period $f = \frac{1}{T}$.
- **Hertz**: Units used in place of revolutions per second, as well as cycles per second. Hertz is equivalent to $\frac{1}{s}$ cycle and revolution and has no SI units.
- **period:** The amount of time it takes an object to repeats its motion.

Introduction

A mass on a spring is the simplest case of simple harmonic motion (SHM).

In **Figure** 10.6, the equilibrium point of the mass on the spring is labeled 0. This is the rest position of the spring, when it is neither contracting or expanding.

When the mass is pulled sideways and released, the spring will cause the mass to move back toward its equilibrium position. The tension force F_a of the spring upon the mass is, therefore, directed toward the equilibrium position and is proportional to the displacement of the mass (recall Hooke's Law). The mass will pass through the equilibrium position and as it does, the spring will begin to slow the mass down until it is brought to rest at position –*x*, opposite where the mass started.

After the mass passes its equilibrium position, force F_b of the spring upon the mass changes direction so that it keeps pointing toward the equilibrium position. In other words, the force on the mass by the spring is always directed toward the equilibrium position of the mass. We call this force a restoring force.

These observations lead us to the conditions for simple harmonic motion:

An object performing SHM must have a restoring force acting upon it that seeks to return it to its equilibrium position. The magnitude of that force is directly proportional to the object's displacement. That is, $F = -kx$, where the negative sign indicates that the restoring force and displacement are oppositely directed and k is a constant of proportionality.

FIGURE 10.6

Examples of such a spring pendulum would include a bungee jumper or just a large spring, as shown in the video below:

MEDIA

Click image to the left or use the URL below.

URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/62067

The Period for a Mass on a Spring in SHM

The amount of time it takes an object to repeat its motion is called the **period** of the oscillations, written as T. Imagine stretching the spring with the attached mass of **Figure** 10.6 to some position $+x$ and releasing it. The period is how much time is required for the mass to once again arrive at position $+x$.

Since we have shown that the projection of uniform circular motion is SHM and that a mass vibrating on a spring is in SHM, we can use the results of uniform circular motion to answer this question.

We know that the magnitude of the force on the mass is $F = kx$ when the spring is stretched a distance x. But we also know that $F_x = ma_x$, and so $ma_x = kx$ (Equation 2). The x-component of the acceleration, however, is $a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x$ (Equation 1). Substituting for a_x from Equation 1 into Equation 2, we have $m\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x = kx \rightarrow m\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} = k$. Solving for the period, $T \rightarrow m\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} = k \rightarrow T^2 = 4\pi^2\frac{m}{k} \rightarrow T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$.

Check Your Understanding

Assume the block in **Figure** 10.6 has a mass of 1.50-kg and is attached to a spring with spring constant 25.0 N/m. What is the period T of the block?

Answer: We know $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$. Substitution into this equation gives us $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{1.50\ kg}{25.0\frac{N}{m}}} = 1.539 \rightarrow 1.54\ s$.

In the study of vibrational motion, it is useful to define two other quantities in addition to the period T.

Frequency

The **frequency** of periodic motion is defined as the reciprocal of the period $f = \frac{1}{T}$. For example, if an object requires a quarter of a second, 0.25 s, to complete one cycle of its motion, it has a frequency of

$f = \frac{1}{0.25 \text{ s}} = 4.0 \frac{1}{\text{s}} = 4.0 \text{ Hz}.$

The unit Hz is **Hertz**, named after the German physicist Heinrich Rudolf Hertz (1857-1894), who we will discuss again later. The Hertz is used in place of revolutions per second, as well as cycles per second. Hertz is equivalent to $\frac{1}{s}$, cycle and revolution and has no SI units.

Check Your Understanding

A block attached to the end of a spring, displaced from equilibrium and released, has a period of 5.00 s.

a. What is the frequency of the block's vibrations?

Answer: $f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{5.00 \text{ s}} = 0.20 \text{ Hz}$

b. How many times has the blocked passed its equilibrium position, from the time of its release, if it is permitted to vibrate for only 6.00 s?

Answer: The block will pass its equilibrium position twice each cycle. Since one cycle of its motion takes 5.00 s it will have completed only one cycle during 6.00 s and therefore it will pass its equilibrium position 2 times. Regardless of where the block is released from equilibrium it will take 1.25 s to reach equilibrium (why?). Since the block returns to its release position in 5 s, it will not have enough time to pass its equilibrium position a third time.

Amplitude

The **amplitude** of an object's periodic motion is defined as the maximum distance from equilibrium. We usually use the symbol A for amplitude.

Check Your Understanding

A horizontal spring with a block attached is stretched 8.40 cm beyond its equilibrium position. What is the maximum compression of the spring after passing through its equilibrium position?

Answer: A block initially stretched 8.40 cm beyond its equilibrium position will have amplitude 8.40 cm. Since the motion of the block is symmetric about the equilibrium position, the spring will have a maximum compression of 8.40 cm.

Illustrative Example 1

a. A 5.00-kg block in **Figure** 10.7 is attached to a spring with a force constant of $k = 75.0\frac{N}{m}$. The spring is stretched +0.35m beyond its equilibrium position 0 and released. Use the conservation of mechanical energy to find the velocity of the block when it is at position 0.15 m.

Answer:

The law of conservation of mechanical energy states that $E_i = E_f$. Let us choose the initial state at which the block is located at the 0.35 m position and the final state when the block is located at the 0.15 m position. At the position 0.35 m, all of the energy of the block-spring system is stored as potential energy in the spring. The initial energy of the block-spring system is $E_i = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$. In its final state, the block-spring system will have both potential and kinetic energy since the spring is still stretched at the 0.15 m position and the block now is in motion. If the final position

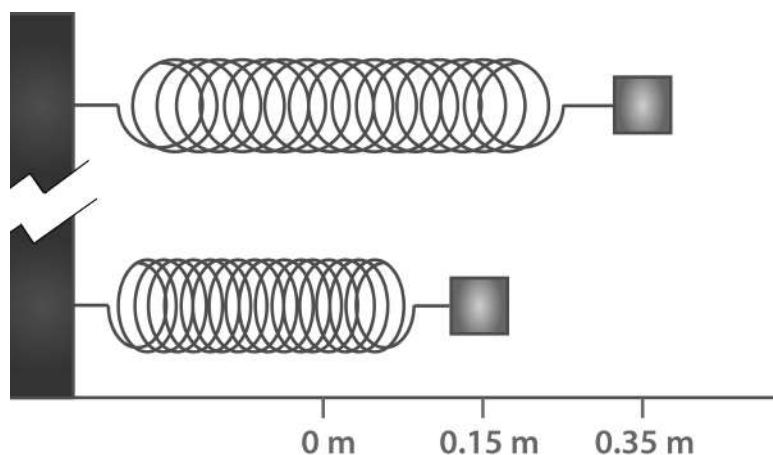



FIGURE 10.7

of the block is x and the final velocity of the block is v, the final energy of the block-spring system can be written as $E_f = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Solving, we have $E_i = E_f$

$$\rightarrow \frac{1}{2}kA^2 = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}(75.0)(0.35)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(75.0)(0.15)^2 + \frac{1}{2}(5.00)v^2 \rightarrow$$
$$5.00v^2 = (75.0)(0.35)^2 - (75.0)(0.15)^2 \rightarrow v^2 = \frac{(75.0)(0.35)^2 - (75.0)(0.15)^2}{5.00} \rightarrow$$
$$v^2 = 0.100 \rightarrow v = \pm 0.316 \rightarrow \pm 0.32\frac{m}{s}$$

Notice there are two solutions to the problem. Since the block is moving toward the left, the correct solution is $v = -0.32\frac{m}{s}$.

b. What is the block's speed when it passes through its equilibrium position?

Answer:

This occurs at the position where the spring is no longer stretched, that is, when it is at equilibrium. Taking the initial energy at the block's maximum extension (its amplitude $A = 0.35\ m$) and the final energy at equilibrium $x = 0.00\ m$, the conservation of mechanical energy $E_i = E_f$ gives

$$\frac{1}{2}kA^2 = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}(75)(0.35)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(75.0)(0)^2 + \frac{1}{2}(5.00)v^2 \rightarrow$$
$$v^2 = \frac{75.0(0.35)^2}{5.00} \rightarrow v = \pm 1.36. \text{ The speed of the block is therefore } 1.4\frac{m}{s}.$$

c. What is the period of oscillations T of the block?

Answer:$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{5.00}{75.0}} = 1.622 \rightarrow 1.62\ s$

d. How much time does it take the block to go from its maximum extension of 0.35 m to its equilibrium position 0.00 m?

Answer; We will solve the problem in two different ways:

i. Since SHM is the projection of circular motion, the time for an object to travel from its maximum extension to

equilibrium is the same time it takes the object to travel one-fourth of a revolution about a circle. Click on the link to see this idea animated.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Simple_harmonic_motion

$$\frac{T}{4} \rightarrow \frac{1.62\ s}{4} = 0.405\ s$$

ii. Using kinematics, we see that the total displacement of the block between the extremes of its motion is $-0.35\ m - (+0.35\ m) = -0.70\ m$. We can safely assume that the time it takes to travel from 0.35m to -0.35m is half the period T, since other than the direction of the block's motion, the second half of its cycle is identical to the first half of its cycle. (The same reasoning would lead us to assume the time from maximum extension to equilibrium must be one-fourth of the period). The time of travel is $t = \frac{T}{2} = \frac{1.62\ s}{2} = 0.81\ s$. The average velocity is then $v = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{-0.70\ m}{0.81\ s} = -0.864 \rightarrow -0.86 \frac{m}{s}$ and the time to travel from +0.35m to equilibrium 0.00m is $t = \frac{\Delta x}{v} = \frac{-0.35\ m}{-0.864 \frac{m}{s}} = 0.405 \rightarrow 0.41\ s$

Check Your Understanding

1a. We know that at the instant the block in the previous problem is released, its instantaneous speed is zero and its speed at equilibrium is 1.4m/s.

Why can't we also use the "good old" kinematic equation $x = \frac{v_i + v_f}{2} t$ where the distance $x = 0.35\ m$, $\frac{v_i + v_f}{2} = \frac{0 + (1.4)}{2} = 0.7 \frac{m}{s}$ and just solve for time? If we did, we would have had $t = \frac{0.35\ m}{0.70 \frac{m}{s}} = 0.50\ s$. This result is not in agreement with the previous result of 0.41 s. Why do you think this is?

Answer: The equation $x = \frac{v_i + v_f}{2} t$ is only true if the acceleration is constant. Since the force on the block is $F = -kx \rightarrow ma = -kx$, the acceleration a varies with x and is therefore not constant.

1b. How does the period of oscillation of the block in the previous example change if the spring is stretched twice as much, that is, if the amplitude of oscillations are doubled to 0.70 m?

The period would be:

a. The same.

b. Half as great.

c. Twice as great.

Answer: The answer is A.

The farther the spring is stretched, the greater the force on the object attached to the spring (recall that $F \propto -x \rightarrow a \propto -x$) and so the greater the average speed of the block. The larger average speed makes up exactly for the greater distance the block must travel during one cycle.

1c. If the spring constant is increased, the period is:

a. The same

b. Decreased

c. Increased

Answer: The answer is B. The spring constant is in the denominator, so a larger value must make the result T smaller. This is reasonable, since the larger the spring constant, the stiffer the spring and so the more force pulling on the object, shortening the time needed to complete a cycle of motion. What effect do you think increasing the mass would have on the period? Would twice the mass double the period?

We end this section with an example of an object attached to a vertical spring.

Illustrative Example 2

A 3.50-kg block stretches a vertical spring 9.50 cm beyond its unstretched length L_0 (**Figure** 10.8) as shown at position *A*. If the block is pulled down, stretching the spring an additional amount *d* (position *B*), and released, with what frequency will the block vibrate?

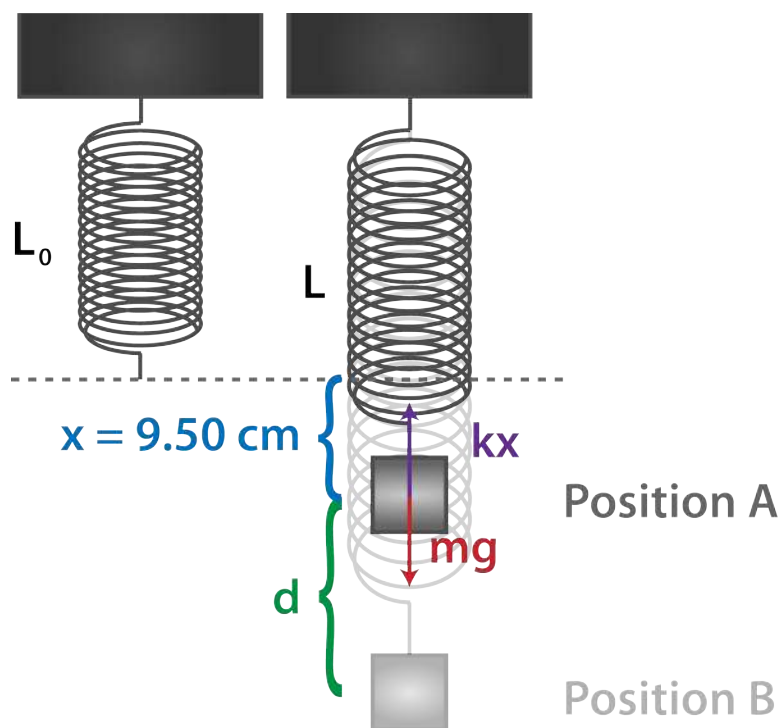



FIGURE 10.8

Answer:

At first glance it may seem that we don't have enough information to solve the problem, since we require both the mass of the block and the spring constant in order to find the period of the block and eventually the frequency. But we must remember that the block is in equilibrium at position *A* in **Figure** 10.8. The Free-Body-Diagram of the block is drawn at position *A*. The weight of the block *mg* is balanced by the force that the spring exerts in the upward direction *kx*. The net force on the block at position *A* is zero, so $\sum F = kx - mg = 0 \rightarrow k = \frac{mg}{x}$.

We may then use the equation $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$.

We will use this equation in order to write a useful equation for the frequency:

Since the frequency is $f = \frac{1}{T}$, substituting $2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ for T gives $f = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \rightarrow f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$

(Equation 3).

Substituting $k = \frac{mg}{x}$ into Equation 3, we have

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{x}} = \rightarrow f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{9.81}{0.0950}} = 1.617 \rightarrow 1.62\ Hz$$

Notice the additional distance *d* the spring was stretched did not enter into the calculation for the period of frequency.

10.3 Simple Pendulum

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand a simple pendulum.
- Solve problems involving a simple pendulum.

Vocabulary

- **simple pendulum:** Constructed by attaching any object to one end of a string and attaching the other end of the string to a fixed point, allowing them to swing back and forth.

Introduction

A **simple pendulum** consists of any object (called a pendulum bob), and a length of string. The dimensions of the bob are small compared to the length of string. The pendulum is constructed by attaching the bob to one end of the string and attaching the other end of the string to a fixed point. The bob and string can now swing back and forth. The effective length of the string is measured from the point at which the string is fixed to the center of mass of the bob (see **Figure** 10.9).

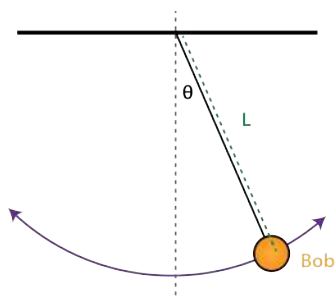



FIGURE 10.9
The simple pendulum.

Does a simple pendulum perform simple harmonic motion (SHM)? It does, as long as certain assumptions are met.

The string cannot stretch or twist, and the angle of swinging cannot be too great. If the bob moves through as wide an angle as shown in **Figure** 10.9, then the condition that the restoring force be proportional to the displacement is not well obeyed (consider the **Figure** 10.10). The component of the bob's weight, F_x is responsible for the back and forth motion of the pendulum and acts as the restoring force, which tries to bring the pendulum back to it equilibrium position at the bottom of its swing. But as we can see in **Figure** 10.10, the restoring force is not parallel

to the displacement of the bob. It dips below the $x-$axis rather than being along the $x-$axis, and the restoring force is therefore not proportional to the displacement of the bob. However, if the angle θ is made small enough as in the case of the green bob, then the restoring force will, indeed, be approximately proportional to the displacement, x.

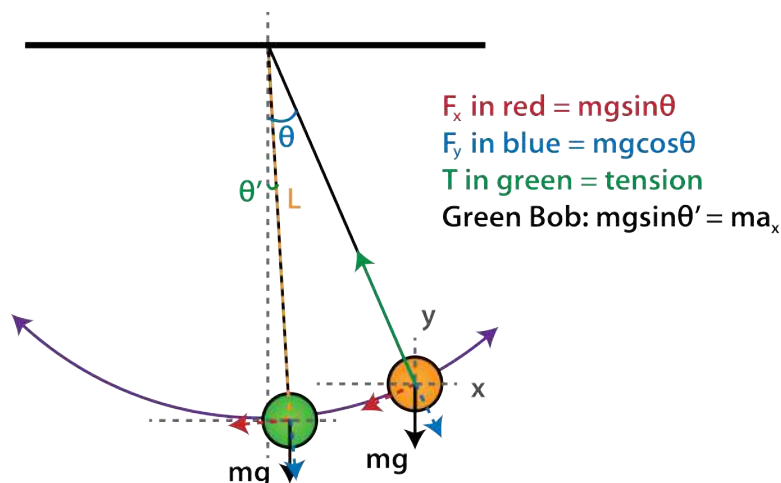



FIGURE 10.10

Under the conditions stated above, we can set up an approximate proportionality when the angle between the pendulum string and the vertical is small (less than 15 degrees).

In **Figure** 10.11 we assume that mg is almost equal to the tension T in the string. The bob is hanging almost vertically. We can form one triangle composed of the weight mg of the bob and the component of weight F_x,, and another triangle composed of the displacement x of the bob and the length L of the pendulum. The triangles are almost similar, so $\frac{ma_x}{mg} \doteq \frac{x}{L}$.

Note that the symbol $\doteq$ stands for approximately.

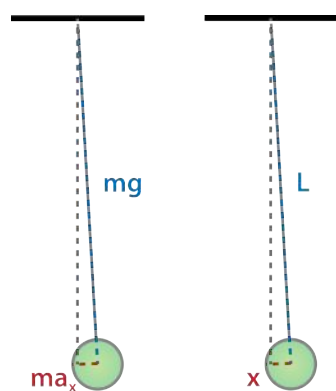



FIGURE 10.11

Uniform circular motion, which we are approximating, holds near the bottom of the swing of the pendulum, thus $a_x = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x$.

Substituting $\frac{4\pi^2}{T^2}x$ for a_x in the approximate proportionality above and eliminating the mass m, we arrive at $\frac{4\pi^2 x}{T^2 g} = \frac{x}{L} \rightarrow T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 L}{g} \rightarrow T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$.

The period of the simple pendulum, $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ is therefore proportional to the square root of the length of the

pendulum.

Illustrative Example 1

a. What is the period of a simple pendulum of length 40.0 cm?

Answer: Since $L = 40.0\ cm \rightarrow 0.400\ m$, the period is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} = T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{0.400}{9.81}} = 1.269 \rightarrow 1.27\ s$

b. How long of a string would be necessary for a pendulum with a period of 2.00 s? (A simple pendulum with the period of two second is sometimes referred to as a "seconds pendulum," since the time between the extremes of its motion is one second.)

Answer: The period is given as $T = 2.00\ s$

$\rightarrow T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \rightarrow 2.00 = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{9.81}} \rightarrow L = \frac{(4.00)(9.81)}{4\pi^2} = 0.9940\ m$, almost one meter!

c. How long would a "seconds pendulum" have to be on Mars? The gravitational acceleration at the Martian surface is 0.38 that of Earth.

Answer: Let us write $g_{mars} = 0.38 g_{earth} = 0.38\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right) = 3.728\frac{m}{s^2}$

$$\rightarrow T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g_{mars}}} \rightarrow 2.00 = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{3.728}} \rightarrow L = \frac{(4.00)(3.728)}{4\pi^2} = 0.3777 \rightarrow 0.378\ m$$

Notice that the length of the pendulum must be shorter than that on Earth. Does this seem reasonable? Since the gravity on Mars is smaller than on Earth, identical pendulums will swing slower on Mars than on Earth. In order for the period to remain 2.00 s, the length of the pendulum on Mars will need to be smaller.

See if you can show that $L_{mars} = \frac{g_{mars}}{g_{earth}} L_{earth}$.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/pendulum-lab

Check Your Understanding

1a. If the length of a simple pendulum is doubled, the original period T of the pendulum will:

a. Remain the same

b. be somewhere between T and $2T$

c. be $2T$

d. be $4T$

Answer: The correct answer is B. Remember that the period T is proportional to the square root of the pendulum's length L. That is, $T \propto \sqrt{L}$.

What answer above would be correct if the length of the pendulum had been four times greater?

(**Answer:** C)

1b. If the mass of the pendulum bob is doubled the period T, the pendulum will:

a. Remain the same

b. be somewhere between T and $2T$

c. be $2T$

d. be $4T$

Answer. The answer is A. The mass of the bob has no effect on the period of the pendulum. We can see this by looking at the equation for the period of the simple pendulum. There is no dependence on mass in the equation.

10.4 Waves and Wave Properties

Objectives

The student will:

- Be able to distinguish between types of waves.
- Be able to recognize the behavior of waves.

Vocabulary

- **diffraction:** The bending and stretching of waves.
- **longitudinal wave**: Consists of vibrations that are parallel to the wave direction.
- **reflection:** The process of light bouncing off boundaries between two media.
- **refraction:** The process of light bending.
- **transverse wave**: Consists of vibrations that are perpendicular to the wave direction.

Introduction

Energy is an abstract concept, defined as the ability to do work (force times distance), as opposed to more directly measured phenomena such as displacement, velocity, acceleration, force, and mass. Often, work is being done through wave motion. It is not uncommon to hear about the devastation brought about by a tsunami. Waves transports energy. You may have heard of the devastating effects at the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear power plant complex caused by the Tohoku earthquake and the resulting tsunami. **Figure** 10.12 and **Figure** 10.13 show some of the remarkable effects of the energy transported by waves.

Energy can also be transported by waves during an earthquake. The Richter Scale (invented in 1935 by Charles Richter and Beno Gutenberg) is used to measure the energy released during an earthquake. The waves that carry the energy away from the center of an earthquake are called seismic waves. Seismic waves contain several different kinds of waves. Two in particular are P-waves and S-waves. The links below demonstrate how P-waves and S-waves travel.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gl4FvHKzAlU

http://www.tjhsst.edu/~jlafever/wanimate/Wave_Properties2.html

FIGURE 10.12
A wave from the 2004 Boxing Day tsunami crashing through palm trees in Thailand.

FIGURE 10.13
The aftermath of a tsunami.

Longitudinal waves

A **longitudinal wave** consists of vibrations that are parallel to the wave direction. Examples include sound, or an earthquake P-wave. Such a wave is generated by pressing back and forth in the direction that the wave goes. How does a longitudinal wave transport (or propagate) energy?

Imagine a long coiled spring stretched out several meters in length. If several coils of the spring are compressed and then released, you will see a pulse move through the spring as in **Figure** 10.14. If coils are continually compressed and released, a train of compressions and expansions (a set of vibrations, or a wave) will appear to move through the spring. The energy propagating through the spring results in the vibrations of the spring coils. The vibrations cause the coils of the spring to oscillate about their equilibrium positions. It is important to realize that there is no net transfer of mass through the spring. Only energy is transferred. The properties of the spring such as its mass, tension, and force constant will determine at what speed the energy is propagated.

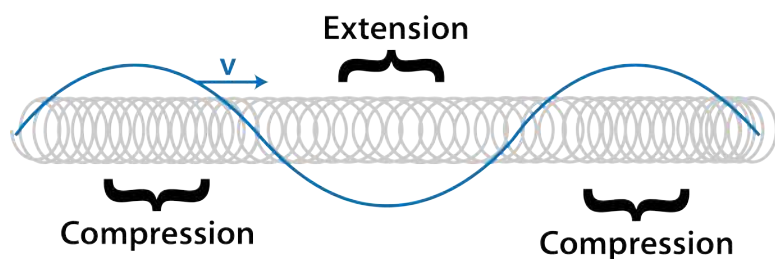



FIGURE 10.14
In a longitudinal wave the medium (the spring in this case) vibrates parallel to the direction of travel of the wave (v).

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ubRlaCCQfDk&feature=related

Transverse Waves

A **transverse wave** consists of vibrations that are perpendicular to the wave direction. Examples of transverse waves include cracking a whip, earthquake S-waves, and light (as well as other electromagnetic radiation). How does a transverse wave transport (or propagate) energy?

Imagine a long rope held at one end by a person and the other end anchored as shown in **Figure** 10.15. If the person moves the rope in an up-and-down motion, parts of the rope will move up and down as the energy is propagated along the rope. The motion of each portion of the rope will be perpendicular to the direction of propagation of energy (that is, the direction of the wave).

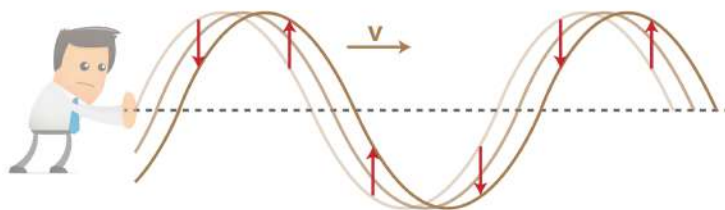



FIGURE 10.15
In a transverse wave the medium (the rope in this case) vibrates perpendicular to the direction of wave travel (v).

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LongitudinalAndTransverseWaves/

Just as in the case of longitudinal waves, there is no net transfer of mass in transverse waves. In the example above, each piece of the rope will vibrate up and down about its equilibrium position as the energy propagates through the rope. Similar to the longitudinal example, the speed with which the energy propagates through the rope depends upon the properties of the rope, for instance, its linear density and tension.

Waves Undergo Reflection

It is easy to see that light waves can **reflect**. That is, they can bounce off the boundaries between the two media, as shown in **Figure** 10.16. When we look into a mirror, the light travels from our face to the mirror and back to our

eyes and the light waves reflect off the mirror. It may not be obvious, but all waves can reflect. Water waves that come up along the shore are partially reflected. Drop a pebble into still water as in **Figure** 10.17 and you'll see the wave eventually reflect.

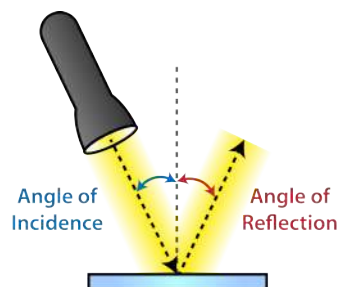



FIGURE 10.16
Light reflects off of a mirror.

FIGURE 10.17
These waves will eventually reflect off the sides of the pond.

Sound waves reflect and cause echoes. If you go to a concert, you'll notice that there are heavy drapes positioned around the concert hall. The heavy material helps to absorb the sound energy, thus reducing the amount of reflected sound which can negatively affect your listening pleasure! The fact that the drapes can absorb some of the sound energy implies that some of the wave energy can be transmitted to another medium. We will study wave transmission later.

Waves Undergo Refraction

To **refract** means to bend. We usually associate the refraction of a wave with light, as in **Figure** 10.18, but, again, all waves can refract. It is very fortunate, indeed. If light waves could not be refracted, we could never form images with microscopes or telescopes. Eye glasses could not exist. All of the optical phenomena we associate with lenses would be impossible if light did not refract. We will study refraction and lenses in greater detail later.

An interesting phenomenon illustrating the bending of sound involves the temperature difference between a warm road (asphalt) and the cooler air above the road. For our purpose, we state without explanation, that sound travels faster through a warmer medium than through a cooler medium. Those sound waves closer to the road will move

faster than those sound waves farther from the road. The sound waves will therefore refract, as shown in **Figure** 10.19. In general, waves refract when they pass into a medium where the wave speed is different.

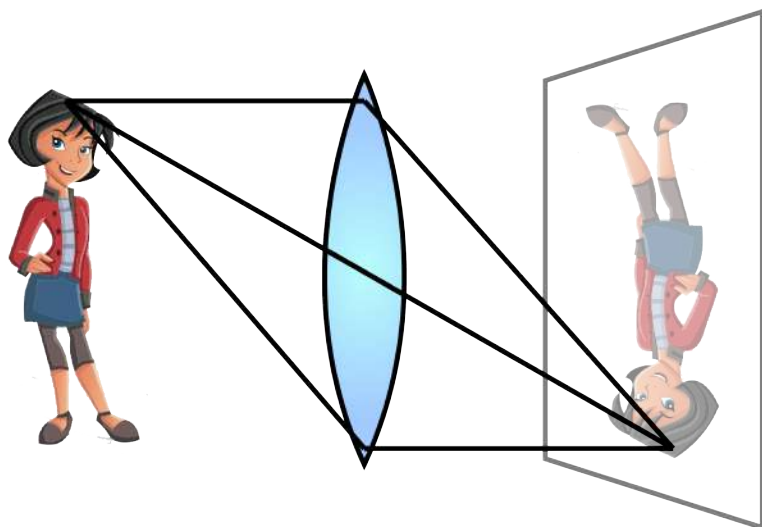



FIGURE 10.18

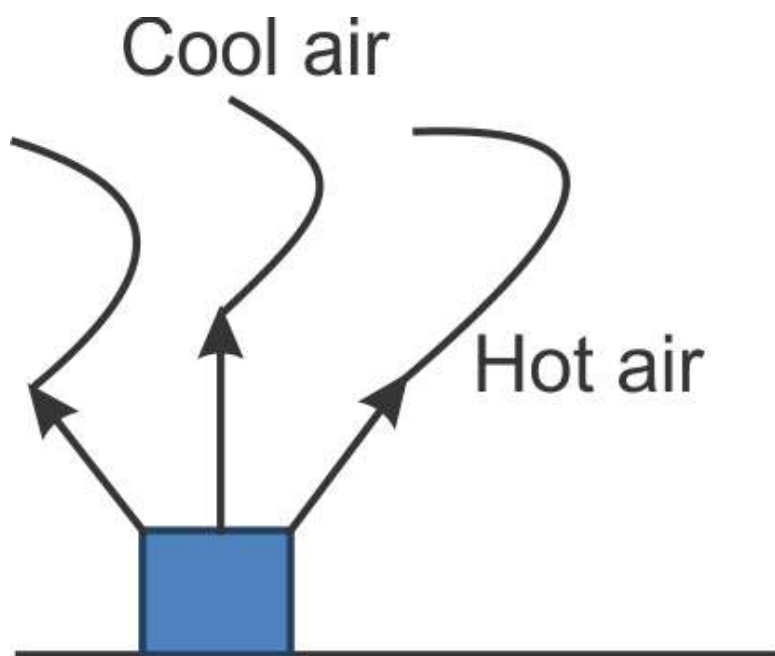



FIGURE 10.19

Waves Undergo Diffraction

Not only do waves undergo reflection and refraction, but they can also bend around objects and spread through openings, changing their shape and the direction of their motion (**Figure** 10.20). The bending and spreading of waves is called **diffraction**. It's not too difficult to accept that waves are subject to diffraction as they travel around obstacles or through openings. Consider the fact that you're able to hear sound through a small opening even when you're not in line with the opening or that you're able to listen to a conversation two people are having around a

corner from you. Light that passes through a small opening can illuminate an entire room. It is more difficult to detect the diffraction of light than that of sound. You might try having a thin object cast a shadow on a very bright day. If you look at the edges of the shadow, you may be able to see that edge is not sharp. The lack of sharpness is due to the light bending about the object. All waves diffract around objects and spread out through any openings available to them as in **Figure** 10.20. There is a relationship between the size of the opening and the nature of the wave that determines the degree to which the wave spreads that will be discussed later.

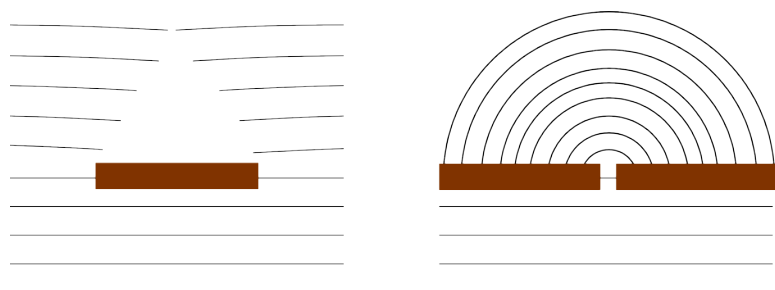



FIGURE 10.20
Notice in the leftmost diagram the possibility of a "shadow zone," an area behind the obstacle where the waves are less pronounced.

1. The projection of uniform circular motion onto a straight line is called *simple harmonic motion*(SHM); it is the simplest form of periodic motion.
2. An object performing SHM must have a restoring force upon it that seeks to return it to its equilibrium position which is directly proportional to the object's displacement; that is $F = -kx$ where the negative sign indicates that the restoring force and displacement are oppositely directed and $k$is a constant of proportionality.
3. The period T for a mass m on a spring is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$ where the spring is constant is k.
4. The frequency is $f = \frac{1}{T}$ or $f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$
5. The period T of a simple pendulum of length L is $T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$ where the gravitational acceleration is g.
   (a) Waves transmit energy but not mass.
6. Longitudinal waves occur when vibrations are parallel to wave direction.
7. Transverse waves occur when vibrations are perpendicular to the wave direction.
8. Reflection occurs when waves bounce off one medium back into the medium they originated from.
9. Refraction occurs when waves bend entering one medium from the other.
10. Diffraction occurs when waves spread out and when waves bend behind objects.

10.5 References

1. Eden, Janine and Jim. http://www.flickr.com/photos/edenpictures/5131658951/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Laura Guerin and Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
13. David Rydevik. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2004-tsunami.jpg . Public Domain
14. Mitsukuni Sato. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Devastation_after_tsunami_in_Rikuzentakata.jpg . CC-BY 2.0
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using image copyright artenot, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
17. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Flickr:EvelynGiggles. http://www.flickr.com/photos/evelynishere/2723847711/ . CC BY 2.0
19. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
20. CK-12 Foundation. CK-12 Foundation .
21. CK-12 Foundation - Joy Sheng. . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0

CHAPTER 11 Vibrations and Sound

Chapter Outline

Waves are periodic motion that induces motion beside it. One model for this is a crowd wave, where you stand up and sit back down when the person beside you does. A similar transfer happens when a rope is snapped or sound emitted. This chapter covers the properties of waves as they move through a physical medium, focusing on sound in particular.

11.1 Transmission of Sound

Objectives

The student will:

- Describe how mechanical waves are transmitted.
- Explain what is meant by the superposition of waves and interference.
- Explain and evaluate sound intensity.

Vocabulary

- **amplitude**: The magnitude of the greatest departure from the equilibrium position or density of the wave disturbance.

- **frequency:** The number of times a specified periodic phenomenon occurs within a specified interval.
- **intensity**: The intensity of any wave is the time-averaged power it transfers per area through some region of space.
- **superposition:** The superposition principle, also known as superposition property, states that, for all linear systems, the net response at a given place and time caused by two or more stimuli is the sum of the responses which would have been caused by each stimulus individually.

- **wave interference**: A phenomenon in which two waves superimpose to form a resultant wave of greater or lower amplitude.
  - **constructive interference**: Occurs when waves are superimposed and form a wave with a larger amplitude than either of the original waves.

  - **destructive interference**: Occurs when waves are superimposed and form a wave with a smaller amplitude than either of the original waves.

- **wavelength:** The distance between one peak or crest of a wave and the next corresponding peak or crest.

Introduction

What is sound? How does sound travel from one location to another?

Sound is a wave composed of vibrations. We can feel the vibrations if we put a hand in front of a speaker playing loud music, and we can see the vibrations if we put a cup of water in front of the speaker. If we were to look at sound being produced very slowly, we would see the speaker push forward and compress the air in front of it. This compressed air then presses against the regular air past it, and the compression moves forward as a wave (specifically a longitudinal *wave*).

Like simple harmonic motion, sound waves have a number of basic properties. The **Figure** 11.1 shows the **wavelength** and **amplitude** of a physical wave. We will use such wave representations for both longitudinal and transverse waves. The Greek letter "lambda" (λ) is used to represent wavelength. The wavelength of a wave is the distance between two successive crests or troughs, or, for that matter, any two identical points on the wave.

The amplitude, as **Figure** 11.1 shows, is the maximum distance the wave extends beyond the equilibrium line (0). It is measured either from the equilibrium to the crest or peak (highest point) of the wave, or from equilibrium to the trough (lowest point) of the wave. The distance from crest to trough is twice the amplitude $(2A)$. The maximum is the highest peak above the equilibrium line, occurring at positions 0.50 m and 2.5 m, as shown in **Figure** 11.1. The minimum is the lowest point below equilibrium, occurring at positions 1.5 m and 3.5 m, in **Figure** 11.1. The period T, as with simple harmonic motion, is the time required for each vibrating point to complete a full cycle.

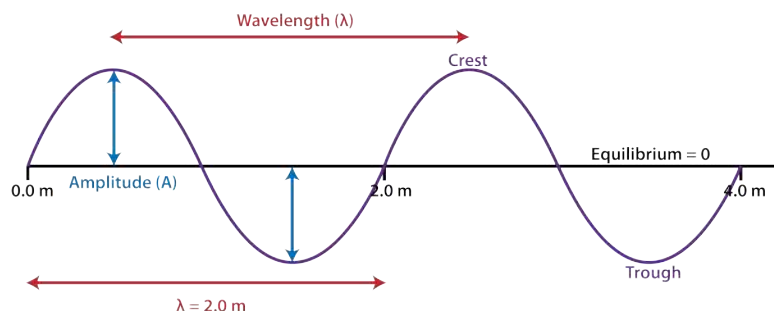



FIGURE 11.1

Wave Interference

Waves can interfere with each other so that their resulting amplitude can be either greater or smaller than the amplitude of either wave. If two waves overlap crest on crest and trough on trough, they are said to be completely in phase and the amplitude of the combined wave will be twice that of either wave $(A+A=2A)$. The same is true if two waves are of different amplitudes. As long as the crest (or trough) of both waves overlap, their combined amplitude will equal the sum of the maximum amplitudes. This is called completely **constructive interference**, **Figure** 11.2 A. Conversely, if two identical waves are completely out of phase, their resultant amplitude is zero $(A+-A=0)$. This is called completely **destructive interference**, as shown in **Figure** 11.2 B. Waves may produce various degrees of constructive or destructive interference, as shown in **Figure** 11.2 C. The process of adding two or more waves together is called **superposition**. The superposition of two or more waves is the sum of their respective amplitudes at their corresponding $x-$values.

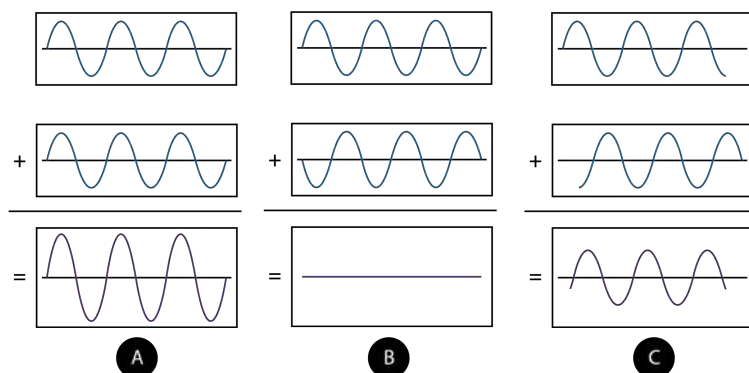



FIGURE 11.2

You can experience the effect of the superposition of sound waves if you listen to music from two different sources. Let's use the example of two speakers. If you change your position relative to the speakers, you will notice that there are places where the sound is louder and softer. This effect can be attributed to the distance (called the path length) over which the sound travels from each speaker. When the sound sources are equidistant from the listener, as in **Figure** 11.3, or a multiple of whole-wavelengths, the superposition of the waves is constructive. But when the path length difference between the waves is a multiple of odd half-lengths (the crest of one wave overlaps with the trough of the other wave), the superposition of the waves is destructive, as shown in **Figure** 11.4. We associate the volume of the sound with the amplitude of the resultant wave. The larger the amplitude, the louder the sound.

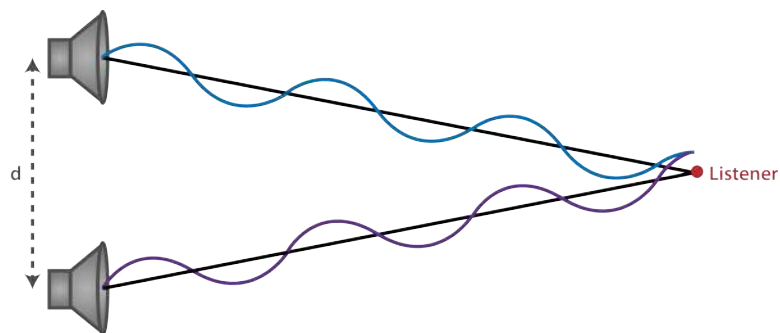



FIGURE 11.3
Constructive interference.

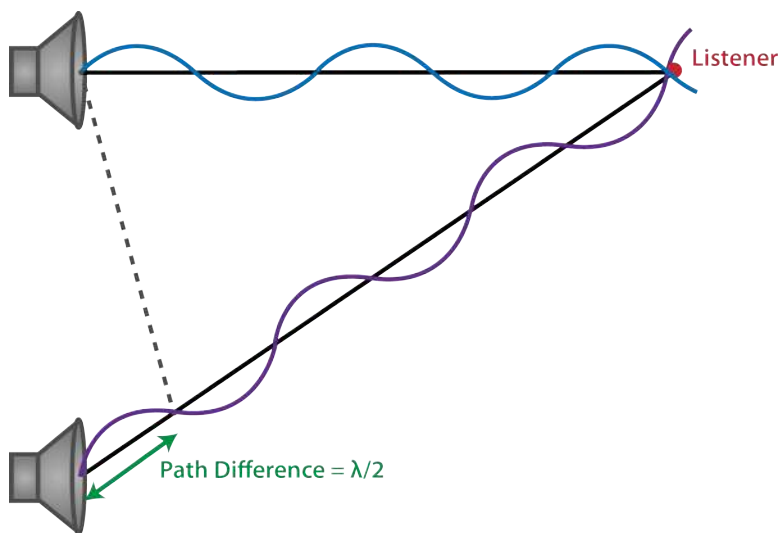



FIGURE 11.4
Destructive interference.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/wave-interference

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=J_xd9hUZ2AY

Check Your Understanding

1. Two waves with the same wavelength and period, but with different amplitudes of 4.0 cm and 3.0 cm interfere.

a. What is the maximum amplitude of their superposition?

Answer: The positive sum of their amplitudes is $4.0\ cm + 3.0\ cm = 7.0\ cm$.

b. What is the minimum amplitude of their superposition?

Answer: The absolute value of their difference $4.0\ cm - 3.0\ cm$ or $|3.0\ cm - 4.0\ cm| = 1.0\ cm$

2. The difference in path length between the two speakers of a stereo system is 2.0 m with respect to the listener. Will the listener hear two f-notes of wavelength 0.98 m undergo constructive or destructive interference?

Answer: Correctly employing significant digits, we find that two complete wavelengths of an f-note will fit into the path difference. So the f-notes undergo complete constructive interference.

$$\frac{path\ difference}{wavelength} = \frac{2.0\ m}{0.98\ m} = 2.04 \rightarrow 2.0\ wavelengths$$

Beats

Another result of wave interference is the phenomenon of beats. When two sound waves have frequencies very close to each other we can hear a "wobbling" sound of the vibrations of the waves, as represented in **Figure** 11.5. The maximum amplitude of the "green wave" (or envelope) corresponds to the maximum sound of the wobble. Essentially, some segments of each wave interfere constructively while others interfere destructively. The wobbling sound mentioned above is louder as the waves interfere constructively. Conversely, the sound is softer as the waves interfere destructively. The frequency with which the sound alternately increases and decreases its volume is called *the beat frequency*. When tuning forks of frequencies 261 Hz and of 268 Hz are struck, you will hear the characteristic beat frequency. If you have ever listened to someone tune a guitar by striking one string and slowly changing the tension in another string, you may have heard a beat frequency when the two strings were nearly tuned. In fact, hearing the beat frequency is a sign that the tuning is proceeding correctly!

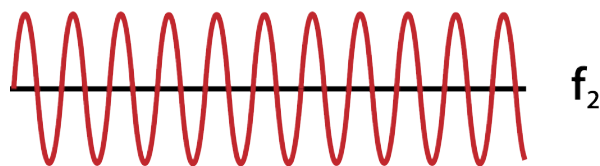
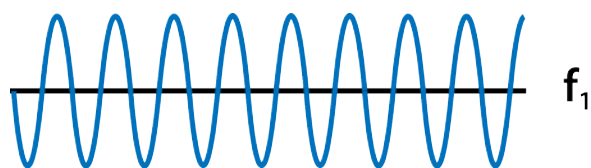
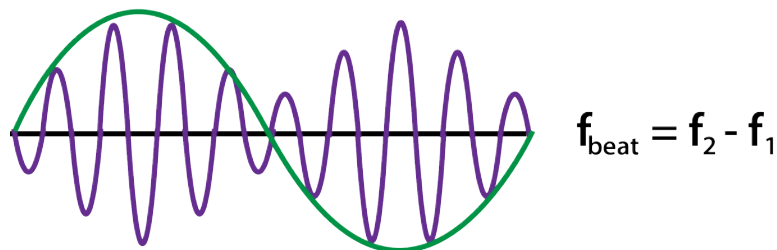



FIGURE 11.5

The beat frequency is found by subtraction: $f_{beat} = f_2 - f_1 \rightarrow$ In the example of the two tuning forks above, the

beat frequency is $f_b = 268\ Hz - 261\ Hz = 7\ Hz$. Of course, a beat frequency exists in principle between any two frequencies, but the human ear has difficulty hearing the "beat" beyond several hertz. Instead, we hear the two frequencies separately.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BeatsWorking/

Sound Intensity

The **intensity** of a wave is defined as the average power produced by some source (a horn and a light bulb are two examples) divided by the surface area over which the energy is transmitted. The equation for the intensity is: $I = \frac{W}{A}$

I represents intensity, W power (the wattage), and A the area over which the energy, in a given amount of time, has spread.

Intensity I has units of watts per square meter. Recall that a watt is joule per second, or $\frac{J}{S}$.

Since power is a measure of energy per unit time, the intensity depends upon the rate at which the energy is produced. The intensity is dependent upon the frequency of vibration of the source, as well as the density of the medium. Perhaps the most obvious factor determining the intensity, though, is the amplitude of the source.

We stated earlier that the amplitude of a sound is associated with the loudness of that sound. Strike a tuning fork gently and the displacement (the amplitude) of the prongs is small and the sound is soft. Strike the tuning fork harder and the amplitude of the prongs is larger and the sound is increased. We state without proof, for spherical waves, if only the amplitude of a wave varies, than the intensity of a wave is directly proportional to the square of the amplitude and inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the energy source.

We can understand intuitively that a sound is louder the closer we are to it and softer the farther we are away from it. If a sound source is suspended in midair so that its sound is transmitted equally in all directions, the sound energy will spread out spherically. If the sound source is limited to a short burst, it will die out quickly. The sound is gone. But of course, this is impossible. Once produced, the sound exists forever. But because a finite amount of sound energy spreads over a larger and larger volume of space there is less energy per square meter. As shown in **Figure** 11.6, after the energy has traveled from R_1 to $2R_1$, the sphere of energy will be spread out over four times the area. The energy passing through each per square meter at $2R_1$ will have only one-fourth the energy it did after passing point R_1. After the energy has traveled a distance from the source three times as great, $3R_1$, the energy will be spread out over nine times the area. The energy passing through each square meter will have only one-ninth the energy it did after passing point R_1. The energy continues to spread until the amount of energy passing through each per square meter is too small to be detected by the human ear.

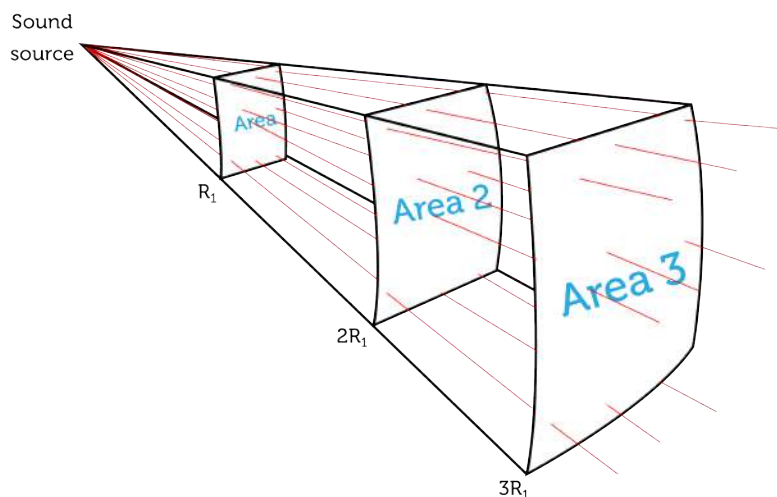



FIGURE 11.6

Check Your Understanding

1. The minimum sound intensity that a typical human ear can detect is $10^{-12}\frac{W}{m^2}$. Normal conversation occurs with a sound intensity of about $10^{-6}\frac{W}{m^2}$ at a distance of 1.00 m between each person.

a. How far would a third person need to be from the conversation in order not to hear any sound from the conversation?

Answer: An intensity of $10^{-6}\frac{W}{m^2}$ is one-million times greater than an intensity of $10^{-12}\frac{W}{m^2}$ since $\frac{10^{-6}}{10^{-12}} = 10^6 = one\ million$. If the intensity diminished as $\frac{1}{r}$, we would need to be one million times farther away or one million meters away. But the intensity diminishes as $\frac{1}{r^2}$ so $r^2 = 10^6 \rightarrow r = 10^3$ or a factor of one thousand $\rightarrow (1\ m) \times 10^3 = 10^3\ m$, that is one-kilometer from the source; or if you prefer $\frac{10^{-6}}{r^2} = 10^{-12} \rightarrow r^2 = 10^6 \rightarrow r = 10^3 \rightarrow (1\ m)(10^3) = 10^3\ m$.

This is a rather astounding result. A third person one kilometer away will be on the verge of still hearing sound emanating from the conversation. If a person is any farther away, no sound is detectible. It must be understood that this is possible under very controlled conditions with no other distracting or overwhelming sounds and that our answer, in the real life, is considerably less.

The human ear is an amazing organ. The lowest intensity sound that we can hear corresponds to a vibration of amplitude 0.3 billionths of a centimeter. Of course, there are a huge number of molecules being displaced by this distance inside the auditory canal.

Frequency Range of Human Hearing

When we listen to a piece of music we speak of pitch, loudness and quality. We have already said that the loudness of a sound is associated with the amplitude of the wave. Pitch is associated with the **frequency** of the sound, or the number of cycles per second of the vibration. High pitch sounds can be painful and annoying- think of a finger nail moving across a chalk board.

The human ear is responsive to a frequency range of about 20 Hz –20,000 Hz $(20\ Kilohertz = 20\ kHz)$. Most people cannot hear at the very low end or the very high end of this range. Most human speech occupies the range between 500Hz - 5000 Hz.

Consonant sounds are most important in distinguishing one word from another. In the English language, distinguishing words like slides and flies can be challenging to the hard-of-hearing. The s-sound in English is a high-frequency sound, about 10 kHz. It's also the sound we associate with electrical static. People who become hard-of-hearing usually lose the ability to hear well at higher frequencies and many s-sounds are either lost or misheard.

The ear can also distinguish between the sounds that have the same frequency and intensity. For example, most people can tell the difference between a c-note played on two different musical instruments. This is called the quality or timbre of the sound. This is a result of resonance, which will be discussed later.

Frequencies Beyond Human Hearing

Modern technology has found ways of using sounds that the human ear is incapable of hearing. You may be familiar with the term sonar, which stands for "sound navigation and ranging." Sonar uses ultrasonic sound (sound waves beyond human hearing) ranging infrequencies of 20 kHz to 100 kHz. Sonar has been used extensively in the military in dealing with submarine warfare, see **Figure** 11.7. Sonar signals can detect submarines and determine their location. Since the velocity of sound in water is known, half of the round-trip time of travel of the signal is the distance to the submarine. Sonar is also used in mapping the ocean bottom, commercial fishing, determining the extent of icebergs under water, and mapping geologic strata. Higher frequency ultrasonic waves are used in medicine. **Figure** 11.8 shows an ultrasound of a baby.

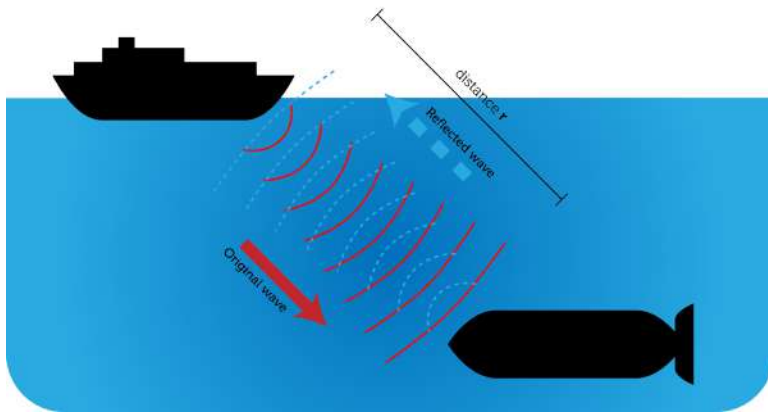



FIGURE 11.7

FIGURE 11.8

11.2 Wave Speed

Objective

The student will:

- Solve problems involving wavelength, wave speed, and frequency.

Vocabulary

- **wave equation:** Relates wavelength and wave speed. Distance is speed times time, $x = vt$, so wavelength is wave speed times period $\lambda = vT$.
- **wave speed:** How quickly the peak of each wave is moving forward.

The Wave Equation

Simple harmonic motion, moving back and forth in place, has amplitude along with period and frequency. Wave motion means that the back-and-forth change is also moving through space. This means that there are two further qualities of a wave.

- The wavelength is the distance between two compressions in the direction of motion of the wave, and is represented by the Greek letter lambda, λ. For an ocean wave, it would be the distance in meters from the top of one wave to the next.
- The **wave speed** is how quickly the peak of each wave is moving forward, and is represented by v (for velocity, although for our current purpose the direction is not important).

These two are related by the period T of the wave. The period is the time it takes for a wave to complete one cycle, which is the time it takes for a peak to move forward one wavelength. The **wave equation** expresses this. Distance is speed times time, $x = vt$, so wavelength is wave speed times period $\lambda = vT$.

This can alternately be expressed in terms of frequency. Suppose there are three waves every second. This is frequency $f = 3.0$ Hz, equivalent to period $T = \frac{1}{3}$ s. This means that during one second, three waves come out from the source. Since each peak is one wavelength, λ, ahead of the other, this means that during that one second, the lead wave has gone ahead three wavelengths. The distance the wave goes in one second is the wave speed. So, the wave speed is equal to the frequency times the wavelength, $v = \lambda f$.

Because $f = \frac{1}{T}$, these are mathematically the same:

$\lambda = vT \rightarrow v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda \frac{1}{T} = \lambda f$

The wave equation says distance wavelength is equal to wave speed multiplied by period T.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/SpeedOfSound/

Illustrative Example 1

a. The ripple tank arm in **Figure** 11.9 has a period of 0.25 s and the length of the arrow in the figure is 3.76 cm. What is the wavelength of the water waves if the picture is to scale?

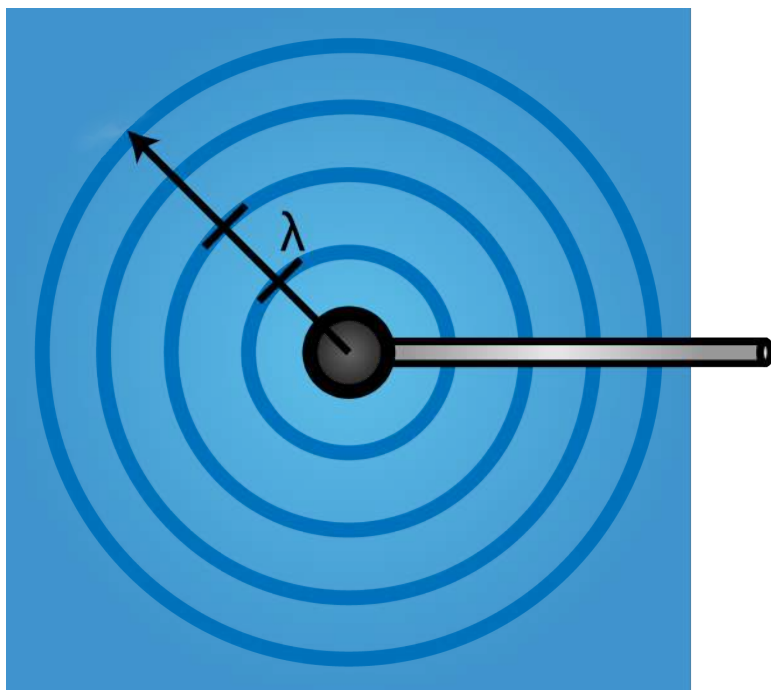



FIGURE 11.9

Answer: There are four wavelengths from the start to the end of the arrow. Wavelength is: $\lambda = \frac{3.76\text{cm}}{4} = 0.94\text{cm}$

b. What is the velocity of the wave?

Answer:

Since the period is $T = 0.25$ s, the frequency is , $f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{0.25 \text{ s}} = 4.0$ Hz or four cycles per second. *So* the velocity is $v = \lambda f = (0.94 \text{ cm})(4.0 \text{ Hz}) = 3.76 \ \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{s}}$.

Check Your Understanding

1. A sound wave travels at the speed of 343.0 m/s through the air at room temperature, $20.0°C (68.0°F)$. If the frequency of the sound is 261.6 Hz (a middle-C note), what is the wavelength of the note?

Answer: $v = \lambda f \rightarrow \lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{343.0 \text{ m/s}}{261.6 \text{ Hz}} = 1.311 \text{ m}$

2. X-rays are electromagnetic waves. A particular type of x-ray has a frequency of 3.0×10^{17} Hz and a wavelength of 1.0×10^{-9} m. What is the velocity of this type of x-ray?

Answer: $v = \lambda f = \left(1.0 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m}\right)\left(3.0 \times 10^{17} \ \frac{1}{\text{s}}\right) = 3.0 \times 10^{8} \text{ m/s}$

This result is true for any electromagnetic radiation traveling in a vacuum, including visible light.

3. Compared to the speed of sound in air at a temperature of $20°C$, how many times faster is the speed of light through the air at the same temperature?

Answer: We'll assume that the velocity of light $v_L = 3.0 \times 10^{8} \frac{m}{s}$ is approximately the same through the air as it is

through a vacuum. Number 1 above gave the velocity of sound for a temperature of $20°C$ as $v_s = 343.0\frac{m}{s}$.

Answer: $\frac{V_L}{V_s} = 874,635.57 \rightarrow 8.7 \times 10^5$. The velocity of light is indeed a good deal greater than the velocity of sound in air. In fact, the velocity of light in vacuum is the greatest velocity that exists. No material object can travel at this velocity! We will discuss these ideas in Chapter 22 (The Special Theory of Relativity).

4. At the moment a lightning flash is seen, a person begins to count off seconds. If he hears the thunder after seven seconds, approximately how far away from the person did the lightning flash originate?

Answer: We'll assume that the sound travels at a velocity of 343 m/s. In seven seconds the sound has traveled $x = vt \rightarrow x = \left(343\frac{m}{s}\right)(7s) = 2401 \rightarrow 2400\ m$.

5. Sound travels about 1,500 m/s in water. A destroyer ship locates an enemy submarine using a sonar signal which takes a 4.3 s to travel to, reflect, and return to the destroyer. How far is the sub from the destroyer?

Answer: The time for the signal to reach the sub is half of the total time of travel, $\rightarrow \frac{4.3\ s}{2} = 2.15 \rightarrow 2.2\ s$. Using $x = vt \rightarrow x = \left(1,500\frac{m}{s}\right)(2.15\ s) = 3225 \rightarrow 3200\ m$ or 3.2 km.

11.3 Resonance with Sound Waves

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the conditions for resonance.
- Solve problems with strings and pipes using the condition for resonance.

Vocabulary

- **beat frequency**
- **natural frequency:** The frequency at which a system vibrates normally when given energy without outside interference.
- **resonance:** Timing force to be the same as natural frequency.
- **sympathetic vibrations**

Introduction

Many systems have a tendency to vibrate. When the forced vibration frequency is the same as the natural frequency, the amplitude of vibration can increase tremendously. A well-known example of this situation is pushing a person on a swing, **Figure** 11.10. We know from study of simple pendulums that without being pushed, the person in the swing rocks back and forth with a frequency that depends on gravity and the length of the chain.

$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{g}{L}}$

This is one example of a **natural frequency** –the frequency at which a system vibrates normally when given energy without outside interference.

Pushing on the person in the swing will affect the amplitude of the swinging. This is called forced vibration –when a periodic force from one object (the person pushing) affects the vibration of another object (the person swinging). To get the most effect, the person pushing will start just at the very back of the swing. In other words, the frequency of how often they push is exactly the same as the frequency of the swing. Suppose they do not push at the right time, but instead push at some other frequency. That would mean that sometimes they are pushing forward when the swing is still going backward. In that case, the swing would slow down –i.e. the amplitude of the swing will be reduced.

Timing the pushes to be the same as the natural frequency is called **resonance**. For this reason, the natural frequency is also known as the resonant frequency. If the pushes are timed just right, then even if each individual push is small, the vibration will get larger with each push.

FIGURE 11.10

A classic example of an unfortunate consequence of a forced vibration at resonant frequency is what happened to the Tacoma Narrows Bridge, in 1940. See the link below.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3mclp9QmCGs

In **Figure** 11.11, the bridge is beginning to resonate, in part, due to the frequency of vibration of the wind gusts. In **Figure** 11.12, we see that the bridge is no longer able to respond elastically to the tremendous amplitude of vibration from the forced vibration of wind energy (at its resonant frequency), and it is torn apart.

FIGURE 11.11

Modern bridges are built to avoid this effect, but through history there are a number of documented situations where a forced vibration at resonance had dire results. The Broughton Suspension Bridge (1831) and the Angers Bridge (1850) are two examples of bridges believed to have collapsed due to the effect of soldiers marching at a regular pace that caused resonance. The Albert Bridge in West London, England has been nicknamed The Trembling Lady because it has been set into resonance so often by marching soldiers. Though soldiers no longer march across the

FIGURE 11.12

bridge, there still remains a sign of concern as shown in **Figure** 11.13.

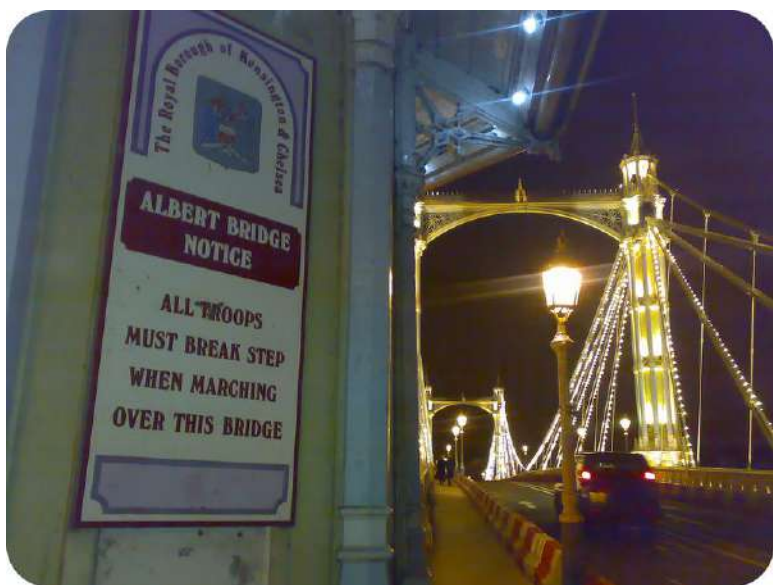



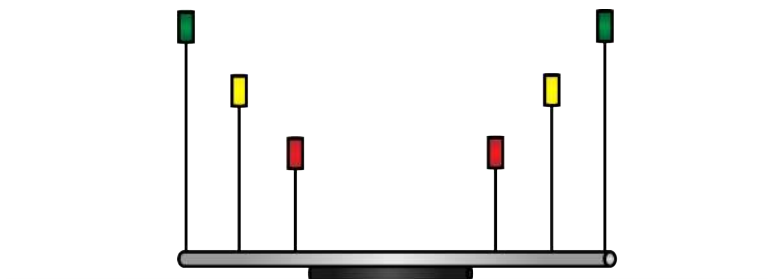
FIGURE 11.13

Sympathetic Vibrations

There is a typical classroom physics demonstration where one tuning fork is set into motion and an identical tuning fork, if placed closed enough, will also be set vibrating, though with smaller amplitude. The same effect occurs when tuning a guitar. One string is plucked and another, whose length is shortened by holding it down some distance from the neck of the guitar, will also be set into vibration. When this condition is met, both strings are vibrating with the

same frequency. We call this phenomenon **sympathetic vibration.**

FIGURE 11.14

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tnS0SYF4pYE

In **Figure** 11.14, a set of pendulums are fixed to a horizontal bar that can be easily jostled. Pendulums *A* and *E* have the same length. If one of them is set swinging, the horizontal bar will be forced into moving with a period equal to that of the pendulum, which, in turn, will cause the other pendulum of the same length to begin swinging. Any pendulum that is close in length to pendulums *A* and *E*, for example, pendulum *D*, will also begin to swing. Pendulum *D* will swing with smaller amplitude than pendulums *A* and *E* since its resonant frequency is not quite the same as pendulums *A* and *E*. Pendulums with lengths dramatically different from pendulums *A* and *E* will hardly move at all. You can try a similar demonstration out yourself with the following simulation:

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/resonance

Resonance is a very common phenomenon, especially with sound. The length of any instrument is related to what note it plays. If you blow into the top of a bottle, for example, the note will vary depending on the height of air in the bottle. This plays an important role in human voice generation. The length of the human vocal tube is between 17 cm and 18 cm. The typical frequencies of human speech are in the range of 100 Hz to 5000 Hz.

By using the muscles in their throat, singers change the note they sing. A dramatic example of this is breaking glass with the human voice. By singing at exactly the resonant frequency of a delicate wine glass, the glass will resonate with the note and shatter.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7YmuOD5X4L8

The resonance of sound is also a mechanical analogue to how a radio set receives a signal. The **Figure** 11.16 shows one of the earliest radio designs, called a crystal radio because the element which detected the radio waves was a crystalline mineral such as galena.

In modern times, the air is filled with all manner of radio waves. In order to listen to your favorite radio station, you must tune your radio to resonate with only the frequency of the radio station. When you hear the tuning number of a radio station, such as "101.3 FM", that is the measure in *megahertz,* $101.3 \text{ MHz} = 1.013 \times 10^8 \text{ Hz}$. The coiled wire (called an inductor) and the capacitor in **Figure** 11.16 act together to tune in a specific radio station. Effectively, the capacitor and inductor act analogously to a pendulum of a specific length that will only respond to vibrations of

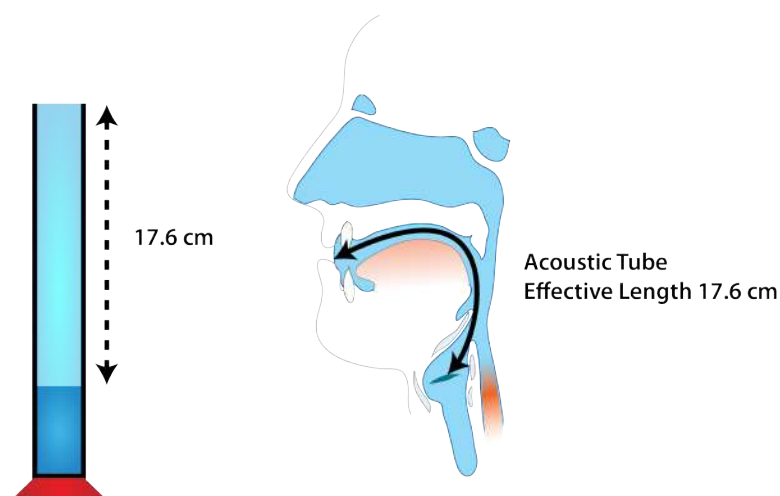



FIGURE 11.15

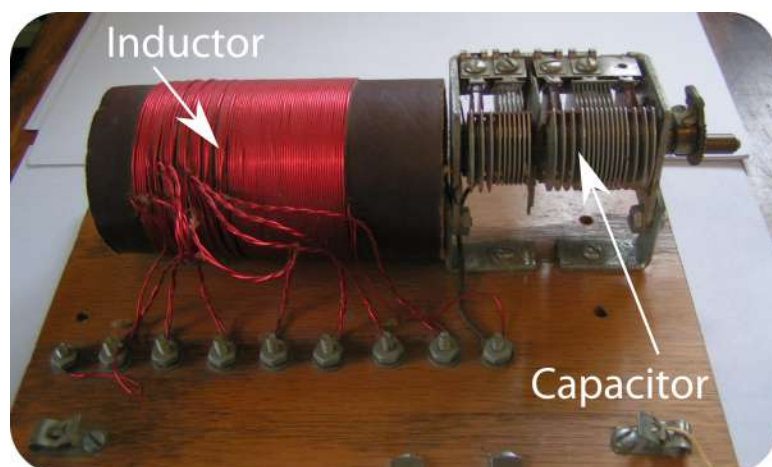



FIGURE 11.16
An old crystal radio set.

another pendulum of the same length. So when tuned, only a specific radio frequency will cause resonance in the radio antenna.

Strings Fixed at Both Ends

A case of natural frequency that you can observe plainly is when you pluck a string or stretched rubber band. Normally, the string will vibrate at a single widest point in the middle. This is called the fundamental or first harmonic resonance of the string. This is the same as the natural frequency of a simple pendulum or mass on a spring. Because it vibrates all along its length, though, the string also lets us see further patterns of resonance.

By vibrating the end of the string rather than just plucking it, we can force vibration at frequencies other than the first harmonic. When the string is set into vibration, energy will travel down the string and reflect back toward the end where the waves are being generated. This steady pattern of vibration is called a standing wave. The points where the reflecting waves interfere destructively with the "generated' waves are called nodes. The points where the reflecting waves interfere constructively with the generated waves are called anti-nodes.

Figure 11.17 shows a string fixed at both ends vibrating in its fundamental mode. There are two nodes shown and one antinode. The dashed segment represents the reflected wave.

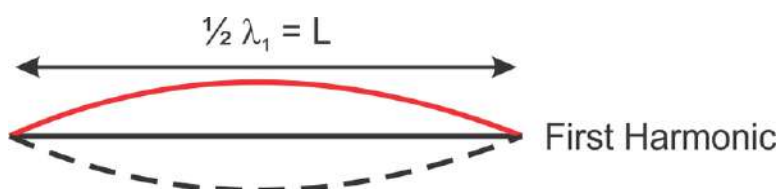



FIGURE 11.17

If you compare the wave shape of the first harmonic to the wave shape of **Figure** 11.17, it will be apparent that the first harmonic contains one-half of a wavelength, λ. Therefore L, the length of the unstretched string, is equal to one-half the wavelength, which is $\frac{1}{2}\lambda_1 = L \rightarrow \lambda_1 = 2L$.

The second harmonic contains an entire wavelength $\frac{2}{2}\lambda_2 = L \rightarrow \lambda_2 = L$ as shown in **Figure** 11.18.

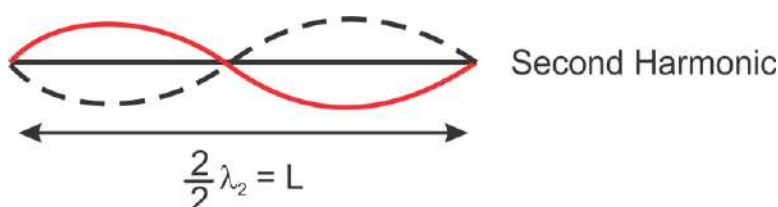



FIGURE 11.18

And the third harmonic contains one and one-half wavelengths $\frac{3}{2}\lambda_3 = L \rightarrow \lambda_3 = \frac{2}{3}L$.

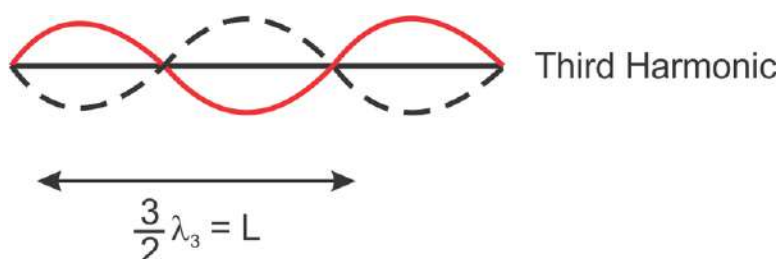



FIGURE 11.19

If the pattern continues then the fourth harmonic will have a wavelength of $\frac{4}{2}\lambda_4 = L \rightarrow \lambda_4 = \frac{1}{2}L$. Looking at the expressions for the length of the string in terms of the wavelength, a simple pattern emerges: $L = \frac{1}{2}\lambda_1, \frac{2}{2}\lambda_2, \frac{3}{2}\lambda_3, \frac{4}{2}\lambda_4 \ldots$. We can express the condition for standing waves (and of resonance, as well) as $L = \frac{n}{2}\lambda_n$ or $\lambda_n = \frac{2}{n}L$, where L is the length of string and $n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots$.

Check Your Understanding

1. How many nodes and anti-nodes are shown in **Figure** 11.19?

Answer: There are three nodes and two anti-nodes.

2. If the length of the unstretched string is 20 cm, what is the wavelength for the 10th harmonic?

Answer: $\lambda_n = \frac{2}{n}L \rightarrow \lambda_{10} = \frac{2}{10}L = \frac{1}{5}(20 \text{ cm}) = 4 \text{ cm}$

Strings Fixed at One End and Opened at One End

A string fixed at one only end displays a different standing wave pattern. In this case, the unbounded end of a string of length L is an antinode. The fundamental mode (the first harmonic) for the length L of string contains only one-fourth of a wavelength as shown in **Figure** 11.20. Therefore L, the length of the unstretched string, is equal to one-quarter the wavelength, which is $\frac{1}{4}\lambda_1 = L \rightarrow \lambda_1 = 4L$.

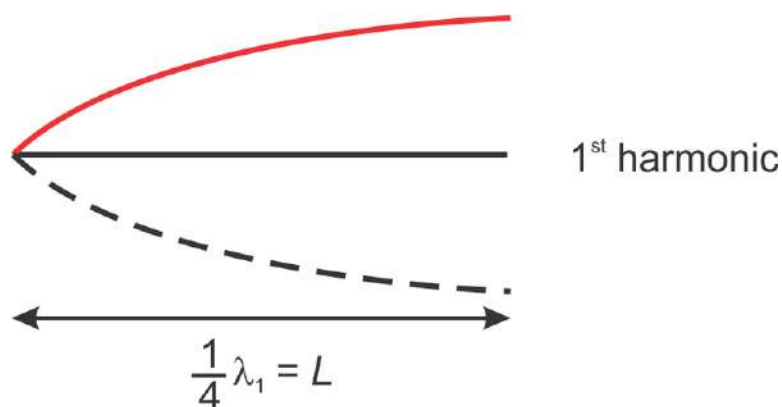



FIGURE 11.20

The second harmonic contains three-quarters of a wavelength $\frac{3}{4}\lambda_2 = L \rightarrow \lambda_2 = \frac{4}{3}L$ as shown in **Figure** 11.21.

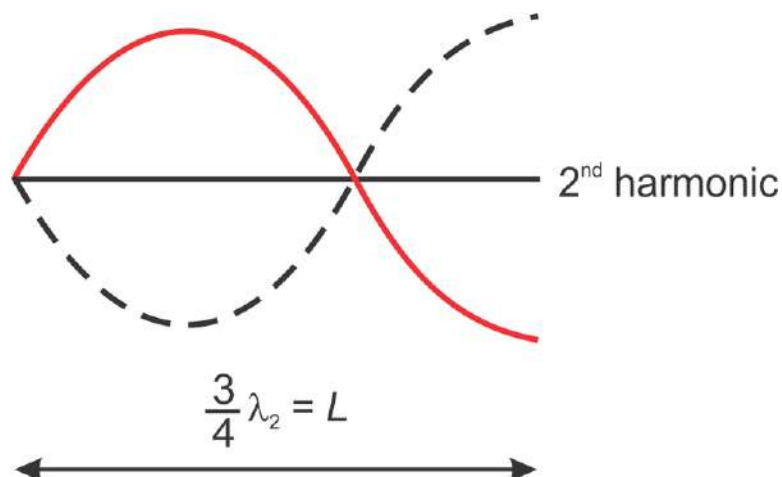



FIGURE 11.21

The third harmonic contains five-fourths of a wavelength $\frac{5}{4}\lambda_2 = L \rightarrow \lambda_2 = \frac{4}{5}L$ as shown in **Figure** 11.22.

If the pattern continues, then the fourth harmonic will have a wavelength of $\frac{7}{4}\lambda_4 = L \rightarrow \lambda_4 = \frac{4}{7}L$. Looking at the expressions for the length of the string in terms of the wavelength, a simple pattern emerges $\frac{1}{4}\lambda_1, \frac{3}{4}\lambda_2, \frac{5}{4}\lambda_3, \frac{7}{4}\lambda_4 \ldots$. We can express the condition for resonance as $L = \frac{n}{4}\lambda_n$ or $\lambda_n = \frac{4}{n}L$, where L is the length of string and $n = 1, 3, 5 \ldots$.

As long as the tension in the string remains fixed, the velocity of the wave along the string remains constant. Does it seem reasonable that a sagging string will not support the same wave velocity as a taut string? Since $v = \lambda f$ product λf is constant as long as the wave velocity remains constant. Therefore, for a string vibrating in many different modes, we have $v = \lambda_1 f_1 = \lambda_2 f_2 = \lambda_3 f_3 \ldots$.

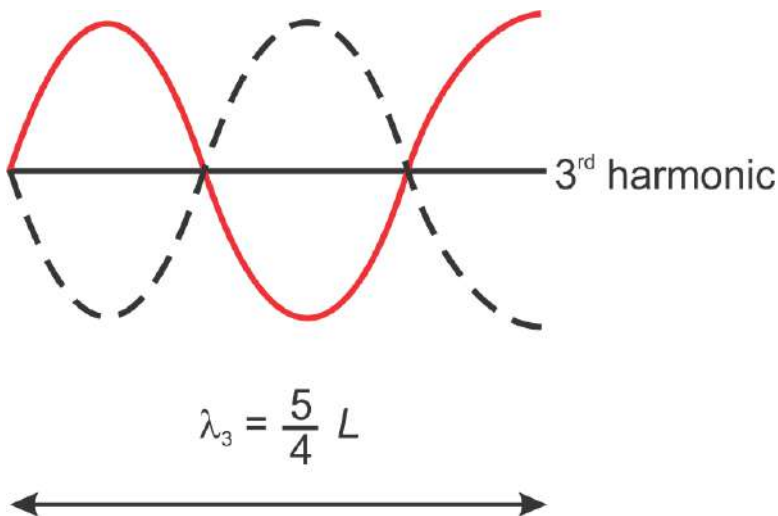



FIGURE 11.22

Illustrative Example 1

1a. If the frequency of the first harmonic for a string fixed at both ends is f_1, determine the frequency for successive harmonics in terms of f_1.

Answer: We know that $\lambda_n = \frac{2}{n}L$ and $v = \lambda f$. Combining, we have $v = \left(\frac{2}{n}L\right) f \rightarrow f_n = \frac{n}{2L}v$. But v can be expressed $v = \lambda_1 f_1 = 2Lf_1$ and substituted into $f_n = \frac{n}{2L}v$, giving

$f_n = \frac{n}{2L}(2Lf_1) = nf_1 \rightarrow f_n = nf_1$

1b. If the first harmonic has frequency of 261 Hz, what frequencies do the second and third harmonics have?

Answer:

Since

$$f_n = nf_1 \rightarrow 2(261 \text{ Hz}) = 522 \text{ Hz}$$
$$f_n = nf_1 \rightarrow 3(261 \text{ Hz}) = 783 \text{ Hz}$$

All whole number multiples of the first harmonic (the fundamental) are called harmonics. String instruments, as well as non-string instruments, can actually vibrate with many different frequencies simultaneously (called modes). For example, a string may vibrate with frequencies 261 Hz, 522 Hz and 783 Hz simultaneously.

One of attributes of the "quality" or "timbre" of musical instruments depends upon the combination of the various overtones produced by the instrument.

Check Your Understanding

1. A tuning fork has a frequency of 512 Hz stamped on it. When it is struck, a student claims she can hear higher frequencies from the tuning fork. Is this possible?

Answer: Yes, it is. The tuning fork may be producing harmonics, in which case the student may be hearing frequencies in multiples of 512 Hz, such as 1,024 Hz and 1,536 Hz.

2. A string with a fundamental frequency of 220 Hz vibrates in its third harmonic with a wavelength of 60 cm. What is the wave velocity on the string?

Answer: $v = \lambda f$ but $f = 3f_1 = 3(220 \text{ Hz}) = 660 \text{ Hz}$, so

$$\lambda = 0.60 \text{ m}$$
$$v = (660 \text{ Hz})(0.60 \text{ m}) = 396 \text{ m/s}$$

.

Open and Closed Pipes and Tubes

In our discussions of pipes, the length of the pipe will be assumed to be much greater than the diameter of the pipe.

An open pipe, as the name implies, has both ends open. Though open pipes have antinodes at their ends, the resonant conditions for standing waves in an open pipe are the same as for a string fixed at both ends. Thus for an open pipe we have: for $n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots, L = \frac{n}{2}\lambda_n$, or $\lambda_n = \frac{2}{n}L$.

There is a simple experiment your instructor may have you do in class that demonstrates resonance in an open tube. Roll two sheets of long paper into two separate tubes and use a small amount of tape to keep them rolled. Have the diameter of one tube just small enough to fit inside the other tube so the inside tube can freely slide back and forth. Hold a struck tuning fork (your instructor will make sure the frequency is adequate) close to the end of the outer tube while the inside tube is moved slowly. When the total length of the tubes is the proper length to establish resonance, you'll hear a noticeable increase in the volume of the sound. At this moment, there are standing waves present in the tubes.

A closed pipe is closed at only one end. Closed pipes have the same standing wave patterns as a string fixed at one end and unbound at the other end. They therefore have the same resonant conditions as a string fixed at only one end, for $n = 1, 3, 5 \ldots, L = \frac{n}{4}\lambda_n$ or $\lambda_n = \frac{4}{n}L$.

A closed pipe supporting the first harmonic (the fundamental frequency) will fit one-fourth of the wavelength, the second harmonic will fit three-fourths, and so on, as shown in **Figure** 11.23. Compare these pictures to those in the figures above for a string fixed at only one end

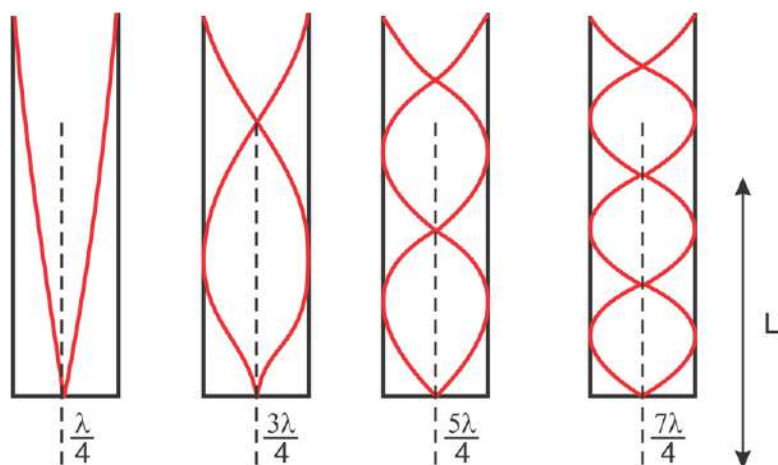



FIGURE 11.23

A standard physics laboratory experiment is to find the velocity of sound by using a tuning fork that vibrates over a closed pipe as shown in **Figure** 11.24. The water level in a pipe is slowly changed until the first harmonic is heard.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ResonanceInOpenAndClosedPipes/

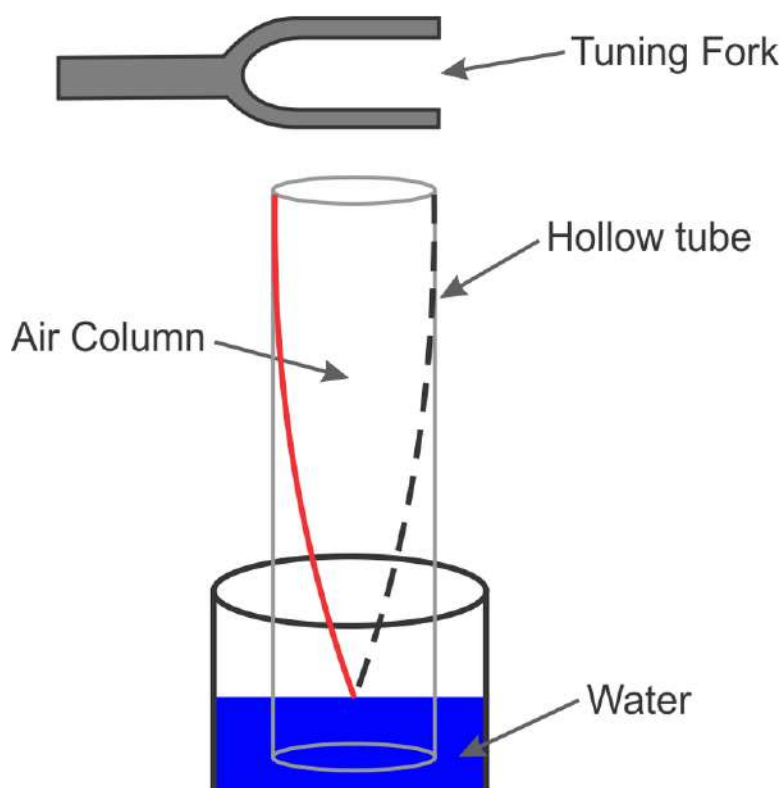



FIGURE 11.24

Illustrative Example 2

Resonance is established in a hollow tube similar to that shown in **Figure** 11.24 with a tuning fork of 512 Hz. The distance from the tube opening to the water level is 16.8 cm.

a. What is the velocity of sound according to this experiment?

Answer: The wave velocity equation is $v = \lambda f$. One-fourth of the wave occupies the length of the tube for the first harmonic. So the wavelength of the resonant wave must be four times the length of the hollow tube. That is,

$$\lambda_1 = 4L = 4 \times 16.8 \text{ cm} = 67.2 \text{ cm} = 0.672 \text{ m}$$
$$v = (0.672 \text{ m})(512 \text{ Hz}) = 344 \text{ m/s}$$

b. The velocity of sound changes with temperature as given by the formula $v = 330 + 0.6T$, where T is the temperature in degrees centigrade. Using the result of part A, determine the temperature at the location the experiment was conducted.

Answer: We simply set the result of part A equal to the given equation:

$344 = 330 + 0.6T \rightarrow T = 23.3°C$ (or about $74°F$).

11.4 Doppler Effect

Objective

The student will:

- Understand the Doppler effect.

Vocabulary

- **Doppler effect:**

Introduction

Have you ever heard a car honking its horn or ambulance blaring its siren as it zooms past you at high speed? It has a distinctive sound, like "eerrrrrrrroooooooom". It is not just that the sound gets louder, but it changes pitch, as well. In other words, it changes in both amplitude and frequency. The sound is illustrated in the video below:

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/62087

The car horn distinctly sounds like it has a higher pitch as it is getting closer, and a lower pitch as it goes away. Why does this happen?

Moving Source, Stationary Observer

Sound is a vibration that travels through the air. Once the sound leaves the car, it travels at its normal wave speed through the air, regardless of how the car is moving. So if the car is moving quickly, it is catching up to the sound waves that it is sending forwards. This means that the wavelength is effectively shorter by exactly how far the car moves over one period. When the car passes the observer and is moving away, then the car is moving away from the sound waves it sends out, so the wavelength is longer. See **Figure** 11.25.

When the wavelength is shorter, as seen to the right in the **Figure** 11.25, the waves arrive together more frequently. The higher frequency means a higher note or pitch, When the waves are farther apart, as in the left of the **Figure** 11.25, the waves arrive less frequently. Frequency decreases, meaning a lower note or pitch. This matches what we know from the wave equation:

FIGURE 11.25

$$v = \lambda f \quad \rightarrow \quad \lambda = \frac{v}{f}$$

Double the frequency means half the wavelength, and vice versa. The pitch sounds high as the car approaches, and low after it goes past.

Using this, we can figure out exactly what the change is. When the car is going away, the wavelength is longer by exactly how far the car moves during the time of one period, $T = \frac{1}{f}$. As before, we will call the wave speed v The car is the source of the wave, so its velocity is labeled v_s for velocity of the source. Then the effectively longer wavelength λ' (called "lambda prime") is:

$$\lambda' = \lambda + vT = \left(\frac{v}{f}\right) + \left(\frac{v_s}{f}\right) = \frac{v + v_s}{f}$$

This can alternately be expressed by what the effective new frequency f' is compared to the original frequency f.

$$f' = \frac{v}{\lambda'} = v\left(\frac{f}{v + v_s}\right) = f\frac{v}{v + v_s}$$

The denominator here is larger, so this longer wavelength means a smaller frequency. It will be heard as a lower pitch or note.

If the car is approaching us, then the new wavelength is shorter by the same amount. We can use the same equation, but put in a negative value for the velocity of the source v_s.

- Positive v_s is the source moving away for longer wavelength.
- Negative v_s is the source moving closer for shorter wavelength.

Moving Observer, Stationary Source

A similar effect is true if you are in a car going past a source of sound. There is a small but important difference, though, because we assume that the air is stationary and the sound moves at a fixed speed through the air. Therefore,

the actual wavelength of the sound in the air is the same. The difference is that as we move toward the source, we move past more waves per second. So the wavelength is unchanged, but the effective wave speed is different.

In this case, the car is the receiver of the sound rather than the source, so we will call the car's speed v_r for velocity of the receiver. If the car is heading toward the source, then the waves are effectively moving faster.

$$v' = v + v_r \quad \rightarrow \quad f' = \frac{v'}{\lambda} = \frac{v + v_r}{\lambda}$$

The effect is similar. Moving toward the source means that there is a higher frequency, so a higher pitch or note.

As before, the opposite is true if the car is moving away from the source. Because the car is moving away, the waves have to catch up to the car, so their effective speed is slower. We can represent this by putting in a negative number for v_r in the equation above.

- Positive v_r is the receiver moving toward the source for faster effective wave speed
- Negative v_r is the receiver moving away from the source for slower effective wave speed

Source and Observer in Motion

Now let us consider if we are in a car that is chasing after an ambulance. In this case, the source of sound is moving away with velocity v_s, making a longer wavelength. The receiver is moving toward the sound with velocity v_r, making an effectively higher wave speed.

$$f' = \frac{v'}{\lambda'} = \frac{v + v_r}{\lambda + v_s T} = \frac{v + v_r}{vT + v_s T} = \left(\frac{1}{T}\right)\left(\frac{v + v_r}{v + v_s}\right) = f\left(\frac{v + v_r}{v + v_s}\right)$$

Here both the velocity of the source and the velocity of the receiver are defined as before.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/IntroductionToTheDopplerEffect/

Check Your Understanding

a. The siren of an ambulance produces a sound of frequency 700 Hz. If the ambulance approaches a person standing by the road with a velocity of 31.0 m/s, what is the frequency heard by the person? Take the velocity of sound to be $v = 343$ m/s.

Answer: The ambulance is the source of the sound moving towards a stationary receiver. The source moving toward is an effectively shorter wavelength, so negative v_s.

$$f' = f\frac{v}{v + v_s} = (700 \text{ Hz})\left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s} + (-31 \text{ m/s})}\right) = 770 \text{ Hz}$$

b. The ambulance passes the person standing. The siren of an ambulance produces a sound of 700 Hz as it moves away from a stationary receiver with a velocity of 31 m/s. What is the frequency perceived by the observer?

Answer: The source is moving away for an effectively longer wavelength, so v_s is positive.

$$f' = f\frac{v}{v + v_s} = (700 \text{ Hz})\left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s} + 31.0 \text{ m/s}}\right) = 642 \text{ Hz}$$

c. The ambulance is now stopped by the side of the road still blaring its siren at 700 Hz, and a driver is approaching the ambulance at a velocity of 31 m/s. What frequency does the car driver hear?

Answer: The receiver is moving toward the source for an effectively higher wave speed, so v_r is positive.

$$f' = f\frac{v+v_r}{v} = (700 \text{ Hz})\left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s} + 31.0 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s}}\right) = 763 \text{ Hz}$$

d. The car has now passed the stopped ambulance, and is moving away from the ambulance at 31 m/s. What frequency does the driver hear?

Answer: The receiver is moving away from the sound, so effective wave speed is smaller and the velocity of the receiver v_r is negative.

$$f' = f\frac{v+v_r}{v} = (700 \text{ Hz})\left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s} + (-31.0 \text{ m/s})}{343 \text{ m/s}}\right) = 637 \text{ Hz}$$

1. Waves may interfere *constructively* or *destructively,* giving rise to increases and decreases of the amplitude.
2. Wave interference is responsible for the phenomenon of *beats*; where the amplitude of the sound changes when two sounds with close frequencies f_1 and f_2 are produced. The resulting beat frequency is $f_b = f_2 - f_1$.
3. The intensity of a wave is defined as the average power produced by some source divided by the surface area over which the energy is transmitted. The equation for the intensity is $I = \frac{W}{A}$ where I represents intensity, W power (the wattage) and $A$the area over which the energy, in a given amount of time, has spread.
4. The range of human hearing is 20 Hz-20,000Hz. Frequencies higher than this are called *ultrasonic*frequencies.
5. The wave velocity equation is $v = \lambda f$ where v is the velocity with which the wave travels; λ is the wavelength of the wave; and $f$is the frequency of the wave.
6. Many objects possess a *natural* or *resonant* frequency with which they vibrate. Strings and pipes (tubes) have multiple resonant frequencies as do most musical instruments. During resonance the amplitude of vibration of an object increases dramatically.
7. Both fixed strings and open pipes have resonant wavelengths of $\lambda_n = \frac{2}{n}L$, where L is the length of the string that is in resonance, and $n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots$.
8. Both strings fixed at only one end and closed pipes have resonant wavelengths of $\lambda_n = \frac{4}{n}L$ where L is the resonant length of pipe or tube, and $n = 1, 3, 5 \ldots$.
9. The Doppler effect occurs when a source of sound and/or the receiver are in motion.

$$f' = \frac{v'}{\lambda'} = f\left(\frac{v+v_r}{v+v_s}\right)$$

A source moving at v_s changes the wavelength. The source moving away stretches out the wavelength, giving positive v_s.

A receiver moving at v_r changes the effective wave speed. The receiver moving towards the source makes the waves arrive faster, giving positive v_r.

11.5 References

1. Martin Thomas. http://www.flickr.com/photos/martin_thomas/7707159728/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou. . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. bigail Batchelder (Flickr: abbybatchelder). http://www.flickr.com/photos/abbybatchelder/3424381449/ . CC-BY 2.0
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Flickr:techlah. http://www.flickr.com/photos/techlah/67146616/ . CC BY 2.0
12. Barney Elliot, Prelinger Archives. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tacoma_Narrows_Bridge_destruction.ogg . Public Domain
13. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tacoma-narrows-bridge-collapse.jpg . Public Domain
14. Russell James Smith (Flickr: russelljsmith). http://www.flickr.com/photos/russelljsmith/2146210247/ . CC-BY 2.0
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using public domain image by Mariana Ruiz Villarreal (Wikimedia: LadyofHats). http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Respiratory_system_complete_en.svg . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
17. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
19. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
24. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
25. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
26. Teenager images copyright Denis Cristo, 2014; Car image copyright lana rinck, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under licenses from Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 12 Fluid Mechanics

Chapter Outline

Fluid dynamics is the study of how liquids act. Instead of working with distinct objects, we must look at how the fluid behaves as a unit - including pressure, density, and motion.

12.1 Pressure in Fluids

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand density and be able to solve problems with density.
- Understand pressure and be able to solve problems with pressure.

Vocabulary

- **density**: The ratio of an object's mass divided by its volume.
- **pressure**: Force per unit area.

Introduction

In the language of physics, **density** is defined as the ratio of the mass of an object (or a material) m divided by the volume V. It is represented by the Greek letter rho –written ρ and pronounced "row" .

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V}$$

This is different than in everyday English, where we tend to use "dense" only to describe heavy or thick objects. In physics, a massive object may have a small density, and a very light object may have a large density, depending on volume. For example, an empty aluminum soft drink can is very light compared to a full one. However, aluminum is 2.7 times denser than water. The typical mass of an empty soda can is about 15 grams, but the soft drink in it has a mass of about 336 grams. So, a small amount of a denser material can easily have a smaller mass than a large amount of a less dense material.

The typical units for density are kilograms per meter cubed kg/m^3 or grams per centimeter cubed g/cm^3.

In the language of physics, **pressure** is defined as force per unit area.

$$P = \frac{F}{A}$$

This is also different than in everyday English, where we often use "pressure" to mean the same as "force" (i.e. "he was pressured to sign" is like "he was forced to sign"). The SI unit of pressure is called the pascal, abbreviated Pa and defined as one Newton per square meter, $\frac{N}{m^2}$. It is named after the French mathematician and physicist Blaise Pascal (1623-1662), pictured in the **Figure** 12.1. We will use both $\frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$ and Pa in this text, but they have exactly the same meaning, so $1\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2} = 1$ Pa.

FIGURE 12.1

Density and Specific Gravity

Measured in these grams per cubic centimeter, density is the same as **specific gravity**, defined as the ratio of the object's density to the density of water. The density of water (at 4.0°C) is

$$\rho_{\text{ water}} = \frac{1.00 \text{ g}}{\text{cm}^3} = \frac{1000.0 \text{ kg}}{\text{m}^3}$$

So, the specific gravity of water is 1.00, and the specific gravity of aluminum is 2.7. There are no units for specific gravity, because it is defined as the ratio of one density to another.

Illustrative Example 1

a. A United States 25-cent coin (a quarter) is composed of copper sandwiched between two coatings of nickel, **Figure** 12.2.

The copper in a quarter occupies a volume of 5.84 cm^3 and has a mass of 5.198 g. What is the density of copper?

Answer:

$$\rho_{\text{ copper}} = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{5.198 \text{ g}}{0.584 \text{ cm}^3} = 8.90\text{g/cm}^3$$

.

b. What is the specific gravity of copper?

Answer:

FIGURE 12.2
United States quarter seen on edge.

$$sg = \frac{\text{density of material}}{\text{density of water}} = \frac{8.90 \text{ g/cm}^3}{1.00 \text{ g/cm}^3} = 8.90$$

Check Your Understanding

1a. The nickel of the quarter in Example 1 is 0.4723 g and occupies a volume of 0.0530 cm^3. What is the density of nickel?

Answer:

$$\rho_{\text{ copper}} = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{0.4723 \text{ g}}{0.0530 \text{ cm}^3} = 8.91 \text{ g/cm}^3$$

The densities of copper and nickel are almost the same (see Example 1). Does this surprise you? By comparison, the density of silver is 10.5 g/cm^3, and the density of gold is 19.3 g/cm^3.

1b. The current value of copper is 0.8455 cents per gram, and the current value of nickel is 1.8931 cents per gram. What is the value of a United States 25-cent piece based on its metallic content?

Answer: Total value of copper $= \left(0.8455 \frac{cents}{g}\right)(5.198\ g) = 4.394\ cents$

Total value of nickel $= \left(1.8931 \frac{cents}{g}\right)(0.4723\ g) = 0.89411 \rightarrow 0.8941\ cents$

Total value $= 4.394\ cents + 0.8941\ cents = 5.288\ cents$.

This is not too surprising when you consider that it takes the same amount of paper to print a one-dollar bill as it does a 100 dollar bill!

2. The specific gravity of steel is 7.8. What is the density of steel in grams per cubic centimeter?

Answer: 7.8 g/cm^3. Do you see why this is so? Try the link below!

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/density

Illustrative Example 2

Let's consider the crate in **Figure** 12.3. The crate has a weight of 1500 N and it is initially placed on the ground. The area of the crate that rests upon the ground is 0.750 m^2. The pressure on the crate (and the ground under the crate) is $P = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{1{,}500\ N}{0.750\ m^2} = 2{,}000 \frac{N}{m^2}$.

If the crate is now turned on its narrow side, **Figure** 12.4, the area which rests upon the ground is 0.40 m^2 and the pressure is $P = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{1{,}500\ N}{0.400\ m^2} = 3{,}750 \frac{N}{m^2}$

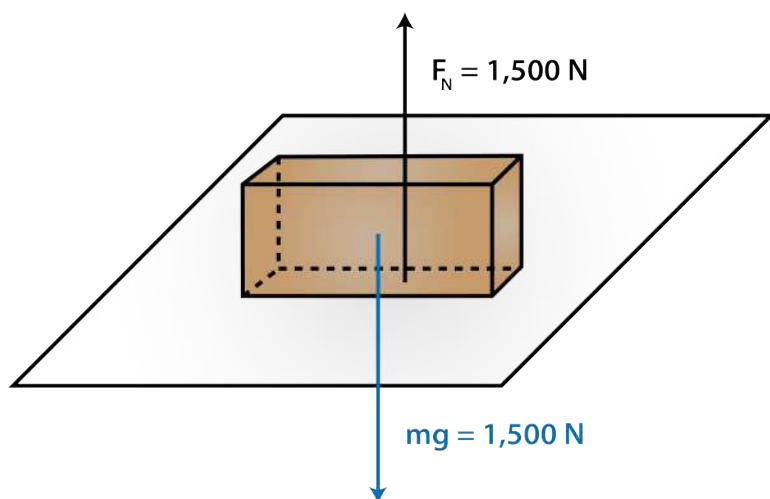



FIGURE 12.3

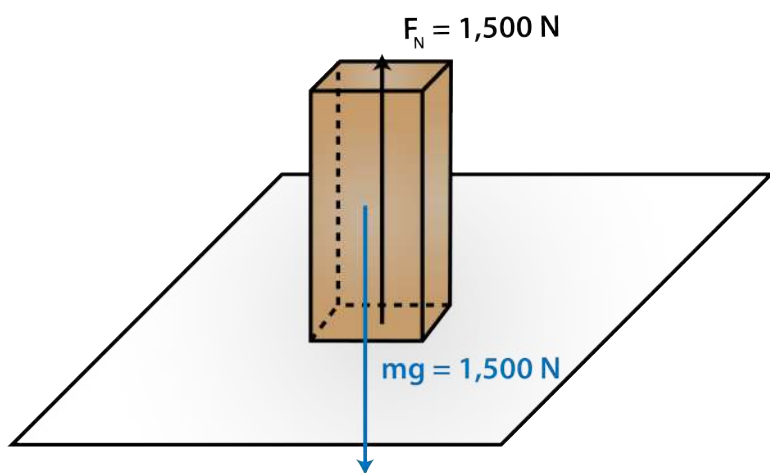



FIGURE 12.4

Check Your Understanding

A woman of weight 540 N stands on the floor. The area of the bottom of each of her feet is 0.0135 m^2. What is the pressure on each of her feet?

Answer: Each foot supports half of her weight, so

$$F = \frac{540 \text{ N}}{2} = 270 \text{ N} \rightarrow P = \frac{270 \text{ N}}{0.0135 \text{ m}^2} = 2.00 \times 10^4 \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$$

.

Does the answer seem rather large to you? Remember, the answer is given in units of $\frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$. A square meter is a large area when compared to the area of a person's foot. In Newtons per square centimeter, the answer is $2.00 \frac{\text{N}}{\text{cm}^2}$.

Hydrostatic Pressure

Hydrostatic pressure is the pressure produced by a fluid under gravity when at equilibrium. Under hydrostatics pressure, a fluid remains motionless. For example, a vertical column of water confined behind a dam experiences hydrostatic pressure.

Figure 12.5 shows a picture of Hoover Dam and a typical cross section of a dam. Have you ever noticed that dams tend to be bottom heavy, that is, there is more reinforcement at the bottom of the dam than at the top of the dam? Why do you suppose this is?

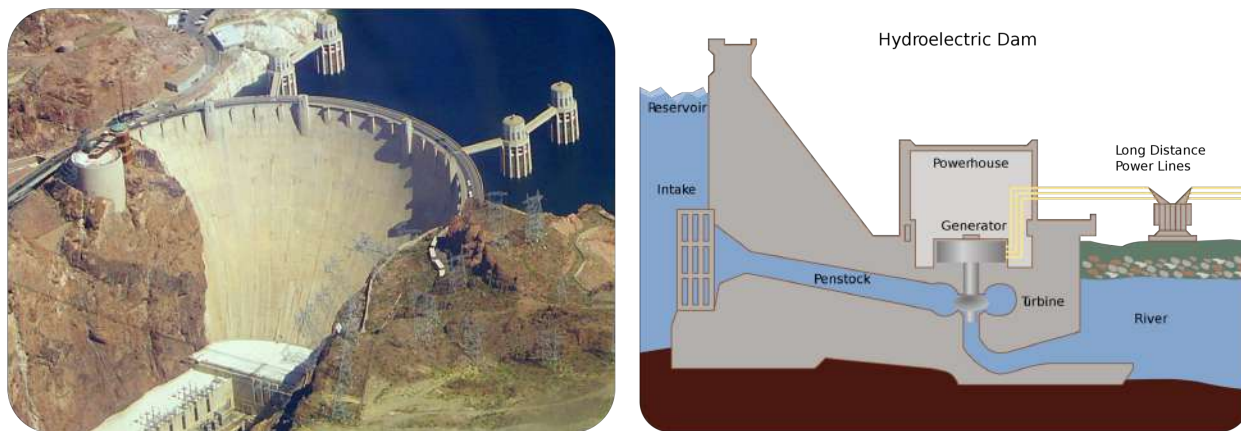



FIGURE 12.5

Try this simple experiment! Poke a hole near the bottom of an empty soft drink can and another hole in the center of the can. Fill the can with water and water will flow out of each hole. But will the flow out of each hole have the same horizontal extent? No. The flow will resemble what we see in **Figure** 12.6. Water will flow out of the bottom hole at a greater pressure (and velocity) than the top hole. The reason for this and the reason why dams are reinforced more at their base is hydrostatic pressure. Pressure increases with depth.

FIGURE 12.6

Figure 12.7 shows a column of water visualized as three "cubes" of water, one on top of the other. Each cube is identical, with length, width, and height equal to d and of weight mg. The entire column of cubes rests upon area A. The normal force upon each cube increases with depth since each cube must support the weight of all the cubes above it. The surface area A remains constant but the force acting upon this area increases with $mg, 2mg, 3mg$, and so on. We will show that the pressures P_1, P_2, and P_3 at the points shown in **Figure** 12.7 increase with the height, if the density of the fluid is constant. We define $P_0 = 0$.

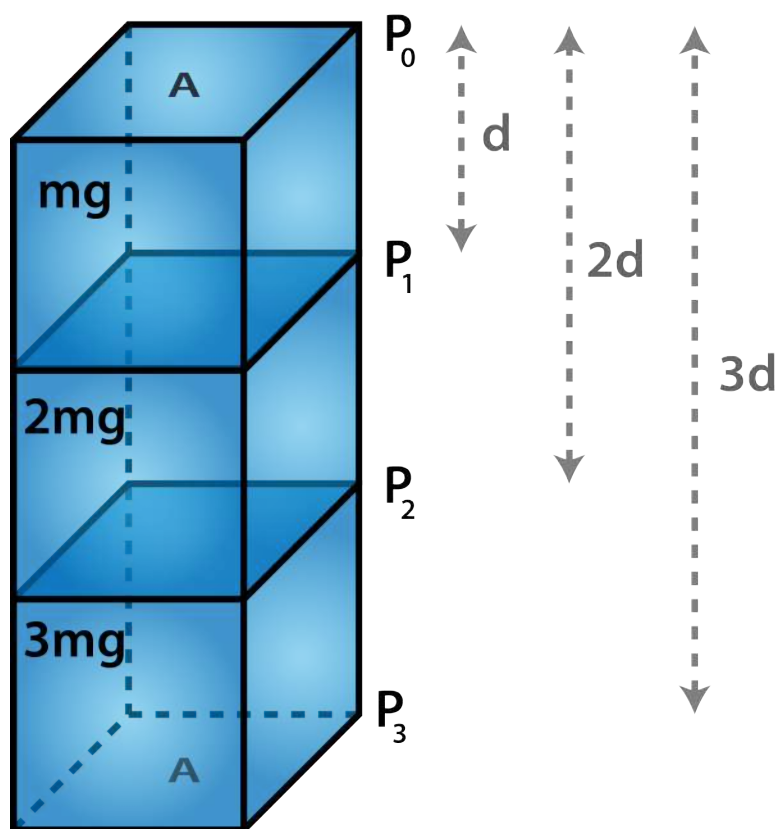



FIGURE 12.7

Consider the pressure at the bottom of each cube.

Using the definition of density, we can rewrite the mass m in terms of the volume V and density ρ as $m = \rho V$. The volume of each cube is d^3 and the area of the any side of the cube is d^2. Substituting $m = \rho V = \rho d^3$ and d^2 for A in each pressure equation we have $P_1 = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{\rho d^3\ g}{d^2}; P_2 = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{2\rho d^3\ g}{d^2}; P_3 = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{3\rho d^3\ g}{d^2} \to P_1 = \rho gd; P_2 = 2\rho gd; P_3 = 3\rho gd$.

In each case, $d, 2d, 3d$ represent the depth of the water as measured from the top of the column where $P_0 = 0$. We can replace $d, 2d, 3d$ *with* Δh, where Δh represents the height difference in any two positions along the column. We can then express the corresponding difference in pressure as $P_2 - P_1 = \Delta P = \rho g \Delta h$. If we arbitrarily set $P_1 = 0$, we can write $P = \rho gh$. The pressure depends on the density and height (or depth) of the column of fluid. We will always assume that g is constant. If the density is constant, the pressure varies only with the height h. Follow the link below for a demonstration.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/FluidPressure/

Check Your Understanding

1. Lake Pontchartrain in Louisiana, **Figure** 12.8, has an area of approximately 1600 km^2 and an average depth of 4.0 m. The average density of the water in the lake is very close to the density of fresh water.

a. What is the average pressure at the bottom of the lake?

Answer:

$P = \rho gh = \left(1000 \frac{kg}{m^2}\right) \left(9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}\right) (4.0\ m) = 39,240 \to 3.9 \times 10^4 \frac{N}{m^2}$

b. A tall thin tank of water has dimensions of radius 30 cm and height 4.5 m. Compare the pressure at the bottom of

FIGURE 12.8

the tank to the average pressure at the bottom of Lake Pontchartrain.

Answer: The pressure at the bottom of the tank is greater. No calculation is necessary since the depth of the water tank is greater than the depth of Lake Pontchartrain. Remember that pressure gives force per unit area (how much force a given area experiences). The fact that Lake Pontchartrain has 6.4 billion cubic meters of water compared to the 1.3 cubic meters of water in the tank is irrelevant. The question to consider is: How much force does each square meter at the bottom of Lake Pontchartrain experience?

Illustrative Example 3

A campsite has an open water storage tank whose bottom is elevated 3.00 m above a water faucet.The depth of water in the tank is 1.25 meters.

a. Determine the water pressure at the bottom of the tank. See **Figure** 12.9.

Answer:

Since the water depth in the tank is 1.25 m

$P_2 = \rho gh = 1000\frac{kg}{m^3}\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)(1.25\ m) = 12,262.5 \rightarrow 1.23 \times 10^4\frac{N}{m^2}$,

b. Determine the water pressure at the faucet.

Answer;

The hose that runs between the water tank and the faucet has a vertical displacement of 3.00 m. The pressure at the faucet is therefore no different than the pressure 4.25 m directly beneath the water level of the tank. (Imagine the hose extending to the water level of the tank as in **Figure** 12.10.)

The total elevation from the water surface to the faucet is $1.25\ m + 3.00\ m = 4.25\ m$.

The pressure at the faucet is difference in pressure $P_2 - P_1$. We set $P_1 = 0$ since $h = 0.00\ m$ and $P_2 = \rho gh = 1000\frac{kg}{m^3}\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)(4.25\ m) = 41692.5 \rightarrow 4.17 \times 10^4\frac{N}{m^2}$

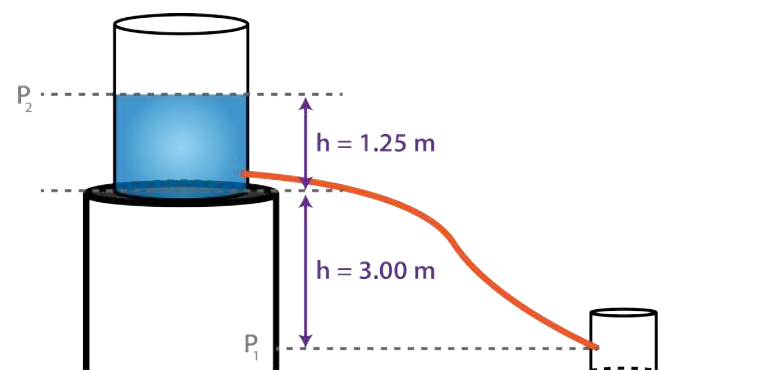



FIGURE 12.9

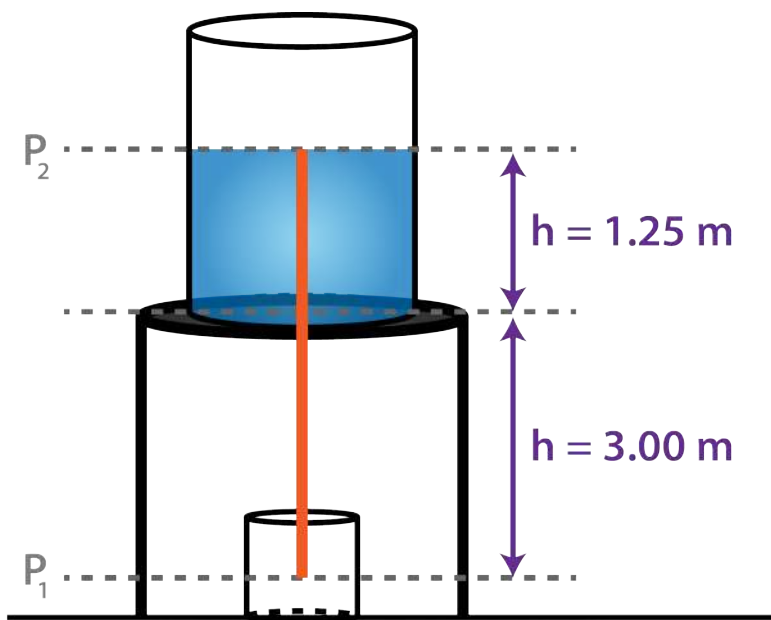



FIGURE 12.10

12.2 Measuring Pressure

Objectives

The student will know:

- How atmospheric pressure is measured.
- How gauge pressure is defined.

Vocabulary

- **atmospheric pressure:** The pressure from the Earth's atmosphere.
- **barometer:** The oldest design for scientifically measuring pressure.
- **gauge pressure:** The pressure above the current atmospheric pressure.

Introduction

We live at the bottom of an immense ocean of air. The air high up is pulled down by gravity, pressing on the air below it, which also presses on the air below it. The weight of all the air above above you combines to exert **atmospheric pressure**, the pressure from the Earth's atmosphere. This constantly presses on all sides of things in contact with open air, and is what makes suction cups stick to walls, lets vacuum cleaners suck up dirt, and lets people drink through straws. At sea level such as a coastal city like New Orleans or New York, the typical atmospheric pressure is 101,325 pascals –the equivalent of a three-story high (10.3 meter) column of water. This is also known as one **standard atmosphere** of pressure, abbreviated 1 atm.

$$1 \text{ atm} = 101,325 \text{ Pa} = 1.013 \times 10^5 \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2} = 101.3 \text{ kPa}$$

Calculating pressure from gas is different than pressure from fluids, because gases change their density easily. The Earth's atmosphere is denser close to sea level, and gets less dense the higher you go. Thus, there is no simple relationship between the height of air and pressure. Indeed, the actual pressure at sea level often changes with the location, climate, and current weather. Human beings can detect the differences in air pressure when our altitude changes a few hundred feet. This is most noticeable when your ears pop when driving up or down a mountain, or taking a plane flight.

The oldest design for scientifically measuring pressure is the **barometer**, invented in 1643. The main part of it is just a glass tube closed at one end and open on the other, filled with liquid and put open side down in a dish. The closed end can hold liquid up, just like when you put your finger on the end of a straw, it lets you hold water in the

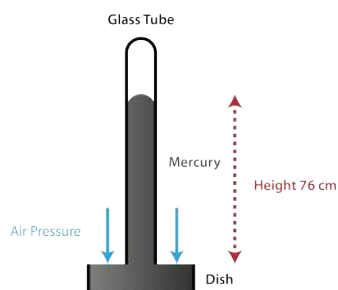



FIGURE 12.11

straw. The open end has full atmospheric pressure pressing on it, while the sealed side has no pressure. The **Figure** 12.11 shows a mercury-filled barometer.

If the tube is filled with mercury and has no air, then the atmospheric pressure pushes on the top of the dish, lifting up the mercury in the tube that has no air pushing down on it from above. All suction works this way –it is really atmospheric pressure pushing, rather than the vacuum pulling. The mercury is stable when the atmospheric pressure on the mercury in the dish is equal to the hydrostatic pressure which the column of mercury exerts at the bottom of the tube.

Illustrative Example 1

We can calculate the height of mercury lifted up by one standard atmosphere of pressure, P_{atm}. Mercury has a density of $\rho = 13.6 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3. So, if the hydrostatic pressure from this mercury is equal to P_{atm}, we have:

$$P_{atm} = P = \rho g h \;\; \rightarrow \;\; h = \frac{P_{atm}}{\rho g}$$

$$h = \frac{\left(101,396 \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}\right)}{\left(13.6 \times 10^3 \frac{kg}{m^3}\right)\left(9.81 \ \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)} = 0.760 \text{ m}$$

.

So the pressure of one standard atmosphere hold a column of mercury with a height of 0.76 meters. As the atmospheric pressure changes, the height of the column of mercury changes.

Check Your Understanding

In the above experiment, if water had been used rather than mercury what would the height of the column of water have been?

Answer: Mercury is 13.6 times denser than water. So the atmosphere can support a column of water 13.6 times higher than a column of mercury.

Height of water column: $(0.76\ m)(13.6) = 10.34 \rightarrow 10.3\ m$

A column of water 10.3 m high has the same weight as a column of mercury 0.76 m. Mercury barometers are therefore much more practical than water barometers.

Gauge Pressure

In practice, most examples of pressure happen inside atmospheric pressure. When a faucet pushes out water, that water is pressing out against atmospheric pressure. The **gauge pressure** is the pressure above the current

atmospheric pressure. For example, a completely deflated tire still has pressure on it. Atmospheric pressure is pushing on both the inside and outside of the tire. What matters is how much additional pressure we put in when the tire is inflated.

When dealing with liquids, we typically refer to the pressure $P = \rho gh$ as the gauge pressure P_g. The total pressure P_t is therefore $P_t = P_{atm} + P_g = P_{atm} + \rho gh$.

Check Your Understanding

1. A tire pressure gauge reads 32 pounds per square inch (psi) when measuring tire pressure. What is the total pressure in pounds per square inch?

Answer: Atmospheric pressure is 101,325 Newtons per square meter. To convert, we use:

- 1 pound = 4.45 newtons
- 1 inch = 0.0254 meters

$$P_{atm} = 101,325\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{lbs}}{4.45\ \text{N}}\right) \times \left(\frac{0.0254\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{in}}\right)^2 = 14.7\ \frac{\text{lbs}}{\text{in}^2}$$
$$P_t = P_{atm} + P_g = 14.7\ \frac{\text{lbs}}{\text{in}^2} + 32\ \frac{\text{lbs}}{\text{in}^2} = 46.7\ \frac{\text{lbs}}{\text{in}^2}$$

.

2. The bottom of Lake Pontchartrain has a gauge pressure of $3.9 \times 10^4\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$. What is the total pressure in units of standard atmospheres of pressure, atm?

Answer: To find the pressure in the units of atm, we convert from $\frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$ to atm, then adding in the atmospheric pressure of 1.0 atm.

$$P_g = \left(3.9 \times 10^4\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}\right) \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{atm}}{1.01 \times 10^5\ \frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}}\right) = 0.39\ \text{atm}$$
$$P_t = P_{atm} + P_g = 1.0\ \text{atm} + 0.39\ \text{atm} = 1.39\ \text{atm}$$

.

12.3 Pascal's Law

Objective

The student will:

- Understand and be able to solve problems using Pascal's Principle.

Vocabulary

- **Pascal's Law:** Increasing the pressure of fluid anywhere in a system increases the pressure everywhere in the system.

Introduction

Pressure is defined as force divided by area, but this does not explain in itself how pressure transfers. Blaise Pascal, after whom the metric unit of pressure is named, also clarified a useful physical principle that is now named after him. **Pascal's Law** states that any confined incompressible fluid under pressure will transmit pressure equally throughout the system. In other words, increasing the pressure of the fluid anywhere increases the pressure everywhere.

If you have ever been to an auto repair shop, you've probably seen cars raised high enough above the ground so that the mechanics can perform their repairs. The device that raises the car is called a hydraulic lift (**Figure** 12.12). A hydraulic lift can create a very large force to lift the car with only a small force.

How does it work? The diagram in the **Figure** 12.12 shows a cross-section of a hydraulic lift with square pistons. The pressure applied at the narrow piston of surface A is transmitted to the bottom of the wide piston of surface area $A' = 9A$. If, for example, the pressure is P at the narrow piston is 1000 $\frac{\text{N}}{\text{m}^2}$, the bottom of the wide piston will have the same pressure applied to it, but over nine times the area. The total force on the wide piston will be nine times greater, for a total of $F' = PA' = P(9A) = 9000$ N.

The force is multiplied in proportion to the ratio $\frac{A_{wide}}{A_{narrow}}$.

More formally, we can write $P_{narrow} = P_{wide} \rightarrow \frac{F_{narrow}}{A_{narrow}} = \frac{F_{wide}}{A_{wide}} \rightarrow \frac{A_{wide}}{A_{narrow}} = \frac{F_{wide}}{F_{narrow}}$; it is often the case that "narrow" is replaced with "in" and "wide" is replaced with "out."

It may seem that we "are getting more out of the system than we're putting into it." After all, in the example above we only needed to input 1,000 N in order to output 9,000 N.

As you may suspect, this is not the case.

If we wish to raise the car, work must be done. And energy conservation tells us that we can never get more energy out of a system than we put into a system. In fact, because of friction, we always need to put more energy in than we get out.

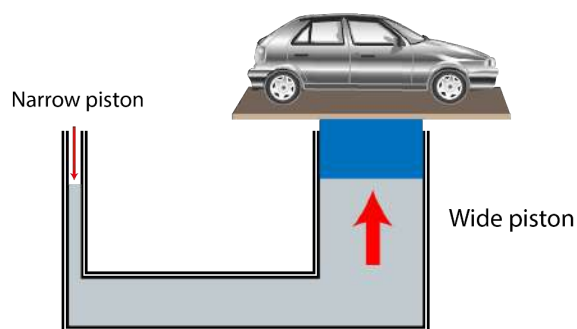
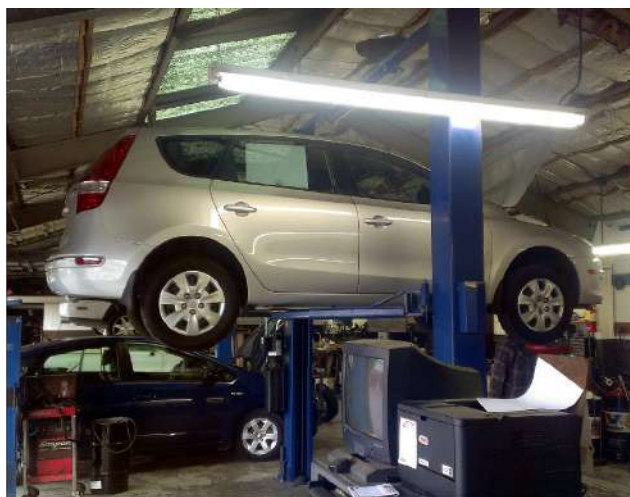



FIGURE 12.12

If we wish to raise a 9,000 Newton car by 10 centimeters, it requires 900 joules of energy.

$W = Fx = (9,000 \text{ N})(0.10 \text{ m}) = 900 \text{ J}$

Therefore, we will have to move the narrow piston nine times farther than the distance that the wide piston rises. By the Law of Energy Conservation (assuming no energy is transformed into heat by friction):

$$E_i = E_f \quad \rightarrow \quad W_{input} = W_{output}$$
$$(1,000 \text{ N})(0.90 \text{ m}) = (9,000 \text{ N})(0.10 \text{ m})$$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PascalsPrinciple/

Check Your Understanding

The input force of a hydraulic lift is 800 Newtons and the output force is 16,000 Newtons. What is the ratio $\frac{A_{out}}{A_{in}}$?

Answer:

$$\frac{A_{out}}{A_{in}} = \frac{F_{out}}{F_{in}} = \frac{16,000 \text{ N}}{800 \text{ N}} = 20$$

.

12.4 Archimedes' Law

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand buoyancy and how it applies to Archimedes' Law.
- Be able to solve problems using Archimedes' Law.

Vocabulary

- **buoyancy**: The force that pushes upward on an object that is partially or wholly submerged in water.

Introduction

Objects float in water or sink based on their density. **Buoyancy** is the force that pushes upward on an object that is partially or wholly submerged in water. This happens because the water lower down has higher pressure than the water around the top, so the bottom of the object is pushed up more than the top of the object is pushed down.

For an object of irregular shape, calculating the force as pressure times area, $F = P \times A$, could potentially be difficult. However, there is a simple principle for how much force comes from buoyancy, attributed to the ancient Greek engineer and physicist Archimedes (287 BC –212 BC). Archimedes' principle states the following:

The force of buoyancy on an object immersed in liquid is equal to the weight of liquid displaced by that object.

Expressed mathematically, the buoyant force F_B is equal to the weight of the liquid displaced, and we know that weight is mg. The mass of the liquid displaced is equal to mass times density, ρV. This gives us:

$$F_B = mg = (\rho_{\text{liq}} V)g$$

This is phrased simply, but can be shown to have many immediate consequences.

- If an object is more dense than water, then water with equal volume to it has less mass. If so, F_B is less than the object's weight, and it will sink.
- If an object is less dense than water, then water with equal volume to it has more mass. If so, F_B is more than the object's weight, and it will float.

We can derive this by looking at a case of a simple cube floating upright in the water. The pressure of the water is always $P = \rho gh$, where h is the depth in the water. The cube has area A for all faces. It is pushed down by the pressure on the top, $F_{\text{top}} = P_{\text{top}} A$, while is it pushed up by the higher pressure on the bottom, $F_{\text{bottom}} = P_{\text{bottom}} A$. The difference between these is:

$$\begin{aligned}F_{\text{bottom}} - F_{\text{top}} &= P_{\text{bottom}}A - P_{\text{top}}A \\ &= (\rho g h_{\text{bottom}})A - (\rho g h_{\text{top}})A \\ &= \rho g\ (h_{\text{bottom}} - h_{\text{top}})A \\ &= \rho g V\end{aligned}$$

Note that the area of a face times the height of the cube is equal to the volume of the cube V.

Check Your Understanding

Show that the buoyant force is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced.

Answer:

Recall that the density is given by $\rho = \frac{m}{V}$.

Substitute $\frac{m}{V}$ for ρ into the equation $F_b = \rho g V$.

$F_b = \rho g V = \left(\frac{m}{V}\right) g V = mg \rightarrow F_b = mg$, where m is the mass of the fluid displaced and mg is its weight.

Illustrative Example 1

a. A cube of iron with side length 25.0 cm is submerged in a tank of water with temperature $4°C$ such that the bottom of the cube is 1.00 m below the surface of the water **Figure** 12.13. Calculate the buoyant force on the iron cube.

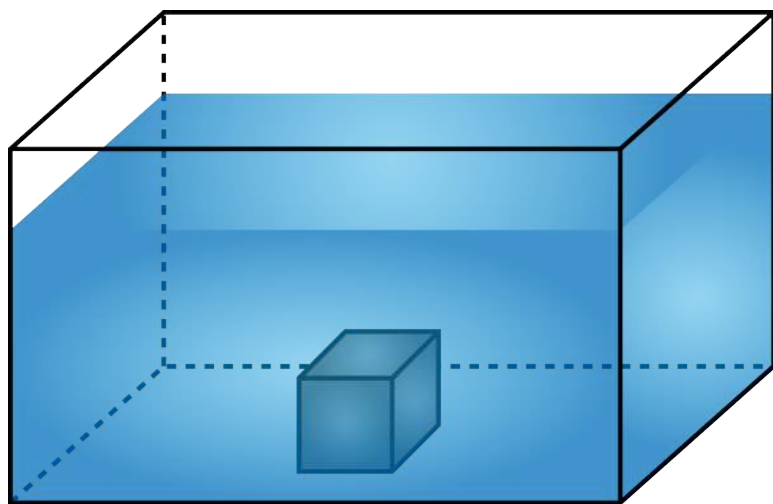



FIGURE 12.13

Answer: The volume of the cube is $V = (0.25\ m)^3 = 0.015625 \rightarrow 0.0156\ m^3$. This is the same volume as the displaced water. Recall that water at a temperature of $4°C$ has a density of $1,000 \frac{kg}{m^3}$. The buoyant force is therefore $F_b = mg = \rho V g = \left(1,000 \frac{kg}{m^3}\right) (0.01563\ m^3) \left(9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}\right) = 153.3 \rightarrow 153\ N$.

b. What is the minimum force required to hold the cube in equilibrium while it remains in water? The density of iron is $7,860 \frac{kg}{m^3}$.

Answer: We begin with the Free-Body-Diagram of **Figure** 12.14.

As the Free Body-Diagram in **Figure** 12.14 shows, the normal force equals the difference of the buoyant force and the weight of the cube.

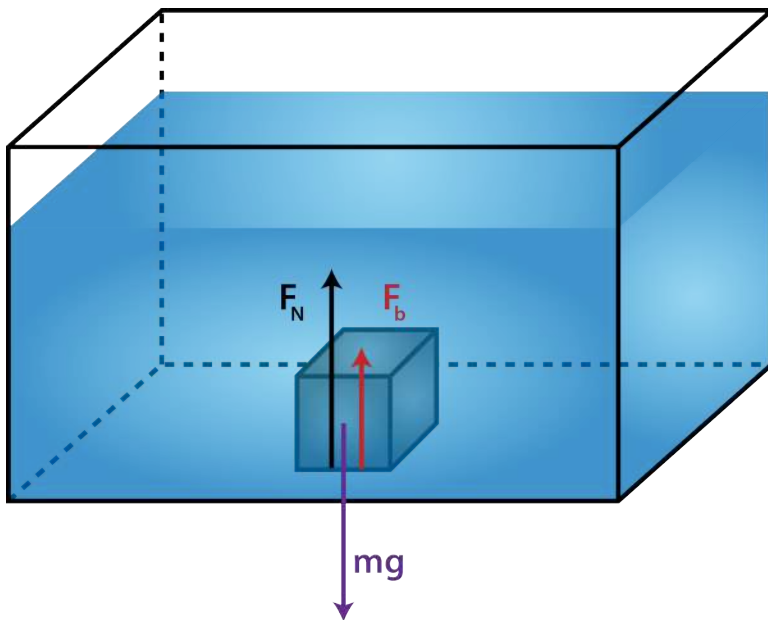



FIGURE 12.14
Free-Body-Diagram.

$\sum F = 0 \rightarrow F_N + F_b - mg = 0 \rightarrow F_N = mg - F_b.$

A force equal to the normal force F_N applied to the cube will keep the cube in equilibrium anywhere beneath the water surface. The weight of the iron block is

$$m_{iron}g = \rho_{iron}Vg = \left(7,860\frac{kg}{m^3}\right)(0.01563\ m^3)\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right) = 1,205.2 \rightarrow 1,205\ N$$
$$\rightarrow F_N = mg - F_b = 1,205 - 153 = 1,052\ N.$$

The links below demonstrate Archimedes Principle.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ForcesExertedOnAnImmersedObject/

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VDSYXmvjg6M

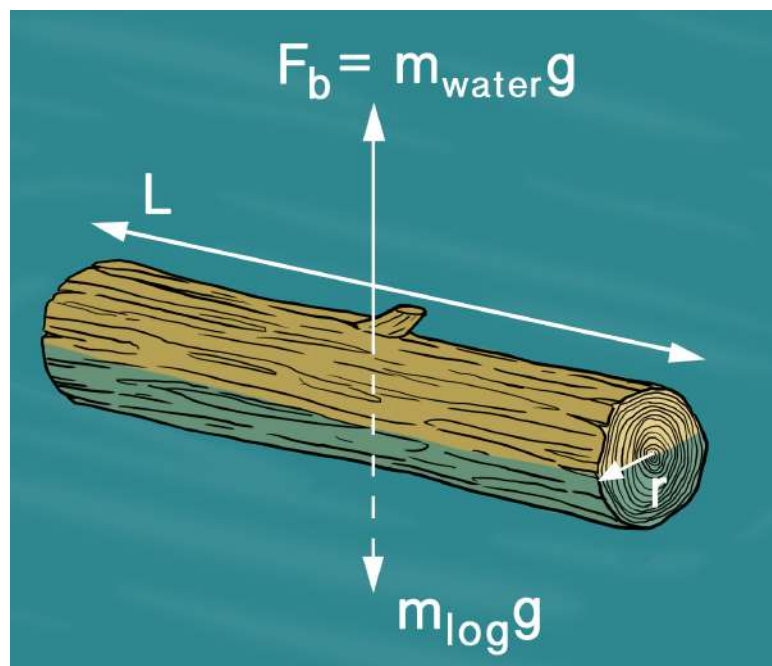
Floating Objects

Archimedes' principle is no different for objects that are only partially submerged. The weight of the volume of fluid displaced is still equal to the buoyant force. But since the object is in equilibrium while floating, the upward force on the object is the buoyant force.

Illustrative Example 2

a. The density of yellow pine is $420\frac{kg}{m^3}$. What volume of water at a temperature of $4°C$ does a cylindrical log of pine with dimensions $r = 15.0\ cm$ and length $L = 7.60\ m$ displace in order to float? See **Figure** 12.15.

Answer: The weight of the log $m_{log}g$ must equal the buoyant force (the weight of displaced water) $m_{water}g$.

FIGURE 12.15

$$m_{log}g = m_{water}g \rightarrow m_{log} = m_{water} \rightarrow \rho_{log}V_{log} = \rho_{water}V_{water} \rightarrow$$
$$V_{water} = \frac{\rho_{log}}{\rho_{water}}V_{log}$$

The volume of the log is $V_{log} = (\pi r^2)L \rightarrow (3.14)(0.150\ m)^2(7.60\ m) = 0.5369\ m^3 \rightarrow 0.537\ m^3$.

$V_{water} = \frac{\rho_{log}}{\rho_{water}}V_{log} = \frac{420\frac{kg}{m^3}}{1000\frac{kg}{m^3}}(0.537\ m^3) = 0.2255 \rightarrow 0.226\ m^3$

The atmosphere is also able to exert a buoyant force, otherwise hot air balloons would not rise.

See the link below to learn more.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/balloons-and-buoyancy

Check Your Understanding

True or False: Steel cannot float because it is denser than water.

Answer: False. Large ships are usually made of steel and other comparatively dense materials. It is true that a solid block of material with a density greater than water will sink. But if the block is molded into the shape of a boat (hollowed out), it will be able to displace a greater volume of water than when it was a solid block. The result is that the hollowed block will be able to displace a volume of water equal to its weight before sinking. It will float.

Illustrative Example 3

Let's return to King Hiero's problem now that we have an understanding of Archimedes' principle. Recall that the king commissioned the goldsmith to craft a crown of gold from a specific amount of gold given to him by the king. The king then became suspicious that the goldsmith had replaced some of the gold with a cheaper metal, perhaps

silver. The problem was that the finished crown weighed the same as the gold given to the goldsmith. How could Archimedes determine if the crown was pure gold without damaging it?

There is no way of knowing the exact amount of gold given to the goldsmith, nor is this particularly relevant. We seek only a method whereby Archimedes could have made a conclusive statement regarding the honesty of the goldsmith. There are several methods he could have used, none of which require any calculation. The most accurate was given by Galileo, which we will use.

To make the problem interesting, we'll choose a 500 g mass of gold. Furthermore, we'll assume that the goldsmith kept 20% (100 g) of the gold for himself and replaced it with an equal mass of silver. Note that this method assumes that the volumes of gold and silver are additive.

a. Calculate the volume of 100 grams of gold. Gold has a density of $19.3\frac{g}{cm^3}$.

Answer:

$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \rightarrow V = \frac{m}{\rho} = \frac{100\ g}{19.3\frac{g}{cm^3}} = 5.181 \rightarrow 5.18\ cm^3$.

b. Calculate the volume of 100 grams of silver. Silver has a density of $10.5\frac{g}{cm^3}$.

Answer:

$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \rightarrow V = \frac{m}{\rho} = \frac{100\ g}{10.5\frac{g}{cm^3}} = 9.524 \rightarrow 9.52\ cm^3$

c. What is the volume of 500 g of gold and 400 grams of gold alloyed with 100 grams of silver?

Answer:

The method below is one of many.

Volume of 500 grams of gold $= \frac{5.181\ cm^3}{100\ g}(500\ g) = 25.905 \rightarrow 25.9\ cm^3$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Volume of 400 grams of gold + 100 grams of silver} &= \frac{5.181\ cm^3}{100\ g}(400\ g) + \frac{9.52\ cm^3}{100\ g}(100\ g)\\ &= 30.244 \rightarrow 30.2\ cm^3\end{aligned}$$

It seems clear the crown has a larger volume than the original volume of the gold given to the goldsmith. If a scale balance in air had the crown on one side and the original amount of gold on the other, it would balance since the weights are equal. But if the balance and its load were submerged in water, the buoyant force on the crown would be greater since it displaces a greater volume of water. And since the buoyant force is greater on the crown, the scale would sense a smaller weight on the side with the crown, and so this side of the scale would rise.

It has often been said that Archimedes filled a tank of water to its brim and placed the crown in it. He then either measured the overflow or the amount the water level dropped in the tank compared to when it was full. He repeated the experiment for an identical quantity of gold given to the goldsmith. The problem with this method is that unless the original quantity of gold was substantial, the difference in volume would be difficult to measure. The difference for the problem above is only 4.3 cm^3. Galileo reasoned that it would be more accurate to simply see if the scale became unbalanced. See if you can show that the buoyant force on the crown is $1.166 \rightarrow 1.17$ times greater than the buoyant force on the original volume of gold given the goldsmith.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/buoyancy

12.5 Bernoulli's Law

Objective

The student will:

- Understand Bernoulli's principle and be able to discuss its implications.

Vocabulary

- **Bernoulli's Principle**: A key principle connecting velocity and air. At those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is high, the pressure is low. At those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is low, the pressure is high.

Introduction

Flying has always been one of the great goals of human engineering. The key question is, what moves the force upward on an airplane wing? We can measure air speed and show that the shape of a wing makes the air go faster over the top of the wing than below the wing. How does this create lift, though?

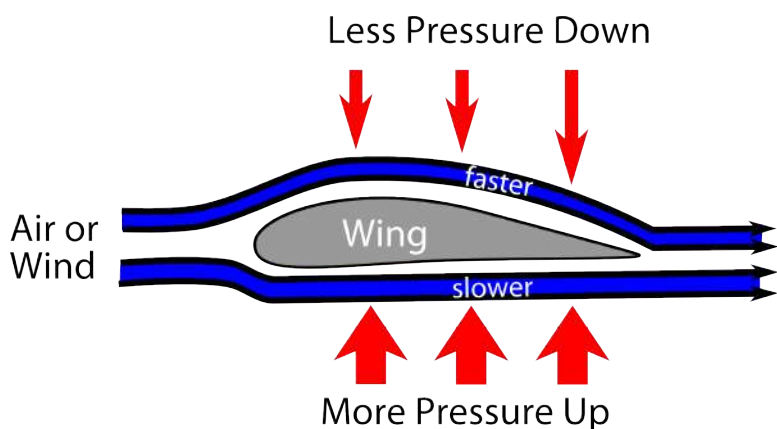



FIGURE 12.16

A key principle connecting velocity and air was expressed by the Swiss mathematician Daniel Bernoulli (1700-1782). **Bernoullo's Principle** states:

> At those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is high, the pressure is low. At those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is low, the pressure is high.

The mathematical equation that Bernoulli derived based on this principle is stated below.

Bernoulli's Equation: $P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho{v_1}^2 + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho{v_2}^2 + \rho g h_2 = \text{constant}$

where P is the pressure of the fluid, ρ is the density of the fluid, v is the velocity of the fluid, and h is the height of the fluid. Though each term in the equation has units of pressure, Bernoulli derived the equation based on the conservation of energy. The equation is, in fact a statement of the conservation of energy.

A demonstration of this principle can be seen with a device called a venture tube, **Figure** 12.17.

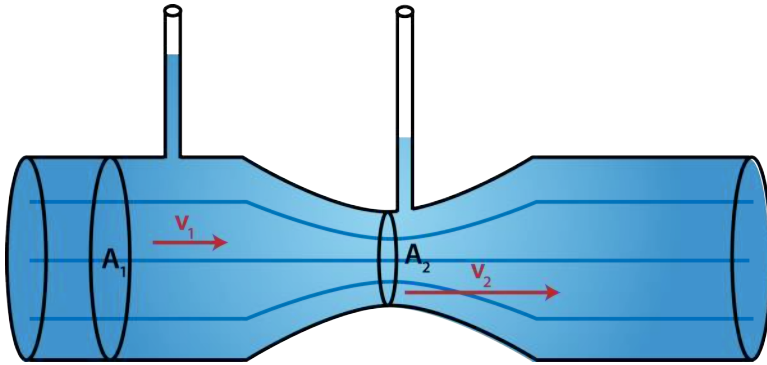



FIGURE 12.17

Notice in the **Figure** 12.17 that where the fluid has a greater velocity, the vertical tube as a lower water level. This is the result of a lower internal pressure in the fluid at this point. If you have ever placed your finger partly over the opening of a garden hose, you've probably seen water velocity increase. The water sprays out! In the same way, in **Figure** 12.17, equal volumes of fluid must flow through the large cross sectional area (A_1) and small cross sectional area (A_2) of the tube. Therefore, the flow through the A_2 must have a greater velocity than the flow A_1.

1. Pressure is defined as $P = \frac{F}{A}$
2. Density is defined as the ratio of mass to volume $\rho = \frac{m}{V}$
3. *Pascal's Principle*: A confined incompressible fluid under pressure will transmit that pressure equally throughout the system. $P_1 = P_2 \rightarrow \frac{A_{out}}{A_{in}} = \frac{F_{out}}{F_{in}}$. The mathematical relationship that follows from Pascal's principle shows how the application of a force in one part of the system can be multiplied in another part of the system.
4. *Archimedes' Principle*: The buoyant force on a submerged or partially submerged object is equal to the weight of fluid it displaces.
5. *Bernoulli's Principle*: At those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is high, the pressure is low, and at those points in space where the velocity of a fluid is low, the pressure is high.

The mathematical equation that Bernoulli derived based on this principle is stated below.

Bernoulli's Equation: $P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\rho{v_1}^2 + \rho g h_1 = P_2 + \frac{1}{2}\rho{v_2}^2 + \rho g h_2 = \text{constant}$

12.6 References

1. Flickr:davida3. http://www.flickr.com/photos/davida3/283438208/ . CC BY 2.0
2. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blaise_pascal.jpg . Public Domain
3. Michael Bentley. http://www.flickr.com/photos/donhomer/6763174259/ . CC-BY 2.0
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Hoover Dam: User:snakefisch/Wikimedia Commons; Schematic: User:Tomia/Wikimedia Commons. Hoover Dam: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hoover_dam_from_air.jpg; Schematic: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hydroelectric_dam.svg . Hoover Dam: Public Domain; Schematic: CC-BY 2.5
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Courtesy of NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Landsat_new_orleans_nfl_lrg.jpg . Public Domain
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Car (photo): Sean Freese; Car (diagram): Alejandro Tejada; Compiled by CK-12 Foundation. Car (photo): http://www.flickr.com/photos/seanfreese/8084718707/; Car (diagram): http://openclipart.org/detail/23736/skoda-car-by-anonymous-23736 .
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Joy Sheng. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

Chapter 13 Heat

Chapter Outline

We know that heat rises from a hot object. This chapter studies the details of how heat moves between objects, based on their temperature and other properties. Topics will include temperature, kinetic theory of temperature, heat energy, and heat transfer via conduction, convection, and radiation.

13.1 Temperature

Objectives

The student will:

- Explain what is meant by temperature.
- Use the centigrade (Celsius) and Kelvin temperature scales.

Vocabulary

- **temperature**: A measurement of the average kinetic energy of the molecules in an object or system. Temperature can be measured with a thermometer or a calorimeter.

Introduction

Objects that appear to be motionless with the human eye still have motion inside them. Matter is typically found in three states: solids, liquids, and gases. Solids have their molecules rigidly bound together by electrical forces, but the molecules can still vibrate back and forth in place. Liquids have molecules that touch and attract each other, but can move freely around each other. Gases have almost no electrical attraction between their molecules, and can move freely in any direction.

Temperature is a measure of the motion of the molecules of a substance. It is traditionally measured with a thermometer, which uses a liquid that can readily expand and contract in a tube. As the liquid gets hotter, it expands and shows a higher number on the tube. There are two closely related metric units of termperature – degrees Celsius, °C, and Kelvin, K, as well as the common non-metric unit, degrees Fahrenheit, °F.

The Fahrenheit Scale

The first modern thermometer was invented by Daniel Fahrenheit (1686-1736), shown in the **Figure** 13.1. The Fahrenheit scale is common in the United States but rarely used elsewhere. The scale was originally based on the range between zero at the temperature of brine (an equal mix of ice, water, and ammonium chloride) and 100 at average human body temperature.

The average is closer to 66.6 degrees above freezing (98.6 degrees). Since the freezing and boiling points of water make for good references, they were kept, and the average human body temperature was readjusted.

The Celsius Scale

The two metric scales are based on the work of Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius, shown in the **Figure** 13.2. His scale also was defined from zero to 100, but the scale was based on the freezing point and boiling point of water.

FIGURE 13.1
Daniel Fahrenheit

Zero degrees Celsius, 0°C, is the temperature at which water freezes under standard conditions, and one hundred degrees Celsius, 100°C, is the temperature at which water boils under standard conditions.

FIGURE 13.2
Anders Celsius

The Kelvin Scale

The other metric scale was invented later, after it was determined that temperature is based on motion. William Thomson, titled Lord Kelvin (1824 - 1907), **Figure** 13.3, was an Irish physicist and engineer who devised a temperature scale that had an absolute zero. Although he did not fully understand the nature of heat, his calculations predicted there was a minimum temperature where the object had absolutely no heat.

The lowest temperature (0 °K) on the Kelvin scale is equal to "absolute zero" or about -273 °C on the Celsius scale. The relationship between the two scales is a simple one: If you're given a temperature T_c measured in the Celsius scale of $x°C$ and wish to find the corresponding temperature T_K in the Kelvin scale, then:$T_K = T_C\left(1\frac{K}{C}\right) + 273K$ or more simply $\rightarrow T_K = T_C + 273$, where the answer is in units of Kelvin.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fXoaGwgUNQg

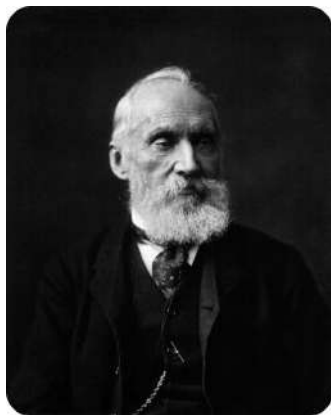



FIGURE 13.3
Lord Kelvin

Check Your Understanding

1. What is a temperature of 20 °C in Kelvin?

Answer: $T_K = T_C + 273$ $T_K = 20 + 273 = 293K$

2. What is the temperature of -300 °C in Kelvin?

Answer: $T_K = T_C + 273 \rightarrow T_K = -300 + 273 = -27K$

This answer is impossible. 0 K is the lowest possible temperature. There can be no temperature lower than $-273°C$.

13.2 Kinetic Theory of Temperature

Objectives

The student will:

- Describe the relationship between temperature and kinetic energy.

Vocabulary

- **internal energy:**The total kinetic and potential energy associated with the motions and relative positions of the molecules of an object, excluding the kinetic or potential energy of the object as a whole. An increase in internal energy results in a rise in temperature or a change in phase.
- **Kinetic Theory:** A theory concerning the thermodynamic behavior of matter, especially the relationships among pressure, volume, and temperature in gases. It is based on the dependence of temperature on the kinetic energy of the rapidly moving particles of a substance. According to the theory, energy and momentum are conserved in all collisions between particles, and the average behavior of the particles can be deduced by statistical analysis.

Introduction

James Clark Maxwell (1831-1879) determined a very important relationship between the motion of molecules and temperature within a gas in the mid-19th century.

Kinetic Theory relies upon the following assumptions:

1. The number of molecules in a gas is very large and their motion is random.
2. The average distance between any two molecules is much greater than the diameter of the any molecule.
3. The molecules interact in accordance with Newton's laws. Only the **kinetic energy** of the molecules is considered, and all the interactions between molecules are elastic.

Under these conditions, a gas is referred to as an ideal gas.

When we ask what the temperature is outside, we're indirectly asking for a measure of the average kinetic energy of the air molecules. Maxwell was able to show that the relationship between the average kinetic energy of a gas and its temperature is $\overline{KE} = \frac{1}{2}m(\overline{v}_t)^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT$, where $\overline{v}_t$ is the mean translational velocity of the molecules, m is their mass, k the Boltzmann constant, is equal to $1.38 \times 10^{-23} \frac{J}{K}$, and the temperature T is expressed in Kelvin.

The equation states that the average translational kinetic energy, $\overline{KE}$ of the molecules is directly proportional to the temperature T of the gas.

Illustrative Example 1

Determine the average velocity of random motion of an oxygen molecule at $22.0°C$. The mass of an oxygen molecule is $5.36 \times 10^{-26} kg$, and the constant $k = 1.38 \times 10^{-23} \frac{J}{kg}$.

Answer: Recall that the temperature must be expressed in degrees Kelvin.

$T_K = T_C + 273 \rightarrow 22 + 273 = 295K$.

$\overline{KE} = \frac{1}{2}m(\bar{v}_t)^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT \rightarrow m(\bar{v}_t)^2 = 3kT \rightarrow (\bar{v}_t)^2 = \frac{3kT}{m} \rightarrow$

$\bar{v} = \sqrt{\frac{3kT}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{3\left(1.38\times 10^{-23}\frac{J}{K}\right)(295K)}{(5.36\times 10^{-26} kg)}} = 477.34 \rightarrow 477\frac{m}{s}$

Internal Energy

The temperature of a gas is directly proportional to the average kinetic energy of the particles of the gas. But the total kinetic energy of the molecules of a gas is a measure of the internal energy, or thermal energy of the gas.

The internal energy U of a gas is, therefore, the product of the number of molecules N of the gas and the average kinetic energy of each molecule:

$U = N\left(\frac{1}{2}m\bar{v}^2\right)$

But according to the kinetic theory,

$\frac{1}{2}m\bar{v}^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT$

Therefore, the internal energy can be directly related to the temperature of a gas as

$U = N\left(\frac{3}{2}kT\right) \rightarrow U = \frac{3}{2}NkT$

The internal energy is, therefore, dependent upon the temperature and the number of particles within a substance. This means that a small quantity of substance at a high temperature may have less internal energy than a large quantity of substance at a low temperature. For example, a boiling pot of water has a higher temperature than a large cool mountain lake. But the internal energy of the lake is considerably larger than the internal energy of the boiling water. Even though the average kinetic energy of the molecules of the lake water is smaller than that of the boiling water, there's a good deal more molecules in the lake.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ThermalMotionInASolid/

13.3 Heat

Objectives

The student will:

- Explain the relationship between heat and energy transfer.
- Describe how the calorie is a measure of energy.

Vocabulary

- **calorie**: The amount of energy needed to increase the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1 °C at standard atmospheric pressure (101.325 kPa). This is approximately 4.2 joules.

- **heat**: The sum of all the kinetic energies of all the molecules in an object or substance.

Introduction

Heat is yet another common word that has a very specific meaning in physics. We place our hands in front of a fire and speak of heat. We step with bare feet onto a tiled floor in an unheated room during winter and our feet feel cold. We speak of "losing heat." Human beings have expressed comfort and discomfort concerning the pleasant and unpleasant effects of heat since the advent of language. But an understanding of the nature of heat was not a simple affair. Even as late as the 18th century it was still not properly understood. For example, it was still commonly accepted that if two objects had the same temperature then they "contained" the same amount of heat. We know today that this is not true. During the latter half of the 18th century, the idea that heat was a form of matter called caloric became generally accepted. This, too, was proven incorrect. It was not until the 19th century that physicists were finally able to explain the nature of heat.

Understanding Heat

By the mid-19th century, R.J. Mayer constructed the principle of the conservation of energy. He based his premise on an experiment comparing mechanical energy and heat. Mayer's ideas were taken up by James Prescott Joule, whose work was discussed earlier. One of Joule's famous experiments involved heating a fluid mechanically, using friction. In Joule's experiment, a paddle wheel inside a container of fluid was rotated, resulting in an increase of the fluid's temperature. The rise in the temperature of the fluid indicated that the work done in rotating the paddle wheel was equivalent to heating up the fluid (with a flame, for example). Heat could therefore be viewed as a transfer of energy, involving a temperature change. Thus the definition of heat is given as:

Energy that is transferred from one object to another object due to a temperature difference between the objects.

To restate: When we speak of heat, we do not mean a material substance, nor do we mean a form of energy. Again, by heat we mean a transfer of energy.

The Calorie

The amount of energy required to raise the temperature of one gram of water by one degree Celsius is defined as one **calorie**, or, as it is sometimes referred to, one "small" calorie. The calorie is therefore a measure of energy. It is equal to about 4.186 J. Using the definition above, the caloric content of the average banana is 80,000 calories. A more useful unit to measure food calories is called the "big" calorie, which equals 1000 "small" calories. Thus, the average banana contains 80 "big" calories, or 80 food calories.

$1000\ small\ calories = 1\ food\ calorie = 4186J \rightarrow 1.00kcal = 1.00kC = 4186J.$

Check Your Understanding

Your doctor recommends an average caloric intake of 2,000 calories per day.

How many joules is this?

Answer: Since 1 food calorie equals 4186 J: $(2000\ C)(4186\frac{J}{C}) = 8,372,000 \rightarrow 8.372 \times 10^6\ J$

Illustrative Example 13.1.1

a. How long can a 60 W light bulb burn if supplied with $8.372 \times 10^6\ J$?

Answer: 60 W is the same as $60\frac{J}{s}$. Thus ,a 60 W lightbulb uses 60 J every second.

If $8.372 \times 10^6 J$ are available, then $\frac{8.372 \times 10^6 J}{60\frac{J}{s}} = 139,533 \rightarrow 140,000s$. Since there are 86,400 seconds in one day, $\frac{139,533}{86,400} = 1.6149 \rightarrow 1.61\ days$, or close to 39 hours.

b. To what height could a 70.0 kg person climb using this much energy? See **Figure** 13.4

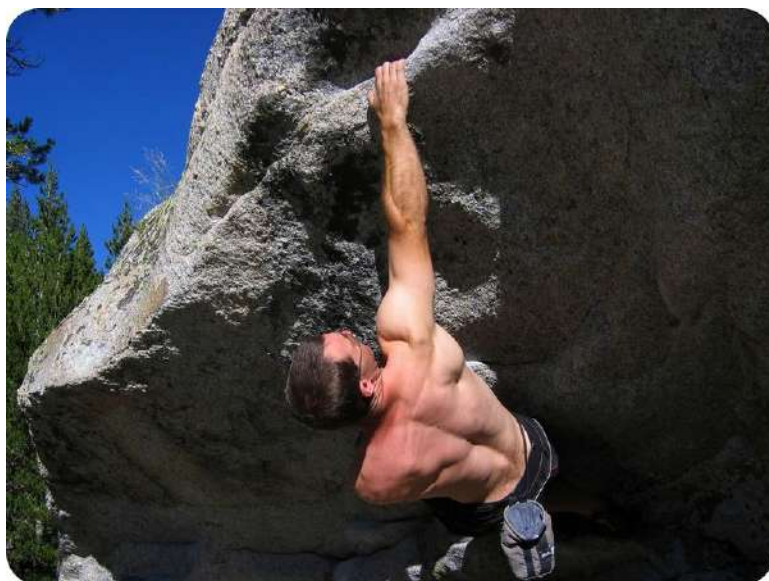



FIGURE 13.4
A vertical climb

Answer: We know that 2,000 kcal equals $8.372 \times 10^6 J$. So, 20% of this is $0.20 \times 8.372 \times 10^6 = 1.674 \times 10^6\ J$

Recall that the net work done by a climber of weight mg over a vertical displacement of Δh is equal to the change in his potential energy:

$\Delta PE = mg\Delta h$ (Assuming the change in his kinetic energy is zero.)

Therefore:

$mg\Delta h = 1.674 \times 10^6 \rightarrow (70.0kg)\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)\Delta h = 1.674 \times 10^6 \rightarrow$

$\Delta h = \frac{1.674\times10^6}{(70.0kg)\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)} = 2437.75 \rightarrow 2,440m!$

Most of the calories (energy) that we consume are used by our bodies even if we do not exercise or otherwise exert ourselves physically. For example, they are used to maintain a constant body temperature and keep our heart pumping. It turns out that about 80% of our caloric intake is used just to keep us alive. The remainder of the energy is used to perform work, such as climbing a flight of stairs, taking a walk, eating, talking, or anything else that requires you to use energy in your daily routine. If you use more than the remaining 20% of the energy you'll lose weight, since your body uses your stored fat to make up the difference. On the other hand, if you don't use up the remaining 20%, the excess is converted to fat and you'll gain weight.

Illustrative Example 13.2.2

a. A dieting person decides to eliminate the cream from his coffee. If he typically drinks two cups of coffee per day with one serving of cream added to each cup, how many calories would be saved over the course of a year? One serving of cream (about 15 grams, or one tablespoon) contains about 20 calories.

Answer:

$40\frac{Cal}{day} \times 365\ days = 14,600\ Cal$

b. Assuming the person's metabolic rate remains fixed while dieting, (highly unlikely, actually) what maximum weight loss can be expected? One kilogram of fat contains about 8,800 calories (one pound of fat has about 4000 calories).

From part A we know that 14,600 cal were saved, therefore

$\frac{14{,}600\ Cal}{8{,}800\frac{Cal}{kg}} = 1.659 \rightarrow 1.66\ kg\ (3.65\ pounds).$

13.4 Heat Transfer

Objectives

The student will:

- Describe how energy is transported through the processes of conduction, convection, and radiation.

Vocabulary

- **conduction**: The transfer of heat through matter by communication of kinetic energy from particle to particle (molecular collision), with no net displacement of the particles.
- **convection**: The transfer of heat from one place to another by the movement of fluids, also known as convective heat transfer.
- **heat**: The sum of all the kinetic energies of all the molecules in an object or substance.
- **radiation**: Energy emitted in the form of electromagnetic waves and covers the entire electromagnetic spectrum, extending from the radio-wave portion of the spectrum through the infrared, visible, ultraviolet, x-ray, and gamma-ray portions.

Introduction

Energy can be transferred as **heat** in three ways: through **conduction**, **convection**, and **radiation**.

Heat Conduction

Conduction occurs when a temperature difference exists, causing the molecules of an object to transmit energy throughout the object. We usually associate conduction with solids. The atomic structure of a solid is more rigid than a liquid or gas, and thus better able to communicate atomic vibrations caused by heating. Conduction is the transfer of kinetic energy from one molecule to another by molecular collision. Conduction occurs, for example, when a metal spoon is put into a hot cup of tea and the handle of the spoon gets hot.

We mentioned above that some of the food energy we consume is used to maintain a constant body temperature. What happens on a hot day when our body temperature is the same as the outside temperature? No energy will be transferred, since the temperatures are equal and therefore we'll feel uncomfortably warm since we won't be able to shed our heat. In contrast, when it is very cold, the temperature difference between our body and the outside temperature can be considerable and thus energy is transferred (rather quickly, if we're not dressed warmly) from our body to the outside environment. We interpret this rapid transfer of energy as feeling cold.

On a cold day, an object made of metal typically feels colder to the touch than wood, because energy leaves your hand more quickly when touching metal than wood. We say that metal has a higher conduction rate than wood. For example, for the same temperature difference, the conduction rate of copper is over 3,000 times greater than that of wood. Energy will flow from your hand 3,000 times more quickly if you hold a piece of copper, compared to holding a piece of wood of the same temperature. This means, of course, that you don't want to grab the handle of a copper (or any metal) pot when it's being heated on your stove. Heat conduction assures that the energy from the flame under the pot is conducted to the handle of the pot and to your hand should you touch it. Ouch!

The relationship between the rate of heat flow (heat conduction) $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t}$ and the temperature difference ΔT is

$\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t} = kA\frac{\Delta T}{t}$. The rate of heat flow $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t}$, is measured in $\frac{J}{s}$, k is the thermal conductivity that depends upon the properties of the object, A is the cross-section of the object, and t is distance over which the heat is conducted between the two temperatures $\Delta T = T_2 - T_1$.

Note: Typically when we discuss heat flow, the letter E is replaced with the letter Q. We will use Q in the section on specific heat below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ExperimentOnHeatConduction/

The Direction of Heat Flow

There is a misconception regarding heat flow that we should dispel at this point. Under normally occurring conditions, heat flows only from a hot environment to a cold environment, never in reverse. An open door on a very cold day does not let the cold in. It permits the heat to flow more readily to the outside.

On a cold day, even in a warm room, if you put your hand on a window pane inside your home, it will feel cold. The room temperature may be comfortable, but heat is flowing from the inside of the room to the outside through the glass pane. The air close to the glass pane inside the room has a lower temperature than the average temperature of the room because of its proximity to the outside. Conversely, the layer of air on the outside of the window pane has a higher temperature than the air farther from the window. On windy days, this effect is considerably lessened.

Illustrative Example 1

The temperature very near a glass window pane on the inside of a house is measured as 13°C and the temperature on the outside near the window is measured as 10°C. The window has dimensions 1.25 m by 0.90 m. The thickness t of the window is *4* mm, and its thermal conductivity k is 0.80 $\frac{\text{J}}{\text{s}\cdot\text{m}}{}^\circ\text{C}$. Find the rate at which energy is transferred from the inside of the room to the outside environment.

Answer:

Remembering that the area $A = (1.25\text{m})(0.90\text{m})$, and substituting the givens into the equation $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t} = kA\frac{\Delta T}{t}$ we have:

$$\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t} = \left(0.80\frac{\text{J}}{\text{s}\cdot\text{m}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C}}\right)(1.25\text{m})(0.90\text{m})\left(\frac{13^\circ\text{C} - 11^\circ\text{C}}{0.004\text{m}}\right) = 450\ \frac{\text{J}}{\text{s}}$$

This amount of energy transfer is equivalent to seven-and-one-half incandescent 60-W light bulbs. And this is through only one window! Installing energy-efficient windows in your home saves a good amount of money and helps the environment since most people still use fossil fuels to heat their homes.

Convection

Convection typically arises from the movement of gases or liquids over large distances. Convection takes place throughout the Earth's atmosphere all the time. Heated air is less dense than cooler air, so it rises. As the air rises,

it cools down and becomes denser. The air then falls back to the ground where it is heated again, and the process repeats. A convection cell, which is a circulating pattern of moving energy, is created. The **Figure** 13.5 shows how the convection cell reverses direction from day to night due to the ground giving off the heat in the evening that it absorbed during daylight hours.

Imagine the air that is heated by the asphalt and the concrete within a city rising, cooling, falling back, and being reheated by the asphalt and concrete, over and over again.

Many atmospheric conditions are the result of convection.

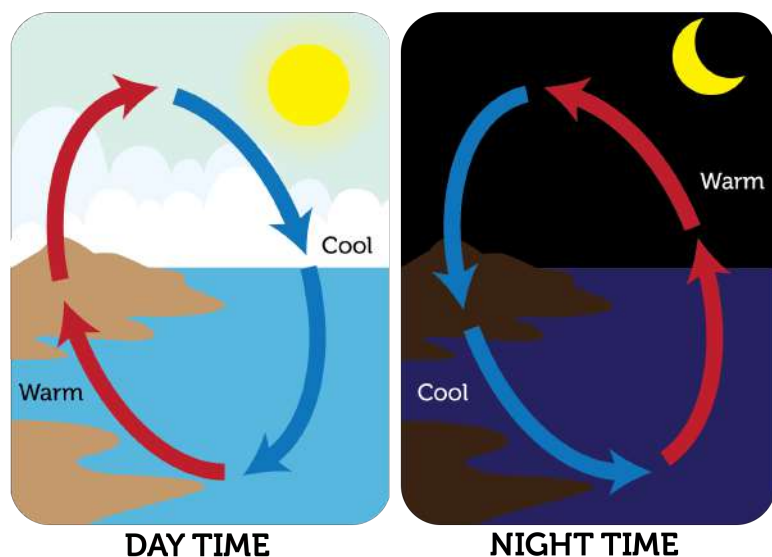



FIGURE 13.5
Convection cell reverses direction at night.

In hot climates, convection is used to cool homes. Ducts within the house provide pathways for the warm air to circulate. As the sun goes down and the temperature drops outside, the warmer air in the house flows through the ventilation ducts and to the cooler environment outside.

Convection is not restricted to earthly phenomena. The interior region of the sun is in a constant state of convection, which is seen in photographs showing what astronomers call "granulation." The granulation represents an innumerable amount of convection cells "boiling" to the sun's surface. See **Figure** 13.6 for a diagram of the sun's interior and a photograph of the convection cells (granulation).

Radiation

Both conduction and convection rely upon moving matter. Radiation does not. Radiation is energy transferred by electromagnetic waves (or photons). We will say more about radiation when we discuss the electromagnetic spectrum.

Energy transferred by radiation from the sun travels millions of kilometers through the vacuum of space before reaching the Earth. Some of this energy is visible radiation (sunlight, for example), while other energy is invisible. Heat radiation is an example of invisible radiation. It belongs to a part of the electromagnetic spectrum below the threshold of human sight. Just as there are sounds we cannot hear, there is light we cannot see.

When you sit next to a campfire or a fireplace and feel all warm and cozy, thank radiation! If the only heating we could experience was through convection, we would not be warmed. We would benefit very little from a convection cell up a chimney or directly above a campfire. It is the flow of radiation from the fire that warms us.

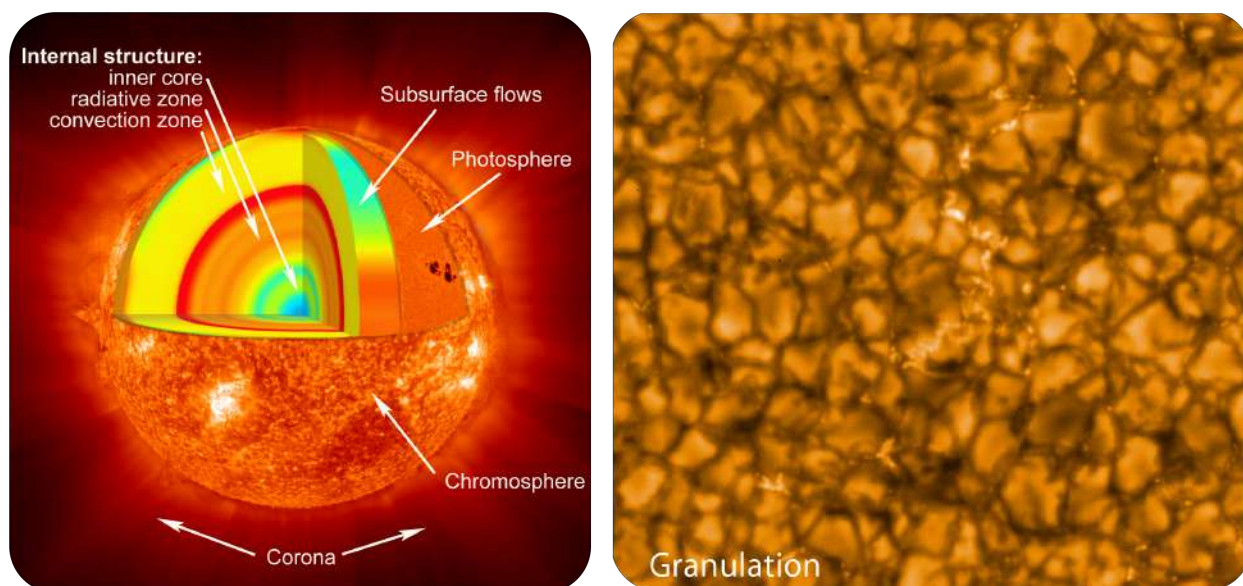



FIGURE 13.6

See Convection zone above

Check Your Understanding

What form of energy transfer is the most likely cause of sunburn?

a. conduction

b. convection

c. radiation

Answer: The answer is C. If it's a hot day and you touch any metal on a car, you might suffer a burn. This happens through conduction. If you feel a warm breeze, this is through convection. But sunburn is caused by ultraviolet radiation from the sun. As with infrared radiation, ultraviolet radiation is also invisible. It is, however, just above the threshold of human vision. And just as some animals can hear higher frequency sounds than we can (dogs, for example), other animals can see higher frequencies of light than we can (bees can see ultraviolet light).

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nm8RCkeUCqk

13.5 Specific Heat

Objective

The student will:

- Solve problems involving specific heat.

Vocabulary

- **specific heat:** The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one gram of a substance by one Celsius degree.

Specific Heat

We know that when we heat an object, its temperature increases. But a given quantity of heat will not produce the same temperature change for every object. Recall that it requires 4.186 J of energy to raise the temperature of one gram of water by one degree Celsius. It can be determined experimentally that the same 4.186 J, if transferred to one gram of copper, will raise its temperature by 10.7 degrees Celsius.

For a given mass, experiments show that the temperature rise due to a fixed amount of energy transfer depends upon the material heated. The **specific heat** c of a material is the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of one kilogram of a particular substance by one-degree Celsius. The change in temperature ΔT of an object depends upon the amount of mass m of the object being heated, the specific heat c of the material the object is composed of, and the amount of energy ΔQ transferred to the object. It can be shown experimentally that:

$\Delta T = \frac{\Delta Q}{mc} \rightarrow \Delta Q = mc\Delta T$

The SI units of specific heat are $\frac{J}{kg^\circ C}$.

The **Table** 13.1 gives specific heat values for some common materials.

TABLE 13.1:

Substance	Specific heat $\left(\frac{J}{kg^\circ C}\right)$ at standard atmospheric pressure and at 20°C
Liquid Water	4,186
Wood	1,700
Glass	840
Zinc	390
Copper	390
Silver	230

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/HeatCapacityOfSolidsInTheDebyeApproximation/

Check Your Understanding

One kilogram of the each of the substances in table 13.1.1 has 100 J of energy transferred to it at an initial temperature of 20°C. Which substance experiences the largest increase in temperature?

Answer: Since silver has the smallest specific heat, it has the largest temperature rise.

Illustrative Example 1

A United States penny, **Figure** 13.7, is made almost entirely from zinc. The penny has a mass of 2.5 g and an initial temperature 20°C.

FIGURE 13.7

A United States penny is almost completely made from zinc

a. Find the temperature increase of the penny if 380 J is transferred to it.

Answer:

Since the SI units of the specific heat contain kilograms, we must express 2.5 grams in kilograms:

$(2.5g)\frac{1.000kg}{1000g} = 0.0025kg.$

We should expect the temperature to increase to be greater than 1°C.

$\Delta Q = cm\Delta T \rightarrow 380J = \left(390\frac{J}{KgC}\right)(0.0025kg)\Delta T \rightarrow$

$\Delta T = \frac{380J}{\left(390\frac{J}{KgC}\right)(0.0025kg)} = 389.74 \rightarrow 390°C$

b. What is final temperature of the penny?

Answer:

Since the penny was initially 20°C and the change in temperature was 390°C, the final temperature of the penny is 410°C. This is ten degrees away from its melting temperature.

Check Your Understanding

a. Equal amounts of zinc and silver, at the same initial temperature, absorbed the same amounts of heat. For every one degree increase in the temperature of the zinc, find the increase in the temperature of the silver.

Answer: The ratio of the specific heats of zinc to silver is $\frac{390\frac{J}{kg°C}}{230\frac{J}{kg°C}} = 1.696 \rightarrow 1.70.$

Therefore, the temperature of the silver will go up by $1.70°C$ for every $1.00°C$ increase in temperature of the zinc.

b. The temperature of a zinc coin increases from $20.0°C$ *to* $25.0°C$ after absorbing heat. What is the final temperature for a silver coin of the same mass at the same initial temperature which absorbs the same amount of heat?

Answer: $(5.0°C)(1.696) = 8.48 \rightarrow 8.5°C$ increase in the temperature for the silver. The final temperature is $28.5°C$.

Calorimetry

If a system is insulated well for a period of time so that no appreciable energy is transferred beyond the system, we can think of such a system as being nearly "isolated." This means for an isolated system composed of two objects with unlike temperatures, the hotter object will transfer energy to the colder object until the temperatures of both objects are identical.

Since energy must be conserved, we can find the final temperature of an isolated system. The energy lost by some of the objects must equal the energy gained by other objects. That is,

$-Q_{lost} = Q_{gained}, Q_{lost} < 0$

The energy lost by the hotter object is equal to the energy received by the colder object.

Illustrative Example 2

Let us imagine an isolated system consisting of a 30-g block of zinc heated to $300.0°C$ which is placed into contact with a 30-g block of silver initially at a temperature of $20.0°C$.

What is the final temperature of the system, after equilibrium is reached?

Answer:

The energy transferred by the zinc block is $-Q_{lost} = -c_{zinc}m_{zinc}\Delta T_{zinc}$ and the energy received by the silver block from is $Q_{gained} = c_{silver}m_{silver}\Delta T_{silver}$.

Thus, $-c_{zinc}m_{zinc}\Delta T_{zinc} = c_{silver}m_{silver}\Delta T_{silver}$. But $m_{zinc} = m_{silver}$, so we can write:

$-c_{zinc}\Delta T_{zinc} = c_{silver}\Delta T_{silver}$

$\Delta T_{zinc} = T_f - 300.0°C \text{ and } \Delta T_{silver} = T_f - 20.0°C$

$-c_{zinc}(T_f - 300.0°C) = c_{silver}(T_f - 20.0°C) \rightarrow$

$c_{zinc}T_f + c_{silver}T_f = (20.0°C)c_{silver} + (300.0°C)c_{zinc} \rightarrow$

$T_f = \frac{(20.0°C)c_{silver} + (300.0°C)c_{zinc}}{c_{zinc} + c_{silver}} =$

$\frac{(20.0°C)\left(230\frac{J}{kg°C}\right) + (300°C)\left(390\frac{J}{kg°C}\right)}{\left(390\frac{J}{kg°C} + 230\frac{J}{kg°C}\right)} \rightarrow 196.13 \rightarrow 196°C$

1. The conversion from temperature expressed in Celsius to kelvin is

$T_K = T_C\left(1\frac{K}{C}\right) + 273°K$ or more simply $\rightarrow T_K = T_C + 273$

2. The relationship between the average kinetic energy of a gas and its temperature is $\overline{KE} = \frac{1}{2}m(\overline{v}_t)^2 = \frac{3}{2}kT$, where $\overline{v}_t$ is the mean translational velocity of the molecules, m is their mass, k the Boltzmann constant, is equal to $1.38 \times 10^{-23}\frac{J}{K}$ and T the temperature is expressed in Kelvin.

3. The internal energy can be directly related to the temperature of a gas as $U = N\left(\frac{3}{2}kT\right) \rightarrow U = \frac{3}{2}NkT$

4. Energy that is transferred from one object to another object due to a temperature difference between the objects is called heat.

5. The amount of energy required to raise the temperature of one gram of water by one degree Celsius is defined as one *calorie*, or, as it is sometimes referred to, one "small" calorie. The calorie is therefore a measure of energy and

it is equal to about 4.186 J.

Definition: 1000 $small\ calories = 1\ food\ calorie = 4186J \rightarrow 1.00kcal = 1.00kC = 4186J$

6. Energy can be transferred in three ways: through *conduction, convection,* and *radiation*.

a. Conduction occurs when a temperature difference exists causing the molecules of an object to transmit energy throughout the object.

b. Convection typically arises from the movement of gases or liquids over large distances.

c. Radiation is energy transferred by electromagnetic waves (or photons).

7. The relationship between the rate of heat flow (heat conduction) $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t}$ and the temperature difference ΔT is $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t} = kA\frac{\Delta T}{t}$. Where, the rate of heat flow $\frac{\Delta E}{\Delta t}$, is measured in $\frac{J}{s}, k$ is the thermal conductivity that depends upon the properties of the object, A is the cross-section of the object, and t is distance over which the heat is conducted between the two temperatures $\Delta T = T_2 - T_1$.

8. The specific heat c of a material is the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of one kilogram of a particular substance, one-degree Celsius.

The change in temperature ΔT of an object depends upon the amount of mass m of the object being heated, the specific heat c of the material the object is composed of and the amount of energy ΔQ transferred to the object. It can be experimentally shown that $\Delta T = \frac{\Delta Q}{mc} \rightarrow \Delta Q = mc\Delta T$

13.6 References

1. Flickr:Jellaluna. http://www.flickr.com/photos/90859240@N00/5604638239/ . CC BY 2.0
2. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fahrenheit_small.jpg .
3. Olof Arenius. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Anders-Celsius.jpeg .
4. unknown. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lord_Kelvin_photograph.jpg .
5. Image copyright Tom Grundy, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock
6. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Diagram: Courtesy of NASA; Granulation: Courtesy of Hinode JAXA/NASA/PPARC. Diagram: http://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/hinode/solar_020.html; Granulation: http://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/hinode/solar_013.html . Public Domain
8. Courtesy of the US Mint. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2005-Penny-Uncirculated-Obverse-cropped.png . Public Domain

Chapter 14 Thermodynamics

Chapter Outline

14.1 The Ideal Gas Law

Objectives

The student will:

- Explain the Ideal Gas Law.
- Solve problems using the Ideal Gas Law.

Vocabulary

- **Avogadro's number:** The constant, 6.022×10^{23}, representing the number of atoms in a gram atom, or the number of molecules in a gram molecule.
- **Boyle's Law:** States that the absolute pressure and volume of a given mass of confined gas are inversely proportional, if the temperature remains unchanged within a closed system. Thus, it states that the product of pressure and volume is a constant for a given mass of confined gas as long as the temperature is constant, PV = k when T = k. The law was named after chemist and physicist Robert Boyle, who published the original law in 1662.

- **Charles's Law:** An experimental gas law which describes how gases tend to expand when heated. A modern statement of Charles' Law is: At constant pressure, the volume of a given mass of an ideal gas increases or decreases by the same factor as its temperature on the absolute temperature scale (i.e. the gas expands as the temperature increases). $V = kT$
- **Guy-Lussac's Law:** The pressure of a gas of fixed mass and fixed volume is directly proportional to the absolute temperature of the gas. $\frac{P}{T} = k$
- **Ideal Gas Law:** A law that describes the relationships between measurable properties of an ideal gas. The law states that P $\times$ V = n $\times$ (R) $\times$ T, where P is pressure, V is volume, n is the number of moles of molecules, T is the absolute temperature, and R is the gas constant (8.314 Joules per degree Kelvin or 1.985 calories per degree Celsius). A consequence of this law is that, under constant pressure and temperature conditions, the volume of a gas depends solely on the number of moles of its molecules, not on the type of gas. This is also called the Universal Gas Law.

- **mole**: A unit of measurement used in chemistry to express amounts of a chemical substance. A mole is defined as an amount of a substance that contains as many elementary entities (e.g., atoms, molecules, ions, electrons) as there are atoms in 12 grams of pure carbon-12 (^{12}C), which is the isotope of carbon with atomic weight 12. This corresponds to a value of $6.02214179 \times 10^{23}$ elementary entities of the substance. It is one of the base units in the International System of Units, and has the unit symbol mol.

- **molecular mass:** The mass of a molecule.

Introduction

In the chapter covering temperature and heat, we discussed the kinetic theory of temperature for an ideal gas. The kinetic theory stated that the temperature of such a gas is directly related to the kinetic energy of the molecules of the gas, which, in turn, is equal to the internal energy of the gas. The more we heat a gas, the faster the random motion of its molecules and the greater the increase in temperature and pressure. This seems perfectly reasonable if the gas is confined so that its volume cannot increase. Heat an empty glass bottle with a cork at the top for a sufficiently long time and the molecules of the air in the bottle gain enough kinetic energy to eventually "pop" the cork out of the bottle. In other words, the pressure (force per unit area) becomes great enough to force the cork out of the bottle. But what happens if we heat a gas and allow the volume to increase, or compress a gas while cooling it? In this chapter, we explore the relationships between the mass, volume, pressure, and temperature of ideal gases which are confined, compressed, and expanded.

Atomic Mass Units

Before we continue, it will be helpful to discuss how the masses of different atoms (and molecules) are compared to each other.

The idea that all matter is composed of tiny building blocks called atoms goes back to antiquity. It was only during the last two hundred years or so, however, that some measurements could be made suggesting the truth of the idea. Measurements made when different substances combined led to the conclusion that the ratios of atomic masses tended to be simple proportions and that hydrogen had the smallest mass of all atoms. Compared to a hydrogen atom, for example, a carbon atom had 12 times the mass, an oxygen atom-16, and nitrogen-14.

Today we define the mass of one-twelfth of a carbon atom as one unified atomic mass unit (amu) or (u)

$1\ u = 1.66 \times 10^{-27}\ kg$

Using this definition, a carbon atom has a mass of 12.0000 u, and a hydrogen atom has a mass of 1.0078 u.

The Mole

A basic unit in SI system is the **mole** (mol). The mole is defined as the amount of a substance that contains the same number of atoms or molecules as exactly 12 grams of carbon-12. For example, it is found that 16 grams of oxygen contains the same number of atoms as does 12 grams of carbon-12. Note that carbon-12 is the most common isotope of carbon. We'll have more to say about isotopes later.

Molar Mass

Molar mass is the mass of one mole of a substance.

Using the atomic mass of a compound, we can quickly determine the mass of one mole of the compound. For example, carbon monoxide (CO) is a chemical compound composed of one carbon atom and one oxygen atom. The unified atomic mass of carbon is 12 and the unified atomic mass of oxygen is 16. The total unified atomic mass number for carbon monoxide is therefore:

$12 + 16 = 28\ u$

The molar mass of carbon dioxide is numerically equal to the atomic mass number, but in grams. Therefore, carbon dioxide has a molar mass of 28 grams.

Another definition of the mole can be stated as: The number of grams of a substance that is equal to its molar mass.

Check Your Understanding

The atomic mass of aluminum oxide Al_2O_3 (2 aluminum atoms and 3 oxygen atoms) is 102 u.

a. What is the mass of one mole of aluminum oxide?

Answer: 102 grams

b. What is the molar mass of aluminum oxide?

Answer: By definition, the mass of one mole of a substance is its molar mass: 102 grams

c. You are given 230 grams of aluminum oxide. How many moles n of aluminum oxide do you have?

Answer: $n = \frac{230\ g}{102 \frac{g}{mol}} = 2.25\ mol$

d. What is the atomic mass of aluminum?

Answer: As cited above, one atom of oxygen has atomic mass 16 u.

Therefore, three oxygen atoms has atomic mass of

$3 \times 16 = 48\ u$

So, two atoms of aluminum must have anatomic mass of

$102\ u - 48\ u = 54\ u$

Thus, one atom of aluminum has atomic mass of

$\frac{54\ u}{2} = 27\ u$

Avogadro's Number

In 1811, Amedeo Avogadro (1776-1856), in the **Figure** 14.1, published a paper hypothesizing that equal volumes of different gases gas at equal pressure and temperature would have an equal number of molecules. Today we know that a volume of 22.4 liters of an ideal gas at standard atmospheric pressure and 20°C contains one mole of gas.

The number of molecules in one mole was not determined until the early 20th century. The number is known today as **Avogadro's Number** $N_A = 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ and is defined as one mole.

FIGURE 14.1
Amedeo Avogadro

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=g_BelGwRxG8&feature=related

Check Your Understanding

1a. How many atoms of silver does one mole of silver contain?

Answer: One mole (abbreviated as mol), by definition, contains 6.022×10^{23} particles. In this case, it is 6.022×10^{23} atoms of silver.

1b. A United States silver dollar, **Figure** 14.2, contains approximately 24.06 grams of silver. The **molecular mass** of silver is $107.87 \frac{g}{mol}$. How many moles of silver are in a silver dollar?

Answer: $n = \frac{24.06\ g}{107.87 \frac{g}{mol}} = 0.22304 \rightarrow 0.2230\ mol$

FIGURE 14.2

United States silver dollar, late 19^{th} century

2a. The mass of a United States penny (primarily zinc) is 2.50 grams. What is the molar mass of one mole of pennies?

Answer: There are 6.022×10^{23} particles in every mole. Therefore, one mole of pennies is 6.022×10^{23} pennies.

$\left(2.50 \frac{g}{penny}\right)(6.022 \times 10^{23}\ pennies) = 1.5055 \times 10^{24} \rightarrow 1.51 \times 10^{24}\ grams$ or $1.51 \times 10^{21}\ kg$. This is the mass of Pluto's moon, Charon, see **Figure** 14.3. Clearly, a mole is a very large number.

By comparison, the amount of zinc in about 23 pennies is equivalent to one mole of zinc atoms.

Clearly, atoms are very small.

Three Laws

In the three laws that follow, we assume an ideal gas, as described by the Kinetic Theory. The mass of the gas is held constant, and that the pressure of the gas remains fairly low.

Boyle's Law

Robert Boyle (1627-1691), in the **Figure** 14.4, is regarded as the first modern chemist. In the early 1660s he stated what has become known as **Boyle's Law**, which states that if the temperature of a gas is kept constant, then the volume V and pressure P form an inverse relationship.

$\rightarrow V \propto \frac{1}{P},\ or\ PV =$ constant.

Figure 14.5 shows the relationship as a graph. Notice that as the pressure increases, the volume decreases, if the temperature remains constant. This may not seem obvious.

Let us try to understand why it happens. If the temperature does not increase, then the average velocity of the gas molecules does not increase. As we showed earlier, a change in momentum $(\Delta p = F\Delta t)$ is proportional to force. Recall that pressure is force per unit area. If the volume decreases, then more molecules impact a smaller surface

FIGURE 14.3
Pluto's largest moon Charon is 1,200 km in diameter

FIGURE 14.4
Robert Boyle

area, thus there is more force per unit area.

In an 1802 paper, scientist Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac, who we shall have more to say about shortly, credited Jacques Charles (1746-1823), **Figure** 14.6, with what is now known as **Charles's Law**. According to Charles's Law, if the pressure of a gas is kept constant, the volume V of a gas varies directly with the absolute temperature T (expressed, as you may recall, in Kelvins), $V \propto T$ **Figure** 14.7. Close to absolute zero, all gases will liquefy. The graph in **Figure** 14.7 is therefore extrapolated for temperatures close to absolute zero. We note that experimentally reducing the temperature of any substance to zero K is not possible.

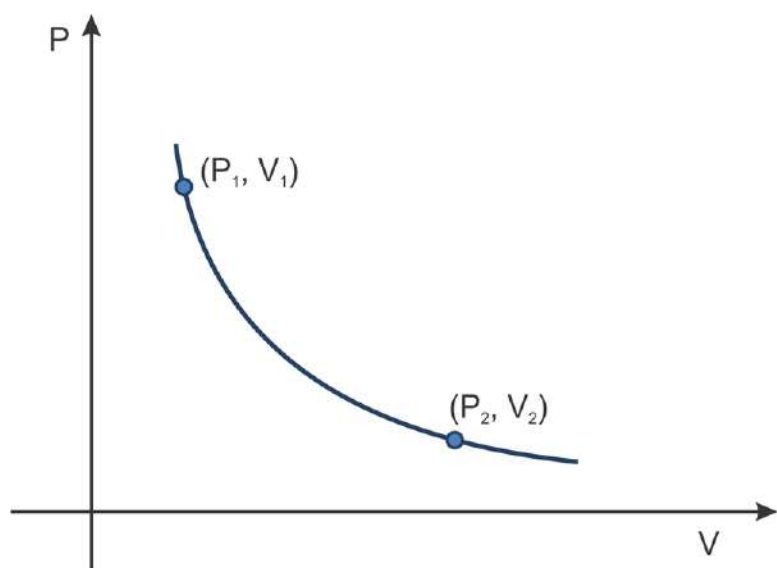



FIGURE 14.5
The product remains constant;

FIGURE 14.6
Jacques Charles

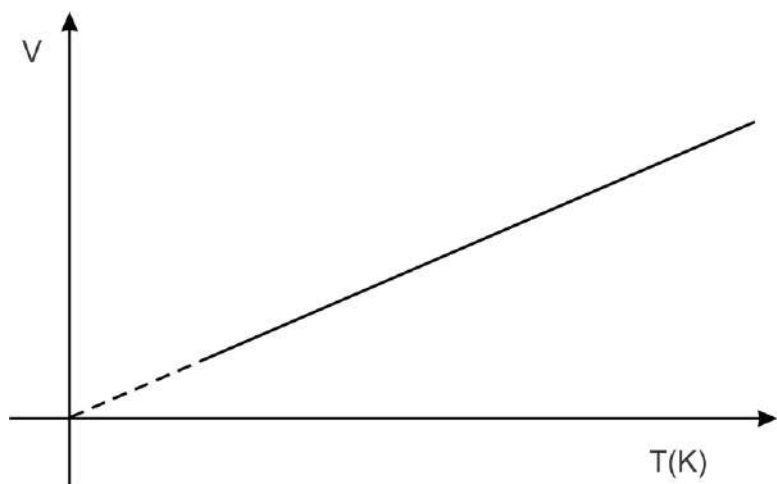



FIGURE 14.7

Guy-Lussac's Law

Joseph Louis Gay-Lussac (1778-1850), **Figure** 14.8, is also credited with stating that when the volume of a gas is held constant, the pressure P is directly related to the temperature T(Kelvin), $P \propto T$ **Figure** 14.9. This graph is also extrapolated for temperatures close to absolute zero.

FIGURE 14.8
Guy-Lussac

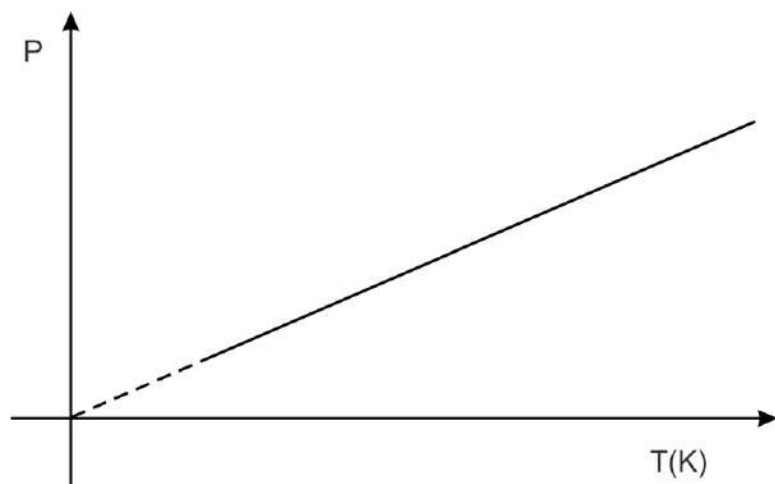



FIGURE 14.9

The Mass of a Gas

For the three laws above, we assumed that the mass of the gas was constant. But the mass of a gas can increase or decrease. Fill a tire with air (a gas) and there is an increase in mass. If the air flows out of the tire, the mass decreases. In both cases, the volume of the tire will change. Once a tire is close to its rated pressure, however, filling it with more air will hardly increase the volume. But the pressure can still increase a good deal. The increase in pressure is due to the increase in mass of the gas because there are more molecules hitting the inside of the tire. Both volume V and pressure P, therefore, increase with mass in direct proportion $m \rightarrow P \propto m$ and $V \propto m$.

The Ideal Gas Law

The three gas laws we have previously discussed in addition to the relationship between volume, pressure, and mass, lead to a more general statement of proportionality $\rightarrow PV \propto mT$. We can write this as an equation $\rightarrow PV = CmT$, but we can show that if the mass m is used in the equation, then the constant of proportionality C depends upon the particular gas. If however, the mass is expressed using the number of moles n, a constant of proportionality (known as the universal gas constant) $R = 8.314 \frac{J}{mol-K}$, is applicable for any gas.

Under these conditions the **Ideal Gas Law** can be expressed as $PV = nRT$, where the temperature T must be in Kelvins. No gas exactly follows the Ideal Gas Law. But if the assumptions made for the kinetic theory of gases are valid (that is, if the gas has high temperature and low pressure), then the Ideal Gas Law is applicable. Unless stated otherwise, throughout this chapter we will assume that we deal with an ideal gas.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PjLA0Fmi44A

Illustrative Example 14.1.1

What is the volume of one mole of any gas at one atmosphere of pressure at room temperature $20.0°C$?

Answer:

Recall from earlier that $1\ atm = 1.01 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{m^2}$ and that the temperature in the Ideal Gas Law equation must be in Kelvin. Remember that

$$T_k = T_c + 273 \rightarrow 20 + 273 = 293\ K$$
$$PV = nRT \rightarrow \left(1.01 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{m^2}\right) V = (1.00\ mol)\left(8.314 \frac{J}{mol * K}\right)(293\ K) \rightarrow$$
$$V = \frac{(1.00\ mol)\left(8.314 \frac{J}{mol*K}\right)(293\ K)}{\left(1.01 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{m^2}\right)} = 0.0241 = 24.1 \times 10^{-3} \frac{J * m^2}{N} \rightarrow$$
$$24.1 \times 10^{-3} \frac{N * m^3}{N} \rightarrow 24.1 \times 10^{-3}\ m^3$$

What would the volume be at $0.00°C$?

Answer: $22.4 \times 10^{-3} m^3$

Illustrative Example 14.1.2

An ideal gas is contained in a rigid vessel at a pressure of $1.15\ atm\ at\ 29°C$. What is the pressure if the vessel is heated to a temperature of $90°C$? Express the answer in atm.

Answer:

The volume and mass remain constant, therefore $PV = nRT \rightarrow \frac{P}{T} = \frac{nR}{V} =$ constant. Before calculating, don't forget to change the temperature to Kelvins!

$$\frac{P_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_f}{T_f} \rightarrow \frac{1.15 P_{atm}}{(29.0 + 273)K} = \frac{P_f}{(90.0 + 273)K} \rightarrow P_f = \frac{363K}{302K}(1.15 P_{atm}) = 1.382 P_{atm} \rightarrow 1.38 P_{atm}$$

Illustrative Example 14.1.3

A spherical helium balloon of radius 20.00 cm is initially inflated to a pressure P_i of 1.05 atm at a temperature of $30.00°C$. The balloon remains in direct sunlight and the temperature of the helium increases to $37.00°C$. If the pressure inside the balloon increases by 1.00%, by what percent does the volume of the balloon increase?

Answer:

Since the number of moles remains unchanged, $\frac{P_iV_i}{T_i} = nR = \text{constant} \rightarrow$

$\frac{P_iV_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_fV_f}{T_f} \rightarrow V_f = \frac{T_f}{T_i}\frac{P_i}{P_f}V_i$, however $P_f = P_i(1+0.01) = 1.01P_i \rightarrow$

Substituting for $1.01P_i$ *for* P_f

$$V_f = \frac{T_f}{T_i}\frac{P_i}{P_i(1.01)}V_i = \frac{(37.00+273)}{(30.00+273)}\frac{1}{1.01}V_i = 1.013V_i \rightarrow V_f = 1.013V_i \rightarrow$$

Percent increase in volume is $1.013 - 1.000 = 0.013 \rightarrow 1.3\%$

Illustrative Example 14.1.4

Boltzmann's constant k, is defined as $k = \frac{R}{N_A}$. Show that the internal energy of a gas can be stated as $U = \frac{3}{2}nRT$.

Answer:

If $\frac{R}{N_A}$ is substituted for k in $U = \frac{3}{2}kNT$, then $U = \frac{3}{2}\frac{N}{N_A}RT$.

But $\frac{N}{N_A} = n$, since N is the total number of particles divided by the number of particles in one mole N_A. We can therefore state that $U = \frac{3}{2}nRT$.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WScwPIPqZa0

14.2 First Law of Thermodynamics

Objectives

The student will:

- Describe the First Law of Thermodynamics.
- Solve problems using the First Law of Thermodynamics.

Vocabulary

- **adiabatic process:** A thermodynamic process in which no heat enters or leaves the system.
- **Heat Reservoir**
- **isobaric process:** A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant pressure.
- **isochoric process:** A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant volume, also known as an isovolumetric process.
- **isothermal process:** A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant temperature.

Introduction

The word thermodynamics puts together "thermo-", meaning heat, and "dynamics", meaning change.

Thermodynamics is the study of processes by which energy is transferred by heat and work.

When studying thermodynamics, we will often refer to "the system," which is often a gas within some sort of container. There are three types of systems: isolated, closed, and open. Mass and energy cannot enter or leave an isolated system. Only energy may enter or leave a closed system. Both mass and energy may enter or leave an open system.

Heat as explained earlier is the transfer of energy due to a temperature difference. Work is a transfer of energy when there is no temperature difference.

James Joule showed that mechanical work was equivalent to heat. A given amount of work done on a system could raise the temperature of the system the same as if a flame had transferred energy to the system (as if the system was heated). But we know from the Kinetic Theory that when energy is transferred to a system, the molecules gain kinetic energy. If we restrict our attention to ideal gases, then the sum of the kinetic energy of the molecules is equal to the internal energy of the substance.

The internal energy of a system can increase or decrease by heat flowing into or out of the system. The internal energy of a system can also increase or decrease when work is done on the system or the system does work on the environment (we will describe how work is done on the system and how the system does work on the environment later).

The relationship that was established in the 19th century among internal energy, heat, and work is now known as the Law of Conservation of Energy. Though we have made use of conservation of energy in our work on mechanics, it was not until the concept of heat was understood that a formal statement on the conservation of energy was proposed. This formulation is now known as the First Law of Thermodynamics, stated below:

The change in the internal energy of a closed system is equal to the heat delivered into (or out of) a system, plus the work done on the system (or by the system).

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3lrakjtd1hU

It is represented symbolically as $\Delta U = Q + W$, where ΔU is the change in internal energy $(U), Q$ is heat, and W is work.

It is important to follow the proper sign conventions in using the First Law:

1. When heat flows into the system, Q is positive.
2. When heat flows out of the system, Q is negative.
3. When work is done on the system, W is positive.
4. When the system does work on the environment, W is negative.

One further definition will be useful. It is often the case that we wish to transfer energy into or out of a system or maintain a system at a constant temperature. To do so, we put the system in contact with a **heat reservoir**. The reservoir is considered large enough so that any heat that flows into it or out of it does not affect its temperature. It is incorrect to think of the heat reservoir as something that is necessarily hot. It is a reservoir that can accept or deliver heat.

Illustrative Example 1

1. An air-filled cylinder with a movable piston has a heat reservoir in contact with it, **Figure** 14.10. The heat reservoir transfers 500 J of energy into the cylinder. Due to the energy transfer, the piston does 300 J of work on the environment.

a. What is the sign of Q?

Answer: Since the heat flowed into the system, Q is positive.

b. What is the sign of the W?

Answer: Since the piston did work on the environment, W is negative.

c. What is the change in internal energy of the system?

Answer: $\Delta U = Q + W \rightarrow \Delta U = +500J - 300J = 200J$

Four Definitions

It is possible to carry out a thermodynamic process under several special conditions:

A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant temperature is called an **isothermal process**.

A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant volume is called an **isochoric, or isovolumetric, process**.

A thermodynamic process that takes place at constant pressure is called an **isobaric process**.

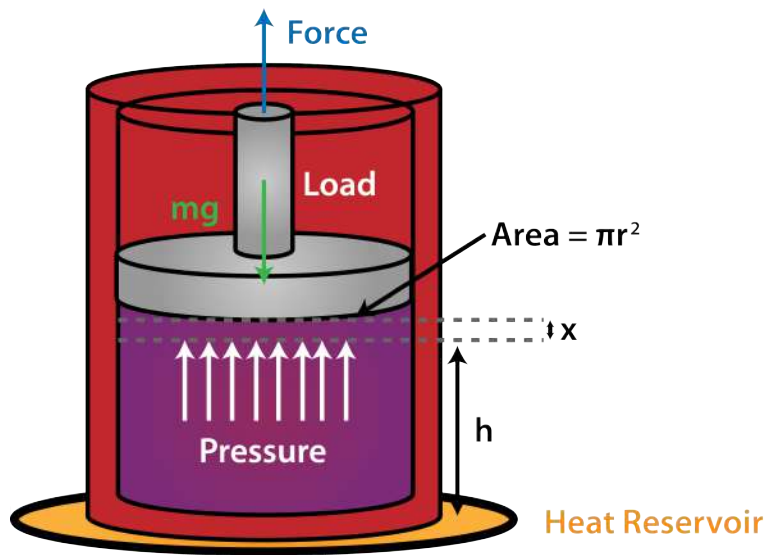



FIGURE 14.10

A thermodynamic process in which no heat enters or leaves the system is an **adiabatic process**.

This condition can be realized by a system that is well insulated, like a thermos bottle, or if a process occurs rapidly enough so that heat does not have time to enter or leave the system (see example 14.2.5).

Illustrative Example 2

In example 14.2.1, the thermodynamic process is isobaric. The load is lifted at a constant velocity and the mass of the piston is negligible in comparison to the load (mg) lifted. Show that the work done in lifting the load is equal to the product of the pressure P inside the cylinder and the change in volume ΔV of the gas inside the cylinder, that is, $P\Delta V$.

Recall that work is equal to the product of the displacement x and the force F in the direction of the displacement. The force F acting on the piston is in the direction of the displacement x, see **Figure** 14.10.

The work done on the load is $W = Fx$, where $F = mg$, since the load is lifted at constant velocity and x is the displacement of the load. The volume of the cylinder at any instant is the product of area of the piston A and the height h of the piston within the cylinder.

$V_{cylinder} = Ah = \pi r^2 h.$

Recall that the pressure P is given by $P = \frac{F}{A}$.

The product $P\Delta V = \frac{F}{A}(V_f - V_i) = \frac{F}{\pi r^2}(\pi r^2 h_f - \pi r^2 h_i) = F((h+x)-h) = Fx$

We might have expected this result had we bothered to investigate the units of PV.

$PV \rightarrow \frac{F}{A}(Ax) = Fx \rightarrow work\ or$

$PV \rightarrow \left(\frac{F}{A}\right)V = \left(\frac{kg*\frac{m}{s^2}}{m^2}\right)m^3 = kg*\frac{m^2}{s^2} \rightarrow$ which are, clearly, the units of kinetic energy, the product of mass and velocity squared.

Illustrative Example 3

A thermodynamic process is carried out isothermally.

What is the change in internal energy ΔU?

Answer:

The internal energy of a gas can be expressed as $U = \frac{3}{2}kNT$, where k is the Boltzmann constant, N the total number of molecules (or atoms) and T the temperature of the gas. For an isothermal process, the internal energy must remain constant since the temperature remains constant, therefore $\Delta U = 0$.

Illustrative Example 4

A gas-filled cylinder with a movable piston is put in contact with a heat reservoir so that the temperature of the gas remains constant. If 400 J of heat are transferred out of the system, describe whether work was done by or on the system.

Answer:

The sum $Q+W = 0$ because $\Delta U = 0 \to 0 = Q+W \to W = -Q$. The work is equal to $-Q$, but since heat left the system $Q < 0$, that is, $Q = -400J \to W = -(-400J) = +400J$. Work is, therefore, done on the system.

Illustrative Example 5

a. An isochoric process transfers 1,500 J of heat to a gas inside a cylinder with a fixed piston. How much work is done by the gas in the process?

Answer:

Since the process is isochoric, the volume of the gas must remain constant. If the gas does not expand or contract, no work can be done by the gas on the environment or by the environment on the gas, since the displacement of the piston is zero $\to W = P\Delta V = F\Delta x = F(0) = 0$ (see example 14.1.1).

b. How much does the internal energy of gas change?

Answer: $\Delta U = Q+W \to \Delta U = Q+0 \to \Delta U = Q \to \Delta U = 1,500J$

Illustrative Example 6

Explain why a system may experience a temperature decrease during an adiabatic process.

Answer:

The heat cannot enter or leave the system $(Q = 0)$. By the First Law, we have

$\Delta U = Q+W = 0+W \to \Delta U = W$.

If we assume that the system does work on the environment, then $W < 0$.

In cases when the work is less than zero, the internal energy of the system must decrease, since $\Delta U = U_f - U_i < 0 \to U_f < U_i$.

The internal energy of a gas is directly related to the temperature of the gas $U = \frac{3}{2}nRT$. The smaller the internal energy U, the cooler the temperature T.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dQeCEqkE9eE

14.3 Second Law of Thermodynamics

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the second law of thermodynamics
- Understand how to calculate the efficiency of a heat engine
- Understand how a Carnot engine operates
- Understand that entropy is a measure of disorder

Vocabulary

- Heat engine
- Reversible process
- Irreversible process
- Efficiency
- Carnot engine
- Entropy

Introduction

The first law of thermodynamics is a statement of the conservation of energy. But not all processes that conserve energy are physically possible. For example, it would not violate the law of conservation of energy if a glass of water at room temperature were to freeze. Nothing in the first law prevents the molecular motion of the water molecules from transferring heat through the glass to the atmosphere and therefore lowering the water temperature enough for it to freeze. But this never happens.

The second law of thermodynamics describes the direction in which physical phenomena can occur. *One statement of the second law is: Heat can flow spontaneously from hot to cold but never from cold to hot.*

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/HeatTransferAndTheSecondLawOfThermodynamics/

There are certain processes that we know can never happen in reverse: A tea cup falls and shatters after hitting the floor. But it does not put itself back together again and float back up from where it fell. All natural processes are irreversible. Even after one swing, a pendulum is not back to the height from where it was released. Friction ensures that some of the gravitational potential energy of the pendulum is converted into heat. On the other hand, heat does not spontaneously convert into potential energy: the pendulum would never start to swing wider while cooling down, will it?

Nature's tendency is to go from a more ordered state to a less ordered state.

Heat Engines

Any device that uses heat (thermal) energy to produce mechanical work is called a *heat engine*. One of the first heat engines was the steam engine. Wood or coal was burned, and the thermal energy released by the fuel was transferred to water and produced steam. The steam was then directed into a cylinder with a movable piston which turned a crank of some sort that was attached to another mechanical device which turned a paddle wheel. Thus, work was performed. But plenty of thermal energy was also transmitted to the environment (the engine room on a steamship gets pretty hot!).

Using thermal energy to produce mechanical work led to the question of *efficiency*: How much of the energy input to a system can be used to produce a given amount of work? It is never the case that all of the thermal energy can be converted to mechanical energy. Here is another way of stating the second law of thermodynamics: no heat engine can be 100% efficient. There is a simple way to appreciate this fact. If you have ever felt the hood of an automobile after it's been running for a while (do this carefully) you'll notice that the hood is very hot. The engine has grown hot while performing work and heated the hood of the car. The heat engine in this case is the internal combustion engine.

The internal combustion engine is not very efficient. About two-thirds of the energy of the gasoline used to power an automobile is converted to heat. That is why automobiles have cooling systems composed of radiators, water pumps and fans. As the water circulates through the system, heat is transferred from the hot engine to the cooler water. The water is then cooled by the radiator fan (and the "wind" through the grills of the car).

Briefly, the internal combustion process is as follows.

1. (Intake) Gasoline and air are mixed together in a cylinder that expands against a piston.
2. (Compression) A crankshaft then moves the piston upward compressing the mixture.
3. (Ignition) At the instant of maximum compression a spark plug "fires" (it releases an electric spark into the mixture) igniting the gasoline-air mixture and rapidly increasing the temperature in the cylinder.
4. (Expansion—the power stroke) The hot mixture Q_H expands rapidly.
5. (Exhaust) The exhaust gases Q_L are ejected at a lower temperature as the piston and the process repeats.

During the internal combustion process, some of the thermal energy produced by burning gasoline is used to perform work (to move the car!) but a good deal of the thermal energy is used to heat the engine as well as the exhaust gases which do not perform work. The second law of thermodynamics tells us that only some of the chemical energy of the gasoline is available to perform work. **Figure** 14.11 explains how the typical heat engine works. The quantity Q_H is the initial thermal energy transferred to the system and W is the work done by the system. (In the case of the internal combustion process, Q_H is the heat produced when the spark ignites the gasoline-air mixture.) The remaining thermal energy Q_L leaves the engine at a lower temperature.

The efficiency of a heat engine e is defined as

$e = \frac{W}{Q_H} \times 100$ (Multiplication by 100 expresses the efficiency as a percentage.)

Illustrative Example 1

a. Use the conservation of energy to express the relationship between, Q_H the high (H) temperature thermal energy, the low (L) temperature thermal energy, Q_L and the work performed W by a heat engine.

Solution:

Let Q_H be the initial energy of the system, Q_L the energy of the spent gases, and W the work output.

Conservation of energy states $E_i = E_f \rightarrow Q_H = Q_L + W$

b. Use the result above to express the efficiency e in terms of Q_H *and* Q_L.

Solution:

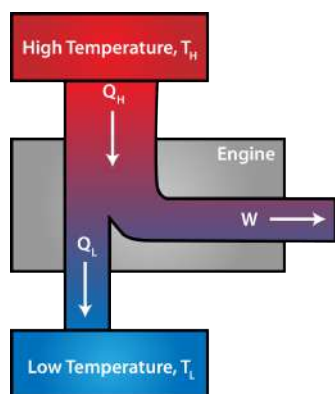



FIGURE 14.11
The functioning of a typical heat engine.

Since $Q_H = Q_L + W \rightarrow W = Q_H - Q_L$ substitution into $e = \frac{W}{Q_H} \times 100$ gives

$$e = \frac{W}{Q_H} \times 100 = \frac{Q_H - Q_L}{Q_H} \times 100 = \left(1 - \frac{Q_L}{Q_H}\right) \times 100 \rightarrow e = \left(1 - \frac{Q_L}{Q_H}\right) \times 100.$$

Check your understanding

At high temperature (Ignition) an engine transfers $8.52 \times 10^4\ J$ into the system and at low temperature (Exhaust) transfers $5.96 \times 10^4\ J$ out of the system.

What is the efficiency of the engine?

Answer: $e = \left(1 - \frac{Q_L}{Q_H}\right) \times 100 \rightarrow \left(1 - \frac{5.96 \times 10^4\ J}{8.52 \times 10^4\ J}\right) \times 100 = 30.0\%$

The Carnot Engine

Maximizing the efficiency of a heat engine was an important topic during the early 19^{th} century. The Frenchman Sadi Carnot (1796-1832), analyzed the characteristics of an ideal heat engine. Such an engine assumes that each process the engine preforms is reversible. The **Carnot engine**, as it is called today, belongs to the same idealized category as the frictionless inclined plane. (Such an engine is a mathematical abstraction conceived by assuming physical processes that are impossible. Carnot was able to establish the upper limit of a heat engine's efficiency by using his idealized model.

He assumed his reversible engine could perform with maximum efficiency if an ideal engine made use of isothermal and adiabatic processes only. All processes were assumed to occur infinitely slowly, having the engine move from one approximate equilibrium state to the next, thus ensuring that the processes could be reversed. Such an engine of course could never exist. The idea of constructing infinitely slow processes is impossible. The Carnot engine, as we will see, is just a useful conceptual idea for establishing the upper limit of a heat engine's efficiency for a given pair of high and low temperatures.

Carnot was able to show that at maximum efficiency the high Q_H and low Q_L energy transfers were proportional to the high T_H and low T_L temperatures under which the engine operated.

We can therefore write $e = \left(1 - \frac{T_L}{T_H}\right) \times 100\%$ where T is in kelvins.

This was a very important result because it showed, all things being equal, that those substances that could produce the highest temperature when burning would produce greater efficiency.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CarnotCycleOnIdealGas/

Check Your Understanding

1. In the unlikely event of the boiler room of a steamship reaching the same temperature as the steam in the steam engine, what would the efficiency of the steam engine be?

Answer: Since there is no temperature difference between the outside environment (the room) and the environment inside (the steam engine) the efficiency would be zero; the engine could perform no work. $e = \left(1 - \frac{T_L}{T_H}\right) \times 100 = \left(1 - \frac{T_H}{T_H}\right) \times 100 = (1-1) \times 100 = 0.$

2. What is the theoretical (ideal) efficiency of a heat engine with $T_L = 20^\circ\text{C}$ and $T_H = 125^\circ\text{C}$?

Answer: The temperature must be expressed in Kelvin so

$T_L = 20 + 273 = 293^\circ\text{K}$ and $T_H = 125 + 273 = 398^\circ\text{K}$

$e = \left(1 - \frac{T_L}{T_H}\right) \times 100 = \left(1 - \frac{293}{398}\right) \times 100 = 26.38 \rightarrow 26.4\%$

3. What is the ideal efficiency of a heat engine if the maximum increase in temperature achievable for the heat engine is 75% of its low temperature?

Answer: If T_L is the low temperature of the heat engine then high temperature is

$$T_H = T_L + 0.75T_L = 1.75T_L$$
$$e = \left(1 - \frac{T_L}{1.75T_L}\right) \times 100 = \left(1 - \frac{1}{1.75}\right) \times 100 = 42.9\%$$

Entropy and the Second Law of Thermodynamics

Building on the work of Sadi Carnot, the German physicist Rudolf Clausius (1822-1888), formulated the second law of thermodynamics in 1865 by introducing the concept of **entropy**.

Consider an isolated system composed of a box containing a hot object and a cold object separated by a layer of air. As heat flows from the hot object to cold object, a pinwheel placed between them will turn (work is done on the pinwheel) due to the movement of the warm air. Eventually, the hot and cold objects will reach the same temperature. The heat will stop flowing and the pinwheel will no longer turn. Work will no longer be possible, yet the energy of system has not changed. How can it be that the same energy is available but work can no longer be performed? It is not the energy that matters here; it is the *difference* in energy levels.

In general, when there is a difference in energy levels there is a difference in the how "ordered" the system is. The order of a system is a measure of *entropy* of the system. *The most general statement of the second law is: For all natural processes the total entropy of a system increases*. It may be that certain *parts* of the system may become more ordered, but this order will be more than offset by an increase in disorder in other parts of the system.

The sun supplies the necessary energy for flowers to grow, thus sustaining a very ordered biological system. But the disorder the sun suffers in releasing enormous amounts of energy will eventually cause its demise (don't worry, we still have at least a billion of years left... as far as the sun is concerned). The result is an increase in entropy (disorder) for the flower-sun system.

Generally, a solid is a more ordered system than a liquid, and a liquid more ordered than a gas because of the arrangement of the atoms in these states of matter. A solid has a very rigid (orderly) arrangement of particles, a liquid not quite as rigid (less orderly) and a gas the least orderly arrangement since there is almost no binding of the particles to each other. Yet we can still speak of a gas with increasing disorder. For example, a hot gas dispersing into the space around it goes from a more concentrated orderly arrangement to a more disorganized less concentrated arrangement.

But entropy need not be restricted to the physical arrangement of real particles. The amount of entropy in a system

(or more properly, the change in entropy) is also a matter of *probability* which we discuss below. Entropy can be expressed also as the *information* a system has (or loses). The link between entropy and "information theory" is quite complicated and beyond the scope of this book.

Entropy as Probability

There is a statistical explanation of entropy which says that the most disorder state is the most probable one. Suppose you flip two coins at once. Let's list the possible outcomes.

We'll use $T = tails$ and $H = heads$

One possibility for two tails: TT

One possibility for two heads: HH

Two possibilities for one head and one tail: TH or HT

There are a total of four possible outcomes with a 25% chance of getting two tails and a 25% chance of getting two heads. But there is a 50% chance of getting one head and one tail.

The more organized states (those above with a 25% probability) have a lower probability of occurring.

The most probable outcomes in the natural world are those with the greatest disorder. A tea cup falling and shattering is a disordered state and much more likely to occur than is a shattered tea cup reconstructing itself into a more ordered state. Similarly, stars (highly organized objects) transfer energy to the near-absolute-zero vacuum of interstellar space until all that remains are burned out cinders and a slightly warmer interstellar vacuum. One cosmological possibility is that the highest probable state of universe is the so-called "heat death" of the universe: A universe with one low (uniform) temperature.

1. The ideal gas law states $PV = nRT$ where P is pressure, V is volume, n is the number of moles of substance, R is the universal gas constant and T is temperature.

2. Thermodynamics is the study of processes in which energy is transferred by heat and work.

3. In an isothermal process, temperature is constant

4. In an isochoric process, volume is constant

5. In an isobaric process, pressure is constant

6. In an adiabatic process, no heat flows into or out of the system

7. The first law of thermodynamics: The change in the internal energy of a closed system is equal to the heat into (or out of) a system plus the work done on the system (or by the system).

$\Delta U = Q + W, \Delta U$ is the change in internal energy of the system, Q is the heat, and W the work.

8. The second law of thermodynamics describes the direction in which physical phenomena can occur.

Statements describing the second law:

a. Heat can flow spontaneously from hot to cold but never from cold to hot.

b. No heat machine is 100% efficient.

The most general statement of the second law:

For all natural processes, the total entropy of a system increases.

9. The efficiency of an actual heat engine can be expressed as

$$e = \left(1 - \frac{Q_L}{Q_H}\right) \times 100$$

The high temperature thermal energy is Q_H and the low temperature thermal energy is Q_L.

10. The efficiency of a Carnot engine can be expressed as

$e = \left(1 - \frac{T_L}{T_H}\right) \times 100$

The high operating temperature of the Carnot engine is T_H and the low operating temperature of the Carnot engine T_L.

14.4 References

1. C. Sentier. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Avogadro_Amedeo.jpg . Public Domain
2. Courtesy of the US Mint. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Morgan_silver_dollar.jpg . Public Domain
3. Johann Kerseboom. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Robert_Boyle_0001.jpg .
4. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
5. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Jacques_Alexandre_C%C3%A9sar_Charles.jpg .
6. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
7. François-Séraphin Delpech. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gaylussac_2.jpg .
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 15 Electrostatics

Chapter Outline

Most people have experienced some form of static electricity, but it is difficult to connect this to electricity that we use every day in the modern world. In this chapter, we will study how electrical charges are split and transfered, the force that electrical charges exert on each other, and how that force can be expressed as an electric field.

15.1 Static Electricity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how an imbalance of electric charge is produced.
- Understand that there are two different kinds of electric charge.
- Understand that electric charge is conserved.
- Understand that electric charges hold atoms together.
- Understand the difference between conductors and insulators.

Vocabulary

- **conductors**: Any material that permits electrons to readily move.
- **electric charge**
- **electron:** A particle that carries negative charge and resides in the center of an atom. Electrons attract protons and are in motion around the nucleus.
- **ion:** An atom that has gained or lost an electron. Ions do not have an equal number of positive and negative charges.
- **insulators:** Materials that do not conduct electric current, also known as non-conductors.
- **negative charge**
- **neutron**: A neutral particle that has no electric charge. Neutrons reside in the center of an atom.
- **positive charge**
- **proton:** A particle that carries positive charge and resides in the center of an atom. Protons attract electrons.
- **static electricity**: An imbalance of one kind (positive or negative) of charge. It can be caused by friction between two materials or placing objecs in contact.

Introduction

People have always experienced the effects that electrical charges produce, especially in dry climates and cold weather. Some examples of this include:

- Rub your hand against animal fur (ex. pet a cat) in dry weather, as in **Figure** 15.1. Your cat may get an unwelcome electric shock!
- Use a plastic comb on your hair in a dark room and you may see electric sparks.
- Rub an inflated balloon against your shirt and then place it against a wall in your home. The balloon will "stick" to the wall.
- Plastic shrink wrap from the casing of a CD or DVD sticks to your hands after you open it.
- In cold or dry weather, you may get a painful shock when you reach for a doorknob after walking on a carpet.

FIGURE 15.1
Warning: On dry days your cat may take issue with being petted.

The intrinsic property of objects that helps describe all these and many other phenomena is known as **electric charge**. Electric charge is a fundamental property of matter, because every atom is composed of both **positive charge** and **negative charge**. If enough positive and negative charges attract one another, an electric discharge may occur. In an electric discharge, negative charge moves rapidly to an area of excessive positive charge and the separate charge distributions neutralize. We will describe below how the properties of electric charges.

Static Electricity

An imbalance of one kind of charge is called **static electricity**, and it can be caused by friction between two materials or simply placing two objects in contact. If enough static electricity builds up, then it can discharge, resulting in a shock or spark as the electric charge jumps to another object.

The American statesman and scientist Benjamin Franklin (1706-1790) assigned the terms *positive* and *negative* to the two different kinds of electrical charges. We will describe a demonstration below which aids in substantiating the Law of Charges, which states that opposite charges attract, but like charges repel.

Franklin correctly believed that during an electrostatic interaction between two objects, an apparent increase of one form of charge (say, positive charge) on one of the objects meant there must be an apparent increase of the other form of charge (negative charge) on the other object. The number of both positive and negative charges remained the same, but their distribution was altered. Today, we call this principle the law of **conservation of electric charge** and state it as:

The total charge remains constant in a closed system.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/VanDeGraaffGenerator/

For example, when the cat in **Figure** 15.1 is petted, it is now known that the negative charge from the cat's fur is transferred to your hand (a brush even works better at accumulating negative charge). Because of a "loss" of negative charge, the cat has become positively charged. No new charge has been created. The work done in petting the cat has redistributed the negative charges.

It will be explained below that it is the negative charge that moves when an electric shock is experienced. If enough negative charge accumulates on your hand (the best chance of this is on a dry day), the electrostatic attraction between the negative charge on your hand and positive charge on the cat will result in a discharge of the negative charges. The cat (and your hand) experience an electrical shock.

A Simple Model of the Atom

During the 20th century, it was discovered that atoms are composed of three types of particles: the **electron**, the **proton**, and the **neutron**. The electron and proton are oppositely charged particles without which atoms could not be held together; the electrons and the protons attract each other. The neutron has no electric charge (it is neutral). Protons and neutrons reside at the center of an atom (in the nucleus) and the electrons, in the simplest atomic model, travel around the nucleus like planets around a star. We know today that this model is vastly oversimplified.

The charges of the electron and the proton are of exactly equal magnitude but of opposite polarity (sign).

The smallest unit of electric charge (an elementary charge), found on an electron and a proton, has a magnitude of $1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ C$.

The symbol C represents the fundamental unit of electric charge, coulomb, which we will discuss later.

By convention, we say that electrons carry negative charge and protons carry positive charge. An atom is always neutral, having the same number of protons in the nucleus as electrons in orbit about the nucleus. Though the magnitudes of their charges are equal, their masses are quite different. The proton has about eighteen hundred times more mass then the electron.

The atoms of solids remain in relatively fixed positions due to the electrostatic bonds between their atoms. Electrons, as we have stated, are in motion about the nucleus of an atom. Some of the farther (outer) electrons in an atom are held very weakly by the electrical attraction from the nucleus. Friction (or merely contact if the other substance strongly attracts electrons) provides enough energy to completely free some of the electrons from their atoms. These electrons are then able to transfer from one object to another.

When an atom loses or gains electrons we call the atom an **ion**. Ions do not have an equal number of positive and negative charges.

Conductors

The fact that electrons can easily move gives rise to what is known as an electric current, or a flow of electrons. We will further discuss electric current later.

Some materials allow electrons to move more easily than others. In metals, for example, **Figure** 15.2, electrons can move very easily. The metals are considered to be the best **conductors** of electric current. Any material that permits electrons to readily move is called a conductor. You may be familiar with the fact that current is "conducted" by wires. The wires of electrical devices such as lamps, computers, and TV sets conduct electrons. We will discuss the flow (current) of electricity later.

Check Your Understanding

How do free electrons distribute themselves on a conducting sphere?

FIGURE 15.2
Common items that conduct electric current: aluminum foil, paper clips, coins,and nails.

Answer: Since like charges repel each other, they distribute themselves in a symmetrical fashion as far from each other as possible on the surface.

Insulators

Materials that do not conduct electric current are called non-conductors, or **insulators**. Glass, wood, plastic, and rubber are examples of insulators, as shown in **Figure** 15.3. Insulators are very important in protecting us from the dangers of electricity, since they do not permit a current to pass through our bodies.

FIGURE 15.3
Common insulators; a glass rod, red plastic insulation on a hand tool and a piece of wood. Why do you think the hand tool has insulating handles?

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pyfM_fKSICE

Check Your Understanding

If similar charges are placed on a spherical insulator, will they move as far from each other as possible?

Answer: They won't move at all. They will remain wherever they are since they cannot move freely on an insulator.

Now that we know a bit about the structure of the atom and about conductors and insulators, we can describe

some simple demonstrations involving objects that have contain an unbalanced amount of charge, called "a charged object."

Charging by Friction: Demonstrating that Like Charges Repel

We have already explained that an imbalance of charge can be achieved by rubbing one material against another. In any such exchange, both objects are oppositely charged. One object will gain negative charge and the other object will "gain" positive charge (by losing the negative charge the other received).

Try this experiment:

Inflate two balloons and tie each one with strings measuring about 50-cm long. Give one balloon to a friend and keep one for yourself. Have your friend rub her balloon with her hair while you do the same with yours. Whatever charge the balloons now have will be of the same kind.

Holding the balloons by the strings, slowly bring them together until they are a few centimeters apart. You should see the balloons move away from each other. The balloons now both carry an excess of the same type of charge and repel each other, which helps confirm to us that like charges repel.

(Note: If the air has too much moisture, our efforts may not succeed. The charges will be attracted by the water molecules in the air and "leak off" the balloons. Electrostatic experiments work best when the air is dry, not humid.)

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RepulsionOfChargedPithBalls/

Charging by Conduction

Charging by conduction is the same as charging by contact. For example, if a neutral (uncharged) metal object, say a coin, is brought into contact with a coin that is positively charged, electrons will move from the uncharged coin to the charged coin, see **Figure** 15.4 and **Figure** 15.5.

FIGURE 15.4
A charged and neutral coin.

The positively charged coin in **Figure** 15.4 lacks electrons. The neutral coin in **Figure** 15.4 has weakly held electrons that move to the charged coin upon contact, **Figure** 15.5. Using this very simplified example (typically there would be many trillions of electrons), four electrons from the neutral coin move to the charged coin. The coin on the left has a final charge of $(+8)+(-4)=+4$ elementary charges $\rightarrow 4(1.6\times10^{-19}\ C)$.

The coin on the right has lost four electrons and now has a net positive charge $0-(-4)=+4$. After contact, both coins have the same charge. Do you think both coins would have the same charge if they were not identical?

FIGURE 15.5
Conduction charges neutral coin.

A reasonable question at this point would be: How do we know both coins are charged? For that matter, how could we have known the first coin was charged?

The Electroscope and Charging by Induction

The electroscope is a device that can detect the presence of excess charge on an object through a process known as induction. The first gold-leaf electroscope was constructed in 1787 by Abraham Bennet (1749-1799), **Figure** 15.6. He used the gold leaf for several reasons. Gold is an excellent conductor, gold leaf can be made very thin and light-weight, and gold is very malleable.

FIGURE 15.6
Abraham Bennet, inventor of the electroscope.

Consider the coin in **Figure** 15.7. In order to ensure that the coin retains its charge (assuming we were able to apply the charge in the first place) we suspend it by an insulating thread, **Figure** 15.7.

An electroscope, **Figure** 15.8, is typically contained within glass. A metal rod or disk (see figure) protrudes through the top of the glass. Attached to the metal disk (in this case) within the glass is a very thin, light-weight folded foil–the "leaves" of the electroscope.

When a charged object is brought close to the top of the disk, the electrons in the rod and the leaves of the electroscope will either move toward the charged object or away from the object. If the object is positively charged as in the case of the coin in **Figure** 15.8, the electrons are attracted toward the coin. This produces a surplus of positive charges on the two leaves. Since both leaves have the same charge, they repel each other. We can be certain

FIGURE 15.7

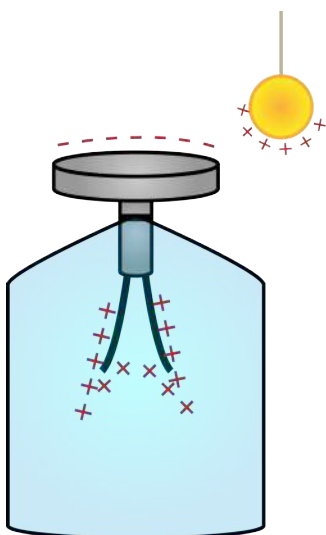



FIGURE 15.8
An electroscope.

now that the coin is charged.

If the object is negatively charged, the electrons are repelled and move away from the object. The two leaves now are negatively charged and still repel each other. Notice that the two leaves have the same charge as the object which caused the induction. The net charge in the rod and the leaves has not changed. What did change was the distribution of charges. Electrostatic induction is a process in which the charges of opposite sign (polarity) are separated without direct contact. We define electrostatic induction more completely below.

Electrostatic induction is an electrostatic redistribution of charges caused by the introduction of a charged object. No contact is made in the process of electrostatic induction.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tnBjZ66ualU

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2PmWlPjV6n0

Two Ways to Charge Using Induction

If the charged object is withdrawn from the electroscope, the charges will no longer remain separated. The electrons will move back into the leaves and the leaves will collapse. No permanent charging of the electroscope will have occurred. What if we did wish to charge the electroscope?

Method 1: Charging by Induction and Conduction

Allow the coin to touch the metal plate in **Figure** 15.8. Electrons on the plate would then transfer to the coin. The electroscope would be left with a deficiency of negative charge, and the leaves of the electroscope would remain positively charged and separated even after the coin was withdrawn.

Method 2: Charging by Induction through Grounding

In order to properly describe the second method, we must first explain what is meant by electrically grounding an object.

The Earth can act as a huge reservoir for charge. It can readily accept a flow of electrons or it can deliver a flow of electrons. An object that is grounded is connected to the earth by a conductor. A pathway is established which allows electrons to flow freely between the object and the Earth. The symbol for electrical grounding is shown in **Figure** 15.10.

In **Figure** 15.9, Disk A is negatively charged and Disk B is neutral. When Disk A is brought close to Disk B (without touching it), the negative charges on Disk B move as far away as possible from the negative charges on Disk A. If a conducting wire is attached to Disk B and to the Earth as shown in **Figure** 15.10, the negative charge on Disk B will move to the "ground." Removing the conducting wire between Disk B and the Earth, **Figure** 15.11, while Disk A remains in place, ensures a permanent loss of negative charge from Disk B. Disk B is now positively charged.

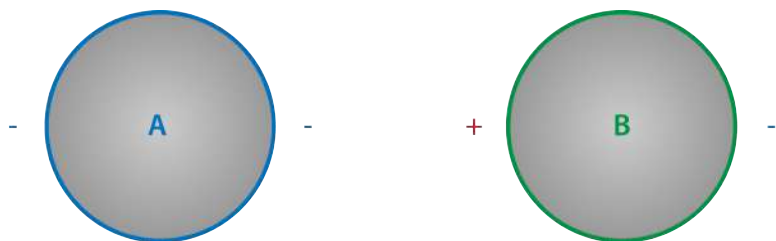



FIGURE 15.9
Disk A (blue) on the left and Disk B (green) on the right.

Permanently charging with induction by grounding:

Check Your Understanding

1a. The leaves of the electroscope are negatively charged. How would the leaves behave if a negatively charged object is brought close to the top of the electroscope?

Answer: The leaves would separate more, since additional negative charges would be repelled into the leaves, increasing the repulsion.

1b. The leaves of the electroscope are negatively charged. How would the leaves behave if a positively charged object is brought close to the electroscope?

Answer: The leaves would move closer together since the negative charges on the leaves would be attracted to the positively charged object, leaving the leaves less negative.

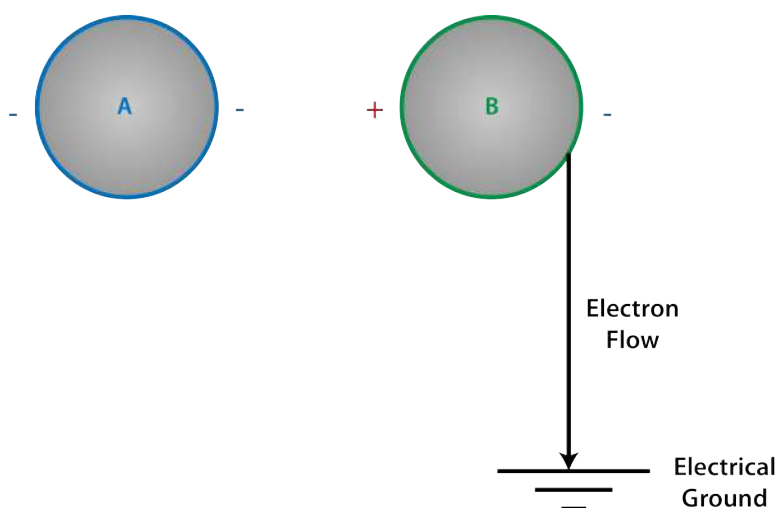



FIGURE 15.10
Grounding Disk B.

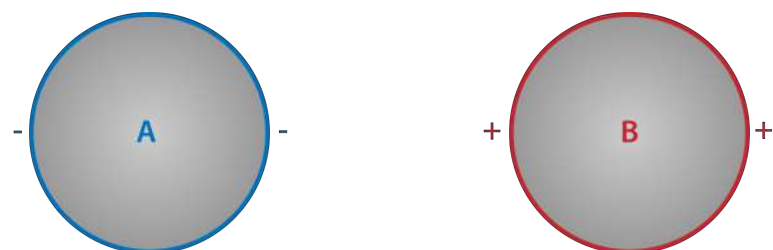



FIGURE 15.11
Removal of grounding wire ensures Disk B is positively charged.

2. Why is it that only the negative charges move?

Answer: Positively charged ions may also move (in gases or liquids, for example) but not in solid objects. When we speak of a positively charged object, the object has lost electrons and has become positively charged. It has not experienced an actual transfer of positive ions.

There is a fourth state of matter called plasma, which is a highly ionized gas typically formed at high temperatures and consisting of freely moving ions and electrons. The sun's "solar wind" is an example of plasma which interacts with the earth's atmosphere. The plasma from the sun is responsible for ionizing the upper atmosphere of the earth, contributing to the plasma found in the earth's radiation belts.

Charge on Metallic Conductors

It has been shown experimentally that any excess electrons on a metal conductor will migrate to the outside surface of the conductor. For example, if electrons are deposited inside an open tin can, the electrons will migrate to the outside of the can. No free electrons will remain inside the can.

This is very useful information. It means we would be safe from an electrical discharge (such as lightning) inside of a "metal cage" since all the charge is conducted to the outside of the metal cage. So, stay inside your car during a lightning storm! Electronic components are protected also from electrical discharges by enclosing them inside metal containers.

15.2 Coulomb's Law

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand Coulomb's law
- Understand how to solve problems using Coulomb's law

Vocabulary

- **Coulomb's constant:** A constant of proporitonality equal to $k = 8.99 \times 10^9 \ \frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{C}^2}$.
- **Coulomb's law:** The force between two charges is directly proportional to the product of the charges and inversely proportional to the square of the distnace between the two charges.

Introduction

We know that opposite electric charges attract each other, and like electric charges repel each other. The question is, what is the amount of that force? Recall that Newton's universal law of gravity described how masses attract and how to calculate the force of attraction, $F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}$.

In 1785, fifty-eight years after the death of Isaac Newton, the French naval engineer and physicist Charles Augustin de Coulomb (1736-1806), **Figure** 15.12, published a work stating the force between two charged particles was based on a similar law.

> **Coulomb's law**: The force between two charges is directly proportional to the product of the charges and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between the two charges.

The amount of charge is measured in a new unit, called the coulomb after the physicist himself. It is abbreviated C (capitalized because it is based on his name). Using units of coulombs, the force of the charge is expressed as

$$F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2}$$

,

where q_1 and q_2 are two charges measured in units of coulombs, $k = 8.99 \times 10^9 \ \frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{C}^2}$is a constant of proportionality called **Coulomb's constant,** and $r$is the distance between the two charges.

The coulomb is a fairly big charge. Only a small fraction of a coulomb will be in most static electricity, like a balloon sticking to a wall. A high power light bulb will pull around 1 coulomb of charge per second. Like other metric units, coulombs are also measured in smaller units, like the millicoulomb $\text{mC} = 10^{-3}$ C, or the microcoulomb ¯C $= 10^{-6}$ C.

FIGURE 15.12
Augustin de Coulomb

The smallest unit of electric charge is the charge on electrons and protons. The charge of an electron is approximately $q_{e^-} = -1.60 \times 10^{-19}$ C and the charge on a proton has the same magnitude, but is positive.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=b49DF-qN4n8

Illustrative Example 1

a. What is the magnitude and direction of the electrostatic force between two electrons separated by a distance of 1.00 centimeters?

Answer: For Coulomb's law, r must be in meters $1.00 \text{ cm} = 0.0100 \text{ m} = 1.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}$

Since we're dealing with like charges, we know the force is repulsive. We will, therefore, ignore the sign of the charges.

$$\begin{aligned} F &= k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2} \\ &= \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{\text{N} \cdot \text{m}^2}{\text{C}^2}\right) \frac{(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C})(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C})}{(1.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})^2} \\ &= 2.30 \times 10^{-24} \text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

The forces are of equal magnitude and directed away from each other. Since like charges repel, see **Figure** 15.13.

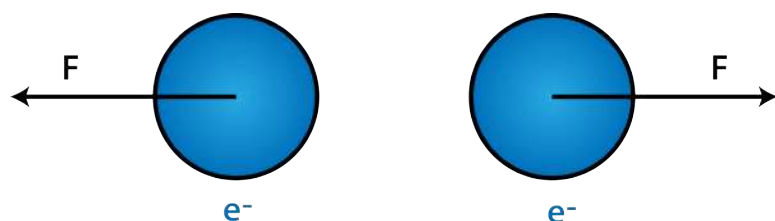



FIGURE 15.13

b. The mass of an electron is $m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$ kg. What is the magnitude of the gravitational force between the two electrons?

Answer:

$$
\begin{aligned}
F &= G\frac{m_e m_e}{r^2} \\
&= \left(6.67\times10^{-11}\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}\right)\frac{(9.11\times10^{-31}\text{ kg})^2}{(1.00\times10^{-2}\text{ m})^2} \\
&= 5.54\times10^{-67}\text{ N}
\end{aligned}
$$

c. What is the ratio of the electrostatic force to the gravitational force for the electron?

$$\frac{F_e}{F_g} = \frac{2.30\times10^{-24}\text{ N}}{5.54\times10^{-67}\text{ N}} = 4.15\times10^{42}$$

This is an enormous ratio! All things being equal, the electrical force is some 40 orders of magnitude greater than the gravitational force!

Illustrative Example 2

A $-5.0\ \mu C$ point charge is placed between a positive point charge of $+10.0\ \mu C$ and a negative point charge of $-6.0\ \mu C$, along a horizontal line, as shown in **Figure** 15.14. What is the net force on the $-5.0\ \mu C$ point charge?

The prefix μ stands for "micro" and represents one-millionth, therefore $\mu = 10^{-6}$.

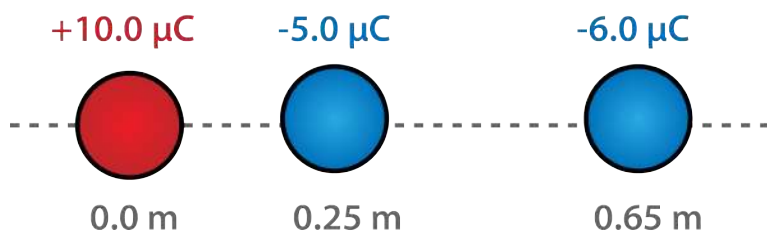
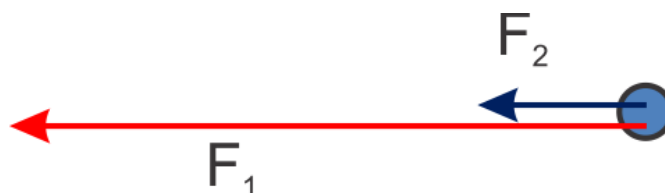



FIGURE 15.14

Answer:

Let us first draw a Free-Body-Diagram (FBD) for the $-5.0\ \mu C$ charge.

Here, F_1 represents the force of the $+10.0\ \mu C$ point charge on the $-5.0\ \mu C$ point charge. It is an attractive force toward the left. F_2 represents the force of the $-6.0\ \mu C$ point charge on the $-5.0\ \mu C$ point charge. It is a repulsive force toward the left. The net force acting on the $-5.0\ \mu C$ charge is the vector sum of the two forces. It is best not to include the sign of the charges in the calculation, since the resulting sign indicates only whether the force is

attractive or repulsive. The FBD can be used to determine whether the magnitudes of the forces must be added or subtracted, as well as the direction of the net force.

$F_1 = k\frac{(q_{+10})(q_{-5})}{{r_1}^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{N*m^2}{C^2}\right) \frac{(10.0\times10^{-6}\ C)(5.0\times10^{-6}\ C)}{(0.25\ m)^2} = 7.19 \rightarrow 7.2\ N$

The distance between the $-5.0\ \mu C$ charge and the $-6.0\ \mu C$ charge is $0.65\ m - .25\ m = 0.40\ m$.

$F_2 = k\frac{(q_{-6})(q_{-5})}{{r_2}^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{N*m^2}{C^2}\right) \frac{(6.0\times10^{-6}\ C)(5.0\times10^{-6}\ C)}{(0.40\ m)^2} = +1.69 \rightarrow +1.7\ N$

The net force on the $-5.0\ \mu C$ charge is therefore $F_1 + F_2 = +7.2\ N + 1.7\ N = 8.9\ N$, directed toward the left.

Illustrative Example 3

Three charges form a right triangle as shown in **Figure** 15.15. Determine the net force acting on the 20 μC point charge.

Answer:

The forces acting on the 20 μC point charge are displayed in **Figure** 15.15. Since the forces are not collinear, it is necessary to use vector resolution.

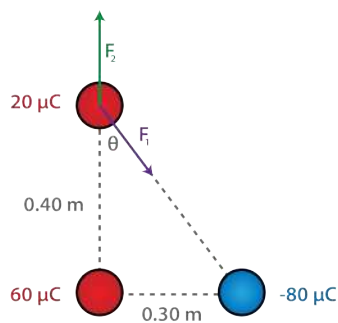
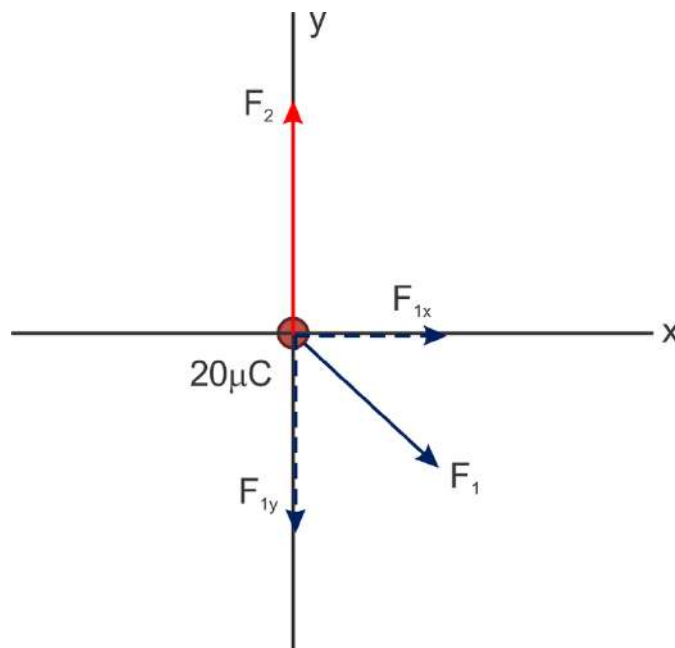



FIGURE 15.15

The distance between the $-80\ \mu C$ point charge and the 20 μC point charge can be found using the Pythagorean Theorem $\sqrt{(0.30\ m)^2 + (0.40\ m)^2} = 0.50\ m$.

The FBD below show the forces on the 20 μC point charge along with the vector resolution of force F_1.

The force F_1 is an attractive force placed on the 20 μC point charge by the -80 μC point charge.

$F_1 = k\frac{q_{20}q_{80}}{r_1{}^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{N*m^2}{C^2}\right) \frac{(20\times10^{-6}\ C)(80\times10^{-6}\ C)}{(0.50\ m)^2} = 57.5 \to 58\ N$

The force F_2 is a repulsive force placed on the 20 μC by the 60 μC point charge.

$F_2 = k\frac{q_{20}q_{60}}{r_2{}^2} = \left(8.99 \times 10^9 \frac{N*m^2}{C^2}\right) \frac{(20\times10^{-6}\ C)(60\times10^{-6}\ C)}{(0.40\ m)^2} = 67.4 \to 67\ N$

The angle θ must be determined in order to find the components of the force F_1.

Using the tangent function we have $\tan\theta = \frac{0.30\ m}{0.40\ m} \to \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{0.30\ m}{0.40\ m} = 36.9^\circ \to 37^\circ$.

The components of F_1:

$F_{1x} = F_1 \sin\theta = 67.4 \sin 37.9^\circ = 41.4 \to 41\ N$

$F_{1y} = F_1 \cos\theta = 67.4 \cos 37.9^\circ = 53.2 \to 53\ N$

The net force on the 20 μC point charge in the $x-$direction is $\sum F_x = F_{1x} = 41\ N$.

The net force on the 20 μC point charge in the $y-$direction is $\sum F_y = F_2 - F_{1y} = 67\ N - 53\ N = 14\ N$.

The net force on the 20 μC point charge is the Pythagorean sum of the components $\sqrt{41^2 + 14^2} = 43.3 \to 43\ N$

The direction of the force is $\tan\theta = \frac{\sum F_y}{\sum F_x} = \frac{14\ N}{41\ N} \to \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{14}{41} = 18.9^\circ \to 19^\circ$.

The final result can be written as $< 43\ N, 19^\circ >$. Does the graphical sum of the vectors F_1 *and* F_2 in the FBD above agree with the mathematical result? (The vectors are not quite to scale!)

15.3 Electrostatic Fields

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand what a field is.
- Understand how to solve electrostatic field problems.

Vocabulary

- **electric field:** The field that surrounds a charged particle.
- **electric field line:** A simple way of representing an electric field, also known as electric lines of force.
- **test charge:** Used to measure an electric field. The electric field is defined as the ratio of the force acting on the positive test charge, at some point in space, to the magnitude of the test charge.

Introduction

Even though Isaac Newton felt confident about the universal law of gravity, he wondered just how the Earth reached across the "empty" space and exerted a force upon the Moon. It was one thing to speak of contact forces. Hitting a baseball, kicking a can– these forces made intuitive sense. But gravity was a force that acted through a distance like some invisible hand extending over a limitless space. The same is true of the electrical force. Both equations suggest that there is no end to the reach of this "invisible hand." (The denominators of the equations show that regardless of the distance between two objects, a force remains present.)

It wasn't until the 19th century that Michael Faraday (1791-1867), **Figure** 15.16, proposed the field concept, which stated that the space between two electrical charges (or two masses) was permeated by a field. This field communicated each object's presence. The field distorted the space around each object such that the forces experienced by the objects obeyed an inverse square law. Faraday conducted experiments to measure the intensity of the field surrounding charged objects, thus supporting the field concept.

The Electric Field

The field that surrounds a charged particle is called an **electric field**.

The electric field is measured by observing the force on a small positive " **test charge**" placed within the field. (The test charge has to be small so it would have no effect upon the charges which have created the field we wish to measure.) The electric field is then defined as the ratio of the force acting on the positive test charge, at some point in space, to the magnitude of the test charge.

FIGURE 15.16
Michael Faraday.

That is, $\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q}$.

The electric field is a vector quantity (also called a vector field) since force is a vector quantity and charge is a scalar quantity. We will not always use the vector notation throughout our discussion.

It is helpful to express the analogous quantity for the gravitational case as $\vec{g} = \frac{\vec{F}}{m}$. A small test mass m placed two Earth radii from the center of the earth experiences a gravitational field only one-fourth as strong as the field at the Earth's surface.

Check Your Understanding

1. Coulomb's law gives the force between two point charges. Use Coulomb's law to find the equation for the electric field due to a point charge.

Answer: $E = \frac{F}{q'} = \frac{k\frac{qq'}{r^2}}{q'} = k\frac{q}{r^2} \rightarrow E = k\frac{q}{r^2}$

2. What are the units of E?

Answer: Since $E = \frac{F}{q'}$ the units of E can be expressed as $\frac{N}{C}$.

Electric Field Lines

The force that a small positive test charge experiences at various positions in an electric field can be represented by the common vector representation of an arrow indicating the instantaneous magnitude and direction of the electric force. The magnitude is shown by the length of the arrow. The electric field which produces the force could be represented as a series of arrows in space proportional in length to the force vectors $(E \propto F)$. This would be rather tedious. A simpler way of representing the electric field is with electric lines of force, or **electric field lines.**

Electric Field Lines for Isolated Positive and Negative Charges

The force experienced by a test charge in the presence of a positive charge is directed away from the positive charge, since like charges repel. The electric field lines would therefore be drawn pointing away from the positive charge. Similarly, the force experienced by the test charge in the presence of a negative charge is directed toward the negative charge, since unlike charges attract. The electric field lines would therefore be drawn pointing away from

the negative charge.

The electric field lines for an isolated positive charge and an isolated negative charge are shown in **Figure** 15.17. Notice that the field lines for both charges radiate out in straight lines. The positive charge has field lines that point away from the positive charge. The negative charge has field lines that point toward the negative charge.

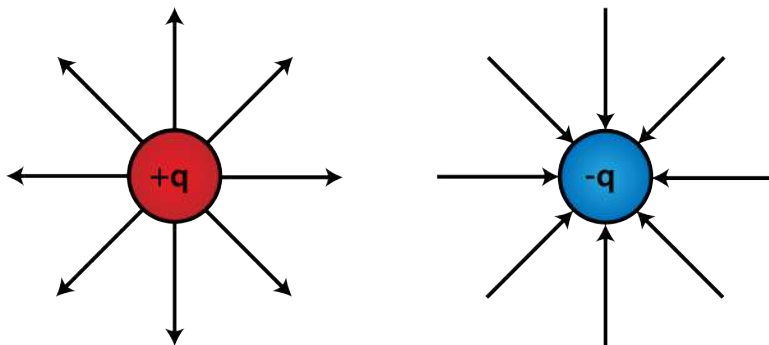



FIGURE 15.17
(left) The field lines for a positive charge. (right) The field lines for a negative charge.

Rules for Drawing Field Lines when More Than One Charge is Present

1. Field lines always start on a positive charge and end on a negative charge.
2. Field lines never cross.
3. The more field lines passing through a perpendicular area, the greater the magnitude of the electric field.
4. Field lines are always drawn in proportion to the magnitude of the charge. For example, if there is three times as much positive charge as negative charge, then three times as many field lines are drawn from the positive charge.
5. Any line drawn tangent to a field line indicates the direction of the field at that point.

Field lines are also referred to as lines of force, because they indicate the direction of the force on a positive charge q. The electric field $\vec{E} = \frac{F}{q}$ can be rewritten in the form $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$. The charge q in this case is not restricted to a positive point charge.

Check Your Understanding

1. What is the magnitude and direction of the electric field at a point 0.75m from a positive charge of $+25\ \mu C$?

Answer: The magnitude of the electric field is $E = k\frac{q}{r^2} = (8.99 \times 10^9)\frac{25\times10^{-6}\ C}{(0.75\ m)^2} = 399,556 \to 4.0 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{C}$

The electric field is directed radially outward.

The field pattern for a pair of opposite charges of equal magnitude (known as "electric dipole") is shown in **Figure** 15.18.

2. What is the direction of the force on a positive test charge in the electric field of **Figure** 15.18?

Answer: A positive test charge would be repelled by the positive charge in **Figure** 15.18. The electric field lines point in the same direction as the electric force.

3. What is the direction of the force on a positive test charge in the electric field of **Figure** 15.18?

Answer: A positive test charge would be attracted by the negative charge in **Figure** 15.18. The electric field lines point in the same direction as the electric force.

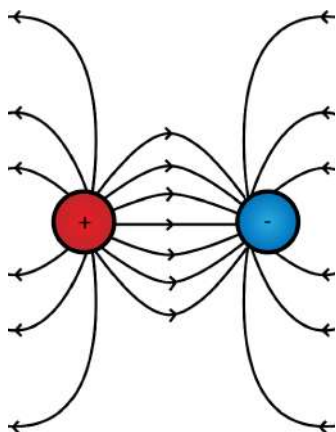



FIGURE 15.18

4. A 90.0 μC charge is placed in an electric field at a point where the magnitude of the electric field is equal to $5.20 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{C}$. What is the magnitude of the electrostatic force acting on the charge?

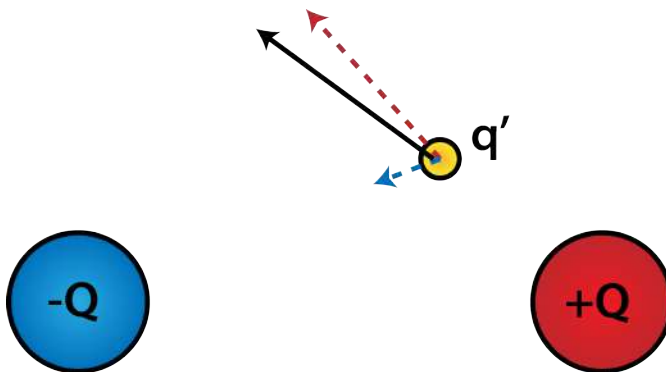
Answer: We Use the equation $F = qE = (90.0 \times 10^{-6}\ C)\left(5.20 \times 10^5 \frac{N}{C}\right) = 46.8\ N$

Illustrative Example 15.3.1

A positive test charge q' is placed in the field of the positive charge $+Q$ and negative charge $-Q$ as seen in **Figure** 15.19. Draw the forces acting on q'.

FIGURE 15.19

Answer:

The charge $-Q$ attracts q' with a smaller force than $+Q$ repels it, since it is farther from the test charge q' than the positive charge $+Q$. The forces that $-Q$ and $+Q$ place upon q' are shown dashed. The net force, drawn solid, is shown as the vector sum of the two dashed vectors. The curved line represents one of the lines of force between the positive and negative charges.

1. Electric charge is a conserved quantity that comes in two kinds: positive and negative.
2. Conductors are materials in which electrons can move freely, while insulators are materials in which electrons cannot move freely.
3. Coulomb's law states that the force between two charges is directly proportional to the product of the charges and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between the charge $F = k\frac{q_1 q_2}{r^2}$, where k is a constant of proportionality known as Coulomb's constant.
4. The electric field $\vec{E}$, at a point in space, is the quotient $\vec{E} = \frac{\vec{F}}{q}$, where q is a small positive test charge and $\vec{F}$ is the force experienced by that small positive test charge at the point in space where E is measured.
5. The magnitude of the electric field E due to a point charge q at a distance r from q is $E = k\frac{q}{r^2}$, where k is a constant of proportionality known as Coulomb's constant.
6. The electric field between two parallel-plate conductors is considered uniform far away from the plate edges if the size of the plates is large compared to their separation distance.
7. The potential energy of a charge q at a point between two parallel-plate conductors is $PE = qEx$, a reference point must be given such as $PE = 0$ at $x = 0$.
8. A point charge q has electric potential energy PE_x and electric potential V_x at point x. Thus, $PE_x = qV_x$
9. The word voltage is used when we mean potential difference.
10. It is common to write $V = Ed$, where V is understood to mean the voltage (or potential difference) between the plates of a parallel-plate conductor and d is the distance between the plates.
11. The work done by the electric field in moving a charge between two parallel plate conductors is $W_{field} = -q\Delta V$. The work done by an external force is $W_{external\ force} = q\Delta V$.
12. Voltage can be thought of as the work per unit charge $V = \frac{W}{q}$; that is, how much work is required per unit charge to move a charged particle in an electric field.

15.4 References

1. Ken Bosma (Flickr: kretyen). http://www.flickr.com/photos/kretyen/2843109634/ . CC-BY 2.0
2. Jason Riedy. http://www.flickr.com/photos/jason-riedy/8370497059/ .
3. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
7. W.C. Walker. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Abraham_Bennet.JPG .
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
12. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
13. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Charles_de_coulomb.jpg . Public Domain
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. John Kim. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
18. John Kim. CK-12 Foundation .
19. Based on a painting by A. Blakely. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Faraday.png . Public Domain
20. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 16 Electric Potential

Chapter Outline

If there is a strong enough electric field, sparks form in the air where the electricity jumps from one object to another. In this chapter, we discuss electrical energy and electric potential.

16.1 Reviewing Gravitational Potential Energy

Objectives

The student will:

- Review gravitational potential energy.
- Understand gravitational potential.

Vocabulary

- **gravitational potential:** The potential energy per unit mass, represented by V_g.

Introduction

Earlier, we compared Newton's law of universal gravity with Coulomb's law. In this chapter, we will use gravitational potential energy to draw an analogy with electrical potential energy. Let us begin by reviewing gravitational potential energy.

A Review of Gravitational Potential Energy

If we remain close to the surface of the earth, the gravitational acceleration g is considered constant. The gravitational potential energy of an object then increases if we lift it higher. We have done work on the object and increased the potential energy of the object. The Earth, however, has done negative work on the object, because as the object is lifted, the force on the object due to gravity is opposite to the object's displacement, **Figure** 16.1. Conversely, if the object is dropped, its potential energy decreases, but the work done by gravity is positive, because the force on the object due to gravity is in the same direction as the object's displacement, **Figure** 16.2.

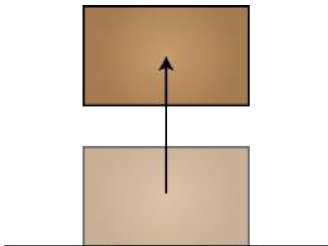



FIGURE 16.1
Object is lifted. The change in PE is positive but the work done by gravity is negative.

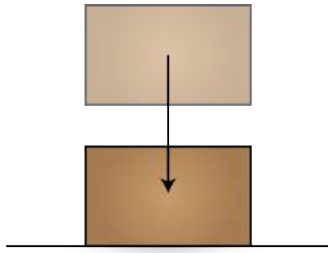



FIGURE 16.2
Object is dropped. The change in PE is negative but the work done by gravity is positive.

If the object has mass m, then the change in potential energy when it is lifted is $\Delta PE = mgh_f - mgh_i$. The change in potential energy is positive, but the work done by gravity is negative. We can therefore write $W = -\Delta PE$. The negative sign ensures that the work done by gravity is negative when the object is lifted. The equation is true regardless of whether the object is lifted or dropped. When the object is dropped, its change in potential energy is negative and the work done by gravity is positive (the gravitational force and the displacement are in the same direction when the object falls).

If the object is lifted at a constant velocity, the work W that an external force does on the object is $W = \Delta PE$ (no negative sign). The external force is in the same direction as the displacement of the object when lifting it, and opposite to the displacement when lowering it.

Check Your Understanding: Review

a. An object of mass 10.0 kg falls from a height of 8.00 m to a height of 3.00 m. What is the change in potential energy of the object?

Answer:

$\Delta PE = mgh_f - mgh_i = (10.0kg)\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)(3.00m - 8.00m) = -490.5 \rightarrow -4.91 \times 10^2\ J$

b. How much work has the gravitational force done on the object?

Answer: $W = -\Delta PE = -(-4.91 \times 10^2\ J) = 4.91 \times 10^2\ J$

c. Assuming the object was lifted at a constant velocity, how much work would be done on the object by the lifting force to move it from 3.00 m to 8.00 m?

Answer: $W = \Delta PE \rightarrow$

$\Delta PE = mgh_f - mgh_i = (10.0kg)\left(9.81\frac{m}{s^2}\right)(8.00m - 3.00m) = 490.5 \rightarrow 4.91 \times 10^2\ J$

Gravitational Potential

Though gravitational potential is not often discussed in introductory physics books, it may be helpful to define the concept as a comparison to the electric potential which we will discuss soon.

Let us rewrite the equation expressing the gravitational potential energy ($PE = mgh$), as $\frac{PE}{m} = gh$. We define the quantity gh as the **gravitational potential** (the potential energy per unit mass) and represent it with the symbol V_g.

Hence,

$V_g = gh$

Since potential energy and mass are scalar quantities, so is the gravitational potential V_g. If g is constant, as it is near the surface of the Earth, then the gravitational potential V_g is directly proportional to the position h of the mass.

Recall that only differences in potential are meaningful. Therefore we define the gravitational potential $V_g = 0$, when $h = 0$.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/PotentialEnergyOfObjectsFromDailyLife/

16.2 Electric Potential

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to solve problems using electric potential energy.
- Understand how to solve problems using voltage differences.
- Understand how to solve problems in a uniform electric field.

Vocabulary

- **electric potential:** Energy per unit charge.
- **electric potential difference:** The difference in electric potential between two points within an electric field.
- **voltage:** The amount of work done by the electric field per unit charge in moving a charge between two points in the electric field $\Delta V = \frac{W}{q}$, also known as a change in potential energy.

Introduction

In order to draw an analogy between **gravitational potential energy** and **electrical potential energy**, we liken the electric field E to the gravitational acceleration g and the mass m of a particle to the charge q of a particle. Of course, g is assumed constant (uniform) when we remain close to the surface of the Earth. As of yet, we have not encountered an example of a uniform electric field E.

But that won't stop us from making a prediction!

Since the gravitational potential energy of a mass m in a uniform gravitational field is $PE_{gravity} = (mg)h$, we predict the electric potential energy $(PE_{electric})$ of a charge (q) in a constant electric field is $PE_{electric} = (qE)h$.

Furthermore, the **electric potential** (the energy per unit charge) can be defined as $V_e = \frac{PE_{electric}}{q}$ (The subscript "e" will be dropped from now on.) We will discuss electric potential later.

It must be understood that, just as with gravity, the electric potential energy and the electric potential are measured at the same point. If a point charge q has electric potential energy PE_{x_1} at point x_1, the electric potential at x_1 is V_{x_1}

$$PE_{x_1} = qV_{x_1} \to V_{x_1} = \frac{PE_{x_1}}{q}$$

Again, only differences in electric potential and electric potential energy are meaningful. That is, ΔPE or $\Delta V \to V_f - V_i = \frac{PE_f}{q} - \frac{PE_i}{q}$.

The unit of electric potential is called the volt and from the definition above we see that the volt is equivalent to $\frac{Joules}{Coulomb} \rightarrow V = \frac{J}{C}$.

Electric Potential Difference

The **electric potential difference** is the difference in electric potential between two points within an electric field. For example, a 1.5-volt battery has a potential difference of 1.5 volts (written 1.5 V) between its positive and negative terminals.

Parallel Plate Conductors: A uniform Electric Field

The equation $E = k\frac{q}{r^2}$ for the electric field holds for point charges or for a charge distribution that effectively acts as a point charge. It turns out, however, that if opposite charges are placed on two parallel conducting plates, the electric field between the plates is more or less uniform as long as the distance between the plates is much smaller than the dimensions of the plates. The plates can be charged by connecting them to the positive and negative terminals of a battery.

A battery contains a substance (called an electrolyte) which causes two dissimilar metals to acquire opposite charges. The two dissimilar metals form the positive and negative terminals of the battery. If a metal plate is connected to the positive terminal of the battery, and another metal plate is connected to the negative terminal of the battery, and the two plates brought closely together, a parallel plate arrangement (parallel-plate conductors) can be constructed with a uniform electric field between the plates (seen edge on) in **Figure** 16.3. We will see later that parallel plate conductors are also referred to as capacitors.

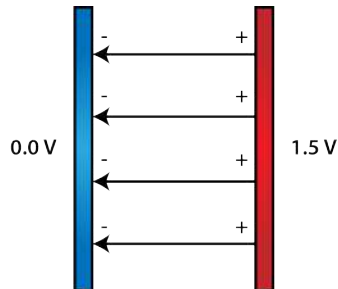



FIGURE 16.3
Parallel plates.

Just as in the case of the battery, one of the plates of the parallel-plate conductor will be at a higher potential than the other plate. Think, for example, of a standard AA battery with a **voltage** rating of 1.5V, **Figure** 16.4.

FIGURE 16.4
Volt battery.

See the link below to learn more about how a battery works.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/battery-voltage

Electrical Potential Energy

In our gravitational analogy, the energy that a charge possesses at the plate with the higher potential is analogous to the energy a mass possesses above the ground. Additionally, now that we have found a way to create a uniform electric field, we have an analog to a uniform gravitational field.

If a positive charge $+q$ is placed at the positive plate in **Figure** 16.5, it will be repelled by the positive charges on the plate and move toward the negative plate. (Think of $+q$ as the object m falling toward the ground.)

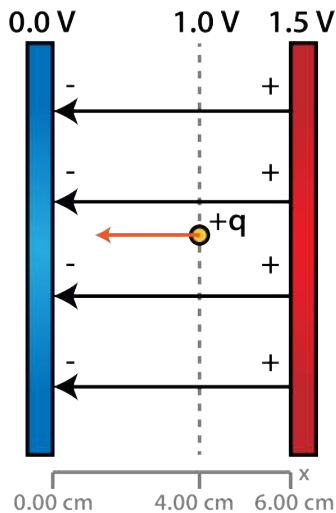



FIGURE 16.5
A positive charge moving toward the negative plate

What is the force acting on the $+q$ charge? Recall that the Coulomb force on a charge placed in an electrostatic field is $F = qE$. The work that the electric field does on the charge is equal to the negative change in the potential energy of the charge, just as in the gravitational case. We can find an expression for the electric potential energy by finding the work that is done on the charge. Recall that $W = F\Delta x$. We write

$$W_{field} = F\Delta x = (qE)\Delta x = -\Delta PE \rightarrow$$
$$qE(x_f - x_i) = -\Delta PE \rightarrow$$
$$qEx_f - qEx_i = -\Delta PE$$

The expression for the electric potential energy is thus: $PE_{electrical} = qEx$.

Recall that the equation for the gravitational potential energy is $PE_{gravitational} = mgh$.

We can compare the terms in the gravitational and electrical cases as follows:

$$m \rightarrow q$$
$$g \rightarrow E$$
$$h \rightarrow x$$

Thus, we see that our prediction for the equation of electric potential energy stated in the introduction of the lesson, was correct!

Check Your Understanding

1a. The electrical potential at the negative plate in **Figure** 16.5 is defined as zero volts. What is the electrical potential energy of a charge $+q = 15.0\mu C$ at the positive plate if the electric field between the plates is $25.0\frac{N}{C}$?

The positive plate has position $6.00cm = 6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m$ according to **Figure** 16.5.

Answer: $PE_{positive\ plate} = qEx = (15.0 \times 10^{-6}\ C)\left(25.0\frac{N}{C}\right)(6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m) = 3.75 \times 10^{-4}\ J$

1b. What is the change in the electrical potential energy ΔPE of the charge $+q = 15.0\mu C$ if its potential changes from 1.5 V to 1.0 V?

Answer: Just as in the case of a change in gravitational potential energy, the charge must lose potential energy, since it gains kinetic energy.

The charge moves from the position $x_i = 6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m\ (1.5\ V)$ to the position $x_i = 4.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m\ (1.0\ V)$.

$$\Delta PE = qEx_f - qEx_i = qE(x_f - x_i) =$$
$$(15.0 \times 10^{-6}\ C)\left(25.0\frac{N}{C}\right)(4.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m - 6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m) = -7.50 \times 10^{-6}\ J.$$

1c. What is the work done on the charge by the electric field?

Answer:

$$W_{field} = -\Delta PE = -(-7.50 \times 10^{6}) = 7.50 \times 10^{6}\ J$$

Notice that the electric field does positive work on the charge, since the electric force and the displacement of the charge have the same direction.

We should recall a very important point: It is only the change in potential energy that is meaningful, whether we are discussing the gravitational potential energy or the electrical potential energy.

2. An electron placed at the negative plate of a parallel-plate conductor will move toward the positive plate. The potential energy of the electron:

A. Decreases

B. Increases

C. Remains the same.

Answer: The correct answer is A. The electron is repelled by the negative charges of the conducting plate and therefore gains kinetic energy. Just as an object that is dropped gains kinetic energy and loses potential energy, so does the electron. Recall our discussion of the conservation of energy. As long as the total energy remains conserved, the sum of the initial kinetic and potential energies must equal the sum of the final kinetic and potential energies:

$$KE_i + PE_i = KE_f + PE_f \rightarrow \Delta KE = -\Delta PE$$

The gain in kinetic energy occurs due to the loss in potential energy.

In order for the charges of the same sign to be brought together, as in the example above, positive work must be done by an external force against the electrostatic repulsion between the charges. The work increases the potential energy stored in the electric field. When the charges are released, the potential energy of the field is converted into the kinetic energies of the charges. The link below may be helpful in learning more about the work done upon charges in electric fields.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=elJUghWSVh4

Electric Potential Difference in a Uniform Electric Field

In working with the change in potential energy above, we wrote the equation

$\Delta PE = qEx_f - qEx_i = qE(x_f - x_i) \rightarrow$ Let us call this Equation A.

Recall that the electric potential was defined at a specific point $V_{x_1} = \frac{PE_{x_1}}{q}$.

We therefore see that $PE_{x_1} = qV_{x_1} \rightarrow$ Let us call this Equation B.

Comparing Equation A and Equation B, we see that the electric potential can be expressed as $V_{x_1} = Ex_1$. If the electric potential is defined as $V = 0$ at $x = 0$, then the potential at any point in the electric field is $V = Ex$. (Assuming that vector E is directed along the $x-$axis).

Note: It is common to write $V = Ed$, where V is understood to mean the voltage (or potential difference) between the plates of a parallel-plate conductor, and d is the distance between the plates.

Check Your Understanding

Verify that the potential difference between the plates in **Figure** 16.5 is 1.5 V. Recall that the electric field is $E = 25.0\frac{N}{C}$.

Answer: $V = Ed = \left(25\frac{N}{C}\right)(6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m - 0.00m) = 1.5\ V$

Work

We state again:

1. The electric potential is defined as the energy per unit charge $\rightarrow V_{x_1} = \frac{PE_{x_1}}{q}$.
2. The electric potential difference (the voltage) is $V_f - V_i = \frac{PE_f}{q} - \frac{PE_i}{q}$
3. An arbitrary reference level must be established for zero potential (just as in the case of gravitational potential energy).
4. The units of electric potential and electric potential difference are $\frac{J}{C}$ since $V_{x_1} = \frac{PE_{x_1}}{q}$.

It is often useful to express the voltage in terms of the work done on a charge.

From $V_f - V_i = \frac{PE_f}{q} - \frac{PE_i}{q}$, we have $PE_f - PE_i = q(V_f - V_i) \rightarrow \Delta PE = q(V_f - V_i)$.

But the work done on a charge by the field is $W_{field} = -\Delta PE$.

Combining $\Delta PE = q(V_f - V_i)$ and $W_{field} = -\Delta PE$ gives $W_{field} = -q(V_f - V_i)$.

An external force that does work on a charge in an electric field exerts a force in the opposite direction to the field (just as the external force acting on a spring acts opposite to the spring force). The work that an external force does is therefore $W_{external\ force} = q(V_f - V_i)$.

The voltage can be thought of as the amount of work done by the electric field per unit charge in moving a charge between two points in the electric field $\Delta V = \frac{W}{q}$.

We often refer to a change in potential as simply "the voltage."

In computing the work, it is often easier to ignore the sign in the equation and simply see if the force and displacement on the charge are in the same direction (positive work) or opposite to one another (negative work). Recall that the force and displacement need not be in the same direction or oppositely directed. In general, work is expressed as $W = Fx\cos\theta$

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=F1p3fgbDnkY

Other Units for the Electric Field

The electric field has units $\frac{N}{C}$, since $\overrightarrow{E} = \frac{\overrightarrow{F}}{q}$. But the electric field has been also defined using the scalar equation $V = Ex$. Transposing terms, the electric field is $E = \frac{V}{x}$. So the units of the electric field can be also expressed as volts per meter $\frac{volts}{meter} \rightarrow \frac{V}{m}$.

If we compare the units for the electric field $\frac{N}{C}$ and $\frac{V}{m}$, we see that a $(N * m)$ is equivalent to a $(C * V)$. A Joule can therefore be expressed as a Coulomb-Volt. Recall that work, measured in Joules, is the product of charge and voltage $W = q\Delta V$.

Illustrative Example 16.2.1

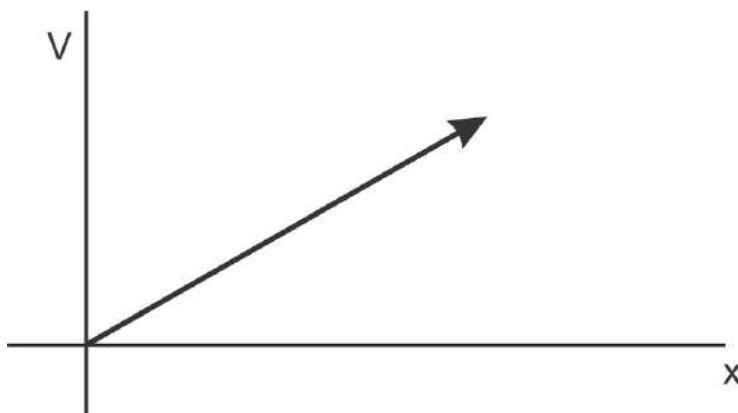
All questions refer to **Figure** 16.5.

a. What is the potential at $x = 2.0\ cm$? The electric field is $E = 25.0\frac{N}{C}$.

Answer:

The potential V varies directly with the position x between the plates $(V = Ex)$. Thus, $V = 25.0\frac{N}{C}(2.0 \times 10^{-2} m) = 0.50\ V$.

b. Sketch a graph showing the relationship between the potential and the position.

Answer:

c. How much work is done by an external force F moving a $-2.0 \times 10^{-6}\ C$ charge from the positive plate to the negative plate?

Answer: An external force must pull the charge away from the positive plate so the force will be in the same direction as the displacement.

$$W = q(V_f - V_i) = (-2.0 \times 10^{-6} C)(0.00V - 1.50V) = 3.0 \times 10^{-6}\ J$$

d. What is the magnitude of the Coulomb force acting on the charge?

Answer:

$$W = F \times \rightarrow 3.0 \times 10^{-6}\ J = F(6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m)$$

$$F = \frac{3.0 \times 10^{-6}\ J}{6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m} = 5.0 \times 10^{-5}\ N$$

Illustrative Example 16.2.2

a. A particle of mass m of $2.00 \times 10^{-5}\ kg$ is has a charge q of $+3.00 \times 10^{-3}\ C$. If the particle is released from the positive plate of a parallel-plate conductor with an electric field E of $1.30 \times 10^5\ \frac{N}{C}$, determine the acceleration of the particle, see **Figure** 16.6.

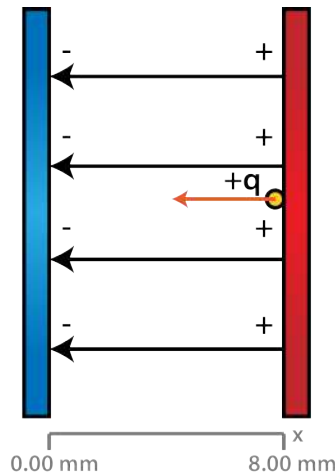



FIGURE 16.6

Illustrative Example 16.3.2

Answer:

If we ignore gravity, the only force acting on the particle is the electric force $F = qE$. Using Newton's Second Law, the net force on the particle is equal to $\sum F = ma \rightarrow qE = ma$.

The acceleration is $a = \frac{Eq}{m} = \frac{\left(1.30\times 10^5\ \frac{V}{m}\right)(3.00\times 10^{-3}\ C)}{2.00\times 10^{-5}\ kg} = 1.95 \times 10^7\ \frac{V*C}{kg*m}$.

b. Show that the units $\frac{V*C}{kg*m}$ are equivalent to the units $\frac{m}{s^2}$.

Answer:

$$\frac{V*C}{kg*m} = \frac{J}{kg*m} = \frac{N*m}{kg*m} = \frac{N}{kg} = \frac{kg*\frac{m}{s^2}}{kg} = \frac{m}{s^2}$$

c. The plates have separation of 8.00 mm. Determine the velocity of the particle when it reaches the negative plate

Answer:

This is a kinematics problem, where the displacement and acceleration are known and the velocity is to be found. Recall the equation $v_f^2 = v_i^2 + 2a\Delta x$.

$$\rightarrow v_f^2 = 0 + 2\left(1.95 \times 10^7\ \frac{m}{s^2}\right)(8.00 \times 10^{-3}\ m) = 312,000\frac{m^2}{s^2}$$
$$v = 558.6 \rightarrow 5.59 \times 10^2\ \frac{m}{s}.$$

d. What is the potential difference between the plates?

Answer:

$$V = Ex = \left(1.30 \times 10^5 \ \frac{V}{m}\right)(8.00 \times 10^{-3} \ m) = 1.04 \times 10^3 \ V$$

e. How much work has the field done on the particle as it moved from one plate to the other?

$$W = q\Delta V = (3.00 \times 10^{-3} \ C)(1.04 \times 10^3 \ V) = 3.12 \ J$$

Illustrative Example 16.2.3

An electron is accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 30,000 V. The mass of the electron is 9.11×10^{-31} kg and the charge of the electron is 1.60×10^{-19} C. Find its velocity.

Answer: Recall that the Work-Energy Principle states that $W = \Delta KE$.

$$\begin{aligned}
W &= \Delta KE \\
W &= q\Delta V \\
\Delta KE &= q\Delta V \\
\frac{1}{2}mv_f^2 - \frac{1}{2}mv_i^2 &= q\Delta V \\
v_i = 0 \rightarrow v_f^2 = \frac{2q\Delta V}{m} &\rightarrow v_f = \sqrt{\frac{2q\Delta V}{m}} \rightarrow \\
v_f = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \ C)(3.00 \times 10^4 \ V)}{9.11 \times 10^{-31} \ kg}} &= 1.026 \times 10^8 \rightarrow 1.03 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}
\end{aligned}$$

Illustrative Example 16.2.4

What magnitude of an electric field is required to balance the gravitational force acting on an electron in **Figure** 16.7?

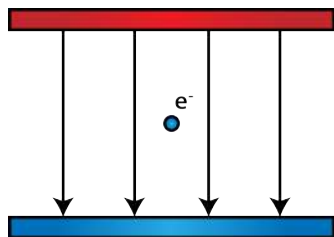
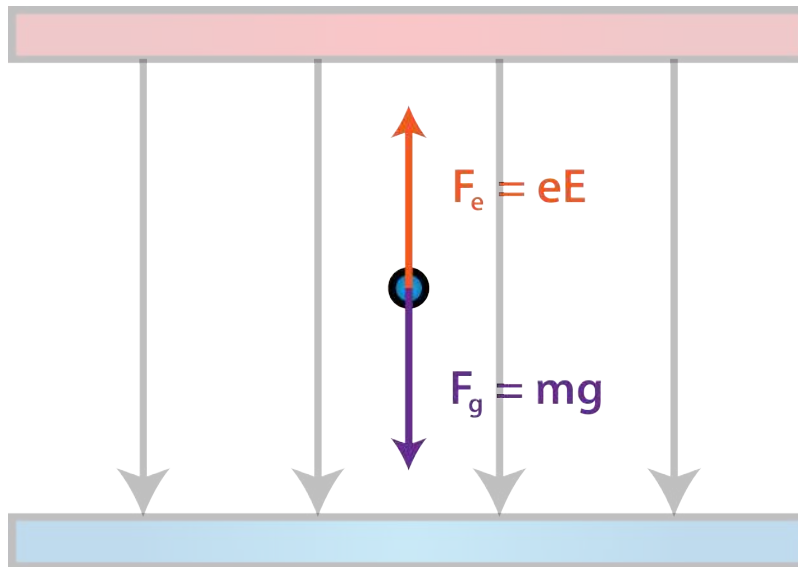



FIGURE 16.7
Illustrative Example 16.2.4-An electron suspended in an electric field.

Answer:

Draw a Free-Body-Diagram (FBD) of the situation. The electrostatic force that acts on the electron points upward and the gravitational force that acts upon on the electron points downward. The electron is suspended motionless (or moves with a constant velocity) when the net force on the electron is zero.

The net force on the electron must be zero, thus

$$\sum F = 0 \rightarrow eF = mg \rightarrow F = \frac{mg}{e}$$
$$but\ F = eE \rightarrow \frac{mg}{e} = eE \rightarrow E = \frac{mg}{e^2} \rightarrow$$
$$E = \frac{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg)\left(9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}\right)}{(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ C)^2} = 3.49 \times 10^8\ \frac{V}{m}$$

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wT9AsY79f1k

The Electron-Volt

It is often convenient when dealing with small particles such as electrons, protons, and ions to express the energy of these particles with a smaller unit of measure. The electron-volt is defined as the change in potential energy that an electron acquires when moving through a potential difference of 1 V, or equivalently, its change in kinetic energy after moving through a potential difference of 1 V.

That is, $PE = eV = (1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ C)(1.00\ V) = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J$.

The energy $1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J$ is defined as one electron-volt. We write one-electron-volt as $1\ eV = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J$.

Check Your Understanding

1. What is the change in kinetic energy KE when an electron is released at the negative plate of a parallel plate conductor with a potential difference of 3,500 V? Express your answer in eV.

Answer: The electron is repelled at the negative plate and therefore gains kinetic energy (and loses potential energy). The change in KE is positive and equal to

$$\frac{1\ eV}{1\ V} = \frac{x\ eV}{3,500\ V} \rightarrow x = 3,500\ eV$$
$$\Delta KE = 3,500\ eV$$

It is simplest to think that for every one volt of potential difference the particle experiences, it gains (or loses) 1 eV.

2. An alpha-particle (the nucleus of a helium atom) is fired toward the positive plate of a parallel plate conductor and passes through a potential difference of 1,500 V. What is the change in its kinetic energy? Express your answer in eV.

Answer:

Protons are the only charges inside the nucleus of an atom and so the alpha particle must be positively charged. A helium nucleus contains two protons (and two neutrons) with a total charge of $2(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ C)$.

The alpha particle must slow down due to the electrostatic repulsion from the positive plate. It must, therefore, lose kinetic energy and gain potential energy.

Each proton loses 1,500 eV of kinetic energy. $\Delta KE = -3,000\ eV$.

3. An electron and a proton both gain kinetic energy of 1 eV.

True or False: Their speeds must be the same, since they both gained the same amount of energy.

Answer: False. The mass of a proton is nearly 2000 times greater than the mass of an electron. Remember that kinetic energy depends on both the speed and mass of an object. Therefore, the final speed of the electron will be much greater.

Illustrative Example 16.2.5

a. An electron and a proton both gain kinetic energy of 1 eV. What is the ratio of the electron's speed to the proton's speed?

Answer:

As discussed above, though both particles gain the same kinetic energy, their speeds will not be the same, since they have different masses. The mass of the proton is nearly 2000 times as great as the electron's so:

$$\frac{KE_e}{KE_p} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}m_e v_e^2}{\frac{1}{2}m_p v_p^2} = 1 \rightarrow m_e v_e^2 = m_p v_p^2 \rightarrow \frac{v_e^2}{v_p^2} = \frac{m_p}{m_e} = \frac{2000 m_e}{m_e} = 2,000 \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{v_e}{v_p} = \sqrt{2,000} = 44.7 \rightarrow 45$$

The electron will move about 45 times faster than the proton.

b. What is the speed of a proton which has a kinetic energy of 37 MeV?

The mass of a proton is $1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg$.

Answer:

Because the electron-volts are a very small unit, they are typically expressed in KeV (1000 electron-volts) and MeV (one million electron-volts). The electron-volt is a convenient unit of measure but it is not an SI unit. In order to find the velocity of a particle if its energy is given in units of eV, we must convert back into Joules.

$$37\ MeV = (37 \times 10^6)(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J) = 5.92 \times 10^{-14}\ J$$
$$\frac{1}{2}m_p v^2 = 5.92 \times 10^{-14}\ J \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg)v^2 = 5.92 \times 10^{-14}\ J \rightarrow$$
$$v = 8.4 \times 10^6\ \frac{m}{s}$$

16.3 Capacitance

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand capacitance.
- Understand how to solve problems involving capacitance.

Vocabulary

- **capacitance:** The constant ratio of charge to voltage, which is a property of all capacitors.
- **capacitor:** Common name for a parallel plate conductor.
- **farad:** The unit of capacitance, which equals coulombs per volts.

We begin our study of **capacitors** with the study of **capacitance**, a property of all capacitors. In order to do this, we must consider the physical dimensions of a capacitor. What is the area of the capacitor plates? What is their separation distance? It will be shown that the physical dimensions of a capacitor are very important in determining capacitance.

Capacitance

As was mentioned earlier, a parallel plate conductor is often referred to as a capacitor. The charge on either plate of the capacitor is referred to as Q. It should be kept in mind that the net charge on the capacitor is zero.

Consider a capacitor charged by a voltage source, in this case a 12-Volt battery as shown in **Figure** 16.8.

Experiments show that the charge Q acquired by a capacitor is directly proportional to the voltage V of the source. If the voltage is increased, each plate acquires more charge, but the ratio of charge to voltage remains constant

$$\frac{Q}{V} \rightarrow constant(C) \rightarrow Q = CV$$

.

The constant of proportionality C is called the capacitance.

The unit of capacitance is coulombs per volts, which is given the name farad (F) in honor of Michael Faraday, the great 19th-century British physicist and chemist.

$\frac{1\ C}{V} = 1\ F$

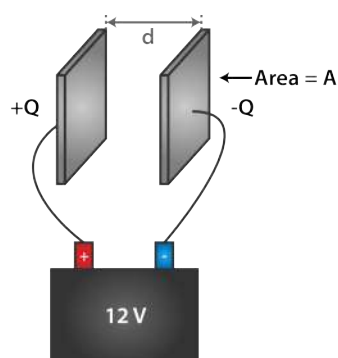



FIGURE 16.8
A battery charging capacitor.

Understanding Capacitance

Imagine a constant-voltage source charging two small conducting plates (a small capacitor) that are placed a distance d apart. Imagine also the same voltage source charging two large conducting plates (a large capacitor) placed a distance d apart. Do you think both capacitors will eventually acquire the same charge on their plates? If your intuition tells you no, you're right! It is certainly reasonable to assume that larger plates would hold more charge than smaller plates.

Here's why: The smaller the area of a plate, the less charge the plate can hold because of the electrostatic repulsion between like charges. However, a larger number of like charges can be separated by the same distance as a smaller number of charges, over a greater area. We than can say

$$C \propto A$$

(Note: With enough charge, the electrostatic repulsion can become so great that "electrical breakdown" or "discharge" occurs. The negative charge crosses the gap between the plates and the potential difference between the plates goes to zero. The battery must then recharge the plates. In all likelihood, though, the capacitor is ruined.)

Now imagine two capacitors with the same-size plates. The plates of one capacitor are very close together and the plates of the other capacitor are very far apart. Each capacitor is connected to the same voltage source. Do you think both capacitors will acquire the same charge on their plates? The answer is once again, no.

Here's why:

We know that the farther apart the charged particles are from each other, the more weakly they interact (Coulomb's law). Fewer charges will therefore be attracted to each plate.

We then can say

$$C \propto \frac{1}{d}$$

The capacitance C is, therefore, directly proportional to the area of the plates and inversely proportional to the distance between the plates of the capacitor.

$$C \propto \frac{A}{d}$$

Experiments show that if the charge Q and voltage V of a capacitor are measured, along with its area A and separation d, a constant of proportionality (denoted as the Greek letter Epsilon ε_0) is found by considering that

$$C \propto \frac{A}{d} \rightarrow \frac{Q}{V} \propto \frac{A}{d} \rightarrow \frac{Q}{V} = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} \rightarrow \varepsilon_0 = \frac{Qd}{VA}$$

Epsilon (ε_0) is called the permittivity of free space and has units

$\frac{C}{V*m} \rightarrow \frac{C^2}{N*m^2}$.

The latter set of units can be shown to be the reciprocal of Coulomb's constant k, and the numerical value of Epsilon is

$$\varepsilon_0 = \frac{1}{4\pi k} = 8.85 \times 10^{-12} \frac{C}{N*m^2}$$

Notice that the capacitance C is independent of the charge or voltage of the capacitor. It is only dependent upon the physical dimensions of the capacitor, and, as we shall see, upon the type of the insulator placed between its conducting plates.

Check Your Understanding

1. The plates of a capacitor are 1.5 mm apart. What area must the plates have in order for the capacitance to be 1.0 F?

Answer:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} \rightarrow A = \frac{Cd}{\varepsilon_0} \rightarrow A = \frac{(1.0\ F)(1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ mm)}{8.85 \times 10^{-12} \frac{C^2}{N*m^2}} = 1.69 \times 10^8 \rightarrow 1.7 \times 10^8\ m^2$$

Assuming the plate is a square, it would have a side length of 13 km.

One farad is, indeed, a very large capacitance. We often find it more practical to express capacitance in terms of microfarads $(\mu F \rightarrow 10^{-6}\ F)$ and picofarads $(pF \rightarrow 10^{-12}\ F)$.

2. The plates of a capacitor have dimensions 3.00 cm by 2.00 cm and are separated by a distance of $1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ m$. What is the capacitance of the capacitor?

Answer:

$$C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d} = (8.85 \times 10^{-12}) \frac{(3.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m)(2.00 \times 10^{-2}\ m)}{1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ m} = 5.31 \times 10^{-12} \rightarrow 5.31 pF$$

3. The capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor is $250 \mu F$.

a. What is the maximum amount of charge deposited on each plate if the capacitor is connected to a 9.0 V battery?

Answer:

$$Q = CV \rightarrow Q = (250 \times 10^{-6}\ F)(9.00\ V) = 2.25 \times 10^{-3}\ C$$

Do not get confused in thinking that the capacitor has twice $(2Q)$ the amount of charge since each plate has charge Q. The battery has transferred electrons (amounting to charge Q) from the positive plate of the capacitor to the negative plate of the capacitor. The total charge of the capacitor is actually zero. The "charged" capacitor, is, technically, neutral.

b. What is the electric field between the plates of the capacitor?

Answer:

$$V = Ex \rightarrow E = \frac{9.00\ V}{1.00 \times 10^{-3}\ m} = 9,000\frac{V}{m}$$

Capacitors

If you open the back of almost any electronic device, you're bound to see numerous capacitors. **Figure** 16.9, **Figure** 16.10, and **Figure** 16.11 show some of the common commercial capacitors. Capacitors are very useful components in the electronic circuits. They are able to store and release energy innumerable times during their working lifetime.

You may wonder why it is important to do so. By storing charge, voltage differences can be sustained in computers. Voltage differences mean a computer can store information digitally in the form of zeros and ones.

FIGURE 16.9
Large capacitors.

A capacitor in a camera can control the discharge of electricity, providing the characteristic light flash or "electrical spark."

Most timing circuits make use of the stored charge (and discharge) in a capacitor. A device that can discharge at various rates is well suited for such a task.

It is not uncommon to see the power light remain on after an electronic device is shut down. Stored charge on electronic components does not instantly disappear. Just as inertia always exists, there is always a capacitance in electronic circuits.

Your teacher may show you a demonstration where a light-emitting diode (LED) is connected to a capacitor that was charged by a battery. The capacitor lights the LED as it discharges through it. In this instance, a capacitor functions like a battery.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ParallelPlateCapacitors/

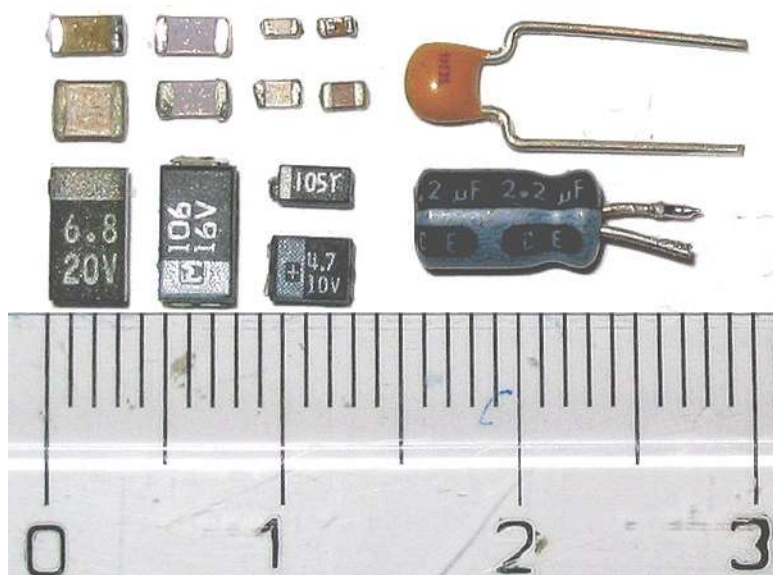



FIGURE 16.10
Small capacitors.

FIGURE 16.11
Capacitors in a computer.

16.4 Dielectrics

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand what a dielectric is and how it affects the capacitance of a capacitor.
- Solve problems involving capacitors with dielectrics.

Vocabulary

- **dielectric constant:** The factor by which the dielectric increases the capacitance. The dielectric constant is particular to each dielectric material.
- **dielectric material:** An insulating material placed between the conducting plates of a capacitor.
- **polarization:** A process simular to induction, in which the molecules of the inductor align such that the positive end of the molecules will be attracted to the negative conducting plate and the negative end of the molecules will be attracted to the positive conducting plate. An electric field is created inside the dielectric that is opposite to the electric field between the two conducting plates of the capacitor.

Introduction

We mentioned earlier that electrostatic repulsion can cause an electrical breakdown or discharge across the plates of a capacitor. Generally, this is not something that we wish will happen. We also mentioned that the capacitance was dependent upon the physical dimensions of the capacitor and the insulator placed between its plates. The insulator is called a **dielectric material**, **Figure** 16.12. We now investigate how the capacitance is affected by a dielectric.

Dielectrics

As we have just mentioned, a dielectric material is an insulating material inserted between the conducting plates of a capacitor.

Let us consider the effect of inserting a dielectric between the plates of a charged capacitor. We assume the capacitor is charged and then disconnected from the charging source (a battery, for example), **Figure** 16.13.

A process similar to induction occurs, called **polarization**. When an insulator is inserted between the conducting plates of the capacitor, the molecules of the inductor will align such that the positive end of the molecules will be attracted to the negative conducting plate and the negative end of the molecules will be attracted to the positive conducting plate, see **Figure** 16.14. An electric field is therefore created inside the dielectric that is opposite to the electric field between the two conducting plates of the capacitor, **Figure** 16.15.

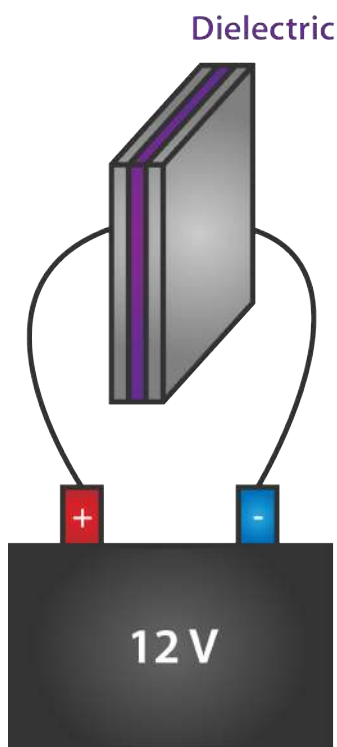



FIGURE 16.12
A capacitor with a dielectric.

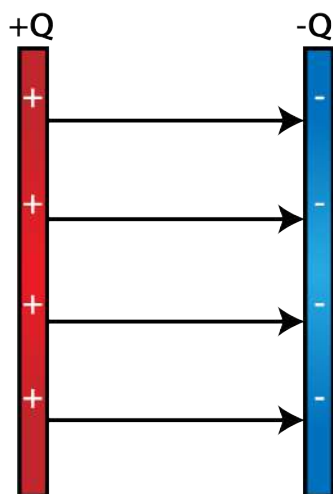



FIGURE 16.13
The capacitor without a dielectric inserted.

The net effect is that the electric field of the capacitor is reduced along with the voltage across the capacitor, since $V = Ex$. By decreasing the voltage, the plates acquire more charge once they are reconnected to the battery. A dielectric, therefore, increases capacitance. The amount of increase depends upon the material of the insulator.

The dielectric material increases the capacitance C of the capacitor by a factor of k, called the **dielectric constant** (particular to each dielectric material). The resulting capacitance of the capacitor is then $\rightarrow C = k\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$. The permittivity of the material is typically defined as $\varepsilon = k\varepsilon_0$, where $k > 1$.

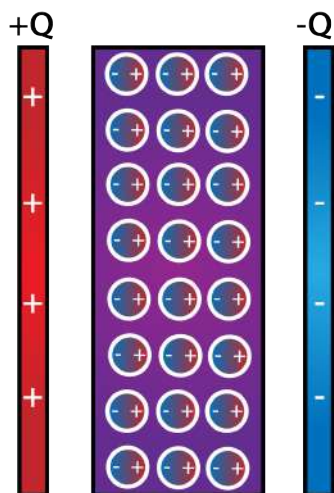



FIGURE 16.14
The capacitor with the dielectric inserted showing the polarization of charges within the dielectric.

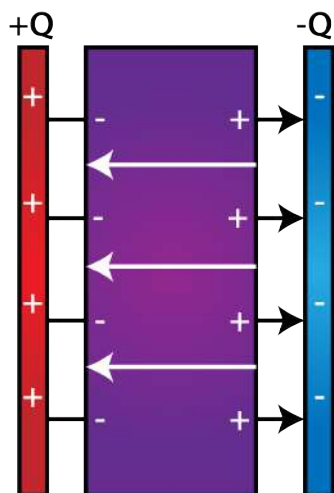



FIGURE 16.15
The change of the electric field within the capacitor with the dielectric inserted.

A Mathematical Explanation of

The charge Q_0 on each side of the capacitor remains constant since the capacitor is disconnected from the battery. Thus, if C_0 is the original capacitance and V_0 is the original voltage of the capacitor, then

$Q_0 = C_0 V_0$ (Equation A)

After the dielectric has been inserted into the capacitor, the new voltage is less than the original $V_0 \to V$ voltage, where $V < V_0$. But the product of capacitance and voltage must equal the same charge Q_0. Thus, if the voltage decreases, the capacitance increases, since Q_0 remains constant.

$Q_0 = CV$ (Equation B)

Setting Equation A equal to Equation B and solving for C:

$C_0 V_0 = CV \to C = C_0 \frac{V_0}{V}$ (Equation C)

We define $V = \beta V_0$, where $\beta < 1$, and substitute βV_0 for V in Equation C.

$C = C_0 \frac{V_0}{\beta V_0} = C_0 \frac{1}{\beta}$,

since $\beta < 1, \frac{1}{\beta} > 1$.

Define $\frac{1}{\beta} = k$, and therefore

$C = kC_0$, and recall that $C_0 = e_0\frac{A}{d}$, and finally,

$C = e_0k\frac{A}{d}$.

Reconnecting the Voltage Source to the Capacitor

An increase in capacitance means the capacitor can acquire more charge without an electrical breakdown, since there is less electrostatic repulsion. The induced charges on the insulator have reduced the net electric field, and we now can have a greater Q for the same V.

Consider the following example:

A capacitor is charged by a 12-Volt battery. The battery is now removed and a dielectric is inserted between the plates of the capacitor. We now measure the new potential difference between the plates and it found to be 4 V.

The 12-V battery is now reconnected to the capacitor and the potential difference between the plates of the capacitor quickly increases to 12 V. The plates have now acquired more charge.

The same amount of charge on an air-gap capacitor could result in an electrical breakdown. There would be too much electrostatic repulsion between like charges, and the plates would discharge.

One of the uses of capacitors is to block the flow of charge in order to protect delicate circuitry. If a sudden increase in current were to occur in an electrical circuit, a capacitor with a dielectric would have a much better chance of handling the increase in voltage without an electrical breakdown.

Table 16.1 gives dielectric constant values for some common dielectrics. To learn more about dielectrics, follow the link below.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=e0n6xLdwaT0

TABLE 16.1:

Material	**Dielectric Constant** (k) **At** $t = 20^\circ C$
Vacuum	1.0000
Air	1.0006
Rubber	2.8
Vinyl	2.8 - 4.5
Paper	3 - 7
Glass	4 - 7
Water	80
Titanium Oxide	100

Check Your Understanding

A capacitor has a layer of rubber inserted between its conducting plates while connected to a battery. By what factor will the charge on the capacitor increase? The voltage on the capacitor remains constant.

Answer: We can answer this by just looking at the table above. The capacitance of rubber is 2.8 times greater than air, so we should expect the charge on the capacitor to be 2.8 times greater, as well. Using the equation $Q_0 = C_0V$, where C_0 is the capacitance of air and Q_0 is the original amount of charge on the capacitor,

$$Q_0 = C_0V \rightarrow C = KC_0 = 2.8C_0 \rightarrow Q = 2.8(C_0V) \rightarrow 2.8Q_0 \rightarrow Q = 2.8Q_0$$

16.5 Electrical Energy Storage

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how energy is stored in a capacitor.
- Solve problems involving energy stored in capacitors.

Introduction

A capacitor stores electrical energy within the electric field between its plates. Otherwise, there would be no energy for the electrical discharge for such things as camera flashes. The ability of capacitors to store and release energy is one of their most important attributes and is directly related to the functioning of most electronic devices. Recall that we described the effect of electrical resonance between a capacitor and a coiled wire in a crystal radio set, **Figure** 16.16. The effect occurs because the capacitor is able to store and release energy many hundreds of thousands of times (for AM radio) per second through the coiled wire. The same effect is true for modern radios, televisions, computers, and cell phones. Any electrical device that receives a signal requires that capacitors store and release energy.

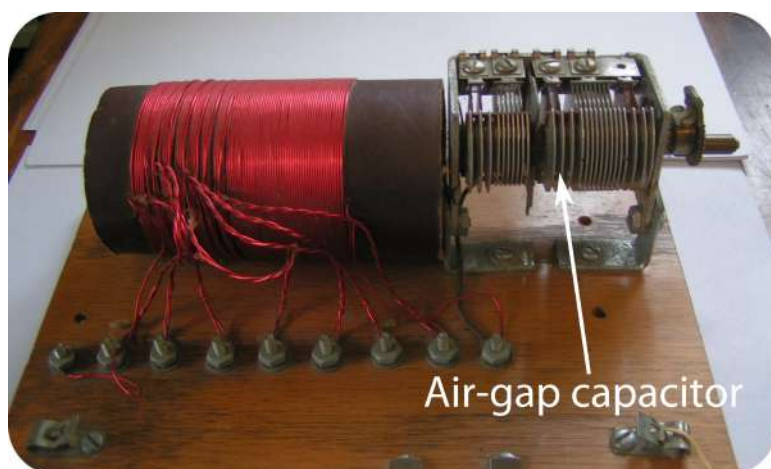



FIGURE 16.16
A crystal radio set.

How Energy is Stored in Capacitors

Energy is stored in a capacitor when work is done by the battery in removing electrons from one plate (the positive plate) and depositing them on the other plate (the negative plate) of the capacitor. A capacitor cannot be charged instantaneously. As more charge is added to each plate of the capacitor, the battery must do increasingly more work

per unit charge, because like charges repel. This is analogous to stretching a spring. The farther the spring is stretched, the more force is required to stretch it further. The total energy stored within the spring is equal to the work done in stretching the spring. The work W is the product of the average force $\overline{F}$ and displacement of the spring x.

Analogously, the work done to charge the capacitor is $W = \overline{F}x = (Q\overline{E})x = Q(\overline{E}x) = Q\overline{V} = Q\left(\frac{V_i+V_f}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}QV_f$. The total charge placed on the capacitor is Q and the initial voltage V_i of the capacitor is assumed to be zero.

The work can equally be expressed as $W = \frac{1}{2}QV = \frac{1}{2}(CV)V = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$ by substituting $Q = CV$ or as $W = \frac{1}{2}QV^2 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{Q^2}{C}$. The subscript has been dropped on the voltage $\rightarrow V = V_f$.

The potential energy stored within the capacitor is the same as the work done by the battery, that is, $PE_{cap} = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$ *or* $PE_{cap} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{Q^2}{C}$. The symbol PE is often replaced with the letter $U \rightarrow U = \frac{1}{2}CV^2$ or $U = \frac{1}{2}\frac{Q^2}{C}$.

Check Your Understanding

1. The energy in a capacitor is 5.0 J and its capacitance is 4000 μF. What is the potential difference across its plates?

Answer: $U = \frac{1}{2}CV^2 = V^2 = \frac{2U}{C} \rightarrow V = \sqrt{\frac{2U}{C}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(5.0\ J)}{4000\times10^{-6}\ f}} = 50\ V$

2. Two 1.0 mm gap capacitors, A and B, are separately charged by a 12-V battery. Each capacitor is removed from the battery after charging. The plates of capacitor B are pulled farther apart creating a 5.0 mm gap.

Which of the following is correct?

a. The charge and voltage of both capacitors remain the same.

b. Only the charge on the capacitors is different.

c. Only the voltage of the capacitors is different.

d. The charge and voltage of both capacitors are different.

Answer: The correct answer is C.

The charges on the capacitors are the same since both capacitors were charged under identical conditions and then disconnected from the battery.

Work, however, was done on capacitor B, since a force was applied (through a displacement) in order to increase the gap to 5 mm. The work increased the potential difference between the plates.

Consider the equation $Q = CV$. If the distance between the plates is increased, then the capacitance decreases, since $C = \varepsilon_0\frac{A}{d}$, in this case $d \rightarrow 5d$ so $C \rightarrow \frac{1}{5}C$. The voltage V' therefore must increase $Q = CV \rightarrow \frac{1}{5}CV' \rightarrow V' = 5\frac{Q}{C} = 5V$.

Similarly, the electric field E remains constant, because we have two conducting parallel plates $V = Ed \rightarrow V' = E(5d) = 5Ed = 5V$.

1. The electric field between two parallel-plate conductors is considered uniform far away from the plate edges if the size of the plates is large compared to their separation distance.
2. The potential energy of a charge q at a point between two parallel-plate conductors is $PE = qEx$, a reference point must be given such as $PE = 0$ at $x = 0$.
3. A point charge q has electric potential energy PE_x and electric potential V_x at point x. Thus, $PE_x = qV_x$
4. The word voltage is used when we mean potential difference.
5. It is common to write $V = Ed$, where V is understood to mean the voltage (or potential difference) between the plates of a parallel-plate conductor and d is the distance between the plates.
6. The work done by the electric field in moving a charge between two parallel plate conductors is $W_{field} = -q\Delta V$. The work done by an external force is $W_{external\ force} = q\Delta V$.
7. Voltage can be thought of as the work per unit charge $V = \frac{W}{q}$; that is, how much work is required per unit charge to move a charged particle in an electric field.

8. Capacitance of an air-gap capacitor is given by $C = \varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$ where A is the area of the capacitor and d is the separation distance between the plates.
9. The charge on a capacitor is directly proportional to the voltage of the capacitor $Q = CV$.
10. A dielectric material placed between the plates increases the capacitance of the capacitor. The capacitance of a capacitor with a dielectric is expressed as $C = k\varepsilon_0 \frac{A}{d}$, where k is the dielectric constant.
11. The energy stored in a capacitor can be expressed as

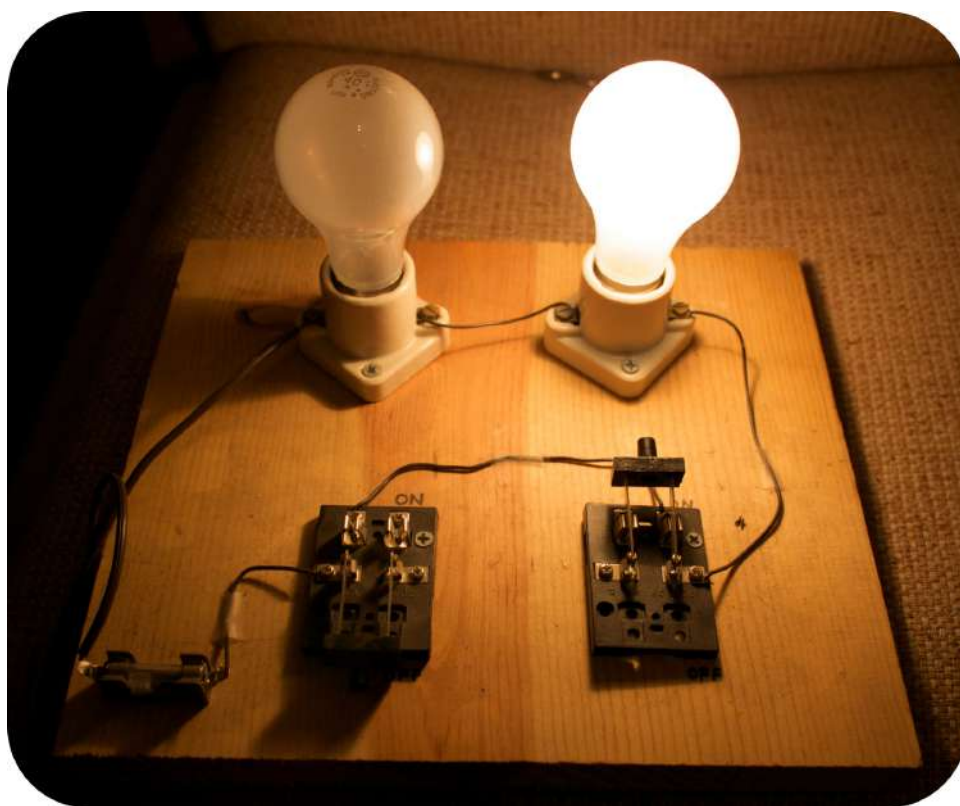
$$U = \frac{1}{2}QV$$
$$U = \frac{1}{2}QV^2$$
$$U = \frac{1}{2}\frac{Q^2}{C}$$

Where Q is the charge on the capacitor and V is the voltage of the capacitor.

16.6 References

1. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. User:Asim18/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:02_-_Single_Energizer_Battery.jpg .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. User:Intiti/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Capacitors_Various.jpg . Public Domain
12. User:Shaddack/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Photo-SMDcapacitors.jpg . Public Domain
13. User:Hitachi-Train/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Asus_motherboard_solid_capacitor.jpg .
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 17 Circuits

Chapter Outline

A circuit just means a completed loop. An electrical circuit can be as simple as a few wires held in place by hand. As long as the electricity can flow in a loop, the circuit is complete. This chapter covers electrical current, voltage, resistors and resistivity, resistors in series and parallel, and measuring both voltage and current.

17.1 Electric Current

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how electric current is defined
- Solve problems involving electric current

Vocabulary

- **electric current:** A flow of charges under the influence of an electric field, such as between the terminals of a battery. The rate $I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t}$ at which charges flow within a conducting wire past any point in the wire.

Introduction

The term **electrical current** is familiar to most people. Many electrical devices have electrical specifications printed on them. **Figure** 17.1 shows a typical AC adapter ("plug") with its "specs." Can you guess what the terms 5 VDC and 500 mA printed on the adapter mean?

FIGURE 17.1
An electrical plug.

Electric Current

An electric current is a flow of charges under the influence of an electric field. A flow of charges can be established, for instance, between the terminals of a battery, as in **Figure** 17.2. The rate $I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t}$ at which charges flow within a conducting wire past any point in the wire is defined as the electric current.

The unit of current is $\frac{coulombs}{second}$ which is called the *ampere* or *amp* (named for the French physicist Andre'-Marie Ampere, 1775-1836), **Figure** 17.3.

The symbol A is used to represent the ampere. A rate of one coulomb per second is equivalent to one ampere: $\frac{1C}{1s} = 1A$

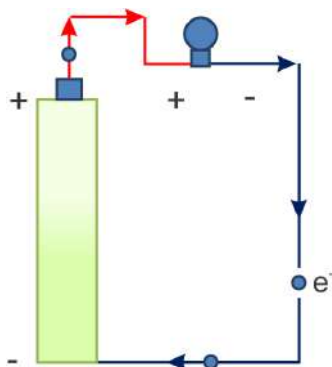



FIGURE 17.2

Figure 17.2 shows a flow of electrons (e^-) from the positive terminal of a battery through a lightbulb to the negative terminal of a battery.

FIGURE 17.3
Andre'-Marie Ampere

One ampere is a very large current. The current of 1 A can easily kill a person. In fact, about 0.20 A can kill rather easily. Even relatively small voltage can produce these currents, which is why care must always be taken when dealing with all electrical appliances and any electrical device that is plugged into a wall outlet. A typical 12-V car battery can also be dangerous. Under the right circumstances, it does not take a huge voltage to cause deadly currents.

It is common to express current in milliamperes 1 mA $= 10^{-3}$ A, or microamperes 1 ¯A $= 10^{-6}$ A.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ElectricCurrent/

Illustrative Example 17.4.1

A total of 7.9×10^{12} electrons move past a point in a conducting wire every 1.45 s. What is the average current in the wire?

Answer:

The total charge moving past the point is the product of the electric charge of an electron and the number of electrons moving past the point. The total charge is: $\rightarrow Q = \left(1.6 \times 10^{-19} \frac{C}{electron}\right)(7.9 \times 10^{12}\ electrons) = 12.6 \times 10^{-7} \rightarrow 13 \times 10^{-7}\ C$

The current is $I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{12.6 \times 10^{-7}}{1.45\ s} = 8.69 \times 10^{-7}\ A \rightarrow 0.87\ \mu A$.

17.2 Ohm's Law

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how conventional current is defined.
- Understand what is meant by electrical resistance.
- Understand how to solve problems using Ohm's law.

Vocabulary

- **Ohm's law**: $R = \frac{V}{I}$, meaning that resistance is equal to the proportion of velocity to current.

- **resistance**: The effect of the movement of electrons through a wire, which is not smooth.

Introduction

We discussed voltage and electrical current earlier. At that time, we took for granted that a wire connected to the terminals of a battery should conduct an electrical current. As we will see, there is a very important relationship between current I and potential difference V which we shall shortly discuss.

We begin with a few brief statements concerning batteries and current flow.

Batteries and Current

We often use the flow of water to model some of the properties of electrical current, although they are two very different things. Water may be stored in a tank just as electrical charge (and electrical energy) may be stored in a battery (or a capacitor).

The first battery was constructed in 1800 by the Italian physicist Allessandro Volta (1745-1827), **Figure** 17.4. This was the first device that provided a continuous flow of electricity. Prior to this, the only type of electrical current created in the laboratory was the rapid discharge of an electrical spark. Volta's invention sparked the beginning of a new age.

Volta's basic battery construction has not changed in the last two hundred years. Batteries are made of two different metals which react with a liquid called an electrolyte, and cause one of the metals to become positively charged and the other to become negatively charged. We refer to the positive and negative parts of the battery as the *terminals* of the battery. If one end of a conducting wire is connected to the positive terminal of a battery and the other end is connected to the negative terminal of the battery, a direct current will exist in the wire because of the potential difference between the terminals. The symbol DC is often used when referring to direct current.

FIGURE 17.4
Alessandro Volta, inventor of the first battery

It was once assumed (incorrectly) that an electrical current in metals was a flow of positive charge. In spite of discovering the error, scientists have maintained that assumption. A positive flow of charge is referred to as conventional current flow. Diagrams showing conventional current have an arrow directed from the positive to the negative terminal of the battery (or whatever source is used to create a potential difference) as shown in **Figure** 17.5.

Figure 17.5 shows a simple electrical circuit with conventional current flow. An electrical circuit is a closed path that can conduct an electric current. An electrical component of some sort is located between the two terminals of the battery in an electrical circuit. In the case of **Figure** 17.5, there is a light bulb.

The left side of the figure is shown in red, indicating that this terminal of the circuit is at a potential of 6 V. The right terminal of the figure is shown in blue, indicating that this side of the circuit is at a potential of 0 V. It is only the potential difference of the battery that is meaningful. Assigning one terminal a potential of 6 V and the other terminal is 0 V is arbitrary. We could just as well, for example, assign potentials of 20 V and 26 V to the negative and positive terminals of the battery, respectively (though this would be needlessly confusing).

Check Your Understanding

a. A small lightbulb has a 6V potential difference applied to it, as shown in **Figure** 17.5. If the wire at point a in the figure is disconnected from the positive terminal of the battery and reconnected to the negative terminal of the battery, and the wire at point b is disconnected from the negative terminal of the battery and reconnected to the positive terminal of the battery (that is, the wires are reversed), will the bulb remain lighted?

Answer: Yes. As long as a potential difference remains across the bulb, the bulb remains lit.

b. Is the current flowing through the bulb in the same direction?

Answer: No. If the wires are reversed, the direction of current is reversed.

Figure 17.6 shows a toy motor with the red wire connected to the positive terminal of the battery and the yellow wire connected to the negative terminal of the battery. When the wires on the battery are reversed as in **Figure** 17.7, the motor will spin in the opposite direction. If the motor were connected to the axle of a car, the wheels on the car would turn in the opposite direction.

The potential difference, which is responsible for the current, is often likened to water pressure.

The pressure in a water storage tank makes it possible for the water to be transferred to connecting pipes and eventually to its destination. A battery puts forth "electrical pressure" called potential difference, or voltage. The voltage is responsible for conveying an electrical current.

Care should be taken in extending mechanical analogies, like flowing water, to a "flow" of electricity, as explained below.

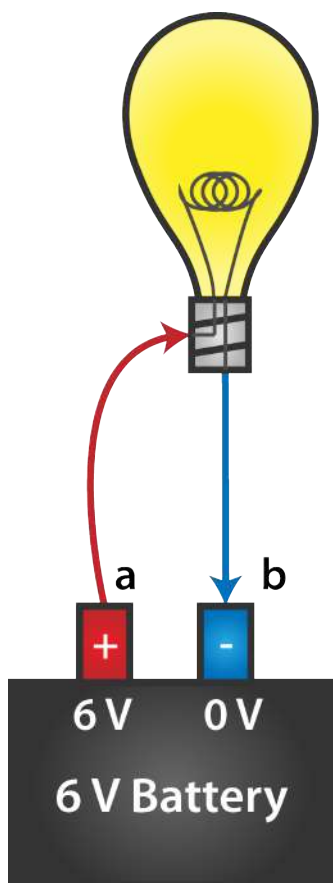



FIGURE 17.5
Conventional current flow: A positive flow of current through a light bulb.

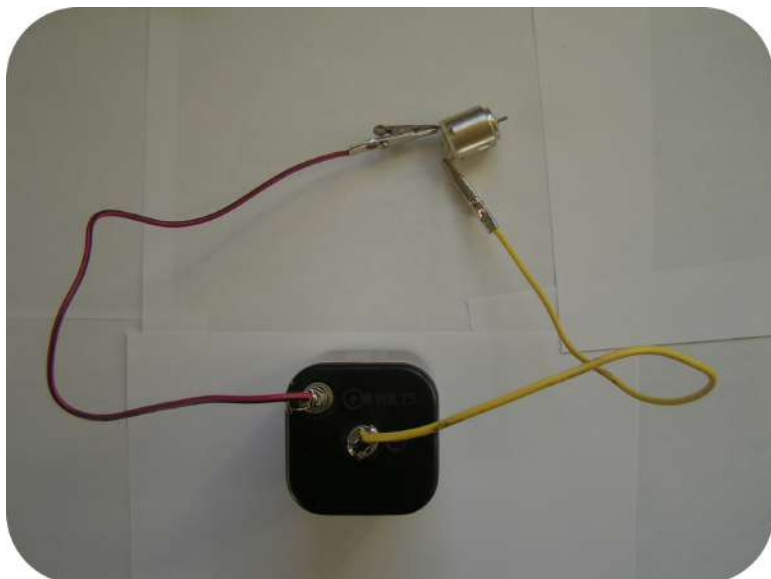



FIGURE 17.6
The red wire is connected to the positive terminal of the battery.

Water pipes may initially be full or empty of water. If the pipes are full, then the pressure is conveyed very quickly and water at any point within a pipe flows. If the pipes are empty, then there will be a noticeable time delay before the water can move from the tank through the pipes to its destination. Think of a long garden hose. On the other

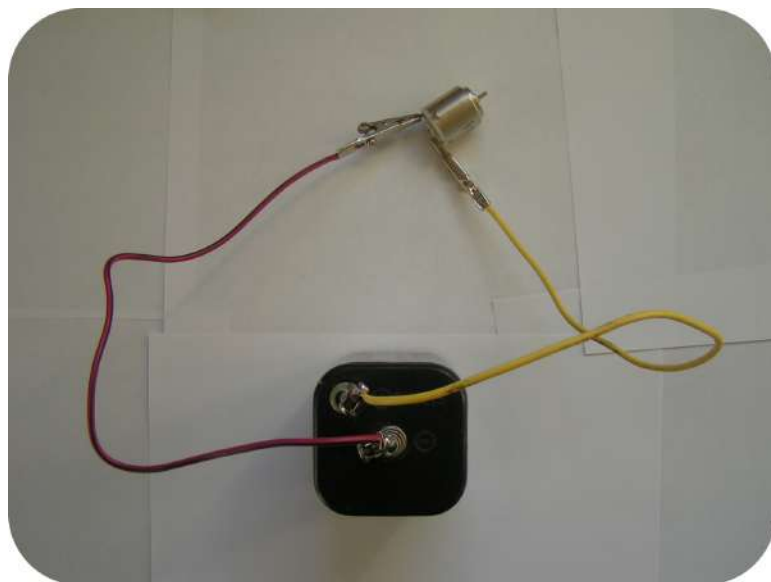



FIGURE 17.7
The red wire is now connected to the negative terminal of the battery; the motor runs in the opposite direction.

hand, electrical wires are never “empty.” There is no such thing as a conducting wire that is empty of electrons

Our analogy can be continued, however, with friction. An electrical current, just as a flow of water, encounters **resistance**. When potential difference is applied to the ends of a wire, electrons are compelled to move through the wire. But their movement does not happen in an orderly fashion like a troop of marching soldiers. Their movement is more like that of people running through a crowded train station. The effect produces an analogue to mechanical friction called electrical resistance.

Ohm’s Law

It was a French physicist Georg Simon Ohm (1787-1854) **Figure** 17.8, who first proposed that a current I is directly proportional to a potential difference (voltage) $V \rightarrow I \propto V$ for metallic conductors, as long as the conductor does not heat up too much. Otherwise, the relationship does not remain linear. Ohm’s law is, therefore, only applicable if heating does not alter the characteristics of the circuit. In general, heating does have an effect on most circuits, and thus Ohm’s law has a very limited range of usefulness. **Ohm’s law** is not really a law, if by “law” we mean a universally correct brief statement explaining a broad expanse of phenomena.

FIGURE 17.8
Georg Simon Ohm

An electric current, as mentioned above, is subject to resistance. If the voltage remains constant and the resistance increases by a certain factor, the electric current decreases by the same factor. The current I is, therefore, inversely proportional to the resistance R

$I \propto \frac{1}{R}$

Ohm, however, concluded that

$I \propto V$

Combining the two proportions, we have

$I \propto \frac{V}{R}$

If the resistance is defined with units $\frac{V}{A}$, it can be shown that the proportionality constant is one. Therefore,

$I = \frac{V}{R}$

Ohm's law can then be stated as $R = \frac{V}{I}$

In honor of Georg Simon Ohm the unit of resistance is called the ohm. The ohm is represented using the Greek symbol capital omega Ω.

$1\ \Omega = \frac{1\ V}{1\ A} = \frac{1(V*s)}{1\ C}$

If a potential difference of one volt produces an electric current of one ampere, then a resistance of one ohm is present in the circuit.

Check Your Understanding

Find the current in an electrical circuit with a voltage source of 12 V and a resistance of 30 Ω.

Answer: $V = IR \rightarrow I = \frac{V}{R} = \frac{12\ V}{30\ \Omega} = 0.40\ A$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/OhmsLaw/

17.3 Resistivity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to solve problems involving resistivity.
- Understand how to read the resistor code.

Vocabulary

- **resistivity**: A constant of proportionality which depends upon the material used to make the wire, expressed in units $\Omega * m$.

- **resistor:** Electric components whose only purpose is to add resistance to a circuit.
- **semiconductors**: Materials that fall between the two extremes of conductors and insulators. Semiconductors permit a limited amount of electron flow and are very useful in constructing electronic devices.
- **superconductors**: Materials that lose resistance when cooled to near absolute zero.

Introduction

If you have ever been in an electrical supply store, you may have noticed that some wires are very thin and some are very thick. The thickness (the diameter) of a wire is called the gauge of the wire. Wires with small gauge numbers have larger diameters than wires with large gauge numbers

Resistivity

The resistance of a given wire depends upon its cross-sectional area and its length. One wire that has twice the diameter of another wire has four times the cross-sectional area of the smaller wire. It is four times easier for the electrons to travel through a wire that has twice the diameter of another wire. Conversely, the longer the wire is, the more resistance the electrons encounter. It is easier to move through a short tunnel filled with people than a long tunnel filled with people!

We can sum up these statements mathematically as follows:

The resistance R is directly proportional to the length L of a wire and inversely proportional to the cross-sectional area A of the wire $\rightarrow R = \rho \frac{L}{A}$, where ρ, a constant of proportionality, is called the **resistivity** which depends upon the material used to make the wire.

The units of resistivity ρ are $\Omega * m$.

A quantity called the conductivity expressed using the Greek letter sigma σ is defined as the reciprocal of the resistivity $\sigma = \frac{1}{\rho}$. The greater the conductivity is, the smaller amount of resistance in the circuit; and therefore, the greater current in the circuit.

The resistivity is determined experimentally. When the same voltage is applied to wires of different materials, but of identical cross section and length, different currents are measured.

For example, under identical conditions, a copper wire conducts almost 60 times the current than a nichrome wire (an alloy of nickel, iron, and chromium). Which wire do you think has greater resistivity?

Table 17.1 gives resistivity values for some common conducting materials at $20°C$. Resistivity values are sensitive to changes in temperature and differ for different materials.

TABLE 17.1:

Material	Resistivity, $\rho\ (\Omega * m) \times 10^{-8}$
Silver	1.59
Copper	1.68
Gold	2.44
Aluminum	2.65
Tungsten	5.60
Nichrome	100

Illustrative Example 18.2.1

A copper wire is to replace an aluminum wire of length $1.20 \times 10^{-1}\ m$ in an electrical circuit. The copper wire has a cross-sectional area which is 80% of the aluminum wire. The resistance of the circuit must remain the same. What length of copper wire must be used? Assume the temperature remains constant at $20°C$ in the circuit.

Answer:

$R_{aluminum} = \rho_{al} \frac{L_{al}}{A_{al}}$ and $R_{copper} = \rho_c \frac{L_c}{A_c}$

Since the resistances must be equal,

$$\rho_{al} \frac{L_{al}}{A_{al}} = \rho_c \frac{L_c}{A_c} \to L_c = \frac{\rho_{al}}{\rho_c} \frac{A_c}{A_{al}} L_{al} \to$$
$$L_c = \left(\frac{2.65 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega * m}{1.68 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega * m} \right) \left(\frac{0.80\ A_{al}}{A_{al}} \right) (1.20 \times 10^{-1}\ m) = 1.514 \times 10^{-1}\ m = 1.51\ cm$$

Semiconductors

As we mentioned earlier, charges move readily in conductors and do not move at all in insulators (nonconductors). There are materials, however, that fall in between these two extremes. They are called **semiconductors**. Semiconductors permit a limited amount of electron flow and are very useful in constructing electronic devices. Common semiconductors are silicon, germanium, and carbon. The resistors discussed below are often made from carbon. Semiconductors are used in the construction of electronic components such as transistors and diodes, to name just two.

Superconductors

In the early 20th century, it was discovered that when certain materials were cooled to near absolute zero, they lost all their resistance. Materials displaying this attribute are called **superconductors**. Superconductors hold great

promise in producing devices that require much less energy since electrical resistance, as we will see in this chapter, converts a good deal of electrical energy into unwanted heat. Of course, the practical use of superconductors is very limited by the necessity to keep them at extremely low temperatures. However, some advances have been made in recent years. Scientists have learned to manufacture materials that become superconducting at temperatures as high as 160 $K(-113°C)$.

Resistors

Every electrical device (and every circuit) has some amount of resistance. There are, however, circumstances when additional resistance is required in a circuit. Resistance can help protect delicate circuitry by limiting the current through a particular segment (branch) of a circuit.

In order to add the required resistance to a circuit, electronic components are made called **resistors** (adding resistance is not their only purpose). Resistors have resistances that range from one ohm to millions of ohms. **Figure** 17.9 shows some common resistors found in electronic equipment. The colorful bands on the resistors are a code used to designate the amount of resistance of the resistor. For example, the fifth resistor from the left in **Figure** 17.9 has a sequence of colors: Green, Blue, Green, Silver: The first two colors represent 56 (see code) the third color represents the multiplier Green $= \times 100\ k$. Therefore the resistor has $56 \times 100\ k$ ohms of resistance or $5.6 \times 10^6\ \Omega$. The last color represents the tolerance of the resistor. This is a measure of accuracy. Silver is 10%, which means that the actual resistance of the resistor lies somewhere between ten percent above to ten percent below the stated value of $5.6 \times 10^6\ \Omega$.

$\rightarrow 5.6 \times 10^6\ \Omega \pm (5.6 \times 10^5\ \Omega) \rightarrow 6,160,000 - 5.040,000 \rightarrow 6.2 \times 10^6\ \Omega * 5.0 \times 10^6\ \Omega$

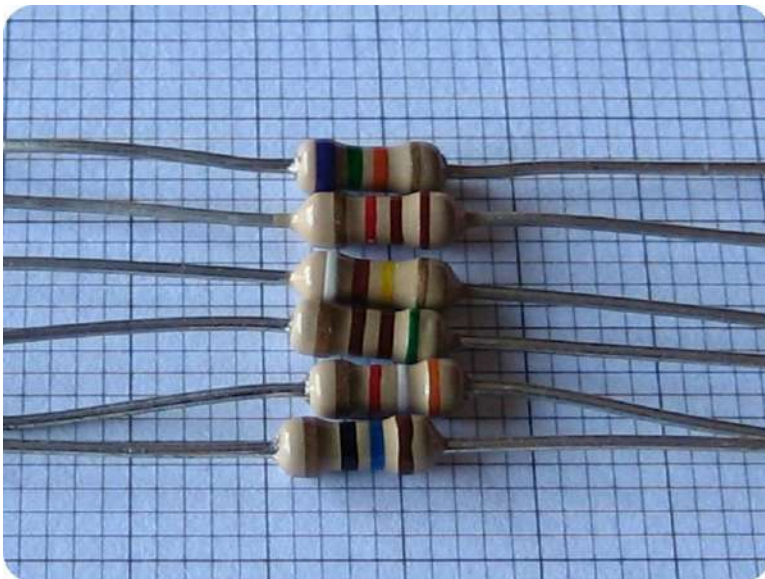



FIGURE 17.9
Common resistors.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/4BandColorCodeForResistors/

Resistor color code

First and second color band		Third color band
Black	0	Black × 1
Brown	1	Brown × 10
Red	2	Red × 100
Orange	3	Orange × 1k
Yellow	4	Yellow × 10k
Green	5	Green × 100k
Blue	6	Blue × 1 meg
Violet	7	Silver ÷ 100
Gray	8	Gold ÷ 10
White	9	

Fourth color bank: Tolerance gold 5%, silver 10%, none 20%

FIGURE 17.10
Resistor codes

17.4 Resistors in Series and Parallel

Objectives

The student will:

- Be able to distinguish between a series and parallel circuit.
- Solve problems involving circuits with resistors.

Vocabulary

- **Joule heating:** The rate at which the energy (power) is dissipated through a resistor.
- **parallel circuit:** A circuit in which the current has more than one pathway available.
- **series circuit:** A circuit in which the current has just one pathway between the positive and negative terminal of the battery.

Introduction

An electrician who "wires a house" and an electrical engineer who is charged with constructing a complicated piece of electronic circuitry must both understand how to read a schematic. A schematic is a diagram showing the locations of the electrical components in electrical circuits. Schematics are usually very involved diagrams showing many different electrical elements interacting with each other. Our goal in this section will be to analyze a small part of what might be included in large schematic diagrams; we'll refer to these diagrams as circuit diagrams.

Symbols

Circuit diagrams consist of symbols which represent power sources (we will use batteries), resistors, capacitors (see Chapter Applications of Electrical Energy) and many other components.

The symbol for a battery: The longer line is taken as the positive terminal of the battery.

The symbol for a resistor:

The symbol for a capacitor:

The symbol for a switch:

Assumptions Regarding Wires and Batteries

The wires used to connect the elements of a circuit are usually assumed to have much smaller resistance than the elements themselves. We will assume that the resistances of the wires are negligible unless otherwise stated.

Voltage Drop

The phrase voltage drop is used when a current passes through a resistor. Let us "follow" the conventional current from the positive terminal of the battery where the potential is highest (understanding that the current in an electrical circuit is established almost instantaneously). If a current passes through a resistor, there must be a drop in potential across the resistor. The drop in potential is analogous to the drop in gravitational potential for a series of descending stairs. The gravitational potential of the highest stair is similar to the potential at the positive battery terminal. Each descending stair signifies another drop in potential, analogous to a sequence of resistors over which the voltage drops as the current moves from one resistor to another. The "ground level" is the "negative side" of the battery-that is, the lower-potential terminal.

Resistors in Series

Resistors are connected in series if the current through them is the same, as shown in **Figure** 17.11. If any one element in a series circuit fails (or is no longer capable of conducting current), none of the other elements in the series circuit will conduct current either. **Figure** 17.11 shows two resistors in series. Notice how the current has no choice but to flow through each resistor.

Computing the Equivalent Resistance of a Series Circuit

Figure 17.12 shows **Figure** 17.11 with a $12V$ battery and with a resistor of $R_1 = 10.0\ \Omega$ and a resistor of $R_2 = 6.0\ \Omega$. The left side of the circuit (in red) is at a potential of $12V$. There is a voltage drop across R_1 (from red to orange)

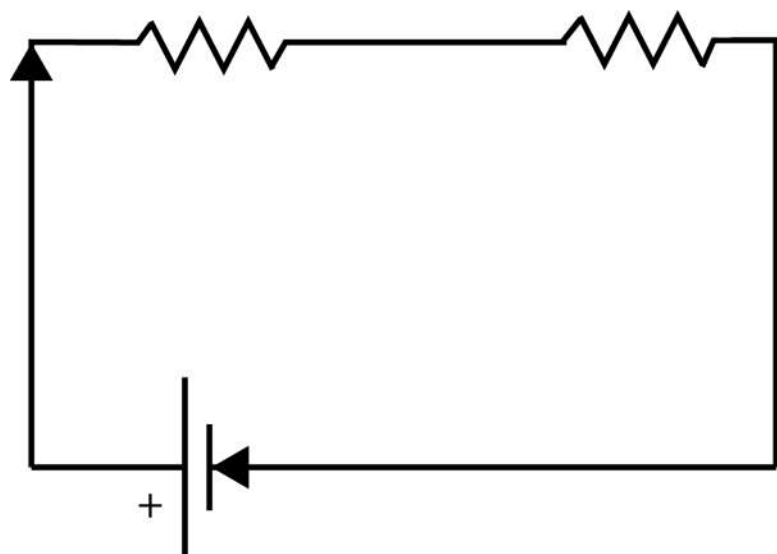



FIGURE 17.11

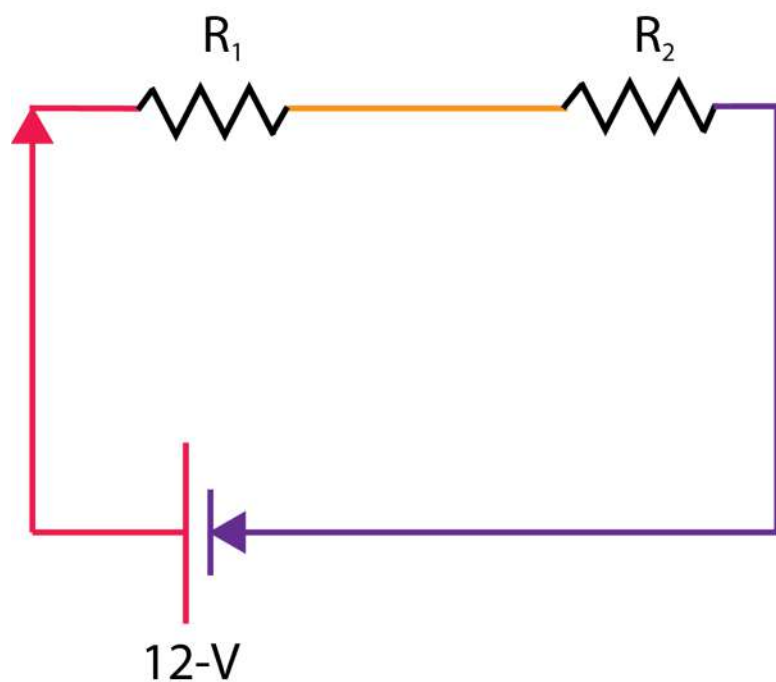



FIGURE 17.12

and another voltage drop across R_2 (from orange to purple). The voltage drop across both resistors (red to purple) is $12V$. What are the voltage drops across each resistor?

Using Ohm's law, we can find the voltage drop across each resistor.

$V_1 = IR_1 = I(10.0\ \Omega)$ and $V_2 = IR_2 = I(6.0\ \Omega)$

The total voltage drop must be

$$V_1 + V_2 \rightarrow IR_1 + IR_2 = I(R_1 + R_2) \rightarrow$$
$$V_{total} = I(R_{equivalent}) \rightarrow R_1 + R_2 = 10.0\ \Omega + 6.0\ \Omega = 16.0\ \Omega$$

In general, the total or equivalent resistance of a series circuit is the sum of the individual resistors.

$R_{series\ equivalent} = R_1 + R_2 + \ldots$

The circuit in **Figure** 17.12 is equivalent to a circuit with one 16 Ω resistor.

The total current in the circuit is

$I = \frac{V}{R_{equivalent}} = \frac{12\ V}{16.0\ \Omega} = 0.75\ A$

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ResistorsInSeries/

Resistors in Parallel

In a **parallel circuit** the current has more than one pathway available. The current encounters one or more junctions. A junction is a point at which two or more wires connect. Resistors will not necessarily have the same current passing through them. The voltage drop across each of the resistors in parallel, however, must be the same.

Electrical devices connected in parallel (say, two light bulbs) permit one bulb to burn out and the other to remain lit. This is how homes are wired. If you've ever experienced the consequences of a burned-out fuse or tripped a circuit breaker (we'll discuss these in greater detail in the next section) then you're familiar with some electrical appliances remaining on, while others are off. The appliances (and lights) that won't turn on must be in series with a failed part of the circuitry.

Figure 17.13 shows two resistors connected in parallel. The current I_1 at junction A, flows through the branch of the circuit containing the $R_1 = 10.0\ \Omega$ resistor. The remaining current I_2 continues on into the branch containing the $R_2 = 6.0\ \Omega$ resistor. The total current must be equal to the sum of currents I_1 and I_2, as shown in **Figure** 17.13. Otherwise, the charge would accumulate or disappear at a junction and this would violate the law of conservation of charge. What goes into a junction I_{in} must come out of a junction I_{out}.

$I_{total} = I_1 + I_2$ or $I_{in} = I_{out}$

Notice that the voltage drop across each resistor (from red to purple) is 12 volts.

Computing the Equivalent Resistance of a Parallel Circuit

Keeping in mind that the voltage drops are the same, we use $V = IR$.

$V = I_1 R_1 \rightarrow I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1}$

$V = I_2 R_2 \rightarrow I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2}$

But $I_{total} = I_1 + I_2 \rightarrow \frac{V}{R_1} + \frac{V}{R_2} = V\left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}\right)$

And, $I_{total} = \frac{V}{R_{equivalent}} \rightarrow V\left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \rightarrow \frac{1}{R_{equivalent}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}$.

In general, the reciprocal of the equivalent resistance for a parallel circuit is the sum of the reciprocals of the individual resistances.

A little algebra will show that for two resistors the total, or equivalent, resistance is

$R_{parallel\ equivalent} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$.

The total resistance in **Figure** 17.13 is

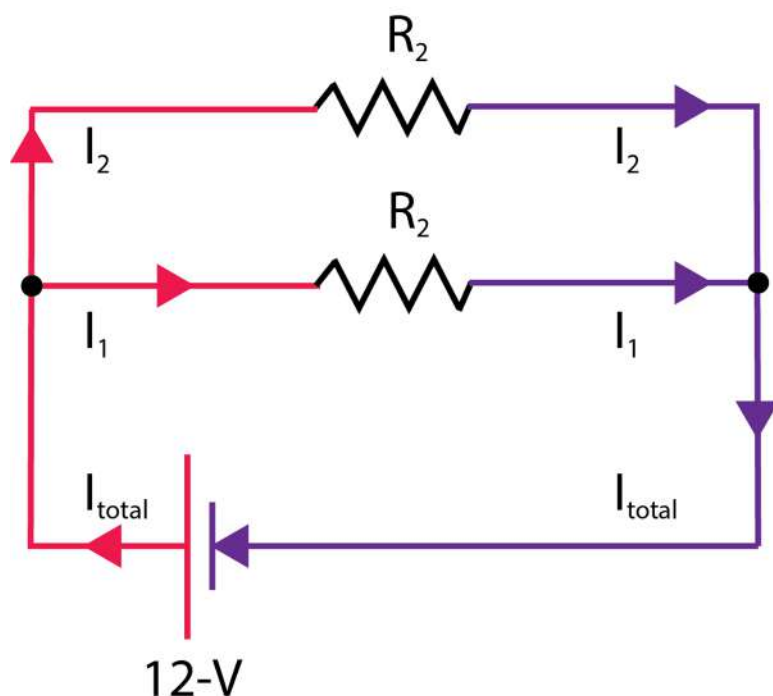



FIGURE 17.13

$R_{parallel\ equivalent} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1+R_2} = \frac{(10.0\ \Omega)(6.0\ \Omega)}{10.0\ \Omega+6.0\ \Omega} = \frac{60\ \Omega^2}{16.0\ \Omega} = 3.75\ \Omega.$

The circuit is equivalent to a circuit with one 3.75 Ω resistor.

The total current in the circuit is then:

$I = \frac{V}{R_{equivalent}} = \frac{12.0\ V}{3.75\ \Omega} = 3.20\ A.$

The equivalent resistance for resistors in a **series circuit** is always greater than the resistance of any one resistor in the circuit. Conversely, the equivalent resistance for resistors in a parallel circuit is always smaller than the resistance of any one resistor in the circuit.

In a series circuit, the current has but one pathway from the positive to the negative terminal of the battery. It's comparable to a traffic jam where there is no alternate route. The traffic moves very slowly. If the current is reduced, it is a sign that the total resistance in the circuit has increased.

Conversely, if an alternate route becomes available, the traffic moves faster, since there is more than one pathway available. If the current increases, it is a sign that the total resistance in the circuit has decreased. The latter case is comparable to a parallel circuit where there are multiple branches through which the current can travel.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ResistorsInParallel/

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Dx3njY0vUZM

Check Your Understanding

1. What are the voltage drops across resistors R_1 and R_2 in **Figure** 17.12?

Answer: The resistances are in series. The total voltage across the entire circuit is 12 volts. The sum of voltage drop V_1 and of voltage drop V_2 must equal 12 volts. The current through each resistor is the same (see above). The voltage drop across R_1 is $V_1 = IR_1$. The voltage drop across R_2 is $V_2 = IR_2$.

$$V_1 = IR_1 = (0.75\ A)(10.0\ \Omega) = 7.5\ V$$
$$V_2 = IR_2 = (0.75\ A)(6.0\ \Omega) = 4.5\ V$$

Notice that the sum of the voltage drops is 12 volts.

Note that series circuits are sometimes referred to as voltage dividers. Resistors provide for different voltages in different parts of the circuit, thus permitting for an array of voltage sources throughout the circuit.

2. What is the current in each branch of **Figure** 17.13?

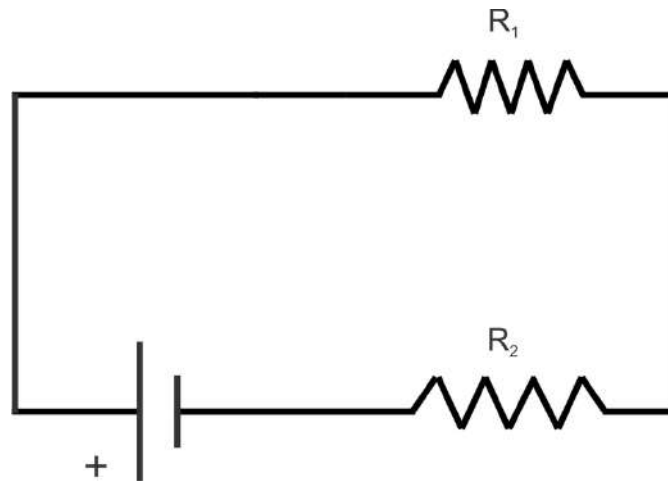
Answer: The resistors are in parallel. The voltage drop across each resistor is 12 volts. The sum of the currents in each resistor must equal the total current, 3.2 A (see above). The current in resistor R_1 is $I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1}$. The current in resistor R_2 is $I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2}$.

$I_1 = \frac{V}{R_1} = \frac{12\ V}{10.0\ \Omega} = 1.2\ A$

$I_2 = \frac{V}{R_2} = \frac{12\ V}{6.0\ \Omega} = 2.0\ A$

Notice that the sum of the currents is 3.2 A.

Note that parallel circuits are sometimes referred to as current dividers. In this case, resistors can provide different currents in different parts of the circuit.

3. Are the resistors in the circuit below connected in series or parallel?

Answer: Do not be fooled by the intentionally confusing look of the circuit. The current has only one path through both resistors. The resistors are therefore in series.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/battery-resistor-circuit

Electrical Power

We used the term "power" earlier, when we discussed the rate at which energy is used or produced. The name for the unit of power is watt. Perhaps you've seen the word "watt" on a package of incandescent light bulbs (perhaps 40-Watt, or 60-Watt). That number indicates the power consumption of the light bulb. A 40-W light bulb, for example, draws from the electric grid 40 Joules of energy every second.

The average power was defined earlier as the rate at which work is done, that is,

$Power = \frac{work}{time} \rightarrow P = \frac{W}{t}$ Equation A.

Recall that the work W done in moving a charge q across a potential difference V is

$W = qV$.

Substituting qV for work in Equation A, we have $P = \frac{W}{t} = \frac{qV}{t} = \frac{q}{t}V = IV \rightarrow P_{electric\ power} = IV$ Recall that charge per unit time is current $\frac{q}{t} = I$ the current.

Thus,

$1\ W = 1\ A * V\ or\ 1\frac{C*V}{s}$

In the case of the "plug" mentioned earlier, the power output is the result of a steady (not alternating) voltage of $7.5\ V$, which produces a direct current of $200\ mA$ $(200 \times 10^{-3}\ A)$.

The power is therefore

$P = IV = (200 \times 10^{-3}\ A)(7.5\ V) = 1.5\ W$.

Check Your Understanding

A 60-W incandescent light bulb is powered by a typical "120V AC" household electrical outlet. What average current passes through the bulb?

Note: 120 VAC is an average value.

Answer: $P = IV \rightarrow 60\ W = I(120\ V) \rightarrow I = \frac{60\ W}{120\ V} = 0.50\ A$

Illustrative Example 17.4.2

a. Utility companies charge customers in units of kilowatt-hours (kWh). Do utility companies charge for energy consumption or power consumption?

Answer:

Unit analysis gives

$kWh = \frac{energy}{time}time = energy$

b. How much energy is 1.0 kWh?

Answer:

$1\ KW = 1000\ W = \frac{1000\ J}{s}$

$1\ H = 60\,\text{min} \times \frac{60\ s}{1\ min} = 3,600\ s \rightarrow$

$1\ kWh = \frac{1000\ J}{s} \times 3,600\ s = 3.6 \times 10^6\ J$.

c. What is the cost for running a 1,500-W heater for 10 hours, if the cost per kWh is 12 cents?

Answer:

$1,500\ W = 1.5\ kW$

Energy used equals: $E = kWh = 1.5\ kW \times 10\ H = 15\ kWh \rightarrow$

$15\ kWh \times \frac{\$0.12}{kWh} = \$1.80$

During a cold winter month, if this heater is used for 10 hours per day for an entire month, the cost is \$54.00 for the month, just for this one device!

Joule Heating

The equation $P = IV$ is true for any electrical device. We can therefore use this equation to compute the power dissipated through a resistor.

The rate at which the energy (power) is dissipated through a resistor is referred to as **Joule heating**.

Using the equation $V = IR$, the Joule heating for a resistor is $P = IV = I(IR) = I^2R$, assuming the resistance is constant, or $P = IV = \frac{V}{R}V = \frac{V^2}{R}$, assuming the resistance is constant.

The rate of energy transfer can be so high, that unless care is taken, a resistor will not be able to transfer the heat quickly enough to the air before overheating and burning out. Installing a resistor with a low power rating when one with a higher rating should have been used can ruin an expensive piece of equipment.

You can easily see the effect of Joule heating with an incandescent light bulb. It has a thin tungsten filament which heats ups very quickly. You don't want to touch an incandescent bulb even if it's only been turned on for a minute. Why? Because 90% of the energy used to light an incandescent bulb is given off as heat. Incandescent light bulbs are very inefficient (if you're interested in the light from the bulb and not the heat!). The Joule heating of energy-efficient light bulbs is considerably less, and therefore requires a smaller amount of energy to produce the same amount of light.

Illustrative Example 18.3.1

a. A 10Ω has $\frac{1}{4}$ W rating. Meaning, any power greater than this will burn the resistor out.

Will the resistor burn out if it is connected to a $6.0V$ battery?

Solution:

The current through the resistor must be found in order to answer the question. Using Ohm's law we have:

$V = IR \rightarrow 6.0\ V = I(10\ \Omega) \rightarrow I = \frac{6.0\ V}{10.\ \Omega} = 0.60\ A$

$P = IV = (0.60\ A)(6.0\ V) = 3.6\ W$

The resistor will definitely burn out.

b. What is the maximum current that the resistor can handle without burning out?

Answer:

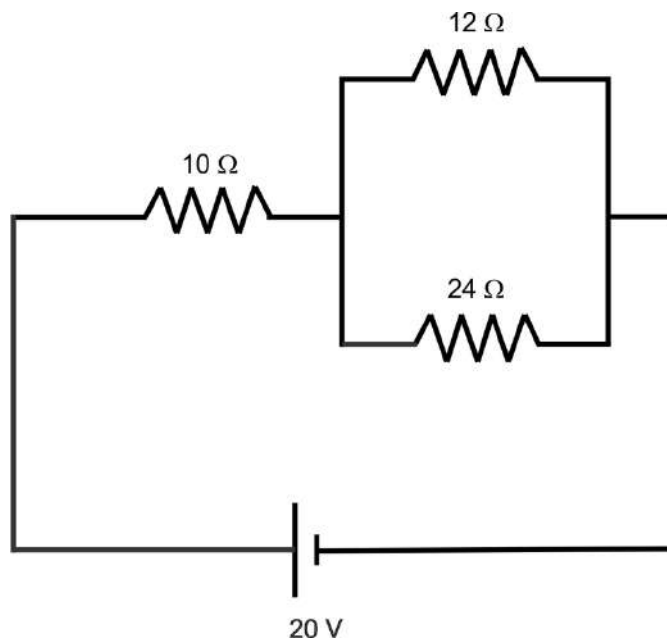
$P = I^2R \rightarrow I = \sqrt{\frac{P}{R}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.25\ W}{10\ \Omega}} = 0.158 = 0.16\ A$

c. What is the maximum voltage drop across the resistor?

Answer:

$V = IR = (0.158\ A)(10\ \Omega) = 1.58 \rightarrow 1.6\ V$

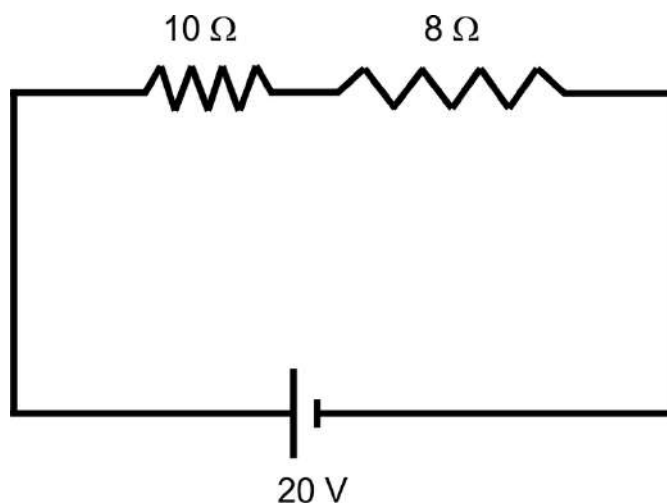
Illustrative Example 18.3.2

a. Determine the equivalent resistance of the circuit below.

Answer:

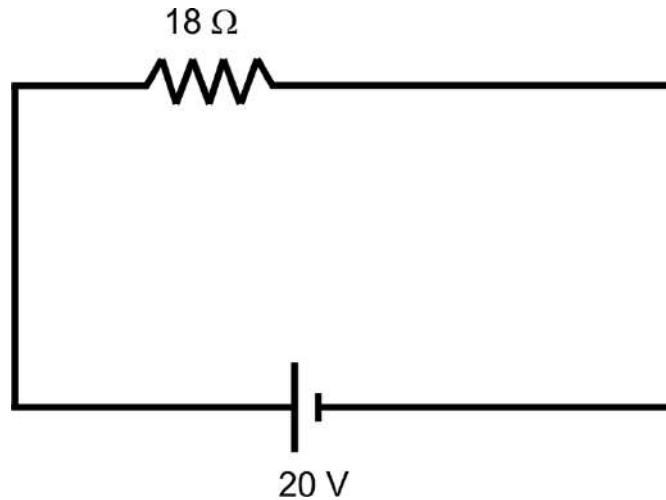
After the current passes through the 10Ω resistor, there is a junction in the circuit where the current splits up. The current I_{12} passes through the 12Ω resistor, and the current I_{24} passes through the 24Ω resistor. The 12Ω resistor and 24Ω resistor are in parallel and experience the same voltage drop.

The equivalent resistance for the parallel resistors is

$R_{equivalent} = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{(12\ \Omega)(24\ \Omega)}{12\ \Omega + 24\ \Omega} = 8\ \Omega$

The circuit can be redrawn as seen below.

The 10Ω resistor and the 8Ω resistor are in series. The equivalent resistance of the circuit is therefore,

$R_{equivalent} = 10\ \Omega + 8\ \Omega = 18\ \Omega$

The final circuit is drawn below.

b. What is the battery current in the circuit?

Answer:

$V = IR \rightarrow 20\ V = I(18\ \Omega) \rightarrow I_{total} = \frac{20\ V}{18\ \Omega} = \frac{10}{9}A$

c. What is the current through each resistor?

Answer:

The 10Ω resistor:

The current has not split up until after passing the 10Ω resistor, therefore:

$I_{total} = \frac{10}{9}A$

The 12Ω resistor:

We need to determine the voltage drop across the 12Ω resistor. This is done by determining the voltage drop across the 10Ω resistor.

$V_{10} = IR = \left(\frac{10}{9}A\right)(10\ \Omega) = \frac{100}{9}V$

The voltage drop across the 12Ω resistor must be $V_{12} = 20\ V - \frac{100}{9}V = \frac{80}{9}V$.

The current through the 12 Ω resistor is, therefore:

$V = IR \rightarrow \frac{80}{9}V = I_{12}(12\ \Omega) \rightarrow I_{12} = \frac{20}{27}A$

The 24Ω resistor:

We will solve this two ways:

1. Since we know the total current I_{total} in the circuit, and we know the current through the 12Ω resistor I_{12}:

$I_{total} = I_{12} + I_{24} \rightarrow I_{24} = \frac{10}{9}A - \frac{20}{27}A = \frac{10}{27}A$

2. The voltage drop across the 24Ω resistor, $\left(\frac{80}{9}V\right)$, is the same as the voltage drop across the 12Ω resistor since they are in parallel, therefore:

$V = IR \rightarrow \frac{80}{9}V = I_{24}(24\ \Omega) \rightarrow I_{24} = \frac{10}{27}A$

Notice that the current in the 24Ω resistor is half of that in the 12Ω resistor. Since the resistors are in parallel, the voltage drop across each resistor is the same, thus:

$I_{12}R_{12} = I_{24}R_{24} \rightarrow \frac{I_{12}}{I_{24}} = \frac{R_{24}}{R_{12}}$

Therefore, a resistor with twice the resistance will have half the current.

If a very large resistance is in parallel with a very small resistance, most of the current will pass through the small

resistance. This may present a danger to the electronic element with the small resistance from joule heating.

d. What joule heating does the 24Ω resistor experience?

$$P = IV = \left(\frac{10}{27}A\right)\left(\frac{80}{9}V\right) = \frac{800}{243}W = 3.29\ W\ or$$
$$P = I^2R = \left(\frac{10}{27}A\right)^2 (24\ \Omega) = \frac{2400}{729} \rightarrow \frac{800}{243}W = 3.29\ W$$

Summarizing Two Important Results for Analyzing Circuits

Kirchhoff's Laws

1. The sum of the currents entering any junction must equal the sum of the currents leaving any junction.

2. The sum of the potential changes around any closed circuit loop must equal zero.

The first is a statement of charge conservation and the second is a statement of the conservation of energy.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ByvywQ92fdw

Capacitors in Electrical Circuits

In an earlier discussion, we mentioned that capacitors can store and release energy. A camera flash was given as an example of a discharge of energy by a capacitor.

Figure 17.14 shows a capacitor C in a circuit charged by a battery.

The capacitor becomes fully charged (not instantly, of course) after the switch $S1$ is closed. The time for the capacitor to fully charge depends upon the capacitance of the capacitor and the resistor R in the circuit. When the capacitor is fully charged, the current will cease, and the potential difference between the plates of the capacitor will equal the voltage of the battery, V.

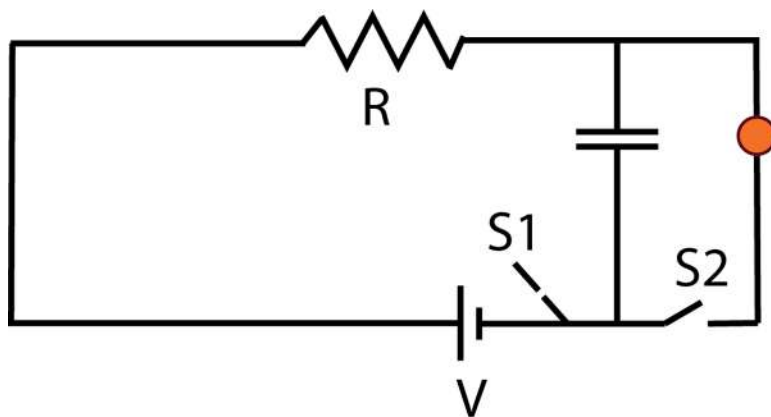



FIGURE 17.14

If the switch $S1$ is now open, disconnecting the battery from the capacitor, and the switch $S2$ is closed, the capacitor will discharge through the lamp L. The lamp will initially glow very bright and then begin to dim as the current from the capacitor diminishes. This is the way a camera flash operates.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CapacitorsInCircuits/

17.5 Measuring Current and Voltage

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how an ammeter is used.
- Understand how a voltmeter is used.

Vocabulary

- **ammeter:** A device used to measure currents.

- **voltmeter:** A device used to measure voltages.

Introduction

There are two basic devices used to measure the currents and voltages of electrical circuits. The **ammeter** is used to measure currents and a **voltmeter** is used to measure voltages.

The Ammeter

An ammeter is always inserted in series with other electronic components, since it is used to measure the current in a circuit.

Figure 17.15 shows two ammeters A_1 *and* A_2 reading the current through two different parts of the circuit.

Ammeter A_1 reads the battery current through the circuit. Since **Figure** 17.15 is identical to the diagram of Example 18.3.2, the ammeter reads a current of $A_1 = \frac{10}{9}A$..

Ammeter A_2 reads the current through the 12Ω resistor: $A_2 = \frac{20}{27}A$.

Ammeters must have a very small resistance. Otherwise, they would add a significant amount of resistance to the circuit and affect the very current they are meant to measure. It is very important not to connect an ammeter in parallel in a circuit. As stated above, a small resistance in such circumstances draws a large current. The ammeter may well be damaged from the resulting joule heating.

The Voltmeter

A voltmeter is always connected in parallel with other electronic components since it is used to measure the potential difference across a circuit element.

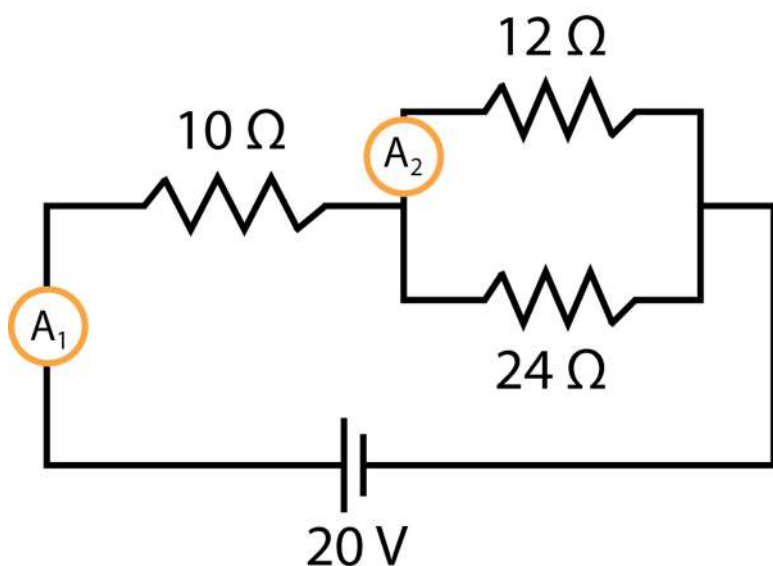



FIGURE 17.15

Figure 17.16 shows two voltmeters. Voltmeter $1(V_1)$ is reading the potential difference across the 10Ω resistor, and the Voltmeter $2(V_2)$ is reading the potential difference across the 24Ω resistor.

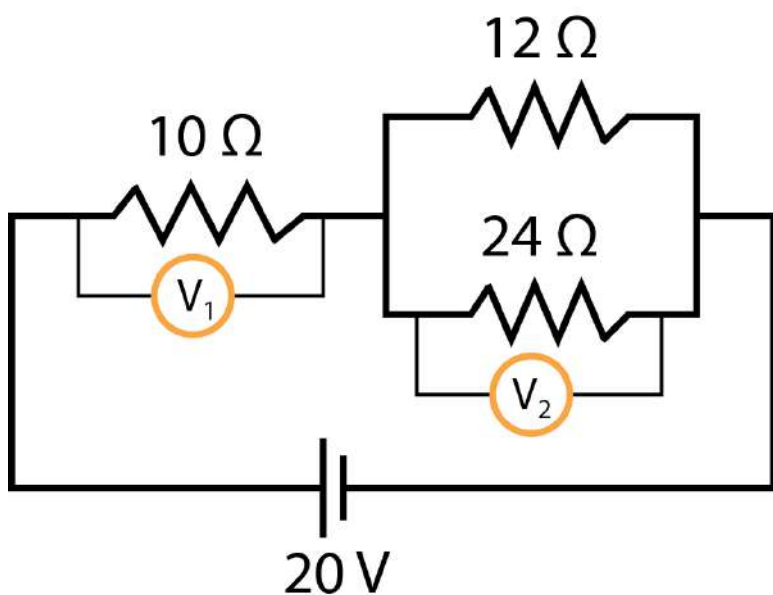



FIGURE 17.16

Voltmeter V_1 reads $V_1 = \frac{100}{9}V$ and Voltmeter V_2 reads $V_2 = \frac{80}{9}V$. See Example 18.3.2.

A voltmeter must have a very high resistance, which means it draws a very small amount of current from the battery and therefore does not add a substantial amount of current to the circuit while performing its task. That way, the voltmeter is able to read the voltage across an electronic component without affecting the circuit. If a voltmeter were placed in series in a circuit, it would not be in danger of burning out like an ammeter in parallel, but it would seriously reduce the amount of current in the circuit, and be of no use.

Electrical Safety

What would happen if a wire were connected to the positive terminal and the negative terminals of a battery? The resistance of a typical wire is very small and therefore a huge current would result. The battery would soon discharge and become useless. However, there is also the chance that the Joule heating of the wire may cause an electrical fire. The insulation covering the wire could melt and then perhaps burn. The battery may even explode!

A situation where the positive and negative terminals of a power source are directly connected or a component of a circuit is bypassed, is called an electrical short or *a* short circuit

There are times in a household when too many electrical appliances are connected to a circuit and draw too much current. This also can cause too much heating in the wires, which may lead to an electrical fire. To protect against too much current (amperage) in the circuit, fuses or circuit breakers are placed in series within the circuit. Fuses enclosed in glass, which were once used in home service panels, had a thin wire that melted if a certain amount of current was going through (usually, 15 A or 20 A). Most automobiles fuses are still enclosed in glass.

All new buildings today are equipped with circuit breakers. They are much more convenient than the older glass-enclosed fuses, which needed to be replaced once they burned out. Circuit breakers use an electromagnetic switch, opening the circuit when there is too much current. Circuit breakers can be flipped back into the proper position and the current will flow once more. Nothing needs to be replaced.

Another very important safety precaution is making sure that an electrical circuit is grounded. A circuit that is grounded provides a path for current from the metallic casing of an electrical appliance to, literally, the ground (or metal connected to the ground).

If you look at most electrical power cords, you'll see three prongs. One prong is at an average potential of 120 V (the live wire), the other at 0 V (the neutral wire). These two prongs provide for a potential difference of 120 V in order for an appliance to draw current. The third prong (the ground wire) is not a part of the circuit. It is connected to the metal casing of the appliance and to ground. Under normal conditions, the third prong carries no current.

An electrical short occurs when the intended path of the current bypasses the appliance and goes directly back to the voltage source, or directly to ground. For example, if the wire connected to the 120 V prong loses insulation and comes into contact with the casing of an appliance, anyone who touches the appliance provides a shortened path for the current back to ground, unless the appliance is grounded by the third prong. If the appliance is properly grounded, the short circuit will now be between the casing and the ground, and the person will be protected.

1. Electric current is defined as the rate at which charges flow within a conducting wire past any point in the wire the $I \to I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t}$

2. An ampere (A) is defined as a $\frac{coulomb}{second}$.

3. Georg Simon Ohm first proposed that a current I was directly proportional to a potential difference V for metal conductors as long as the temperature of the wire did not increase substantially. Under the same conditions, the current is inversely proportional to the resistance. Combining these results we have

$V = IR$, which is often referred to as Ohm's Law

4. The *resistivity* is a measure of the resistance of a material. For wires, the resistivity is directly proportional to the length L of the wire and inversely proportional to the cross-sectional area A of the wire. The constant of proportionality ρ is known as the resistivity of the material.

$R = \rho \frac{L}{A}$

5. The conductivity σ of a material is the reciprocal of the resistivity

$\sigma = \frac{1}{\rho}$

6. The equivalent resistance of resistors in series is

$R_{equivalent} = R_1 + R_2 + \ldots$

7. The equivalent resistance of resistors in parallel is

$\frac{1}{R_{equivalent}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \ldots$

8. In a series circuit all resistors have the same current and in a parallel circuit all resistors have the same potential drop.

9. For any electric circuit the electric power P is the product of current I and voltage V

$P = IV$

7. Joule heating is the heat dissipated through a resistor. It is equal to the rate at which energy flows through the resistor.

$$P = IV \rightarrow P = I^2 R$$
$$P = IV \rightarrow P = \frac{V^2}{R}$$

10. Kirchhoff's laws are two statements useful in analyzing circuits.

1. The sum of the currents entering any junction must equal the sum of the currents leaving any junction.

2. The sum of the potential changes around any closed circuit loop must equal zero.

The first is a statement of charge conservation and the second is a statement of the conservation of energy.

The first is a statement of charge conservation and the second is a statement of the conservation of energy.

11. Ammeters are devices that measure the currents within a circuit. They are placed in series with a component in order to measure the current passing through it and have small resistances.

12. Voltmeters are devices that measure the voltages in a circuit. They must be placed in parallel with a component in order to measure the voltage drop across it and have large resistances.

17.6 References

1. Todd Huffman. http://www.flickr.com/photos/oddwick/4070611528/ . CC BY 2.0
2. Ray Dehler (Flickr: raybdbomb). http://www.flickr.com/photos/raybdbomb/2200741209/ . CC-BY 2.0
3. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
4. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Andre-marie-ampere2.jpg . public domain
5. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Alessandro_Volta.jpeg . Public Domain
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
9. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Georg_Simon_Ohm3.jpg . Public Domain
10. User:vald kliper/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Resistencias_250W_5%25_sobre_papel_milimetrado.JPG . Public Domain
11. . CK-12 Foundation .
12. . CK-12 Foundation .
13. . CK-12 Foundation .
14. . CK-12 Foundation .
15. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
19. . CK-12 Foundation .
20. . CK-12 Foundation .
21. . CK-12 Foundation .
22. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .
24. Jodi So. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 18 Magnetism

Chapter Outline

We are familiar with magnets mostly as devices to stick to a refrigerator, or perhaps as the inner working of a compass. Magnetic fields really are related to electricity. A permanent magnet like a refrigerator magnet or a compass needle creates a magnetic field from the inner motion of its electrons. However, any *moving* charge can create a magnetic field, however, small.

18.1 Magnetic Fields

Objectives

The student will:

- Know how to determine the direction of a permanent magnetic field.
- Know that a current-carrying wire creates a magnetic field.
- Know how to determine the direction of the magnetic field produced by a current-carrying wire.

Vocabulary

- **magnetic domains:** Certain regions of a material that align with the Earth's external magnetic field. These regions are responsible for the magnetic properties of the material.

- **magnetic poles:** The two end of a magnet, known as the north pole and the south pole. Like poles repel each other, and opposite poles attract each other. Magnetic poles always come in pairs.

- **magnetism:** Certain materials, because of their atomic structure, will have their atoms align parallel to an external magnetic field.

- **right-hand rule:** Used to determine the directio of the magnetic field around a wire. Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of the (conventional) current and then curl the fingers into a fist. The fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field around the wire.

Introduction

Magnets are common items in our daily lives. Playing around with some magnets, we can see some basic features:

- Magnets exert force on each other, as well as on certain metals.
- This force is strongest when they are touching, but also acts at a distance.
- Magnets can either attract or repel each other, depending on how they are held.

A bit of playing around with real magnets will show that there are two faces to the magnet. Held one way, two magnets attract each other, but if you flip one of them around, the magnets then repel each other. We call the two ends of the magnet the **magnetic poles**. Each magnet has a north pole and a south pole. Similar to electric charges, like poles repel and opposite poles attract.

Unlike electric charges, though, magnetic poles always come in pairs. Every magnet has one north pole and one south pole. If you break a magnet in half, each half will have its own pair of two poles.

Magnetic Compasses

The basic properties of magnets have been known since ancient times, based on observations of natural lodestones. The first person to describe a magnetic needle compass was the Chinese scientist Shen Kuo (1031–1095), who described that when a magnetic material is freely suspended, it tends to align itself in a north-south direction. Since magnets line up with each other, this fact led to the reasonable conclusion that the Earth itself behaves as a magnet. By convention, we define the north magnetic pole of a compass needle as the pole that points northward, and the south magnetic pole of a compass needle as the pole that points southwards.

In 1269, the Frenchman Pierre de Maricourt used a magnetic needle and a spherical magnet, inspired by the shape of the Earth, to map out the shape of what we know today as the magnetic field lines of the Earth.

It is important to know that the north geographic pole and the south magnetic pole are not located at exactly the same spot (same goes for the south geographic pole and the north magnetic pole). The magnetic poles of the Earth are not fixed, but migrate all over the globe. We know today that **magnetism** is the result of the atomic alignment of large numbers of "atomic magnets." By this we mean (roughly) that certain materials, because of their atomic structure, will have their atoms align parallel to an external magnetic field. This process is very similar to an array of compass needles aligning in the same direction, in parallel, with in the Earth's magnetic field. The entire material does not have its atoms align. Only certain regions of the material called **magnetic domains** align with the external field. These regions then are responsible for the magnetic properties of the material. During volcanic eruptions, molten rock containing magnetic materials is very susceptible to having magnetic domains form. The alignment of the atoms within the magnetic domains indicates the direction of the Earth's magnetic field at the time the rock solidified. Thus, they offer a record over many thousands and millions of years of the orientation of the Earth's magnetic field at different moments in time. Such rocks indicate that the magnetic field of the Earth is very dynamic and does not stay in one place. In fact, we know that within a few decades, the magnetic field of the Earth will be a good deal off from its present location.

It wasn't until 1750 that a mathematical relationship was determined, much like Newton's universal law of gravity and Coulomb's law for electrostatic charges, for the forces that one magnetic pole exerted upon the other. It was Coulomb who determined it. One of the major difficulties with a mathematical description of the magnetic force is in the determination of exactly where the pole of a magnet resides. As tempting as it is to think of magnetism in the same terms as we think of electrostatics, it would be incorrect. Isolated electric charges do exist in nature. As far as we know, there is no such thing as an isolated magnetic pole. One or more north magnetic poles cannot be separated from one or more south magnetic poles. Magnetic poles always remain in pairs. Break a bar magnet in half and you'll have two smaller bar magnets with two poles each.

A Magnetic Field

Michael Faraday's description of the lines of force surrounding an electric charge is also useful when we discuss magnetic phenomena. Just as we imagine an electric field E surrounding electrical charges, we also imagine a magnetic field B surrounding a magnet. The field lines of the magnetic field, however, do not begin on the north pole of the magnet and end on the south pole of the magnet. Because magnetic poles come only in pairs, the magnetic field lines between the poles of a magnet form closed loops. However, the magnetic field, like the electric field, has a magnitude and a direction at every point in space, and thus is a vector quantity.

The Earth's Magnetic Field

The magnetic field surrounding the Earth is similar to the field produced by a permanent bar magnet, **Figure** 18.2. (The magnetic field of the Earth is more complicated, but the model is a useful starting point.) A compass needle that is moved from the north-pole to south-pole of a bar magnet shows the same alignment as a compass needle that is moved near the surface of the Earth (illustrated in the top half of the figure). Your teacher may show you a demonstration using iron filings which dramatically outline the field lines of a bar magnet (illustrated in the lower

half of the figure).

FIGURE 18.1

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ObservingMagneticFieldsWithIronFilings/

Magnetism from an Electric Current

During the early 18th century, physicists were looking for possible connections between electrical and magnetic phenomena. In 1820, Hans Christian Oersted (1777-1851), made the discovery that a current-carrying wire created a magnetic field.

Oersted arranged a long straight conducting wire and a compass as shown in **Figure** 18.2 to show the magnetic field around the wire. **Figure** 18.3 shows iron filings aligned with the magnetic field around the wire.

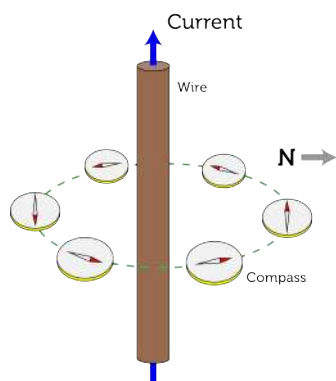



FIGURE 18.2

As soon as a current was initiated in the wire, the compass needle deflected. A magnetic force must be present, produced by an electric current! The compass needle aligned itself perpendicular to the direction of the current. Moving the compass in a plane perpendicular to the wire showed that a magnetic field circled around the wire as in **Figure** 18.2 and **Figure** 18.3.

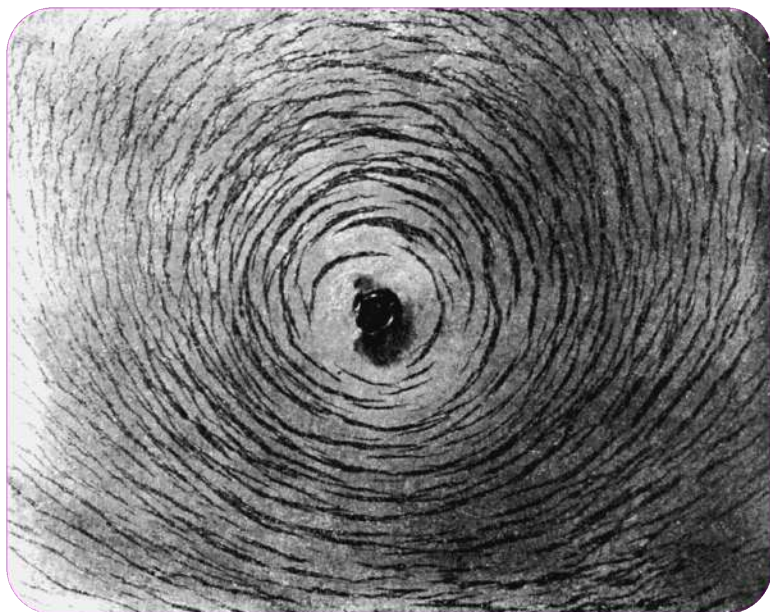



FIGURE 18.3

The Direction of the Magnetic Field for a Current-Carrying Wire

The direction of the magnetic field around a wire can be found using the **right-hand rule**. Point the thumb of the right hand in the direction of the (conventional) current and then curl the fingers into a fist. The fingers curl in the direction of the magnetic field around the wire. **Figure** 18.4 shows the magnetic field represented as a series of circles around the wire. If the current were in the opposite direction, the field would circle around the wire in the opposite direction.

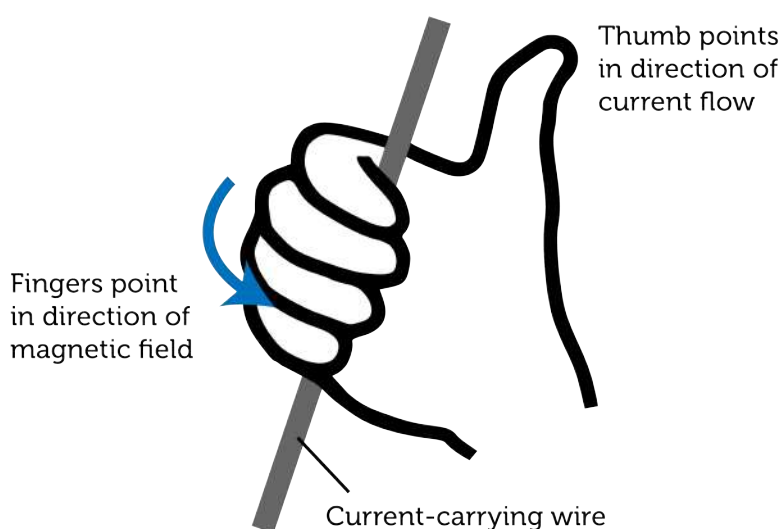



FIGURE 18.4
The direction of the magnetic field around a wire.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CreationOfAMagneticFieldByAnElectricCurrent/

Magnetic Field of a Current-Carrying Loop/Coil of Wire

Imagine forming a loop from a long, straight wire. What would the magnetic field of the loop of wire look like? Using the right-hand rule, point your thumb in the direction of the current and imagine your hand moving around the wire. Your fingers would curl, showing the magnetic field as circles through and around the wire as shown in **Figure** 18.5. Of course, a compass would work just as well for a loop of wire as *s* straight wire in showing the field.

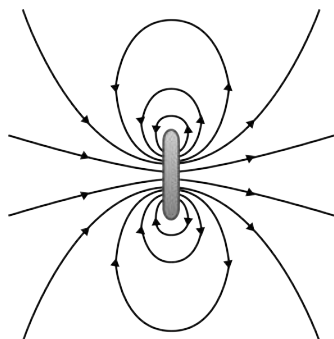
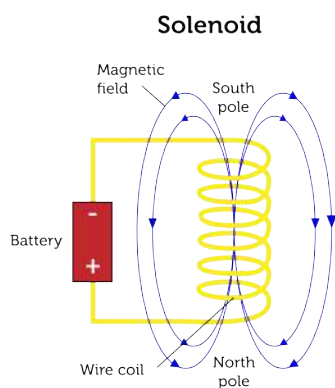



FIGURE 18.5

Now, imagine multiple turns of wire, as shown in **Figure** 18.6. The magnetic field through the loops would be greatly increased. The coil shown in **Figure** 18.6 is often called a solenoid. Another name for a solenoid is an electromagnet.

If the north pole of a bar magnet (or a thin iron rod) is brought close to bottom of the solenoid, it will be attracted (pulled) into the solenoid. If the solenoid is disconnected from the battery (say, by a switch) the magnet will no longer be attracted to the solenoid.

Solenoids have many practical applications. The first telegraph system operated by turning an electromagnet on and off which, in turn, attracted a magnetic object (the telegraph key). The key produced a series of clicks as it struck the electromagnet. Nowadays, solenoids are used, for instance, as electromagnetic switches in the ignition system of automobiles.

FIGURE 18.6
A solenoid.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/TheSolenoid/

18.2 The Magnetic Force acting on a Current-Carrying Wire

Objectives

The student will:

- Know under which conditions a current-carrying wire experiences a force when placed in a magnetic field.
- Use the right-hand rule to determine the force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field.
- Solve problems involving the force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field.

Introduction

If a current-carrying wire is able to exert a force upon a magnet, is it possible for a magnet to exert an equal and opposite force on a current-carrying wire? Newton's Third Law suggests this should be so.

Current-Carrying Wires in Magnetic Fields

In **Figure** 18.7, a current-carrying wire with current I is placed between the south and north magnetic poles of a magnet.

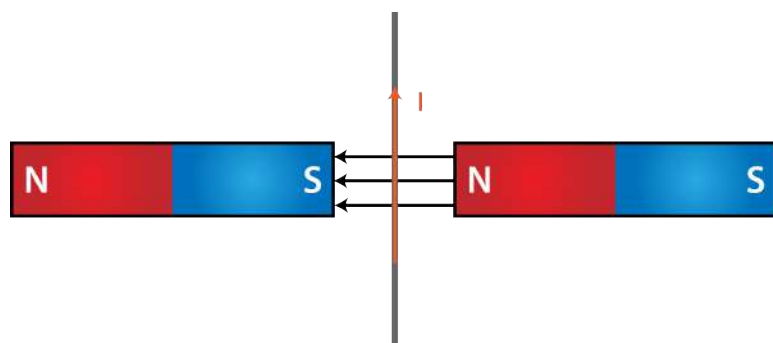



FIGURE 18.7

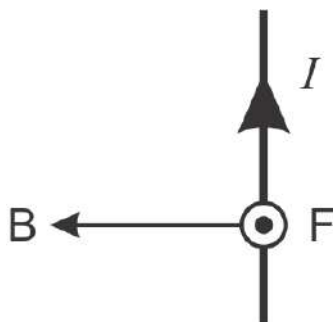
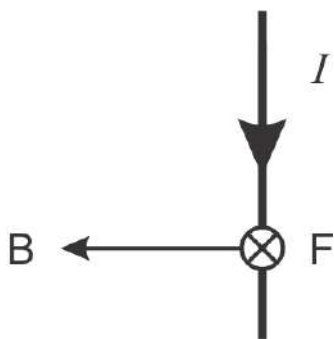
The magnetic field lines are perpendicular to the direction of the current in the wire. Under these circumstances, the wire is observed to be pushed toward the reader ("out of the page"). If the current in the wire is reversed, the wire is observed to be pushed away from the reader ("into the page."). We use a slightly different version of the right-hand rule to determine the direction of the force on a current-carrying wire in a magnetic field.

Aim your fingers in the direction of the current I and curl your hand toward the direction of the magnetic field B as shown in **Figure** 18.8 and **Figure** 18.9. The direction your thumb points is the direction of the force F on the current-carrying wire. The symbol with the circle and the dot below represents a vector with the force directed *out of the page*. The symbol with the circle and the cross below represents a vector with the force directed into the page.

Notice that the force F is perpendicular to the plane formed by the current-carrying wire and the magnetic field. The result is a rather unintuitive one. The force is not in the direction of the magnetic field. It is perpendicular to it!

FIGURE 18.8

FIGURE 18.9

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=EpuLrNTlxwA&feature=related

The magnitude of the force is found experimentally to equal the product of the current, I the length of wire L, the magnetic field B, and the sine of the angle between the vector L (in the direction of the current) and the direction of the magnetic field. When the current is parallel to the magnetic field lines, the force is zero, and when the current is perpendicular to the magnetic field lines, the force is at a maximum.

The magnitude of the force on a straight current-carrying wire within a magnetic field is given by

$F = ILB\sin\theta$.

The magnetic field B can then be expressed as $B = \frac{F}{IL\sin\theta}$. The units of B are, therefore, $\frac{N}{A*m}$. We define the derived unit $\frac{N}{A*m}$ as a tesla (T) in honor of the physicist and inventor Nikola Tesla (1856-1943), **Figure** 18.10.

For more information on the magnetic forces between current-carrying wires, see the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/AmperesForceLawForceBetweenParallelCurrents/

Check Your Understanding

A wire of length 0.600 m carrying a current of 2.50 A, placed perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field, experiences a force of 2.75 N. What is the magnitude of the magnetic field where the wire is located?

Answer:

$F = ILB\sin\theta \rightarrow B = \frac{F}{IL\sin\theta} = \frac{2.75\ N}{(2.50\ A)(0.600\ m)\sin 90^\circ} = 1.833 \rightarrow 1.83\ T$

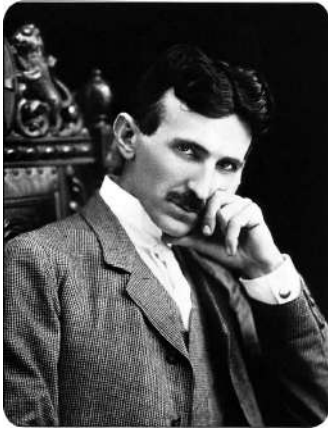



FIGURE 18.10
Nikola Tesla

Illustrative Example 19.2.1

A rectangular current-carrying loop of wire with constant current I is placed in a uniform magnetic field B such that the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the magnetic field, **Figure** 18.11. What is the net force acting on the loop?

Answer:

Using the right-hand rule, we find that the force F_{CD} on segment CD is directed away from the reader. The current direction in segment AB is opposite the direction of the current in segment CD, so the right-hand rule shows that the force F_{AB} on segment AB is directed toward the reader. The magnitudes of F_{CD} and F_{AB} are the same, since the lengths of both segments of wire are equal.

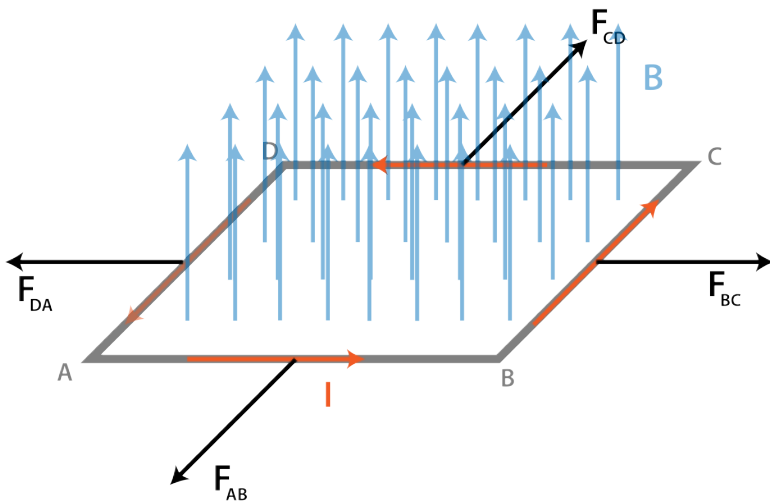



FIGURE 18.11

Applying the right-hand rule to segment BC of the loop, we find that a force F_{BC} on the wire is directed to the right. The direction of the current in segment DA of the loop is opposite to that in segment BC of the loop. The right-hand rule shows that the force F_{DA} is directed to the left. The magnitudes of F_{BC} and F_{DA} are the same, since the lengths of both segments of the loop are equal.

The net force on the loop of wire is, therefore, zero. The above argument can extend to non-rectangular loops, as well.

18.3 Magnetic Force on Moving Electric Charges

Objectives

The student will:

- Know under which conditions a moving electric charge experiences a force when placed in a magnetic field.
- Use the right-hand rule in order to determine the force on a moving electric charge in a magnetic field.
- Solve problems involving the force acting on a moving electric charge in a magnetic field.

Introduction

Electrically charged particles are everywhere. The sun sends forth an array of ionized particles into our solar system and into deep space, **Figure** 18.12. Some of the particles are trapped by the Earth's magnetic field and are responsible for interfering with electronic communication. Others initiate a chain of events culminating in the eerie and beautiful Aurora Borealis (the northern lights seen in high northern latitudes), **Figure** 18.13, and Aurora Australis (the southern lights seen in high southern latitudes).

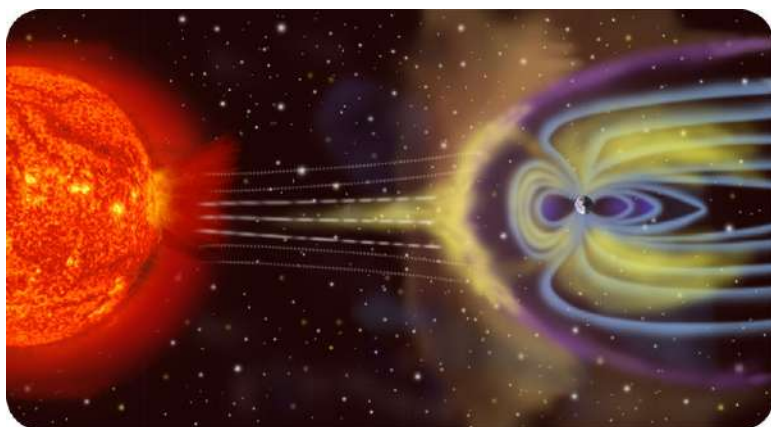



FIGURE 18.12

In the next section, we will investigate the effect that magnetic fields have on moving charges.

The Force on a Moving Electric Charge in a Magnetic Field

The force on a single charge moving through a magnetic field can be found by considering the force on a current-carrying wire.

A current is just the movement of many charged particles within a conductor. Using the definition of current, we have $I = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{Nq}{\Delta t}$, where N is the total number of charges within the conductor, and q is the electric charge.

FIGURE 18.13
Aurora Borealis.

Substituting $I = \frac{Nq}{\Delta t}$ into $F = ILB\sin\theta$ gives:

$F = \frac{Nq}{\Delta t} LB\sin\theta$ (Equation A).

The displacement of a charge can be considered the length of the wire L, and therefore $L = v\Delta t$, where v is the velocity of the charge.

Substituting $v\Delta t$ into Equation A gives

$F = \frac{Nq}{\Delta t} v\Delta t B\sin\theta = NqvB\sin\theta$.

The force per charge is, therefore,

$\frac{F}{N} = qvB\sin\theta \to F_{on\ one\ charge} = qvB\sin\theta$.

The subscript above is dropped and it is understood that the force experienced by a charged particle moving through a magnetic field is

$F = qvB\sin\theta$.

The angle θ is the angle between the vectors representing velocity and the magnetic field.

Determining the Direction of the Force on a Charged Particle

The right-hand rule can be used in order to determine the direction of the force acting on a charged particle as it moves through a magnetic field.

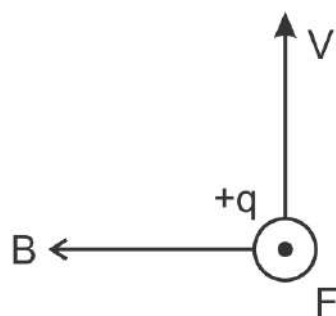
As with a current-carrying wire, we point our fingers in the direction of motion of the charged particle (the direction of its velocity), and curl our fingers into the direction of the magnetic field. The outstretched thumb gives the direction of the force acting on the particle. The particle is assumed to have positive charge. If the particle is negatively charged, the force will be opposite to the direction the thumb points.

Figure 18.14 shows a positive charge $+q$ moving due north in a magnetic field pointing due west. The right-hand rule gives the force on the charge as out of the $V - B$ plane toward the reader. A negatively charged particle moving in the same direction would experience a force directed away from the reader, into the $V - B$ plane.

The force is always perpendicular to the plane formed by the velocity vector of the charge and the magnetic field direction.

For a practical example of how magnetic fields can be used with moving charges see the link below.

FIGURE 18.14

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/TheMassSpectrometer/

Check Your Understanding

A proton moving with velocity $8.5 \times 10^6 \frac{m}{s}$ enters a constant magnetic field of $2.15\ T$ at an angle of $30°$ to the field as shown in **Figure** 18.15. What is the magnitude and direction of the force acting on the proton?

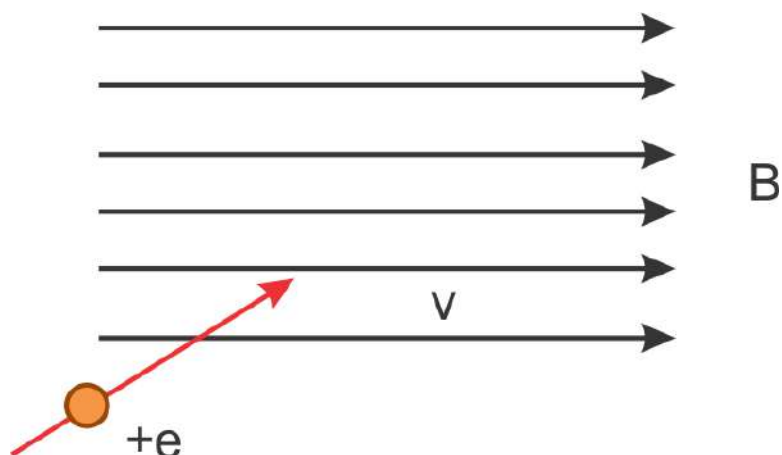



FIGURE 18.15

Answer:

The charge of the proton is $1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ C$.

$F = qvB\sin\theta = (1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ C)\left(8.50 \times 10^6\ \frac{m}{s}\right)(\sin 30°) = 6.8 \times 10^{-13}\ N$

The direction of the force is into the $v - B$ plane away from the reader (note that a proton is a positively charged particle, so we apply the right-hand rule without "flipping" the final result).

Illustrative Example 19.3.1

An electron moves in a plane perpendicular to a uniform magnetic field.

a. The magnitude of the force it experiences is:

1. Zero
2. Somewhere between $F = 0$ and a maximum of $F = qvB$

3. $F = qvB$

Answer:

The answer is 3.

Since the electron moves perpendicular to the magnetic field, it experience the maximum force because the angle between the velocity vector and the magnetic field is $90^\circ \rightarrow \sin 90^\circ = 1 \rightarrow F_{max} = qvB$.

b. What is the path of the electron as it moves through the magnetic field?

Answer:

Remember that since an electron is negatively charged, the force we determine from the right-hand rule must be reversed.

At any instant, the velocity and magnetic vectors are perpendicular to each other, as shown in **Figure** 18.16.

Since the magnetic field is uniform, the magnitude of the force on the electron is constant. The force, by the right-hand rule, remains perpendicular to the velocity of the electron and therefore cannot change the electron's speed-only its direction. When a constant force acts perpendicular to the velocity of an object, the object follows circular motion. The force shown below points toward the center of the circle in which the electron travels.

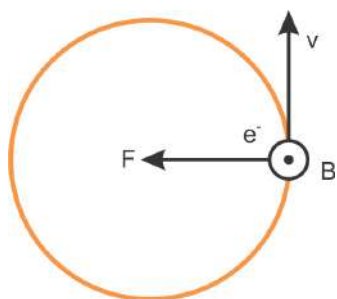



FIGURE 18.16

c. The magnetic field has magnitude $0.045\ T$, the velocity of the electron is $9.40 \times 10^6\ \frac{m}{s}$, and its mass is $9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg$. Find the radius of the circle in which the electron travels.

Answer:

Since the electron travels in a circle, it experiences a force of

$F = ma_c = m\frac{v^2}{r}$.

This force is, of course, the force the electron experience due to the magnetic field $F_{max} = qvB$.

Thus, $m\frac{v^2}{r} = qvB \rightarrow r = \frac{mv}{qB} = \frac{(9.11\times10^{-31}\ kg)\left(9.40\times10^6\ \frac{m}{s}\right)}{(1.60\times10^{-19}\ C)(4.00\times10^{-2}\ T)} = 0.001338 \rightarrow 1.34 \times 10^{-3}\ m$.

18.4 A Practical Application of Magnetic Fields

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the basic operation of an electric motor.

Vocabulary

- **brushes:**
- **commutator**
- **electric motor:** A device which converts electrical energy into mechanical work.

Introduction

The **electric motor** is arguably, the most important invention based on the understanding that a magnetic field could exert a force on a current-carrying wire. The average person uses many electrical appliances every day that depend upon an electric motor. There are motors in washing machines, dryers, air conditioners, electric lawn mowers and electric chain saws, electric blenders, electric can-openers, electric fans, DVD players, and in many children's toys, just to name a few.

How does an electric motor work?

The Rectangular Current Loop Revisited

In Example 19.2.1, a rectangular loop was placed perpendicular to the field lines of a uniform magnetic field. In such a position we showed that the net force on the loop was zero. We now consider the forces on a rectangular current-carrying loop of wire with constant current I, when placed in a uniform magnetic field B, such that the plane of the loop is parallel to the magnetic field. With such an arrangement, the magnetic field lines are perpendicular to the side (b) of the loop and parallel to the side (a) of the loop as seen in **Figure** 18.17.

By the right-hand rule, the force on the left side $\vec{F}_1$ of the loop is toward the reader, and the force on the right side $\vec{F}_2$ is away from the reader. We treat the result as a scalar quantity.

$F_1 = ILB\sin\theta = ILB\sin 90^\circ = ILB \rightarrow F_1 = ILB\ F_2 = ILB\sin\theta = ILB\sin 90^\circ = ILB \rightarrow F_2 = -ILB$

Since the forces are in opposite directions, $\vec{F}_1$ is taken as positive and $\vec{F}_2$ is taken as negative.

These are the only forces on the loop, since the angle between the magnetic field and the remaining sides of the current-carrying loop is zero degrees.

$F = ILB\sin\theta = ILB\sin 0^\circ = 0$

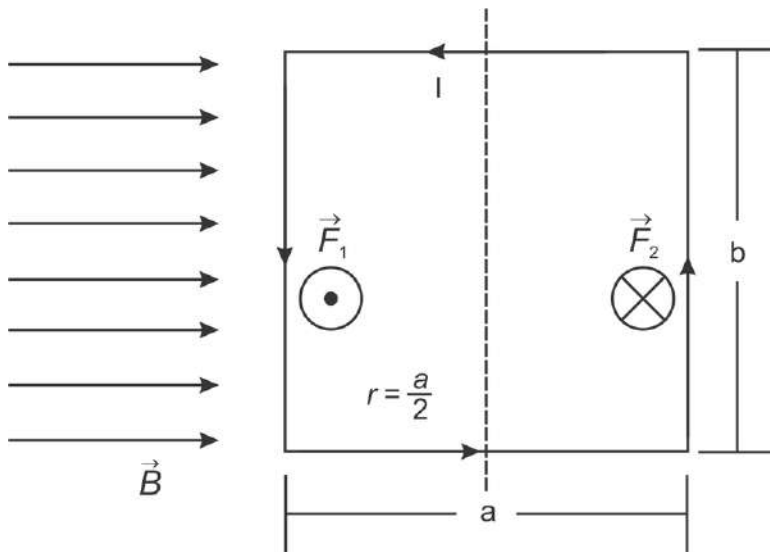



FIGURE 18.17

Let us imagine that the coil is free to rotate about the dotted line shown bisecting the coil in **Figure** 18.17. The forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ both place counterclockwise torques upon the loop.

Recall that the torque is defined as $\tau = rF \sin\theta$, where θ is the angle between the moment arm r and the force F.

The angle between r and F is $90°$, and therefore the net torque on the loop is

$\tau = rF \sin 90° + rF \sin 90° = 2rF \rightarrow \tau = 2rF$.

By substituting Equation 1 into Equation 2 the net torque can be expressed as:

Equation 1: $F = ILB$

Equation 2: $\tau = 2rF$

Equation 3: $\tau = 2rILB$

The moment arm has length $r = \frac{a}{2}$, and the side of the wire where the force is applied has length $L = b$.

Upon substitution into Equation 3 we have,

$\tau = 2rILB = 2\frac{a}{2}IbB = I(ab)B = IAB \rightarrow$

$\tau_{maximum} = IAB$, where A is the area of the loop.

This is the maximum torque that the loop experiences. Once the loop begins to rotate, the angle between the moment arm $\frac{a}{2}$ and the forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ is decreased until reaching zero degrees. This occurs when the loop in **Figure** 18.17 has rotated out of the page and is facing the reader. The forces $\vec{F}_1$ and $\vec{F}_2$ at this point are both parallel with the moment arm, and therefore the net torque on the loop is zero.

The torque the loop experiences as it turns is therefore $\tau = IAB \sin\theta$.

A DC Motor

In the situation above, once the loop has rotated ninety-degrees,3 the net torque is zero. The loop stops turning, see **Figure** 18.18.

If the loop could be kept in motion, we would have an electric motor.

This can be done if, at the moment the net torque on the loop is zero, the current is reversed. Then the forces $\vec{F}_1$ and

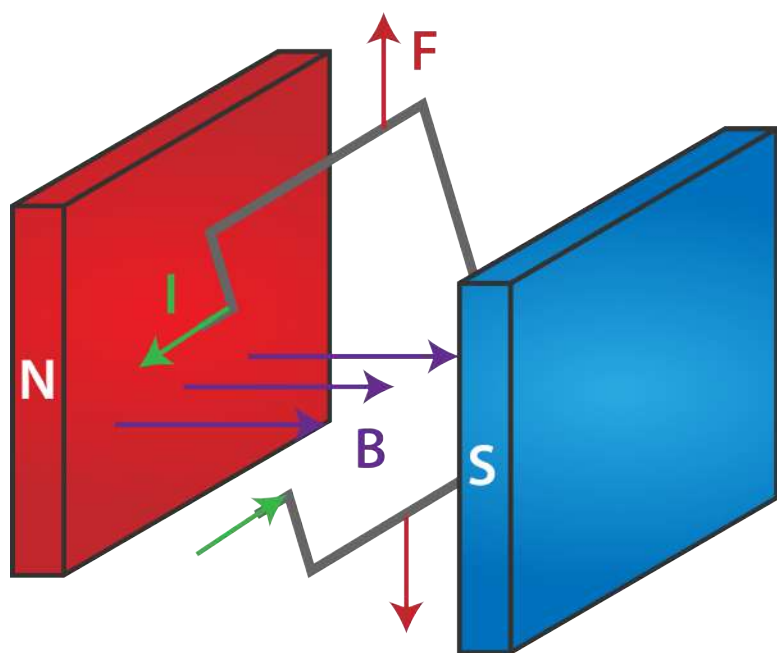



FIGURE 18.18
Once the loop is vertical it will no longer turn.

$\vec{F}_2$ would point inward. The loop's inertia carries it slightly past the point of zero net torque, but since the forces are now acting inward, the loop continues to turn. The process repeats thousands of times per second and we have a motor.

The secret to reversing the current is shown in **Figure** 18.19. After the loop rotates a quarter turn, it encounters a split ring commutator (see **Figure** 18.19). At this instant the voltage source (a battery) no longer provides current to the loop because of the split ring. But the inertia of the coil carries it farther around and a connection is immediately re-established with the battery. The right-hand side of the coil (which had been connected to the low side of the battery) is now connected to the high side of the battery and the current through the coil is reversed. The carbon brushes provide the contacts for the battery.

Attachments can be made to coil in order to perform mechanical work. Indeed, a motor is a device which converts electrical energy into mechanical work.

Motors typically have thousands of coils. A greater torque can be established with numerous coils. The motor, in turn, can perform more mechanical work.

1. The magnitude of the force on a straight current-carrying wire within a magnetic field is given by the equation $F = ILB\sin\theta$.

The direction of the force is found using the right-hand rule: The force is perpendicular to the plane formed by the current-carrying wire and the magnetic field direction.

2. The force experienced by a charged particle moving through a magnetic field is given by the equation $F = qvB\sin\theta$.

The direction of the force is found using the right-hand rule but must be reversed if the particle is negatively charged. The force is perpendicular to the plane formed by the velocity vector of the charge and the magnetic field direction.

3. A charge traveling in a uniform magnetic field moves in a circle of radius

$r = \frac{mv}{qB}$

4. The torque a current-carrying loop experiences in a uniform magnetic field is given by the equation

$\tau = IAB\sin\theta$

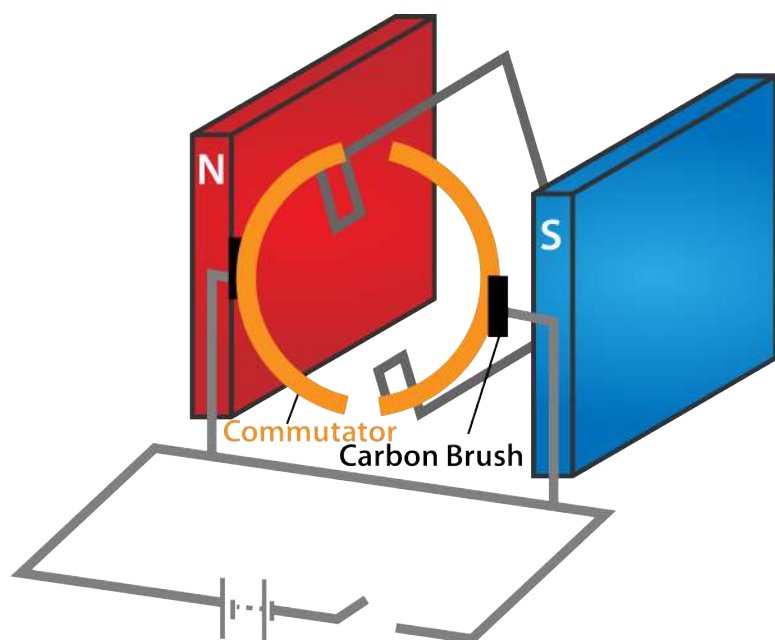



FIGURE 18.19

18.5 References

1. User:Evan-Amos/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Plastic-compass.jpg . Public Domain
2. Marc Spooner. http://www.flickr.com/photos/marcspooner/5287991784/ .
3. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Popular Science Monthly Volume 56. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:PSM_V56_D0072_Magnetic_whirls_around_the_sending_wire.png . Public Domain
5. User:Wizard191/WIkimedia Commons, modified by CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung. Hand: commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Right-hand_grip_rule.svg . CC-BY-NC-SA 3.0
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
11. . http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:N.Tesla.JPG . Public Domain
12. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Courtesy of NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Magnetosphere_rendition.jpg . Public Domain
14. Courtesy of Senior Airman Joshua Strang/US Air Force. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Polarlicht_2.jpg . Public Domain
15. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
18. . CK-12 Foundation .
19. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 19 Electromagnetism

Chapter Outline

The connection between electricity and magnetism is at the heart of two key inventions: electic motors and electric generators. Turning coils of wires through magnetic fields can be used to convert mechanical energy into electrical energy. These interactions are at the center of electromagnetism.

19.1 Electromagnetic Induction

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand magnetic flux.
- Understand Faraday's law of induction.
- Understand Lenz's law.

Vocabulary

- **electromagnetic induction:** Both a current and a voltage may be produced by changing a magnetic field.
- **induced current:** A current created by the changing magnetic field.
- **magnetic flux:** The product of the magnitude of the magnetic field vector $\vec{B}$, the magnitude of the area vector $\vec{A}$, and the cosine of the angle θ between them.
- **primary coil:** The coil that is always attached to the battery and the iron ring in Faraday's Experiment.
- **secondary coil:** The coil attached to a galvanometer and the iron ring in Faraday's Experiment.

Introduction

We learned earlier that a current-carrying wire produces a magnetic field and that a magnetic field exerts a force on a current-carrying wire. Physicists in the first half of the 19th century believed the converse might also hold, and that a magnetic field should therefore produce an electric current. This was discovered simultaneously by two scientists- the American physicist Joseph Henry (1797-1878) and the British physicist and chemist, Michael Faraday (1791-1867).

Electromagnetic Induction

What experiment can show that the magnetic field creates electric current? It was already known that a static (unchanging) magnetic field did not induce an electrical current within a stationary conducting wire. The thought, then, was that perhaps a changing magnetic field might cause a current. Below, we describe two experiments designed with that thought in mind.

In **Figure** 19.1 and **Figure** 19.2, a bar magnet is being moved toward a loop of wire and away from a loop of wire, respectively. In each case, the loop of wire is connected to a galvanometer. (A galvanometer is a device that detects

the presence of electric current. It is, essentially, a very sensitive ammeter.) While the magnet is in motion, the galvanometer detects a few microamperes of current in the loop of wire, first in one direction (right), **Figure** 19.1, and then in the other direction (left), **Figure** 19.2.

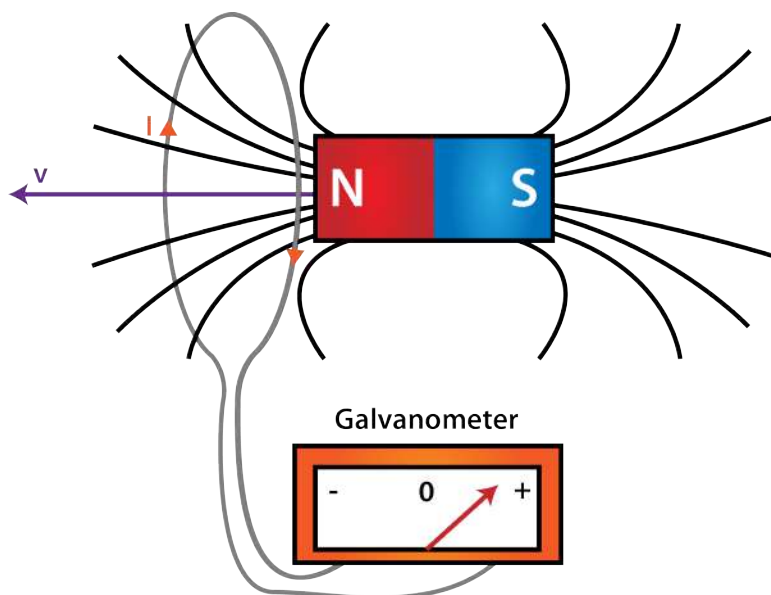



FIGURE 19.1
Magnet moved toward loop.

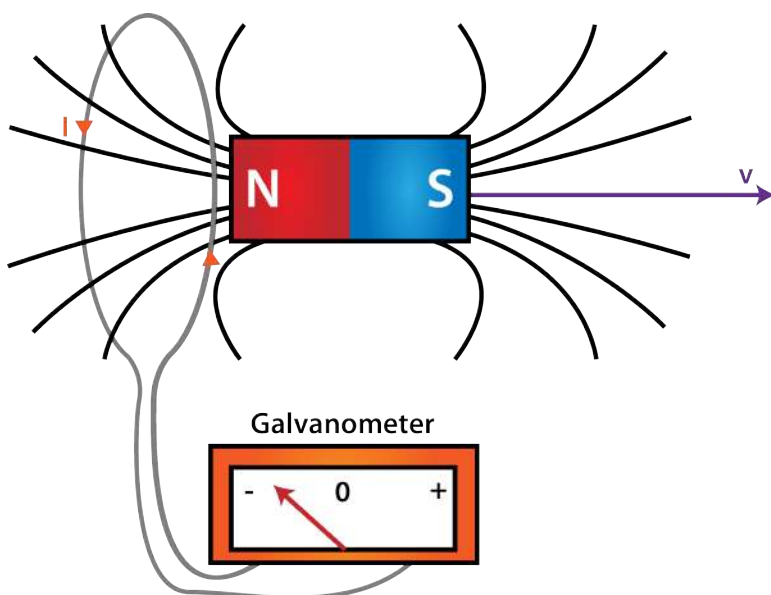



FIGURE 19.2
Magnet moved away from loop.

Note the directions of the velocity vector (in red) of the magnet in both diagrams.

How do we explain these results?

When the magnet is moved *toward* the loop of wire, the number of magnet field lines passing through the loop changes (the magnetic field changes), and a current is registered by the galvanometer. The current is called an **induced current**. Notice that the direction of the galvanometer needle is to the right in the **Figure** 19.1, and note the direction of the induced current in the loop, as well!

If the magnet is now moved away from the loop as in **Figure** 19.2, the magnetic field through the loop changes once again and the galvanometer needle deflects to the left. The induced current in the loop is directed opposite to the one in **Figure** 19.1.

If the magnet is stationary (that is, if there is no change in the magnetic field), the galvanometer measures no current. The experiment would have the same set of results had the magnet been stationary and the loop of wire moved toward and away from the magnet. In this way the magnetic field as experienced by the loop would still change. It is relative motion between the magnet and loop of wire that matters.

Faraday's Experiment

In **Figure** 19.3, a coil of wire (the **primary coil**) is wrapped around an iron ring. The iron ring increases the magnetic field when a current flows through the wire. The coil's ends are attached to a battery. The primary coil is always attached to the battery. The other coil (the **secondary coil**) is wrapped around the same iron ring, its ends attached to a galvanometer.

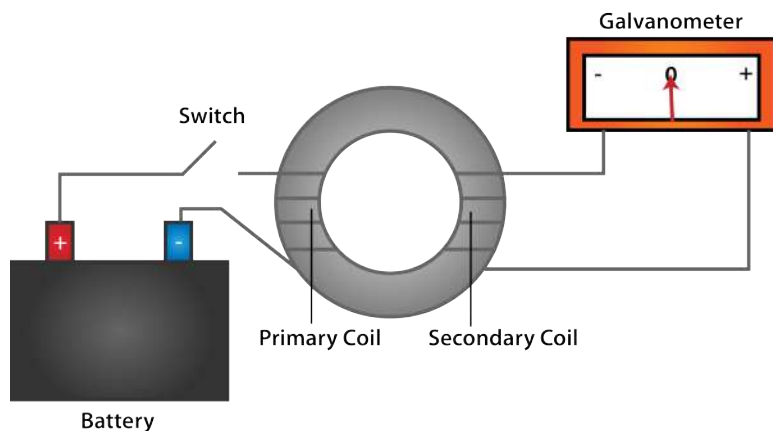



FIGURE 19.3
Faraday's Experiment.

The switch is initially open and there is no current in the circuit. When the switch is closed, a current is established in the primary coil, and a magnetic field is created around the coil. The galvanometer needle deflects for an instant and quickly returns to a zero current reading, indicating that a current was established in the secondary coil for a brief moment.

If the switch is opened, the current in the primary coil is turned off. As a result, the magnetic field drops to a zero. The galvanometer briefly deflects, again, but this time in the opposite direction, and returns to a zero current reading.

The experiment is, essentially, the same as the one conducted with the magnet, **Figure** 19.1 and 19.2. In this experiment, however, the "magnet" was created by a current in the primary coil and the "magnet" was moved by closing and opening the switch. By closing the switch, the secondary coil was exposed to a changing magnetic field (the induced magnetic field lines pass through the secondary coil). The changing magnetic field produced a current in the secondary coil. As soon as the current in the primary coil became constant, the magnetic field also became constant, like a stationary magnet, and the current in the secondary coil ceased. When the switch was opened, the magnetic field collapsed, and a current was induced in the secondary coil in the opposite direction.

We stated earlier that a current is produced when a potential difference (a voltage) exists between the ends of a conductor. A potential difference was established by using a battery. Faraday, however, was able to show that a voltage (and current) could be induced across a secondary coil by a changing magnetic field. No battery needed to be connected directly to the secondary coil in order to produce a voltage or current in the coil. A voltage or current created by the changing magnetic field are called, respectively, an induced voltage and an induced current.

Both of the above experiments confirm that:

- A current may be produced by a changing magnetic field.
- A voltage may be produced by a changing magnetic field.

These phenomena are typically called **electromagnetic induction**.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wGfVVGjGVB8&feature=related

Faraday realized that the rate at which the magnetic field changed would have an effect on the induced voltage. He also realized that the number of lines of magnetic force which crossed the coil (or loop) also needed to be taken into consideration.

In order to calculate the number of field lines that pass through a loop, we define a new term called an area vector $\vec{A}$, as shown in **Figure** 19.4. The area vector has the magnitude equal to the area enclosed by the loop (or any other enclosed surface) and the direction perpendicular (normal) to the plane of the loop (or surface).

We will use the term flux to describe the number of magnetic field lines that pass through a surface.

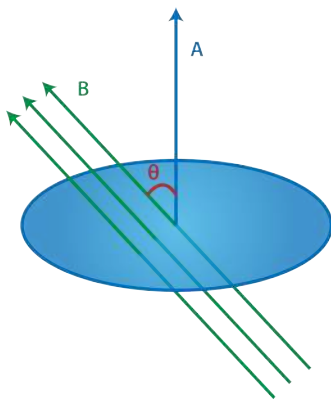



FIGURE 19.4
Area vector.

The product of the magnitude of the magnetic field vector $\vec{B}$, the magnitude of the area vector $\vec{A}$, and the cosine of the angle θ between them, is called the **magnetic flux**, represented with the Greek letter phi (Φ), as shown in **Figure** 19.4.

$\Phi = BA\cos\theta$

For an interactive activity involving **magnetic flux,** follow the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/MagneticFluxThroughALoopOfWire/

We can see from the definition of the flux that the units of flux are $T * m^2$.

The unit of flux is called the weber, for the German physicist Wilhelm E. Weber (1804-1891), **Figure** 19.5.

$1\ T * m^2 = 1\ Wb$

Figure 19.6 (a) shows the maximum number of magnetic field lines passing through a loop L when $\theta = 0°$.

The flux is $\Phi_a = BA\cos 0° = BA$.

At point (b) the loop is rotated 45° and the number of field lines passing through the loop is smaller than in (a).

The flux is $\Phi_b = BA\cos 45° = 0.707\ BA$.

And at point C the loop is rotated 90°, and the number of field lines passing through the loop is zero.

The flux is $\Phi_c = BA\cos 90° = 0$.

FIGURE 19.5
Wilhelm E. Weber.

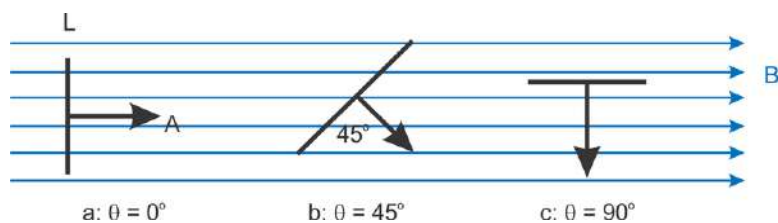



FIGURE 19.6

Faraday's discovery is called the law of induction, which we give below:

Faraday's law of induction applied to a coil of N turns: The average induced voltage in a coil is equal to the product of the number of loops N(or the number of turns) in the coil, and the time rate of change in the magnetic flux $\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$ through the coil.

$V = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$

The negative sign indicates that the induced voltage produces a current whose magnetic field opposes the direction of the original change in the magnetic flux. This statement is known as Lenz's law.

For more information on Faraday's law of induction, follow the links below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ShowingFaradaysLawWithAnOscilloscope/

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/faraday

Lenz's law

Lenz's law is named for the 19th century physicist Heinrich Lenz (1804-1865). In order to understand Lenz's law, consider **Figure** 19.1. As the north pole of the magnet is inserted into the loop, the induced current in the loop produces a magnetic field. The magnetic field (as indicated by the right-hand rule) must be equivalent to the field produced by a magnet with its north pole facing the incoming north pole of the magnet. Two north poles will, of course, repel. Thus, the induced current has set up a magnetic field to oppose the motion of the magnet. What if the reverse occurred? If the induced current were to set up a magnetic field that attracted the magnet, the flux through the loop would increase, and therefore the induced voltage would increase. But a larger voltage would produce yet a larger induced current and an even larger flux. Such a process would lead to ever-increasing induced voltages and currents, violating the law of conservation of energy. The smallest work done in pushing the magnet toward (or away from) the loop would result in more and more energy generated within the system. Instead, Lenz's law ensures that the induced current always acts to keep the flux constant by opposing whatever change in the magnetic flux that has brought the induced current to life. If the magnetic flux decreases, the induced current produces a magnetic field to increase the flux, and vice versa.

Check Your Understanding

1. A coil of wire with 20 loops and cross-sectional area 25 cm^2 is stationary in a constant magnetic field of 0.90 T. The angle between the magnetic field B and the area vector A is 45°. What is the induced voltage in the coil?

Answer: This is a bit of a tricky question because specific values were cited, but none were required to find the answer. There is no relative motion between the coil and the magnetic field. Since the coil is stationary, the flux through the coil is constant. The rate of change of the flux is therefore zero, as is the induced voltage.

2. If the south pole of a magnetic is pushed toward the center of a coil, what is the direction of the induced current in the coil?

Answer: According to Lenz's law, the induced current must produce a magnetic field that would prevent the flux from increasing. The magnetic field must be equivalent to the field of a magnet with its "south pole" facing the incoming south pole of the magnet. To determine the direction of the induced current, we position the right hand so that the thumb would point away from the incoming magnet. The direction of the current would be the same as the direction in which the fingers are curled.

Illustrative Example 1

a. Magnetic field lines pass perpendicularly through a circular loop of wire of radius 15 cm. If the magnitude of the magnetic field changes from 3.6 T to 5.8 T in 0.18 s, what is the average induced voltage in the loop?

Answer:

The area of the loop is $A = \pi r^2 = \pi(1.5 \times 10^{-1} m)^2 = 0.0707 \rightarrow 0.071\ m^2$.

Since the magnetic field lines pass perpendicularly though the loop, the angle between the area vector and the magnetic field is zero degrees. Thus,

$\Phi = BA \cos 0^\circ = BA$.

The induced voltage is therefore $V = -N\frac{\Delta(BA)}{\Delta t} = -\frac{\Delta(BA)}{\Delta t}$, since there is only one loop $(N = 1)$.

According to the problem, the magnet field changes, but the area of the loop remains constant

$V = -A\frac{\Delta B}{\Delta t} = -(0.707 m^2)\left(\frac{5.8T - 3.6T}{0.18s}\right) = -8.64 \rightarrow -8.6\ V$.

The negative sign indicates that the induced voltage produces a current whose magnetic field opposes the direction of the original change in magnetic flux.

b. If the resistance of the loop is 16 Ω, what is the induced current in the loop?

Answer: Using Ohm's law, $I = \frac{V}{R} = \frac{8.64}{16} = 0.54\ A$.

19.2 The Electric Generator

Objective

The student will:

- Understand how a generator produces an electric current.

Vocabulary

- **alternating current:** The induced current reverses direction at regular intervals. Electric generators produce an alternating current. Generating alternating current is much more energy efficient (and therefore cheaper) than using direct current.
- **electric generator:** A device which converts mechanical energy into electrical energy.

Introduction

We learned earlier how a motor works. Recall that a rectangular loop of wire was placed between the opposite magnetic poles so that the magnetic field lines passed through the loop. A voltage source (a battery, in our case) provided an electric current through the rectangular loop of wire. The magnetic field exerted opposite forces on the sides of the loop, creating a torque, and the loop turned.

What would happen if we disconnect the battery from the motor and turn the spindle of the motor by hand, as in **Figure** 19.7?

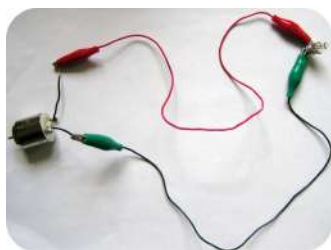



FIGURE 19.7
Turning a motor into a generator.

In such a case, the magnetic flux through the loop would change, and an induced current would be produced in the loop as shown in **Figure** 19.8.

If the wires which were connected to the battery are now connected to, say, a small lightbulb, the bulb would light up –if we spin the loop fast enough. We have effectively turned a motor into a **generator**! Your teacher may show

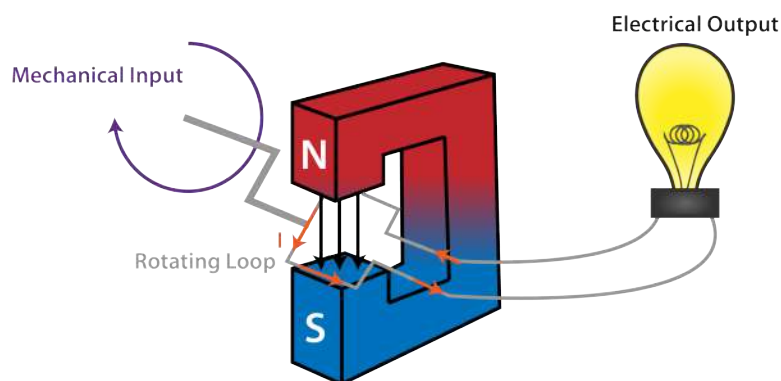



FIGURE 19.8
A generator converts mechanical energy into electrical energy, whereas a motor converts electrical energy into mechanical energy.

you a demonstration of this phenomenon in class where a hand crank is attached to the motor spindle to allow for easier (and more rapid) turning.

A generator is a device which converts mechanical energy into electrical energy. In very simple terms, turning a coil in a magnetic field is the basis for an electric generator. It is also the way most of the electrical energy is generated around the world. The voltage provided by the electrical outlets (such as the ones found in your home) is an induced voltage, created by a generator of some sort. One of the greatest challenges nowadays is in finding cheap, renewable, and clean energy sources with which to power the generators.

An example of "clean" energy is hydroelectric power. Falling water from dams is used to turn turbine generators, **Figure** 19.9. Wind is sometimes used to turn turbines as well. But most generators are driven by steam. Steam is produced by heating water. The energy used to heat the water is primarily from nonrenewable, polluting, fossil fuels and nuclear energy.

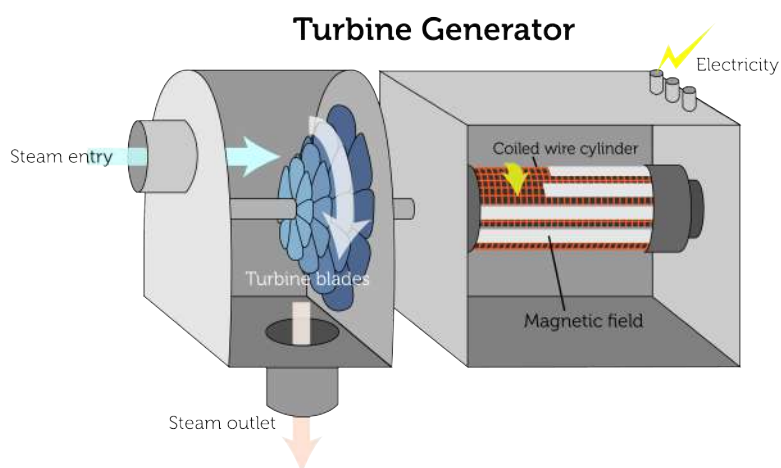



FIGURE 19.9
A typical turbine generator.

Generators Produce Alternating Current

Notice that as the loop turns toward the north pole of the magnet in **Figure** 19.8, the flux is reduced through the loop. This is analogous to moving the north pole of a magnet away from a stationary loop. As the flux decreases, the induced current produces magnetic field lines in the same direction as the permanent magnet in the figure obeying Lenz's law. However, after the loop has passed the point where there is zero flux through it (red sides parallel to the

magnetic field lines), the flux through the loop begins to increase. This is analogous to moving the north pole of a magnet toward the loop. The induced current, therefore, reverses direction, producing magnetic field lines opposing the permanent magnet field, again obeying Lenz's law.

We can see, then, that every half-turn of the loop reverses the direction of the induced current. Electric generators typically produce **alternating current** (AC). Most of the alternating current produced in the United States has a frequency 60 Hz. That is, the induced current reverses direction twice each cycle or 120 times per second. In Europe, the standard frequency is 50 Hz.

Generating alternating current is much more energy efficient (and therefore cheaper) than using direct current. However, many electrical devices require DC voltages and currents in order to operate. Power transformers are used to solve this problem.

19.3 Electrical Power Transfer

Objective

The student will:

- Understand how transformers operate.

Vocabulary

- **transformer:** A device that transfers electrical energy between two circuits using electromagnetic induction, usually with a change in voltage.

Introduction

Utility companies have large generating stations that produce potential differences of thousands of volts. The voltage of a typical electrical outlet in the United States is either 120V or 240V (for larger appliances). By what means, then, are the large potential differences, generated at power stations, reduced to accommodate consumers?

Transformers

A **transformer** is a device that transfers electrical energy between two circuits using electromagnetic induction, usually with a change in voltage.

A typical transformer is composed of two coils wrapped around an iron ring or iron core. Both coils in the diagram seem to have the same number of turns. This need not be the case. In fact, it usually is not. **Figure** 19.10 shows a transformer with a primary coil with four turns and a secondary coil with eight turns.

Faraday's law of induction states that $V = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$.

The voltage in the primary coil is then $V_p = -N_p\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$.

The voltage in the secondary coil is $V_s = -N_s\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$.

The rate of change of the magnetic flux $\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$ is the same for both coils.

We have:

$\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{N_p}{N_s}$ (Transformer Equation A)

Thus, the ratio of the voltages is equal to the ratio of the number of turns in each coil. The ratio is effectively a statement of how the input voltage V_p is related to the output voltage V_s.

If $N_s > N_p$, we have a step-up transformer, in which the secondary voltage is greater than the primary voltage.

Taking $N_p = 4$ and $N_s = 8$ as in **Figure** 19.10, we see that secondary voltage is twice the primary voltage.

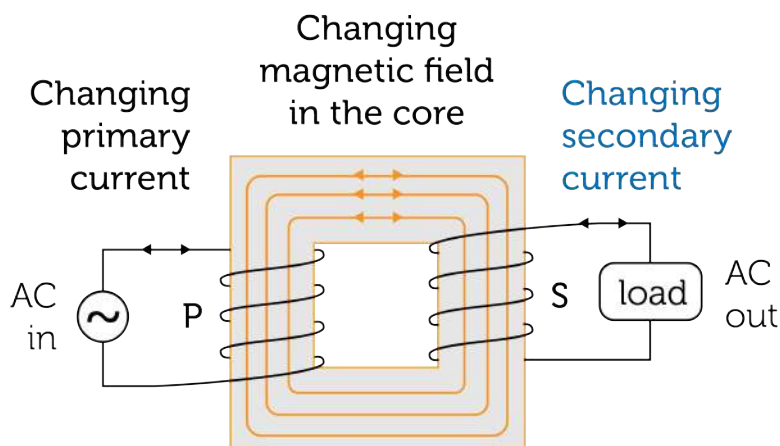



FIGURE 19.10

$V_s = 2V_p$

Thus, this transformer is a step-up transformer.

If $N_s < N_p$, we have a step-down transformer, in which the secondary voltage is less than the primary voltage.

It may seem like we're getting more out of the step-up transformer than we're putting into it and less out of the step-down transformer than we put into it. This is not the case, however. Keep in mind that only energy is expected to be conserved, not voltage. Energy conservation implies that, if no energy is transformed into heat, then the output power of the primary coil must be equal to the input power of the secondary coil.

Recalling that $P = IV$:

$I_pV_p = I_sV_s$ (Transformer Equation B)

We see that in a step-up transformer, if the voltage increases by a factor of n, then the current must decrease by the same factor of n. Similarly, in a step-down transformer, if the voltage decreases by a factor m, then the current must increase by the same factor of m. (All that is true assuming no energy loss due to Joule heat, which is, of course, impossible in real life.)

Using Equations A and B, we see:

$$\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{I_s}{I_p} \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{I_p}{I_s} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} \text{ (Transformer Equation C)}$$

Thus, the ratio of the currents is equal to the inverse ratio of the number of turns in the corresponding coils.

Check Your Understanding

a. A generating station step-up transformer has an input voltage of 12,000 V with 100 turns on the primary coil. If the secondary coil is to have an output voltage of 300,000 V, how many turns must the secondary coil have? Assume no energy is transferred to heat.

Answer:

$\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{N_p}{N_s} \rightarrow \frac{12{,}000}{300{,}000} = \frac{100}{N_s} \rightarrow N_s = \frac{30{,}000{,}000}{12{,}000} = 2,500 \rightarrow N_s = 2,500 \; turns$

b. If the current in the primary coil is 1,000 A, what is the current in the secondary coil?

Answer:

Since the output voltage is 25 times larger than the input voltage, the output current must be 25 times smaller than the input current.

$$I_pV_p = I_sV_s \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{V_s}{V_p} = \frac{I_p}{I_s} \rightarrow 25 = \frac{1,000A}{I_s} \rightarrow I_s = 40\ A$$

Power stations actually use step-up transformers at the beginning of the power transfer process (as in the "Check Your Understanding" above). A high-voltage transmission line then transfers the energy to local substations where the voltage is reduced using the step-down transformers. From there, the energy is stepped-down using transformers which can easily be seen on utility poles, such as the ones you may see near your house. See **Figure** 19.11.

FIGURE 19.11
A typical residential transformer.

Figure 19.12 shows a common AC adaptor (a transformer). Notice that the input is given as 120 VAC 60 Hz and the input power as 8 W. The output is given as 5 VDC 500 mA. This transformer accomplishes two important tasks:

1. It converts an alternating voltage and current into a direct voltage and current.
2. It steps-down the voltage.

Check Your Understanding

a. What is the output power of the transformer?

Answer: The voltage is $V = 7.5\ V$ and the current is $I = 200\ mA = 200 \times 10^{-3}\ A = 0.200\ A$. Thus, $P = IV = (0.200A)(7.5V) = 1.5\ W$

b. The input power is given as 6 W. According to the specifications on the transformer, there is four times more power input than output. What has happened to the remaining energy?

FIGURE 19.12
A common transformer.

Answer: Feel the transformer and you'll have a hint!

The heat you feel is Joule heating. The transformer is not very efficient. In fact, 75% of the available energy appears transformed into heat.

A good many of the small transformers found in everyday electrical iterms, such as radios, televisions, and home computers, are power transformers. These transformers are used to convert the alternating voltage and current from a wall outlet into direct voltage and current. Many common electrical items use only direct voltage and current. For example, a portable radio which uses batteries operates on DC voltage and therefore also requires a DC voltage when plugged into an outlet.

19.4 The Electromagnetic Spectrum

Objective

The student will:

- Understand what the electromagnetic spectrum is.

Vocabulary

- **electromagnetic spectrum:** The entire range of eletromagnetic waves.
- **gamma rays**
- **infrared waves**
- **microwaves**
- **radio waves**
- **ultraviolet light**
- **visible light**
- **x-rays**

Introduction

The nature of light has, for most of human history, been a mystery. Galileo was one of the first scientists who attempted to measure its velocity. He positioned two assistants with shuttered lanterns on high ground several kilometers apart. At the first sight of light from one lantern, the other assistant was to open his lantern. Knowing the distance between the two lanterns and measuring the time interval between the "light signals," Galileo assumed he could calculate the velocity of light. Galileo's results were inconclusive- and no wonder! Indeed, the time interval between the light signals was less than a hundred-thousandth of a second, and he had no clock! The best timing tools of the age were the pendulum and water and sand "clocks."

The Speed of Light

In 1675, thirty-three years after the death of Galileo, the Dutch astronomer Ole Roemer (1644-1710) made the first successful estimate of the speed of light. He noticed that the period of Jupiter's moon Io (revolving about Jupiter) seemed to vary. He reasoned that when the Earth was farther (or closer) in its orbit from Jupiter, the light reflecting off the surface of Io would take longer (or shorter) time to reach the Earth. Using Roemer's data, the Dutch physicist Christian Huygens calculated the speed of light as $2.3 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$. Though this is more than 23% less than the accepted value today, calculating it was a major achievement at the time. It was the first substantial evidence showing that the speed of light was finite.

It was not until 1849 that the French physicist Armand H. L. Fizeau (1819-1896) devised an experiment which gave the speed of light to within a little more than the 3% of the modern value.

Fizeau's experiment relied upon a rotating gear. A beam of light was directed between the spaces of the gear's teeth. For example, the light passing through one opening traveled to a distant mirror and was reflected back through an adjacent gear opening. Knowing the rotation rate of the gear and the distance the light traveled, the speed of light could be determined.

In 1862, the French physicist Jean Foucault (1819-1868) improved upon Fizeau's method by replacing the gear with a rotating mirror (described below). His result for the speed of light came within less than one percent of the present-day value.

About thirty years later, the American physicist Albert A. Michelson began a series of experiments using Foucault's method. Michelson used a rotating eight-sided mirror. Light was reflected off one of the mirrors to another mirror far away. As the mirrors rotated, the reflected light returned. If the returning light fell upon one of the rotating mirrors just right, it would further reflect into a narrow tube along which an observer could detect the light. Again, knowing the rotation rate of the mirrors and the distance the light traveled to the distant reflecting mirror, the speed of light could be calculated. Michelson's final experiment in 1926 gave the speed of light (in a vacuum) to within of the current accepted value of $c = 2.997792458 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$.

Unless more precision is needed, we will use the value for the speed of light in a vacuum as $c = 3.00 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$.

Note that the symbol c is used to denote the speed of light.

As far as we know today, nothing travels faster than light through a vacuum. The speed of light plays a fundamental role in physics.

Electromagnetic Waves

But what *is* light?

A satisfactory answer to this question had to wait until the mid-19th century, despite the best efforts of Newton, Huygens, Young, and others.

In our discussion of electromagnetic induction, we concentrated on the induced voltages and currents produced by changing magnetic flux. We explained those phenomena using wires and magnets. It turns out, however, that neither wires nor magnets are necessary in order to produce electromagnetic induction. The famous Scottish theoretical physicist, James Clark Maxwell (1831-1879), **Figure** 19.13, showed that electric and magnetic fields were the fundamental constituents of electromagnetic induction.

We briefly state some of his conclusions:

1. A changing magnetic field induces an electric field.
2. A changing electric field induces a magnetic field.
3. The magnitude of the induced field is proportional to the rate of change of the field.
4. In all cases, the electric and magnetic fields are at right angles to one another, as shown in **Figure** 19.14.

FIGURE 19.13
James Clark Maxwell.

5. Light is an electromagnetic wave where oscillating electric and magnetic fields continuously give rise to one another.

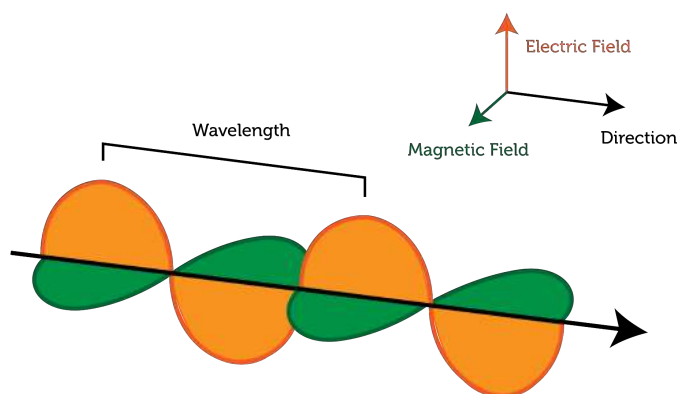
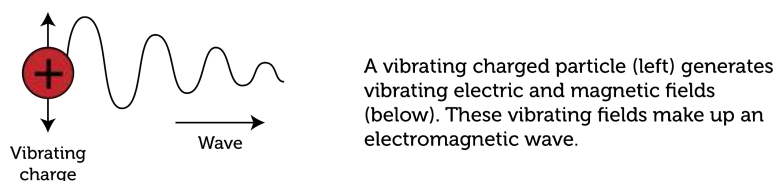



FIGURE 19.14
An electromagnetic wave propagating through space.

Maxwell's determination that light was an electromagnetic wave involved a good deal of mathematics. But perhaps he wasn't entirely surprised with his result. Light, as we have discussed, has a definite speed, which is a fundamental property of all wave phenomena, along with frequency and wavelength.

Since Maxwell's work, electromagnetic waves with frequencies and wavelengths differing from visible light have been detected. These waves have all the properties of visible light. They can be reflected and refracted, and they can be focused, just like a magnifying glass focuses the sunlight. They can have wavelengths both much longer and much shorter than visible light. The entire range of eletromagnetic waves is called the **electromagnetic spectrum**, **Figure** 19.15.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ElectromagneticWave/

As you can see from the figure, human vision is limited to a tiny part of the electromagnetic spectrum, with the wavelength range of about 400 to 750 nm. We have, however, built instruments capable of detecting all segments of the electromagnetic spectrum. Infrared goggles (also known as "night goggles") work by detecting the heat

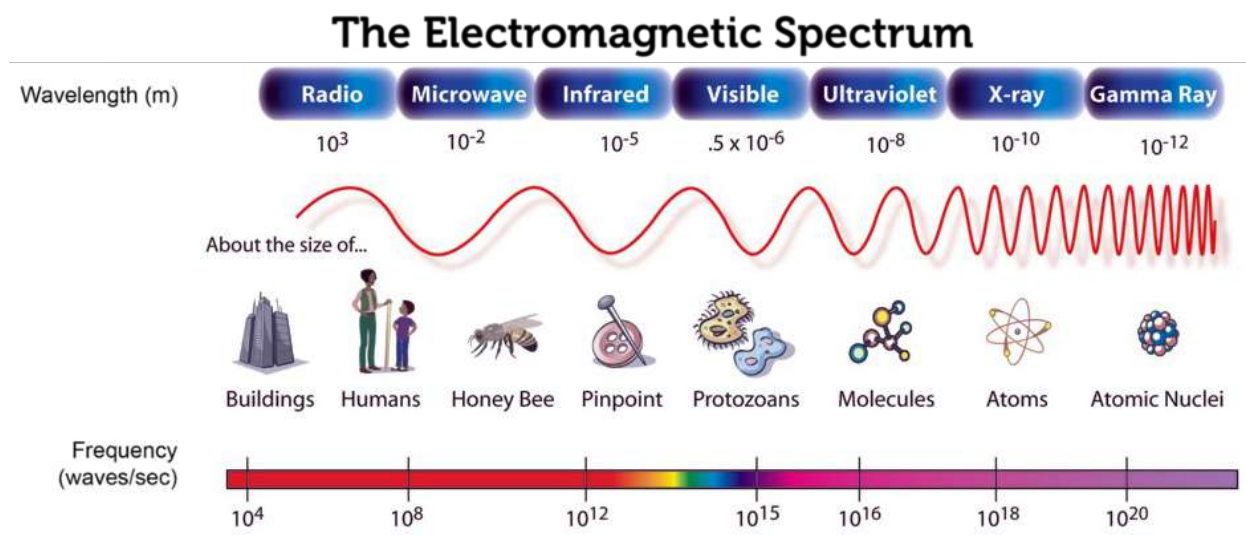



FIGURE 19.15
The electromagnetic spectrum.

produced by various objects, including people and animals. Astronomical instruments make use of every part of the electromagnetic spectrum. There are radio telescopes, microwave telescopes, infrared telescopes, x-ray telescopes, gamma ray telescopes and, of course, optical telescopes that detect visible light. Some of these telescopes are located on Earth and some in outer space, where the atmosphere does not obscure the part of the spectrum detected by the telescope.

On a more mundane note, microwaves can cause water molecules to oscillate at their resonant frequency and therefore a microwave oven can heat (cook) any substance containing water.

Figure 19.16 shows the same portion of the sky photographed in infrared wavelengths and visible light.

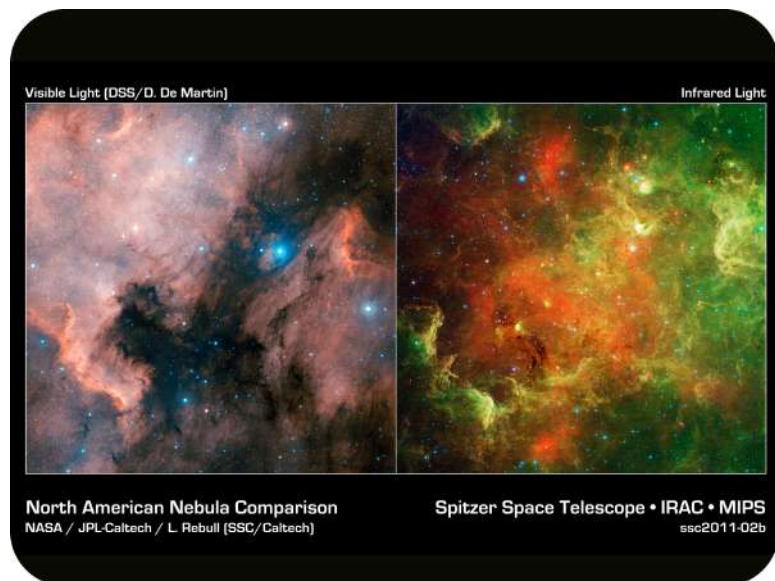



FIGURE 19.16
Photographs of the same portion of the sky taken in infrared and visible light.

19.5 Summary

1. The area vector $\vec{A}$ has magnitude equal to the area enclosed by a conducting loop (or any other enclosed surface) and the direction perpendicular (normal) to the plane of the loop.

2. We use the term **flux** to describe the number of magnetic field lines that pass through a particular area in space.

3. The product of the magnitude of the magnetic field vector $\vec{B}$, the magnitude of the area vector, and the cosine of the angle θ between them, is called the **magnetic flux,** represented with the Greek letter phi (Φ).

$\Phi = BA\cos\theta$

The units of flux are $T * m^2$ and are called **webers**.

$1\ T * m^2 = 1\ Wb$

4. Faraday's Law of Induction applied to a coil of N turns: The average induced voltage in a coil is equal to the product of the number of loops N (or the number of turns) in the coil and the time rate of change in the magnetic flux $\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$ through the coil:

$V = -N\frac{\Delta\Phi}{\Delta t}$

The negative sign indicates that the induced voltage produces a current whose magnetic field opposes the direction of the original change in the magnetic flux. This statement is known as Lenz's Law.

5. A **generator** is a device that converts mechanical energy into electrical energy.

6. A **motor** is a device that converts electrical energy into mechanical energy.

7. A **transformer** is a device that transfers electrical energy between two circuits using magnetic induction, usually with a change in voltage.

Transformer Equations

Where V_p is the voltage in the primary coil, V_s is the voltage in the secondary coil, I_p is the current in the primary coil, I_s is the current in the secondary coil, N_p is the number of turns in the primary coil, and N_s is the number of turns in the secondary coil.

Equation A: $\frac{V_p}{V_s} = \frac{N_p}{N_s}$

Equation B: $I_pV_p = I_sV_s$

Equation C: $\frac{I_p}{I_s} = \frac{N_s}{N_p}$

5. **Light** is an electromagnetic wave which propagates through a vacuum with a constant velocity of $c = 3.00 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$

19.6 References

1. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
2. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Bernhard Petri and Rudolph Hoffmann. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Wilhelm_Eduard_Weber_II.jpg . Public Domain
6. . CK-12 Foundation .
7. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Siddharth Patil. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Transformer_on_Pole.JPG . CC BY 2.0
12. Ray Dehler (Flickr: raybdbomb). http://www.flickr.com/photos/raybdbomb/2200741209/ . CC-BY 2.0
13. G. J. Stodart. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:James_Clerk_Maxwell.png . Public Domain
14. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Courtesy of NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:EM_Spectrum3-new.jpg . Public Domain
16. Courtesy of NASA/JPL-Caltech/L. Rebull. http://www.jpl.nasa.gov/news/news.php?release=2011-047#3 . Public Domain

CHAPTER 20 Geometric Optics

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 20.1
Light refracted through water.

Optics is the study of light. Geometric optics is the classical science of mirrors, glass, and lenses. It explains how light bends in water, and how images are formed in mirrors, telescopes, microscopes, and other devices.

20.1 Light as a Ray and the Law of Reflection

Objectives

The student will:

- Explain the ray model of light.
- Describe the Law of Reflection.
- Explain how images are formed from flat mirrors.

Vocabulary

- **angle of incidence:**
- **angle of reflection:**
- **incident ray:** Makes an angle θ_i with the normal, N.
- **light ray:** Light traveling in straight lines.
- **normal:**
- **reflected ray:** Makes an angle θ_r with the normal, N.
- **virtual image:** An illusion created by the brain because light travels in straight lines.

Introduction

Among other things, the sun provides a source of light for us, as does the moon, **Figure** 20.2. The sun sends light that is generated by thermonuclear fusion in its core. The moon shines only by the light it reflects from the sun. Nearly all the objects we see in daily life are reflecting light that shines on them, rather than producing their own light. This concept covers the case of true reflection.

Light as a Ray

Today, we know that light is a transverse wave that passes by the periodic motion of electric charge. The vibrations are so fast and the wavelengths so small, however, that to our eyes, light functions like a ray traveling in a straight line. Sunlight shining through clouds, for example, often gives this impression, as in the **Figure** 20.3. Indeed, our entire visual orientation is predicated on the notion that light travels in straight lines. When light does not travel in a straight line, this produces an image to our eyes in a different place than where the true object is.

The study of geometrical optics depends upon light traveling in straight lines, called **light rays**.

FIGURE 20.2
The sun produces its own light but the moon shines by reflected sunlight.

FIGURE 20.3
We usually think of light as traveling rays.

The Law of Reflection

One of the simplest cases is true reflection on a flat mirror. **Figure** 20.4 shows a diagram of two light rays reflecting off a flat (plane) mirror. The dashed line N is the **normal** to the plane of the mirror M. The **incident rays** make an angle θ_i with the normal N. The **reflected rays** make an angle θ_r with the normal, N.

The Law of Reflection states:

The angle of incidence (θ_i) is equal to the angle of reflection (θ_r).

$\theta_i = \theta_r$

The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the normal are also coplanar.

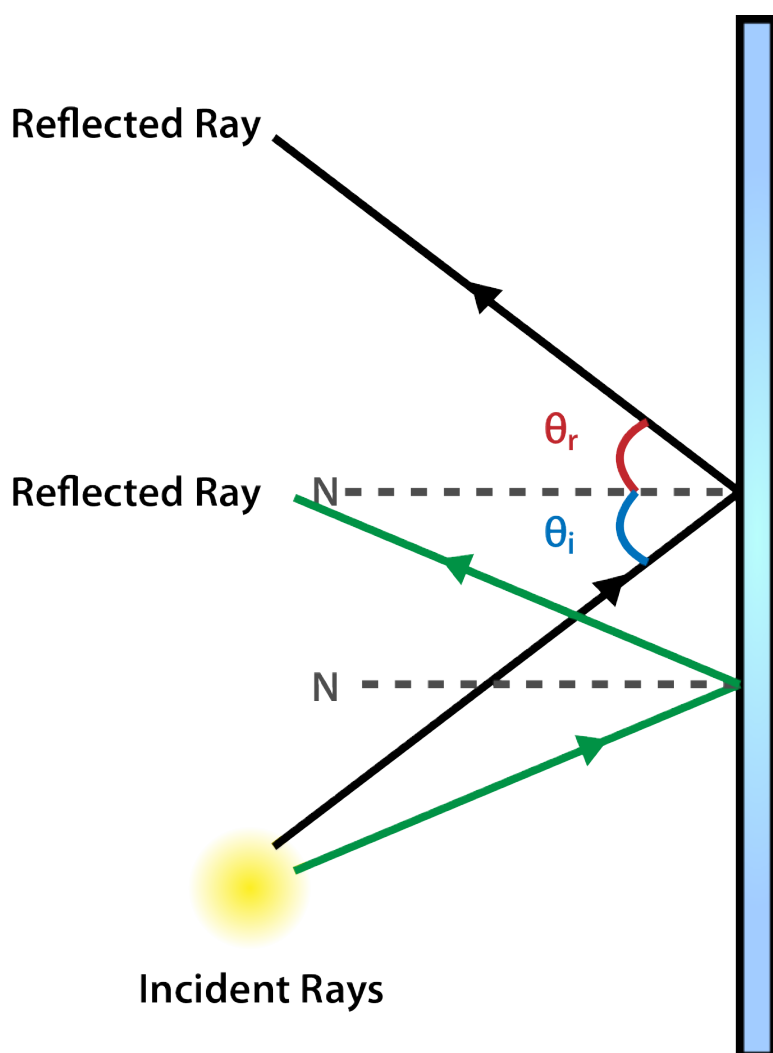



FIGURE 20.4

Forming images using the Law of Reflection

An apple is seen by an observer in the mirror in **Figure** 20.5. Since light rays travel in straight lines, the observer sees the image of the apple emanating from somewhere along the reflected ray as shown by dashed red lines. Where two or more dashed lines (appear to) intersect, the eye (brain) will see an image. Of course, a very large number of light rays form the image. We only show a few rays in order to avoid confusion.

Two important conclusions can be drawn from the figure.

1. The image that we see in a plane mirror does not actually exist in space. It is an illusion created by our brain because light travels in straight lines. The reflected rays *appear* to originate behind the mirror because this is where the extended (dashed) paths (see figure) lead. We could not place a screen at the apparent location of the image and actually have the image appear on that screen. This kind of an image is called a **virtual image.**
2. The law of reflection and a little geometry will quickly show that the distance (d_i) an object's image appears behind a plane mirror is equal to the distance (d_o) that the object is placed in front of the mirror.

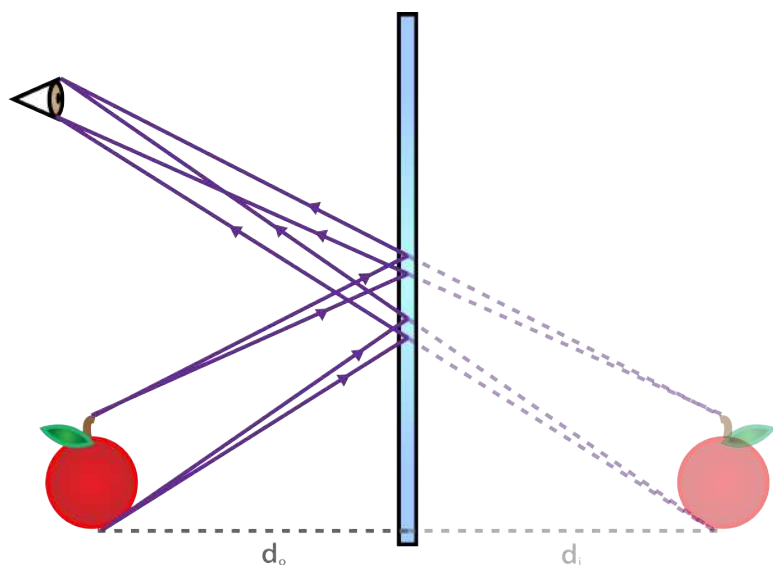



FIGURE 20.5
An image formed with a plane mirror.

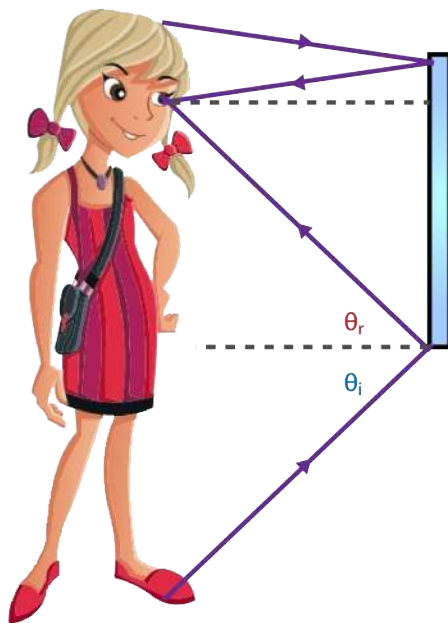
Diagrams such as **Figure** 20.5 are called ray diagrams. Ray diagrams are visual aids showing the object's position, some of the rays forming the image, and the image itself.

To further investigate how a plane mirror forms images see this link: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2ek0EsEMTBc

Check Your Understanding

True or False: When standing straight, in order to see your reflection (from your head to your toes), you need a mirror that is at least equal to your height.

Answer: False. Using the Law of Reflection, we can deduce that a mirror the height of your body is not needed. In the figure below we see that a ray of light from your toes will reflect from a point about half the height of your body. It is actually half the distance from your toes to your eyes. See if you can convince yourself that a mirror exactly half your height is sufficient to see your entire body. Don't forget to consider the rays of light from the top of your head to your eyes!

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/ReflectionsInAMirroredCorner/

A person looks into a mirror (see link below)

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/OpticsLawOfReflection/

20.2 Concave and Convex Mirrors

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to draw ray diagrams for concave mirrors.
- Understand how to solve problems involving concave mirrors.
- Understand how to draw ray diagrams for convex mirrors.
- Understand how to solve problems involving convex mirrors.

Vocabulary

- **concave mirror:** A mirror that curves inwards, like the inside of a bowl.
- **convex mirror:** A mirror that curves outwards, like the top of a dome.
- **focal point** (or **focus):** The point from a spherical mirror or thin lens where parallel rays of light converge.
- **real image:** An image formed from rays of light converging, that can be projected onto a screen or paper.
- **spherical mirror:** A curved mirror formed that matches the shape of a slice from a larger sphere.

Introduction

Amusement parks often have Fun Houses with mirrors that distort your image in various funny ways. Even more commonplace curved mirrors are rear-view mirrors for cars. As the warning shown above states, "Objects in mirror are closer than they appear." The mirror is curved to allow drivers to see more of the road, but this also distorts the image.

Using diagrams of the position of the mirror and the object, we can calculate how large the image is, and in what position it appears to be.

Concave mirrors

A **concave mirror** is a mirror that is rounded inwards, like the inside surface of a bowl. Specifically, we will be dealing with **spherical concave mirrors**, so the bowl shape comes like the a slice off the edge of an even sphere. The **Figure** 20.7 shows the shape. The reflecting surface is on the left, while the back of the mirror is on the right. To form an image, the slice must be a very small part of the sphere, near flat in appearance.

FIGURE 20.6
Rear view mirror with warning statement.

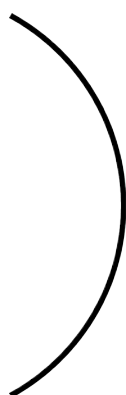



FIGURE 20.7
A concave mirror, with reflecting surface on the left, and back off the mirror on the right.

This curvature means that the reflection in this bowl-like mirror seems smaller or closer than it really is. The **Figure** below shows how a concave mirror reflection differs from a flat mirror. In the flat mirror, the parallel red lines show the center of the reflection. The reflected rays are symetrical about each of these. In the concave mirror, the same red lines are at angles perpendicular to the curved surface. This creates an image that is larger than the original object.

Curved surfaces always produce these distortions of size depending on how they curve, as seen in the **Figure** 20.9.

What follows is the procedure of how to calculate the image height and distance, based on the height and distance of the original object.

Focus and Focal Length

A concave mirror has a **focal point** (or **focus)**, which is where parallel rays of light shined into it converge. This is illustrated in **Figure** 20.10, showing rays of light coming in from the left. Because of the curvature, these rays will all intersect at a common point. The terminology of this is as follows:

The focus: A common point (also called the focal point) where the reflected rays cross (intersect) each other.

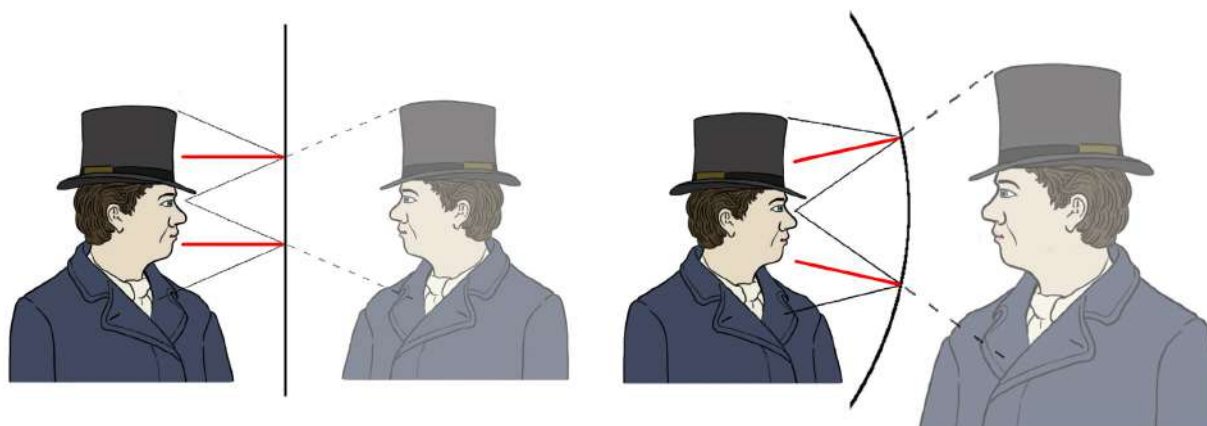



FIGURE 20.8

FIGURE 20.9
Reflection on a shiny curved spoon.

Focal length (f): The distance from the center of the mirror to the focal point.

The principal axis (P): A straight line drawn perpendicularly to the plane of the mirror which passes through the mirror's center.

The radius of curvature (RC): The radius of the sphere (from point c to the mirror) from which the mirror was made. In order for the reflected rays to have a (nearly) common focus, the incidence angles must be small. This condition

is met as long as the radius of curvature of the mirror is small compared to the distance that the light travels from the object to the mirror. For example, rays of sunlight are effectively parallel since the sun is so far away. The image of the sun would therefore form at the focal point f of the mirror in **Figure** 20.11.

We can demonstrate, with a bit of geometry, that the radius of curvature is twice the focal length.

$r = 2f \rightarrow f = \frac{r}{2}$

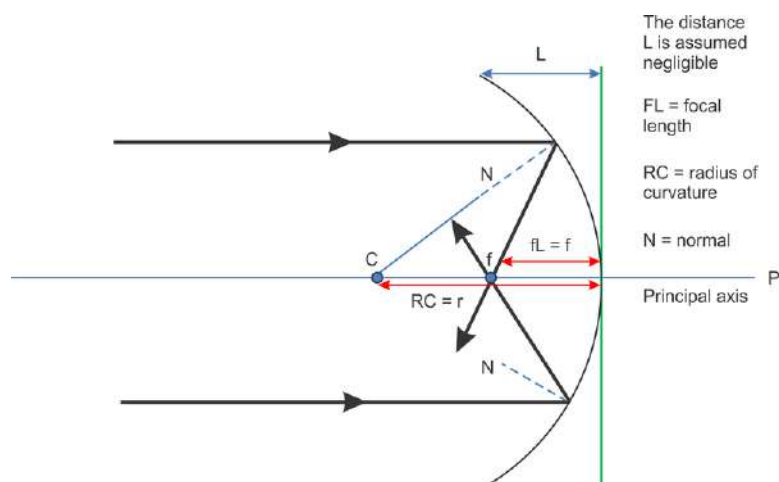



FIGURE 20.10

Constructing ray diagrams for concave mirrors: object located beyond the focal point

We begin with a definition. Images that appear on a screen are called **real images.** Such images are formed by actual rays, not extensions of rays as in the case of virtual images. Images formed with concave mirrors when the object is located beyond the focal point are real images.

The Law of Reflection is the basis for constructing ray diagrams for mirrors. However, it is rather time-consuming and difficult to construct rays by measuring their incidence and reflection angles.

Three principal rays can be drawn to construct ray diagrams for concave mirrors.

Figure 20.10 suggests that there is at least one way, as described below, to construct a ray path easily.

See **Figure** 20.11 for rays labeled 1, 2, 3 as given below.

Ray 1: A ray parallel to the principal axis will, after reflection, pass through the focal point.

We can assume that the direction of the ray is reversible. In other words, if an object (imagine a small light bulb) were placed at the focal point of the mirror, all rays would reflect off the mirror parallel to the principal axis.

Ray 2: A ray passing through the focal point will reflect parallel to the principal axis.

Ray 3. A ray that reflects perpendicularly off the mirror (along the normal) will pass through the center of curvature, since all radii are perpendicular to tangents to the circle.

The point where the rays intersect is the location of the image.

Definitions:

object distance (d_o): Distance from the object to the mirror.

image distance (d_i): Distance from the image to the mirror.

Notice that the image formed in **Figure** 20.11 is inverted.

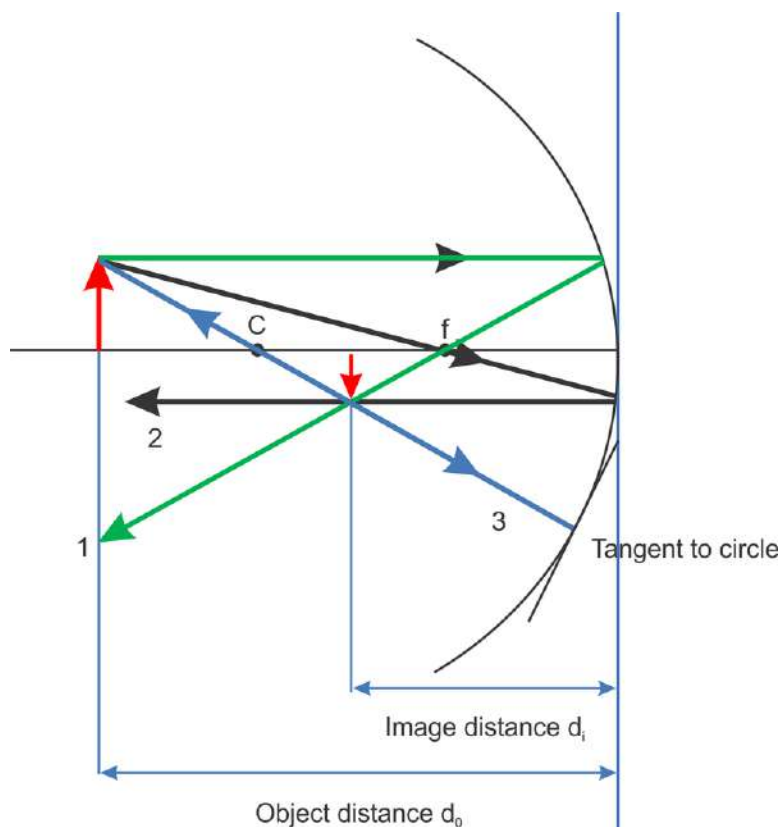



FIGURE 20.11

Again, with a bit of geometry, we can demonstrate that the object distance d_o, the image distance d_i, and the focal length f are related by the mirror equation:

$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}$

Concave mirror-objects placed in front of the focal point

When an object is placed closer to the concave mirror than the focal point, a virtual image is formed. The same principal rays are used to construct the diagram, but the construction is not quite as straightforward as before. **Figure** 20.12 shows the ray diagram for this situation.

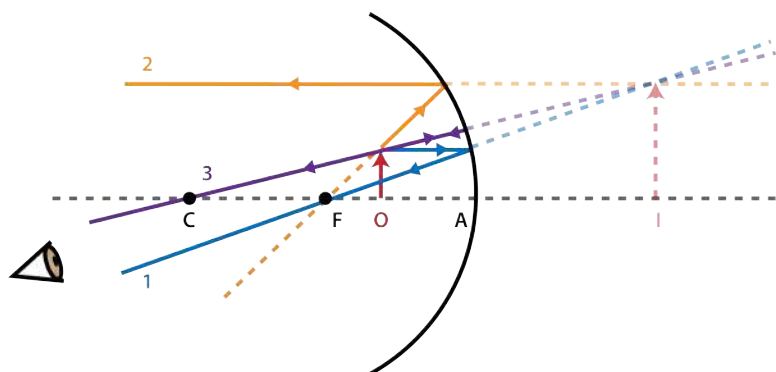



FIGURE 20.12

An object placed in front of the focal point.

To the eye in the figure, the rays appear to converge to a point behind the mirror shown by the dashed lines.

Ray 1: A ray that is parallel to the principal axis and is reflected through the focal point.

Ray 2: A ray continued backward from the object, is in line with the focal point, and so reflects off the mirror parallel to the principal axis.

Ray 3: A ray continued backward from the object, is in line with the radius of curvature, and so reflects back upon itself.

Sign conventions for spherical mirrors

There are several sign conventions which must be followed when working with spherical mirrors.

1. All distances are measured with respect to the mirror.
2. The object height h_o is always positive.
3. The image height h_i is positive if it is right-side-up (upright) and negative if it is inverted (relative to the object).
4. An object or image on the reflecting side of the mirror has positive distance and is real.
5. An object or image behind the mirror has negative distance and is virtual. The lateral magnification m of an object is defined as the ratio of the image height h_i of the object to the actual height h_o of the object, and, it can be shown, equals the negative of the ratio of the image distance d_i to the object distance d_o

$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} = -\frac{d_i}{d_o}$

In **Figure** 20.11, the image is on the reflecting side of the mirror, reduced, and inverted. As a consequence of these results, h_i is negative and d_i is positive. Thus, the magnification equation yields consistent results, regardless of whether the heights or the distances are used.

Concluding remarks for concave mirrors

An object placed closer to the mirror than the focal point always produces an upright, enlarged, and virtual image.

An object placed beyond the focal point always produces an inverted, real image.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RayDiagramsForSphericalMirrors/

Illustrative Example 21.2.1

An object of height 10.0 cm is positioned 30.0 cm from a concave mirror with a focal length 8.0 cm.

a. Find the image position.

Solution:

We are given $h_o = 10.0\ cm, d_o = 30.0\ cm,\ and\ f = 8.0\ cm$

Using the mirror equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \rightarrow \frac{1}{30.0\ cm} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{8.0\ cm} \rightarrow \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{8.0\ cm} - \frac{1}{30.0\ cm} = \frac{30.0 - 8.0}{240\ cm} \rightarrow$$
$$d_i = 10.91 \rightarrow 10.9\ cm;$$
$$d_i = 10.9\ cm$$

Since the image distance is positive, the image is real.

b. What is the magnification?

Solution:

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} = -\frac{10.91\ cm}{30.0\ cm} = -0.3636 \rightarrow -0.364$$
$$m = -0.364$$

The image is inverted and reduced, since m is negative and has absolute value smaller than 1.

c. What is the height of the image?

Solution:

$$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} \rightarrow -0.3636 = \frac{h_i}{10\ cm}$$
$$h_i = -3.64\ cm$$

d. The object is now positioned 5.3 cm from the mirror. Find the image position.

Solution:

We are given $h_o = 10.0\ cm, d_o = 5.3\ cm\ and\ f = 8.0\ cm$

Using the mirror equation:

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}$$
$$\frac{1}{5.3 \text{ cm}} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{8.0 \text{ cm}}$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{8.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.3 \text{ cm}}$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{5.3 - 8.0}{42.4 \text{ cm}}$$
$$d_i = -15.7 \text{ cm}$$

Notice the result is negative. The image is, therefore, 15.7 cm behind the mirror, and is virtual.

An object placed between the mirror and the focal point, as in this case $(5.3\ cm < 8.0\ cm)$, will always produce a virtual image.

e. What is the magnification of the object?

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} = -\frac{-15.7\ cm}{5.3\ cm} = +2.96 \rightarrow +3.0$$
$$m = 3.0$$

Solution: The image is upright and magnified; its height is 30 cm. See **Figure** 20.13.

Concave mirrors are often sold as "beauty aids" for applying makeup, since the image of an object placed close to the mirror is magnified. If you hold one of these mirrors at arm's length, you'll see your image as inverted and reduced. However, as you bring the mirror slowly toward your eyes, your image will grow larger, vanish, and then reappear upright and magnified (and not always flattering, many people say!). Try doing this with a shiny spoon!

Check Your Understanding

If an object is placed at the focal point of a concave mirror, where does the image form?

Answer: Using the mirror equation and $d_o = f$:

$$\frac{1}{d_o}+\frac{1}{d_i}=\frac{1}{f}\rightarrow\frac{1}{f}+\frac{1}{d_i}=\frac{1}{f}$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i}=0$$
$$d_i\rightarrow\infty$$

The image would form at "infinity." No image is formed since the rays would never converge. They reflect off the mirror parallel to the principal axis. This is why your image would vanish in going from inverted to upright as stated above.

Convex Mirrors

A convex mirror is shown in **Figure** 20.13.

Convex mirrors give wide views. They reduce the object size, and therefore can fit large views into small areas. Convex mirrors are often placed in stores above customer's heads, and are also used as side-view mirrors in cars.

Constructing ray diagrams for convex mirrors

Three principal rays can be drawn to construct ray diagrams for convex mirrors.

Ray 1: A ray that would pass through the focal point is reflected parallel to the principal axis.

Ray 2: A ray that is parallel to the principal axis reflects as if in line with the focal point.

Ray 3: A ray that would pass through the center of curvature is reflected back upon itself.

Sign Conventions for convex mirrors.

1. Distances are all measured from the mirror.
2. The focal length of a convex mirror is assumed to be negative.
3. The image distance is always negative.
4. The object and the image heights are always positive.
5. The magnification (always less than 1) is given by the same equation as for a concave mirror.

Concluding remarks for convex mirrors

An object placed anywhere (farther or closer than the focal point) in front of a convex mirror always produces a reduced, upright, and virtual image.

Illustrative Example 21.2.2

An object of height 10.0 cm object is placed 20.0 cm from a convex mirror of focal length -12.0 cm.

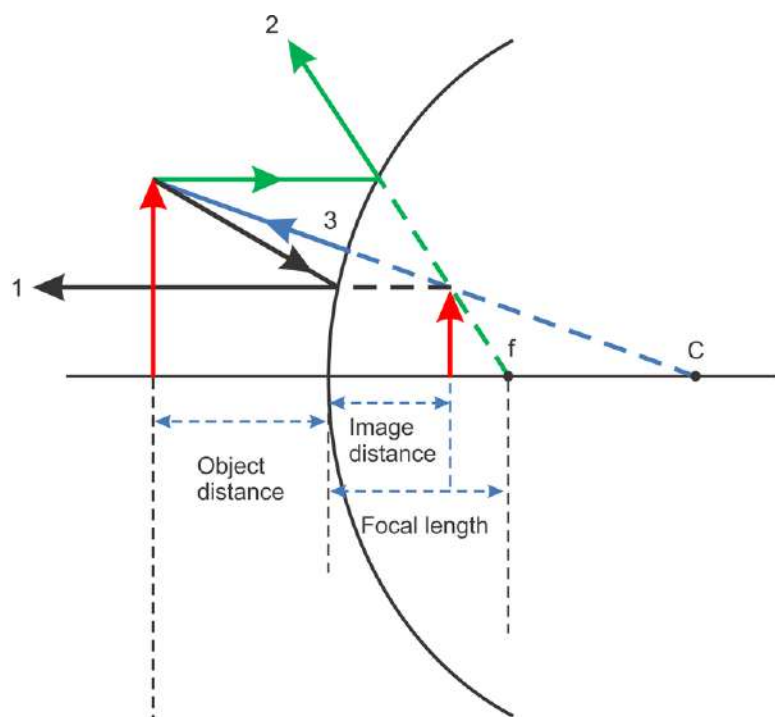



FIGURE 20.13
A convex mirror.

a. Where does the image form?

Solution:

We are given $h_o = 10.0\ cm, d_o = 20.0\ cm,\ and\ f = -12.0\ cm$

Using the mirror equation we have,

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \rightarrow \frac{1}{20.0\ cm} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{-12.0\ cm} \rightarrow \frac{1}{d_i} = -\frac{1}{20.0\ cm} - \frac{1}{12.0\ cm} \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{-(12.0+20.0)}{240\ cm}$$
$$d_i = -7.50\ cm$$

Since the image distance is negative, it appears on the opposite side of the mirror (as in **Figure** 20.13) and is virtual.

b. What is the magnification?

Solution:

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} = -\frac{-7.50\ cm}{20.0\ cm} = +0.375$$
$$m = 0.375$$

The object is reduced in size and is upright.

20.3 Index of Refraction

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how the index of refraction is defined.
- Solve problems involving the index of refraction.
- Understand Snell's Law.
- Solve problems involving Snell's Law.

Vocabulary

- **angle of incidence**
- **angle of refraction**
- **incident ray**
- **index of refraction:** The ratio of the speed of light through vacuum c to the speed of the light through a particular medium v.
- **refracted ray:** Light rays change direction when they pass through different material.
- **Snell's Law: E**xpresses the relationship between the angle of incidence θ_1 and the angle of refraction θ_2 at the interface of two media.

Introduction

Light will change direction when it passes through different material. This is called **refraction**, as the word *refract* means "to bend." You can see how light bends when you look through a glass of water, as shown in the **Figure** 20.14. It looks like the straw is broken in two pieces, but this is because the part of the straw inside the glass is not really in the same position it appears to be.

We will show that this bending matches up to the change in how fast the wave moves. Any kind of wave can refract if it changes speed and has room to change direction.

This site has animations of waves changing direction: http://www.s-cool.co.uk/gcse/physics/properties-of-waves/revise-it/refraction-of-waves

FIGURE 20.14
Refraction of light makes the straw appear "broken."

The index of refraction

We define the ratio of the speed of light through vacuum c to the speed of the light through a particular medium v as the **index of refraction** of the medium (n):

$n = \frac{c}{v}$

Since $c > v$, the index of refraction is always greater than 1 when traveling through any medium other than vacuum.

Table 20.1 gives the indices of refraction for several common media.

TABLE 20.1:

Medium	**Index of Refraction** (n)
Vacuum	1.0000
Air	1.0003
Water	1.33
Ethyl Alcohol	1.36
Plexiglas(Lucite)	1.51
Crown glass	1.52
Diamond	2.42

Check Your Understanding

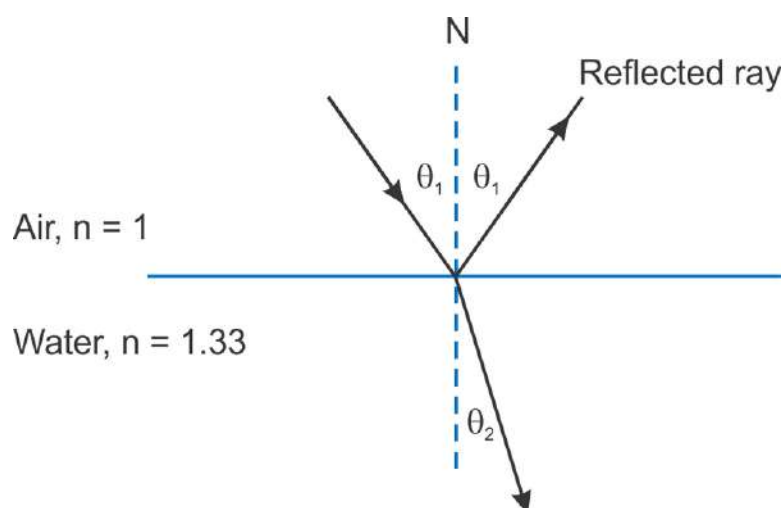
What is the speed of light through water?

Answer: $n_w = \frac{c}{v_w} \rightarrow v_w = \frac{c}{n_w} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}}{1.33} = 2.255 \rightarrow 2.26 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$

Snell's Law

The mathematical relation between changing wave speed and the angle of refraction was discovered in 1621 by the

FIGURE 20.15

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LightRayPassingThroughATransparentPlate/

Check Your Understanding

1. Light passes from air into crown glass with an angle of incidence 30°. What is the angle of refraction?

Answer: According to **Table** 20.1, the index of refraction for crown glass is 1.52. Using Snell's Law, we have

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow 1.00 \sin 30.0^\circ = 1.52 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow$$
$$\sin\theta_2 = \frac{\sin 30.0^\circ}{1.52} = 0.3289 \rightarrow \theta_2 = \sin^{-1} 0.3289 \rightarrow 19.2^\circ$$
$$\theta_2 = 19.2^\circ$$

2. Light passes from air into an unknown fluid with an angle of incidence 30° and an angle of refraction of 21.6°. What is the velocity of light in the unknown medium?

Answer: Using Snell's Law and the fact that the speed of light in air is $3.00 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$, we have:

$$v_2 \sin\theta_1 = v_1 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow v_2 \sin 30^\circ = c \sin 21.6^\circ \rightarrow$$
$$v_2 = c\frac{\sin 21.6^\circ}{\sin 30^\circ} = 0.736c \rightarrow v_2 = 0.736\left(3.00 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}\right) = 2.209 \times 10^8 \rightarrow$$
$$v_2 = 2.21 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}$$

A Special case of Snell's Law

If the angle of incidence in Snell's law is 0°, we have

$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow n_1(0) = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow \sin\theta_2 = 0 \rightarrow \theta_2 = 0$

We conclude that light incident perpendicular to the interface of two media will pass through the second medium without refracting.

Total internal reflection

So far we have discussed light passing into media with a greater index of refraction. Let us consider what happens if we have a light source under water with the light passing into the air, as in **Figure** 20.16.

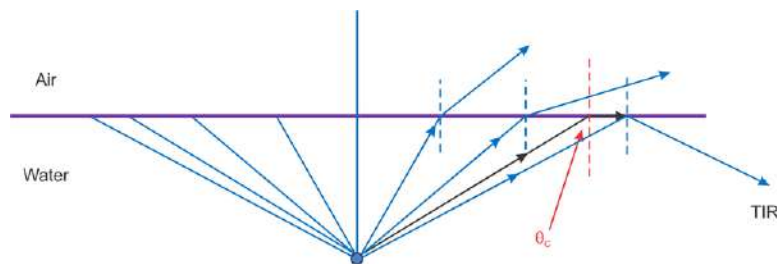



FIGURE 20.16

We see there is a point at which the light is refracted at 90° from the normal (the red normal and black rays). The angle of incidence at which this occurs is called the critical angle and it is labeled θ_c in the **Figure** 20.16. Rays incident to the normal that are larger than the critical angle do not pass into the air. They are reflected back into the water as shown by the ray labeled TIR in the figure. We call this condition total internal reflection (TIR).

A critical angle will always exist when light passes from a medium with a greater index of refraction to one with a smaller index of refraction.

We can use Snell's Law to determine the critical angle in terms of the indices of refraction of the two media involved

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \rightarrow n_1 \sin\theta_c = n_2 \sin 90^\circ = n_2 \rightarrow$$
$$n_1 \sin\theta_c = n_2 \rightarrow \sin\theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \rightarrow \theta_c = \sin^{-1}\frac{n_2}{n_1};\ where\ n_1 > n_2$$

Illustrative Example 21.3.1

a. What is the critical angle for the light source in **Figure** 20.14?

Solution:

Using the equation derived above, we have

$\theta_c = \sin^{-1}\frac{n_2}{n_1}$ with $n_1 = 1.33$ and $n_2 = 1.00$

$\theta_c = \sin^{-1}\frac{1.00}{1.33} = 48.8^\circ$

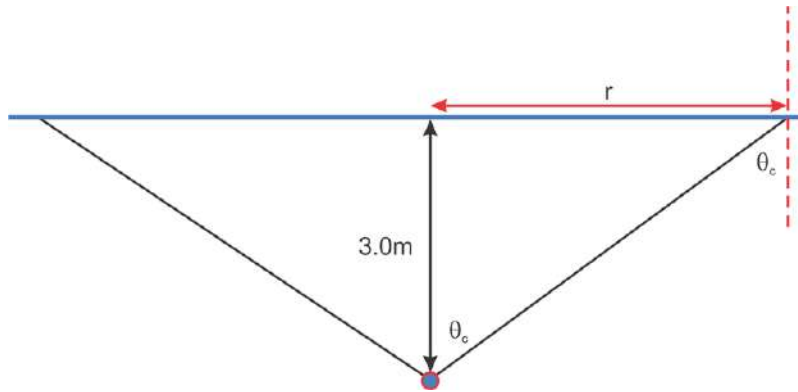
b. Any light that is incident to the normal with an angle greater than 48.8° will be internally reflected back into the water as demonstrated in **Figure** 20.16. An observer above the water will, therefore, see a circle of light.

If the light source in **Figure** 20.16 is positioned 3 meters below the water surface, what is the radius of the circle of light seen?

Solution:

A diagram of the situation is shown below.

We can see from the diagram that

$\tan\theta_c = \frac{r}{3} \rightarrow r = 3\tan\theta_c = 3\tan 48.8^\circ = 3.43\ m$

An important technological use of total internal reflection today is in the field of communications. Fiber optic cables are quickly replacing much of the copper wire used to carry cable television and telephone signals. Light signals in fiber optics are used in place of an electrical current in a copper wire because of their low energy losses and their ability to transmit much more information. There is practically no transmission of the light wave to the air because of the tiny fiber and index of refraction of the fiber optic cable. Almost all of the light is internally reflected as it is transmitted. A small amount of energy is absorbed by the cable and there is a very small amount of light that is lost at the ends of the cable. Fiber optic cables are also used in medical applications to transmit video from difficult-to-access areas during surgery and as diagnostic probes.

20.4 Thin Lenses

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how to draw ray diagrams for convex lenses.
- Understand how to solve problems involving convex lenses.
- Understand how to draw ray diagrams for concave lenses.
- Understand how to solve problems involving concave lenses.

Vocabulary

- **concave lens:** A lens that is thinner at the center than its edges. Diverging lenses make rays parallel to the principal axis (P) diverge as shown below.

- **convex lens:** A lens that is thicker in the center than its edges. Converging lenses make rays parallel to the principal axis (P) converge at the focal point as shown below.

- **focus/foci:** The point(s) at which rays parallel to an axis converge.

- **optical center:** The center of the lens.

- **principal axis:** A straight line passing through the center of the lens and perpendicular to its surfaces.

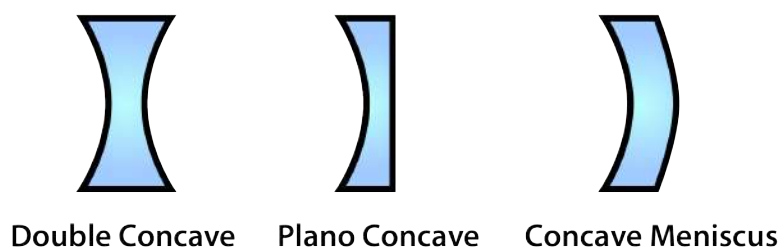
Introduction

A lens is a piece of transparent material, cut into a particular shape. Its purpose is to refract light in useful ways. Lenses come in many shapes, as shown in **Figure** 20.17. We will be interested in **convex** (converging) **lenses** and **concave** (diverging) **lenses**. There are several kinds of these lenses:

A lens can be considered thin" if it has a much greater diameter than its maximum thickness.

You probably see convex lenses and concave lenses every day. People who use reading glasses use convex lenses. Convex lenses are also used as magnifying glasses. People who use glasses to see distant objects use concave glasses. When a lens refracts light, it can alter the point in space where an image forms. The manner in which a lens refracts light determines which lens to use in which pair of glasses.

All ray diagrams for lenses can, in principle, be constructed using Snell's Law. But as is the case with mirrors and the Law of Reflection, there is a much simpler way to approach ray construction than measuring angles and using tedious constructions.

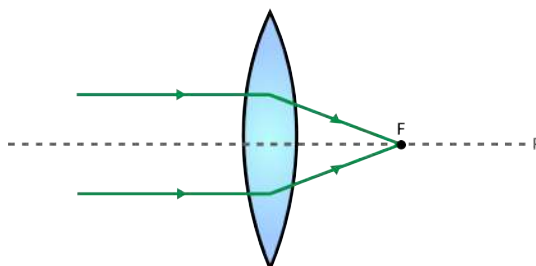
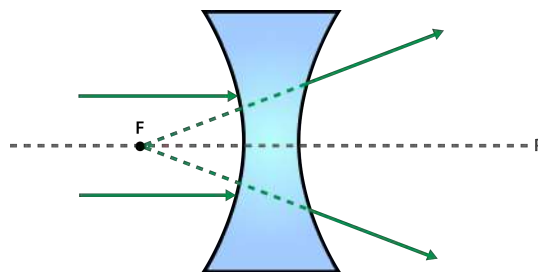
FIGURE 20.17

Terminology for converging and diverging lenses

principal axis: A straight line passing through the center of the lens and perpendicular to its surfaces.

optical center: The center of the lens.

focal point: Rays parallel to the principal axis converge at a point called the focal point as long as the rays pass close to the optical center of the lens. Each lens has two focal points (two foci): one on each side of the lens.

Focal length: The distance from the center of the lens to either focal point.

convex/converging lens: A lens that is thicker in the center than its edges. Converging lenses make rays parallel to the principal axis (P) converge at the focal point as shown below.

concave/diverging lens: A lens that is thinner at the center than its edges. Diverging lenses make rays parallel to the principal axis (P) diverge as shown below. In this case, the focal point is the location where the extensions of the refracted rays converge, to the left of the lens.

Drawing ray diagrams for converging lenses: Real images

Three principal rays can be drawn to construct ray diagrams for convex lenses, as shown in **Figure** 20.18.

1. A ray parallel to the principal axis is refracted through the opposite focal point.
2. A ray passing through the optical center of the lens does not refract.
3. A ray passing through the focal point on the same side of the lens as the object is refracted parallel to the principal axis.

The intersection of the rays shows where the image is formed.

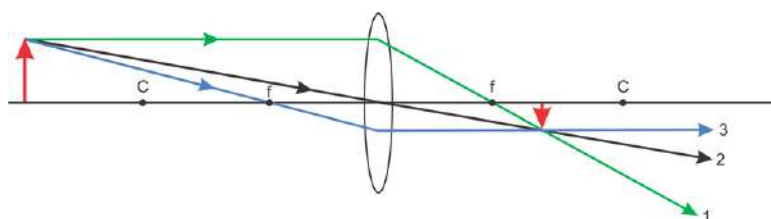



FIGURE 20.18

Note the similarities in ray construction between the concave mirror and the convex lens.

Again, with a bit of geometry, we can demonstrate that the object distance d_o, the image distance d_i, and the focal length f are related by the Lens Equation, shown below:

$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}$

This is the same equation as the Mirror Equation. All distances are measured with respect to the lens.

Drawing ray diagrams for converging lenses: Virtual images

Ray 1: A ray parallel to the principal axis is refracted through the opposite focal point.

Ray 2: A ray that passes through the focal point on the left, as shown in **Figure** 20.19, refracts parallel to the principal axis.

Ray 3: There is no refraction of a ray passing through the center of the lens. The ray passes straight through the lens.

The intersection of the rays shows where the image is formed.

Sign conventions for converging lenses (single lens system)

1. Distances are measured from the lens.
2. The focal length is positive.

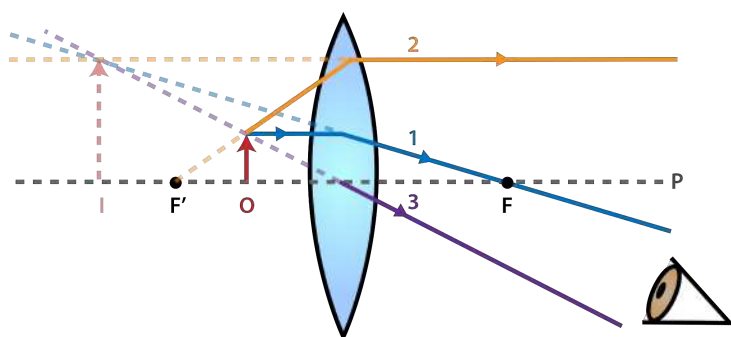



FIGURE 20.19
A convex lens with the object in front of the focal point, F'.

3. The object distance is positive.
4. The image distance is positive if the image is on the opposite side of the lens from the object. If the image is on the same side as the object, the image distance is negative.
5. An image that forms on the opposite side of the lens from the object is a real, inverted image. An image that forms on the same side of the lens as the object is a virtual, upright image.
6. The object height is always positive. The image height is positive when upright and negative when inverted (as referenced to the object).

Concluding remarks for converging lenses

An object placed beyond the focal point will always form real and inverted images.

An object placed closer to the lens than the focal point will always form virtual, upright, and enlarged images.

Illustrative Example 21.4.1

An object of height 12.0 cm is placed 30.0 cm from a converging lens of focal length 10.0 cm (see **Figure** 20.18.).

a. Find the image position.

Solution:

We are given $h_o = 12.0\ cm, d_o = 30.0\ cm,\ and\ f = 10.0\ cm$

Using the Lens Equation,

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \rightarrow \frac{1}{30.0} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{10.0} \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{10.0} - \frac{1}{30.0} = \frac{30.0 - 10.0}{300\ cm} \rightarrow$$
$$d_i = 15.0\ cm$$

Since the image distance is positive, the image is real.

b. What is the magnification?

Solution:.

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} \rightarrow \frac{15.0\ cm}{30.0\ cm} = -0.500$$
$$m = -\frac{1}{2}$$

The image is inverted and reduced, since m is negative and has absolute value smaller than 1.

c. What is the height of the image?

Solution:

The image is half the size of the object:

$$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} \rightarrow h_i = mh_o \rightarrow$$
$$h_i = \frac{1}{2}(12.0\ cm) = 6.0\ cm$$

d. The object is now positioned 7.0 cm from the lens. Find the image position.

Solution:

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \rightarrow \frac{1}{7.0} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{10.0} \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{10.0} - \frac{1}{7.0} = \frac{7.0 - 10.0}{70\ cm} \rightarrow$$
$$d_i = -23.3\ cm$$

Since the image distance is negative, the image is formed on the same side of the lens as the object, and therefore is virtual. See **Figure** 20.19.

e. What is the magnification?

Solution:

$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} = -\frac{-23.3\ cm}{7.0\ cm} = 3.33 \rightarrow 3.3$

The image is upright and magnified.

The diverging lens

A lens that is thinner at its center than its edges is a diverging lens.

Constructing ray diagrams for diverging lenses

Three principal rays can be drawn to construct ray diagrams for diverging lenses.

Ray 1: A ray parallel to the principal axis refracts so that its extension (the dashed line) passes through the focal point F in **Figure** 20.20.

Ray 2: A ray heading toward focal point F' refracts parallel to the principal axis, as in **Figure** 20.20.

Ray 3: A ray passes through the center of the lens with no apparent refraction.

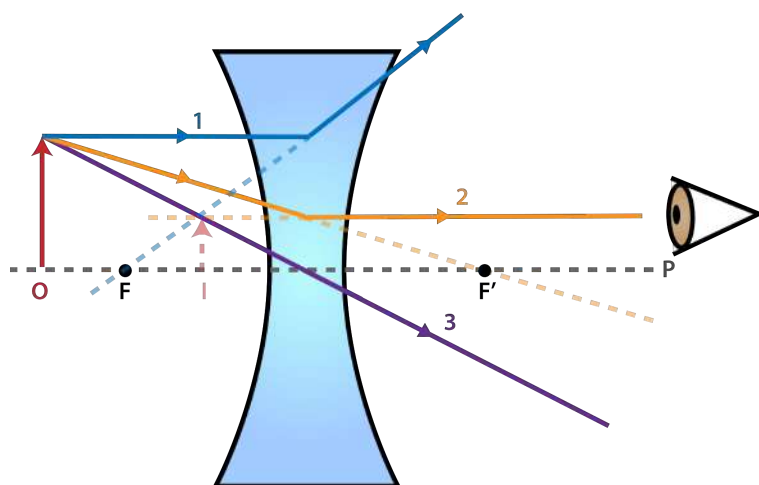



FIGURE 20.20

Sign conventions for diverging lenses (single lens system)

1. Distances are measured from the lens.
2. The focal length is negative.
3. The object distance is positive.
4. The image distance is negative.
5. The object height is always positive. The image height is positive.

Concluding remarks for diverging lenses

Regardless of where an object is placed, a diverging lens will form only virtual, upright, reduced images.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RayTracingWithLenses/

Illustrative Example 21.4.2

An object of height 7.0 cm object is placed 35.0 cm from a diverging lens of focal length -14.0 cm (see **Figure** 20.17.).

a. Find the image position.

Solution:

We are given $h_o = 7.0\ cm, d_o = 35.0\ cm$, and $f = -14.0\ cm$.

Using the Lens Equation,

$$\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f} \rightarrow \frac{1}{35.0} + \frac{1}{d_i} = -\frac{1}{14.0} \rightarrow$$

$$\frac{1}{d_i} = -\frac{1}{14.0} - \frac{1}{35.0} = -\frac{35.0 + 14.0}{490\ cm} \rightarrow$$

$$d_i = -10.0\ cm$$

The image distance is negative, as it should be for a diverging lens. The image is virtual.

b. What is the magnification?

Solution:

$$m = -\frac{d_i}{d_o} \rightarrow -\frac{-10.0\ cm}{35.0\ cm} = \frac{2}{7}$$
$$m = \frac{2}{7}$$

The object is upright and has a reduced image, since m is positive and is smaller than 1. See **Figure** 20.19.

c. What is the height of the image?

Solution:

$$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} \rightarrow h_i = mh_o \rightarrow$$
$$h_i = \frac{2}{7}(7.0\ cm) = 2.0\ cm$$

The link below helps explain how converging and diverging lens are used in eyeglasses.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/NearsightednessAndFarsightedness/

20.5 Summary

1. The Law of Reflection states that the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection $\theta_i = \theta_r$.

The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the normal are also coplanar.

2. For the object distance, d_o the image distance d_i, and the focal length f, both the mirror equation and thin lens equation is $\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}$.

3. For spherical mirrors, $f = \frac{r}{2}$.

4. The lateral magnification m of an object is defined as the ratio of the image height h_i of the object to the actual height h_o of the object. It is equal to the negative of the ratio of the image distance d_i to the object distance d_o.

$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} = -\frac{d_i}{d_o}$

5. We define the ratio of the speed of light through vacuum c to the speed of the light through a particular medium v as the index of refraction n:

$n = \frac{c}{v}$

Since $c > v$, the index of refraction is always greater than 1 when traveling through any medium other than vacuum.

6. Snell's Law can be defined in terms of the indices of refraction n, or the speeds of light in the two media. It expresses the relationship between the angle of incidence θ_1 and the angle of refraction θ_2 at the interface of two media.

$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$

The index of refraction n_1 is the medium from which light originates and n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium to which light passes. Angle θ_1 is measured with respect to the normal at the interface of the first medium and angle θ_2 is measured with respect to the (same) normal at the interface of the second medium. Snell's Law can be expressed in terms of the velocities of light in the respective media as,

$v_2 \sin\theta_1 = v_1 \sin\theta_2$,

where v_1 is the speed of the light in the first medium, and v_2 is the speed of light in the second medium.

1. The law of reflection states that the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection $\theta_i = \theta_r$

The incident ray, the reflected ray and the normal are also coplanar.

2. For the object distance, d_o the image distance d_i, and the focal length f, both the mirror equation and thin lens equation is $\frac{1}{d_o} + \frac{1}{d_i} = \frac{1}{f}$

3. For spherical mirrors, $f = \frac{r}{2}$

4. The lateral magnification m of an object is defined as the ratio of the image height h_i of the object to the actual height h_o of the object, and is equal to the negative of the ratio of the image distance d_i to the object distance d_o

$m = \frac{h_i}{h_o} = -\frac{d_i}{d_o}$

5. We define the ratio of the speed of light through vacuum c to the speed of the light through a particular medium v as the index of refraction n

$n = \frac{c}{v}$

Since $c > v$, the index of refraction is always greater than 1 when traveling through any medium other than vacuum.

6. Snell's law can be defined in terms of the indices of refraction n or the speeds of light in the two media. It expresses the relationship between the angle of incidence θ_1 and the angle of refraction θ_2 at the interface of two

media.

$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$

The index of refraction n_1 is the medium from which light originates and n_2 is the index of refraction of the medium to which light passes. Angle θ_1 is measured with respect to the normal at the interface of medium 1 and angle θ_2 is measured with respect to the (same) normal at the interface of medium 2. Snell's law can be expressed in terms of the velocities of light in the respective media as

$v_2 \sin\theta_1 = v_1 \sin\theta_2$

where v_1 is the speed of the light in medium 1 and v_2 is the speed of light in medium 2.

20.6 References

1. Petr Kratochvil. http://www.publicdomainpictures.net/view-image.php?image=4280&picture=underwater-light&large=1 . Public Domain
2. Sun: Jack W Reid; Moon: Juan Tello (Flickr: JunCTionS). Sun: http://www.flickr.com/photos/jackatothemon/2834973857/; Moon: http://www.flickr.com/photos/junctions/2946386658/ . CC BY 2.0
3. Flickr: gr33n3gg. http://www.flickr.com/photos/gr33n3gg/3445868159/ . CC-BY 2.0
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Ck-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using teenager image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com .
8. Anikey Thakur. http://www.flickr.com/photos/photosbyaniket/5220731135/ . CC BY 2.0
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Marko Kudjerski. http://www.flickr.com/photos/marko8904/4547268061/ . CC BY 2.0
12. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
13. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Flickr:Kyknoord. http://www.flickr.com/photos/kyknoord/2128508844/ . CC BY 2.0
17. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
19. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
23. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
24. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
25. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 21 Physical Optics

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 21.1
A rainbow is an example of physical optics, where light shows properties like a wave.

Physical optics, also called wave optics, is the study of phenomena where light behaves like a classical wave and not like a ray or particle. A rainbow is a classic example of this, where different colors of light separate based on their wavelength. This also includes dispersion, the double-slit experiment showing interference, thin films, and polarization.

21.1 Dispersion

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the definition of dispersion and its causes.
- Understand the dispersion of light through a prism.
- Solve problems involving dispersion.

Vocabulary

- **dispersion:** The spreading of light through a prism.

Introduction

A rainbow is one of the oldest mysteries of nature. We know that white light has many different wavelengths, but what is the mechanism that causes those different wavelengths to separate?

FIGURE 21.2

The principle of refraction is that light and other waves change direction when they change speed at an angle, similar to how a car may change direction when it starts to drive over sand. In geometric optics like thin lenses, we assume that all light travels at the same speed. However, the speed of light in a medium like glass really depends on its wavelength. Some wavelengths of light slow down more, and some slow down less.

This is most clearly seen through a prism, which is a glass with a triangular cross-section. The triangular shape means that refraction continues as light exits. When white light passes through glass prism, a rainbow of colors, called the visible spectrum, exits the prism. The spreading of light in this manner is called **dispersion**, see **Figure** 21.3.

Dispersion reveals three very important attributes of light:

FIGURE 21.3
The dispersion of light through a prism.

1. White light is composed of seven dominant colors of light: red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. You may have heard the mnemonic (Roy G. Biv) which is helpful in remembering the order of the colors in the visible spectrum.
2. The degree of refraction depends upon the color of the light. Red light is refracted the least and violet light refracted the most.
3. Since the medium is uniform, the index of refraction must depend upon the color of the light.

It is well known that the color of light depends upon its frequency. In the visible spectrum (and within a vacuum), red light has the smallest frequency, of about 4.0×10^{14} Hz and the longest wavelength, about 750 nm. Violet light has the largest frequency, of about 7.5×10^{14} Hz and the shortest wavelength, about 400 nm.

Since the speed of light is constant in a vacuum, the product of frequency and wavelength remains constant. Recall the Wave Equation:

$c = f\lambda$ *or* $v = f\lambda$

The frequency of light is f, the wavelength of light is λ, and the velocity of light in vacuum is c. If, however, light passes through any other medium, its velocity is given as v.

We know that light travels slower than c in any medium other than a vacuum. When light travels from one medium into another, the frequency of the light does not change. However, its velocity, as we learned from Snell's Law, does.

Since $n = \frac{c}{v}$, we can see that red light, for example, having the greatest speed through the prism in **Figure** 21.3, has the smallest index of refraction through the prism.

Thus, as v increases, n must decrease.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LightRayInAPrism/

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/DispersionOfLightThroughAPrism/

Check Your Understanding

Which light has the greater index of refraction: green or yellow?

Answer: We can see from **Figure** 21.3 that green light is refracted more than yellow. It follows, then, that the index of refraction for green light is greater than yellow light.

Illustrative Example 22.1.1

Show that for light of wavelength λ in air, wavelength in a medium of refractive index n is $\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n}$.

Solution:

Using the wave equation and the definition for the index of refraction, we have

Equation 1: $v = f\lambda$ and

Equation 2: $n = \frac{c}{v}$

Substitute $f\lambda$ from Equation 1 for v in Equation 2.

$n_{air} = \frac{c}{f\lambda}$ and $n = \frac{c}{f\lambda_n}$,

Now recall that the frequency remains unchanged as the wave travels from one medium to another.

From the ratio $\frac{n_{air}}{n}$:

$\frac{n_{air}}{n} = \frac{\frac{c}{f\lambda}}{\frac{c}{f\lambda_n}} = \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda} \rightarrow,$

but $n_{air} = 1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{n} = \frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda} \rightarrow \lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n}$.

In simpler language, we can say: $\lambda = \frac{v}{f}$, and since f is constant, when v is reduced by a factor n, so is λ.

21.2 The Double-Slit Experiment

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the Double-Slit Experiment.
- Solve problems involving the Double-slit Experiment.

Vocabulary

- **coherent**
- **monochromatic:** Describes a light source in which all the light has exactly the same single wavelength.
- **spectroscope:** Designed for the purpose of wavelength determination.
- **wave interference:** A situation in which two waves overlap each other.

Introduction

In geometric optics, we assume light acts like a ray or particle. In other ways, however, it acts like a wave. The Double-Slit Experiment is a specific case that looks at how light behaves as a wave, following the principle of superposition.

FIGURE 21.4
Diffraction of a hydrogen lamp

The Double-Slit Experiment was first conducted by the British physicist Thomas Young (1773-1829) as convincing experimental evidence that light was a wave. He demonstrated how superposition led to interference using ripples in a tank of water. He showed that the same principle also applied to light in the Double-Slit experiment.

Young's experimental setup is shown in **Figure** 21.6. A single **monochromatic** light source is to the left, so all the light has exactly the same single wavelength. The waves are light, shown as ripples in this diagram. The waves

come to the screen in the middle that has two small slits in it (hence the name Double-Slit Experiment). The light waves then proceed like ripples out from the screen in the middle, until they reach the far side on the wall. Each wave line can be thought of as the top of a ripple. The places where two ripples overlap is a point of constructive interference. Two points of constructive interference are pointed out below.

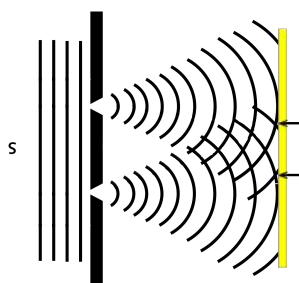



FIGURE 21.5

What determines these points of constructive interference is the difference in path length from the slits.

- If the two paths are exactly the same distance, then the two waves will both be high and low at the same times, a case of constructive interference.
- If one path is exactly one-half of a wavelength shorter than the other, then the first will be high when the other is low and vice-versa, a case of destructive interference.
- If one path is a multiple of one wavelength, then the two waves will both be high and low at the same times, q case of constructive interference.

We can represent the wave fronts (W) using a ray diagram to determine the path difference between the waves from each slit. Constructive and destructive interference occurs for path differences of whole wavelengths and path differences of odd multiples of half-wavelengths, respectively. The result is a series of light (constructive) and dark (destructive) fringes, as shown in **Figure** 21.6.

The **Figure** 21.7 is used to determine an equation in terms of the wavelength λ, the distance d between the double slit, and the angle of diffraction θ. **Figure** 21.8 shows an enlarged view of the two slits and the path difference, $d \sin \theta$.

Our assumption is that slit width d is much less than the distance $L(d \ll L)$ from the slits to the screen, and therefore, the rays of light are nearly parallel, each making an angle θ to the horizontal. Complementary angles show that the angle $\angle acb$ is θ.

Then $\sin \theta$ is equal to the ratio of the path difference (PD), shown in red in **Figure** 21.8, to the distance between the slits d.

$\sin \theta = \frac{PD}{d} \rightarrow PD = d \sin \theta$

The path difference required for the constructive interference (bright fringes) can be expressed as

$d \sin \theta = m\lambda, \ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

For example, for $m = 0$, a bright fringe appears on the screen in **Figure** 21.7 at point A, since the path difference between the two rays is zero. Rays from each slit to the screen at point A are equidistant. We refer to m as the order of the interference fringe. For $m = 0$, it is order zero. These fringes are also called maxima or minima. A bright fringe is called a maximum and a dark fringe is called a minimum.

And for destructive interference (dark fringes),

$d \sin \theta = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right) \lambda, \ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

For the integer values of m, the equation yields odd multiples of half-wavelength.

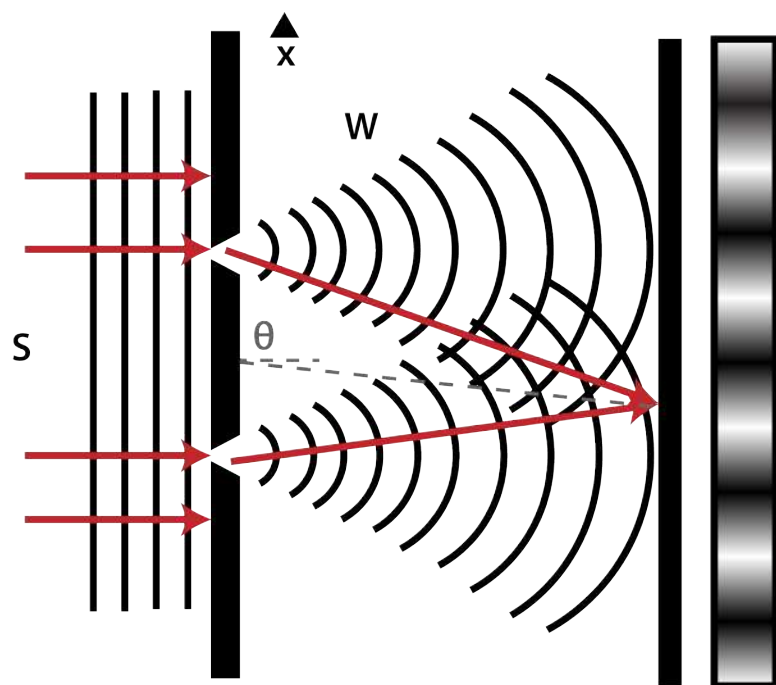



FIGURE 21.6
Young's double slit experiment.

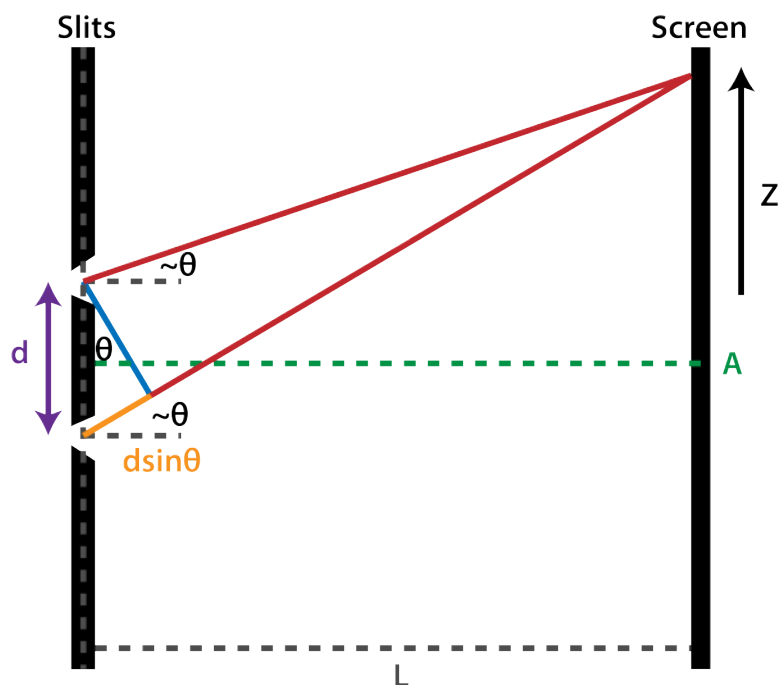



FIGURE 21.7

For more information about the Double-Slit Experiment follow the links below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CylindricalWavesPassingThroughADoubleSlit/

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/InterferenceOfWavesFromDoubleSlitYoungsExperiment/

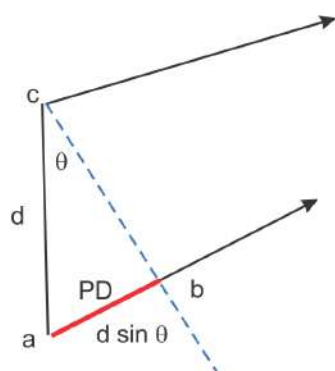



FIGURE 21.8

Check Your Understanding

In order for the light to diffract and create interference, the wavelength λ of the light must be

a. Smaller than the distance d between the slits.

b. Equal to the distance d between the slits.

c. Larger than the distance d between the slits.

Answer: The correct answer is A.

Mathematically, we can see that (for constructive interference),

$d\sin\theta = m\lambda \rightarrow \sin\theta = m\frac{\lambda}{d}$

The order is given as $m \geq 0$. Thus, only for $m = 0$ is the relationship between the wavelength of the light and the distance between the slits irrelevant. Otherwise, the wavelength must be less than the distance between the slits $(\lambda < d)$ or the $\sin\theta$ will not have a solution. We will ignore the case where $\theta = 90°$ since the image would never appear upon the screen.

Illustrative Example 22.2.1

In an experiment, light incident upon two slits 0.013 mm apart produces a bright third-order fringe at an angle of 8.7°.

a. What is the wavelength and color of the light used in the experiment?

Solution:

$$d\sin\theta = m\lambda \rightarrow (1.3\times10^{-5}\ m)(\sin 8.7°) = 3\lambda \rightarrow$$
$$\lambda = \frac{(1.3\times10^{-5}\ m)(\sin 8.7°)}{3} = 6.55\times10^{-7}\ m \rightarrow 6.60\times10^{-7}\ m = 660\ nm$$
$$\lambda = 660\ nm\ (red\ light)$$

b. If the third fringe appears 30.25 cm (Z) from the center fringe $(m = 0)$, what is the distance L between the double slit and the screen? See **Figure** 21.7.

Solution:

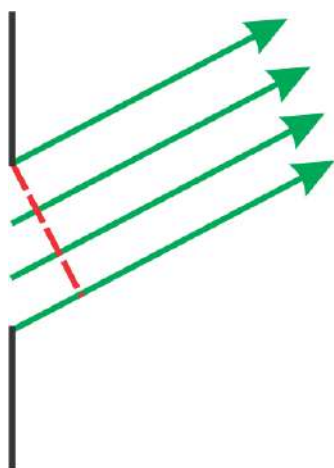
We use the angle 8.7°, the length L, and the distance Z. The tangent of the angle (see **Figure** 21.7) is

$$\tan 8.7^\circ = \frac{Z}{L} = \frac{3.025 \times 10^{-1}\ m}{L} \rightarrow$$
$$L = \frac{3.025 \times 10^{-1}\ m}{\tan 8.7^\circ} = 1.98\ m \rightarrow$$
$$L = 2.0\ m$$

Diffraction from a single slit

Recall that when a wave passes through an opening, such as in this case of a light wave passing through a slit, diffraction occurs. If we restrict our attention to only one slit, we can see that different parts of the diffracted wave will be subject to constructive and destructive interference, just as we observed with two slits. **Figure** 21.9 shows the path of light rays diffracting through one slit. In other words, when we observe the interference pattern for a double-slit, there is yet another interference pattern present due to each slit. More advanced texts will have more to say on this topic. If you would like to learn about this, see the link below.

FIGURE 21.9

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/SingleSlitDiffraction/

Diffraction gratings

Diffraction gratings are composed of many equally spaced slits instead of two slits. They produce much sharper and better separated maxima and minima, and therefore are very useful in determining the wavelength of a particular color. Diffraction gratings are an important component in astronomical **spectroscopes** which are designed for the purpose of wavelength determination, see **Figure** 24.6.

When heated and observed through a spectroscope, each chemical element has a unique line spectrum (a specific set of colors in specific locations), as shown in **Figure** 24.6.

Light from the sun, as seen through a spectroscope, shows that the sun has many of the same elements present on the Earth. (We will discuss this in greater detail later.) A spectroscope, therefore, enables us to determine the chemical composition of the sun, stars, and planets.

Diffraction gratings are typically of two kinds: transmission gratings, where the light passes through the grating, and reflection gratings, where fine lines are etched into a metallic substance which reflects the interference pattern.

The equation describing the interference pattern is the same as for the double slit grating.

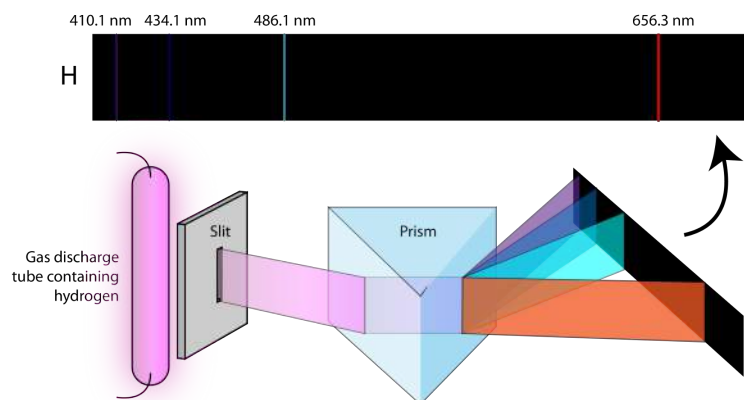



FIGURE 21.10
A simple model of a spectroscope.

A common (though unintentional) example of a reflection grating is a CD or DVD. If a CD is slowly moved as light is reflected off its surface, (or if the CD is held stationary and one's head is moved) light waves of different wavelengths (colors) interfere constructively and destructively. **Figure** 21.11 shows the spectrum observed as a result of diffraction from a CD

FIGURE 21.11
A CD acts like a reflective diffraction grating.

Notice that on the left side of the CD, mostly shorter wavelengths of light constructively interfere.

Interested in learning more about diffraction gratings? Follow the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/DiffractionGratingIntensities/

21.3 Thin Films

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how thin films recreate constructive and destructive interference.
- Solve problems involving thin films.

Vocabulary

- **phase change:** Occurs when a beam of light is reflected from a medium with a greater index of refraction than the medium in which it travels.

Introduction

From our discussion of CDs, we can see that we do not need elaborate equipment to witness the effects of light interference. In fact, everyday phenomena such as soap bubbles or a thin layer of oil on the surface of the water provide for an array of colors reminiscent of the rainbow (see **Figure** 21.12 and **Figure** 21.13). Different wavelengths of light are subject to constructive interference and destructive interference after reflecting off the top and the bottom of a thin layer of oil.

FIGURE 21.12
Soap bubbles.

Try putting a drop of oil onto water in a bowl. Look at it from different angles and see what patterns you can make of it.

The **Figure** 21.14 shows how the light reflecting from the top and bottom of a thin film (a soap bubble or a layer of oil, for example) constructively interferes. The figure is exaggerated in order to see the effect clearly. For simplicity, we'll assume that all rays are essentially perpendicular (normal) to the air, oil, and water surfaces.

Compared to the distance the black reflected ray travels in air, the extra distance that the green ray travels through the oil is, then, $2d$. If the path difference $2d$ is equal to an integral number of wavelengths, then the reflected wave from the water-oil interface will be in phase with the reflected ray from the air-oil interface. The wavelengths refer

FIGURE 21.13
Oil in the street.

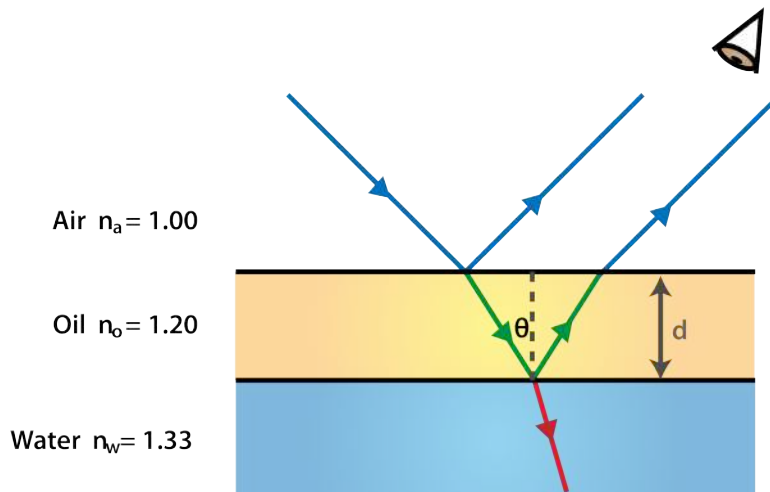



FIGURE 21.14

to the wavelength of the light in the oil. Recall that the wavelength in air is longer than the wavelength in oil since the index of refraction of air is less than oil.

We may, therefore, write as the condition for constructive interference:

$2d = m\lambda$

And the condition for destructive interference:

$2d = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

We can see that constructive and destructive interference occur for specific wavelengths of light. If the path difference changes, for example, as we move farther away from the perpendicular condition we assumed, then light of different wavelength will constructively and destructively interfere. This is one reason that you see different colors when changing your line of sight (you move your head!). Another factor influencing interference effects occurs when the thickness of thin layer changes, which is a most probable event.

Phase changes

When a beam of light is reflected from a medium with a greater index of refraction than the medium in which it travels, it undergoes a **phase change** of 180° upon reflection, as shown in **Figure** 21.15 and **Figure** 21.16. The effect is analoguos to a wave that is traveling along a rope that is fixed at the end. The reflected wave "flips" upside down at the fixed point. Conversely, if the wave is free to move at the end, the reflected wave reflects back without a phase change. In our example above, both the reflections from the air-oil interface and the oil-water interface underwent a phase change. Thus, both waves remained in phase.

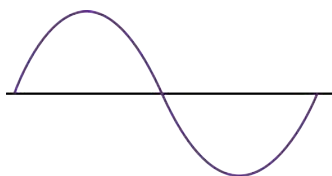



FIGURE 21.15
Incoming wave.

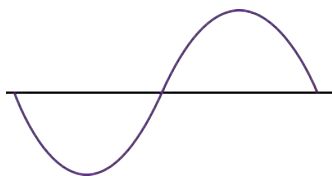



FIGURE 21.16
Reflected wave.

In **Figure** 21.17, you can see the view of two glass plates, separated at one edge by a fine wire, thus creating a thin air gap between the slides. (The thickness of the wire and the gap have been greatly exaggerated.) We can show that the light refracted through a flat piece of glass travels undeflected through the glass for any angle of incidence (see the link below).

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RefractionThroughParallelFaces/

You may remember that this was also the case for light traveling through the center of a converging or a diverging lens . Again, assuming that the rays travel perpendicular to the surface of the slides, and the air gap width where the rays reflect is d, we can write

$2d = m\lambda$

for the condition of destructive interference. The light ray (black) shown reflecting at the bottom of the top slide does not undergo any phase change, since the index of refraction of air is less than the index of refraction of glass. However, the light ray (green) shown reflecting from the top of the bottom slide does undergo a 180° phase change, since the ray reflects off a medium (glass) with a higher index of refraction than which it was traveling (air).

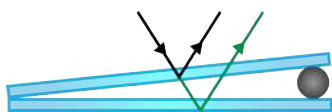



FIGURE 21.17

Thus the condition for constructive interference for this case is

$2d = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda$

Check Your Understanding

What thickness of oil is required in order to see green light of wavelength 525 nm constructively interfere for order $m = 1$ (light is normal to the surface), as shown in **Figure** 21.14?

Answer:

According to the figure, $n_{oil} = 1.20$ *and* $n_{water} = 1.33$. Therefore, the phase change for the reflected wave off the oil-water interface (as we described above) is 180°, but the phase change for the reflection at the air-oil interface is

also 180°. Thus, the net effect amounts to no phase change, and we can use the equation for constructive interference $2d = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda$. Recall, however, that we must use the wavelength of light in the oil and, therefore

$$\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda_{air}}{n_{oil}}$$
$$2d = m\lambda_n \rightarrow 2d = m\frac{\lambda}{n} \rightarrow d = m\frac{\lambda}{2n} = (1)\frac{525 \text{ nm}}{2(1.20)} = 218.8 \text{ nm} = 219 \text{ nm}$$

21.4 Polarization

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the meaning of polarization and its mechanism.
- Understand polarization by transmission and reflection.

Vocabulary

- **polarized light:** Light with electric field vibrations in only one direction, also known as linearly polarized light.

Introduction

Light is a transverse wave. Unlike sound, which pushes back and forth, it is instead comparable to a pulse or wave that travels down a length of string. How do we know this? The key difference is that a transverse wave can vibrate in different directions, like side-to-side compared to up-and-down. We can see this difference in light when the direction of how we look at something changes. An example of this is shown below.

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/66600

The light is blocked only when the glasses are held in a particular way because of polarization.

Polarization by transmission

All electromagnetic waves come from vibration of electric charges. Just like a wave in a string or whip, they have a direction, like up-and-down or side-to-side, as shown in **Figure** 21.18. The transverse orientation of the wave is the direction of the electric field variation.

Light produced by most common sources, from stars to light bulbs to candles, has a mix of many different transverse wave direction –up-and-down, side-to-side, and all diagonals.

Polarized light (also known as linearly polarized light) is light with electric field vibrations in only one direction.

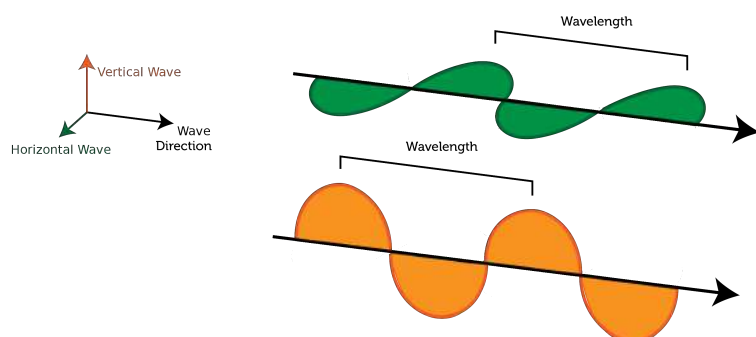



FIGURE 21.18
Vertical and horizontal transverse waves

Ordinary non-polarized light can be made polarized by two methods: polarization by transmission and polarization by reflection.

Polarization by Transmission.

Certain transparent materials (called polarizers) have long chains of parallel molecules that act like the slots described above. For instance, the mineral tourmaline is a known polarizer. However, most polarizers used in everyday life are synthetic plastic.

A polarizer only allows through the vibrations that occur in a particular plane. **Figure** 21.19 shows how a polarizer permits a particular plane of the vibrating electric field to pass if it is aligned with the chains of molecules (top figure) and how a polarizer that is oriented perpendicular to the vibrations (bottom figure) block the vibrating electric field. Note that the direction of those molecular chains, defining the direction of polarization, is called the axis of polarization.

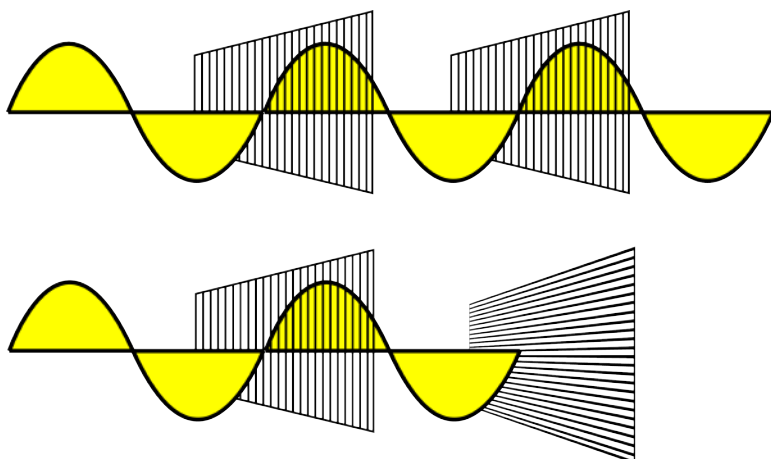



FIGURE 21.19

To help clarify the idea, consider an example of polarized mechanical waves, such as a rope that is moved up and down in a vertical plane. Under this condition, the rope can be considered a vertically polarized wave. A set of vertical slots as shown in **Figure** 21.20, can serve as a polarizer. If the rope is shaken in the vertical plane, the vibrations will pass through the slots. If the rope is shaken horizontally, the vibrations will not pass through the slots.

Conversely, if the slots are horizontal, then the vertical vibrations, as shown in **Figure** 21.21, are prevented from

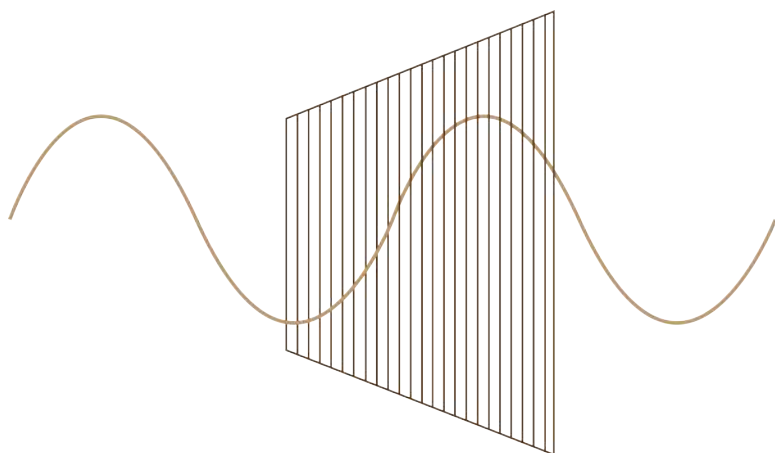



FIGURE 21.20
Vertically oriented transverse waves pass through vertical slots.

passing. If, of course, the rope is shaken in a horizontal plane, the vibrations would pass through the slots.

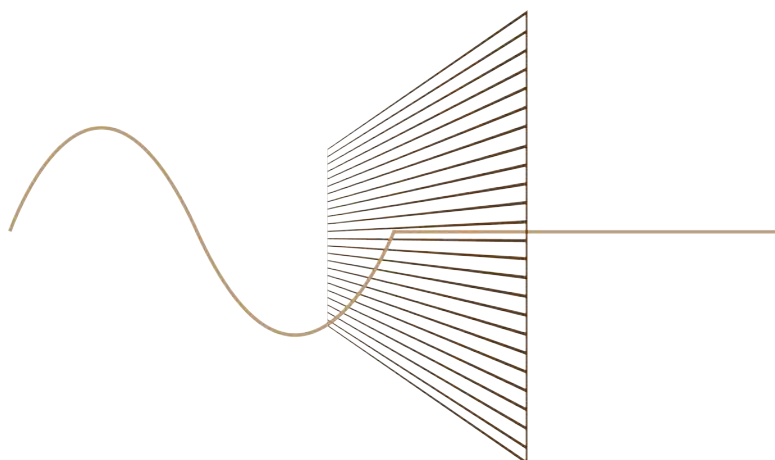



FIGURE 21.21
Vertically oriented transverse waves are blocked by horizontal slots.

Polarizers that permit only horizontally polarized light through are said to have a horizontal axis of polarization.

So-called 3-D glasses are usually composed of polarizers that permit vertically polarized light to reach one eye and horizontally polarized light to reach the other eye. The result is that each eye sees a slightly different view, which creates the illusion of three dimensions.

It may not seem too surprising that all the light that first passes through a polarizer with a vertical axis of polarization is blocked when it encounters a polarizer with a horizontal axis of polarization. Consider, however, a third polarizer, with any axis of polarization other than vertical or horizontal, inserted between a polarizer with a vertically polarized axis and one with a horizontally polarized axis. Inserting the third polarizer enables some light to pass through the arrangement. Can you guess why?

As a hint as to why this happens, consider only the electric field of the electromagnetic wave and recall that the electric field is a vector quantity that can be resolved into vertical and horizontal components.

Perhaps your teacher will show you a demonstration of this.

Follow the link below for more of an explanation.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LightBeamsThroughMultiplePolarizers/

Polarization by reflection

Light that reflects off of nonmetallic surfaces, such as water, glass, or pavement, is also polarized. The axis of polarization is in the same plane as the surface off which the light reflects. For example, the light that reflects off of a horizontal pavement is polarized parallel to the plane of the pavement. Light reflected off of the surface of the ocean is polarized horizontally as well and accounts for most of the annoying glare we experience on sunny days. Polarized sunglasses have a vertical axis of polarization in order to block the horizontally polarized light and reduce that glare.

Camera lenses can be fitted with polarizers to minimize the effects of glare, as shown in **Figure** 21.22. Notice how the picture on the left shows the glare off of the water, but the picture on the right, taken with a polarizer, does not.

FIGURE 21.22

Light polarized by reflection is also a clue to astronomers who are searching for planets about other stars (extrasolar planets). The light from extrasolar planets is often obscured by the much brighter light of the star it orbits. However, the reflected light from the planet is polarized while the star light is not. Thus, astronomers have a "polarized light signal" with which to search for extrasolar planets.

1. When white light passes through a glass prism, a rainbow-like array of colors, called the visible spectrum, exits the prism. The spreading of light in this manner is called dispersion.

2. Dispersion is caused by the fact that the speed of light in a medium other than vacuum depends on its frequency (color).

3. Red light is refracted the least and violet light refracted the most.

4. Light with wavelength λ in air, has a wavelength $\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n}$ in a medium of refractive index n.

5a. Constructive interference condition for a double-slit is arrangement given by the equation

$d \sin\theta = m\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

where d is the distance between the slits, θ is the diffracting angle, m is the order and λ is the wavelength of the light.

5b. Destructive interference condition for a double-slit arrangement is given by the equation

$d \sin\theta = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

6a. Constructive interference for a thin film of thickness d and wavelength of light λ(in the film) when there is no effective phase change, is given by the equation

$2d = m\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

6b. Destructive interference for thin films when there is no effective phase change is

$2d = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

7a. When a beam of light is reflected from a medium with a greater index of refraction than the medium in which it travels, it undergoes a phase change of 180° upon reflection. The condition for a constructive interference when a phase change of 180° occurs is given by the equation

$2d = \left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

7b. The condition for a destructive interference when a phase change of 180° occurs is given by the equation

$2d = m\lambda,\ m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

8. Polarization is a property associated with transverse waves –most typically, electromagnetic waves. Light that is polarized has electric field vibrations in only one plane. A "polarizer" filters out all of the vibrations in a transverse wave that are not in a particular plane. A polarizer that permits vertical vibrations to pass has vertical axis of polarization. A polarizer that permits horizontal vibrations to pass has horizontal axis of polarization. Light can be polarized by transmission or reflection.

21.5 References

1. Photo by Barb Ver Sluis. http://www.publicdomainpictures.net/view-image.php?image=3180 . Public Domain
2. Photo by Barb Ver Sluis. http://www.publicdomainpictures.net/view-image.php?image=3180 . Public Domain
3. Image copyright Ivanagott, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
4. Flickr:cosmiccandace. http://www.flickr.com/photos/candace/315205005/ . CC BY 2.0
5. Raymond Chou, modified by John Kim. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
10. CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung, using emission spectra by User:Merikanto/Wikimedia Commons and User:Adrignola/Wikimedia Commons (H). H spectrum: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Emission_spectrum-H.svg . CC BY-NC-SA 3.0
11. Pixabay:jhusemannde. http://pixabay.com/en/cd-blank-black-silver-light-196120/ . Public Domain
12. Justin D Miller. http://www.flickr.com/photos/justin_d_miller/4573285250/ . CC-BY 2.0
13. Erich Ferdinand (Flickr: erix!). http://www.flickr.com/photos/erix/370015947/ . CC-BY 2.0
14. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
15. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
16. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
17. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
18. Christopher Auyeung, modified by John Kim. CK-12 Foundation .
19. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
20. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
21. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
22. Aidan (Flickr: asgw). http://www.flickr.com/photos/aidanwojtas/2252215478/ . CC BY 2.0

CHAPTER 22 The Special Theory of Relativity

Chapter Outline

FIGURE 22.1
A GPS satellite travels at 14,000 kilometers per hour, and needs corrections for relativity to stay accurate.

Physics at the usual speeds found on Earth mostly follow our intuitive understanding of time and space. However, in the 20^{th} century, very accurate measurements of the speed of light found that these could not be true. This puzzle was solved by a new theory of time and space by Albert Einstein, called the Special Theory of Relativity. This chapter covers the paradox of the speed of light, time dilation, length contraction, simultaneity, and the General Theory of Relativity.

22.1 Galilean Relativity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the apparent contradiction between Galilean principle of relativity and the invariability of the speed of light.
- Understand that the equations of Galilean relativity must be changed to remain consistent with Maxwell's equations.

Vocabulary

- **ether**
- **Galilean relativity:** The Galilean equations of motion.
- **inertial frames of reference**

Introduction

The basic principle of relativity is this:

> *If you are moving at a constant speed, all physical laws should work the same as if you are at rest, and everything else is moving relative to you.*

This was true of classical physics, known as **Galilean Relativity**. However, it ran up against a very difficult paradox with the results of experiments in the speed of light. The resolution to that paradox was formulated by Albert Einstein, and is known as the Special Theory of Relativity, along with the General Theory of Relativity.

Galilean Relativity

Earlier, we discussed the concepts of Galilean relativity and relative motion. A simple example of relative motion is sound waves. Sound waves travel at a fixed speed relative to the air, roughly 340 meters per second. Consider these cases:

- A person standing still who shouts will see the sound wave travel off at 340 m/s.
- A person who is driving at 40 m/s will feel a wind blowing at 40 m/s at them. If they honk their horn, the sound wave travels at 340 m/s with respect to the air, which is only 300 m/s ahead of the car.
- An airplane travelling at 350 m/s will create a sonic boom. The sound from the plane travels at 340 m/s relative to the air, which means that it is slower than the plane.

In Galilean relativity, the result are very intuitive. The velocities are simply added together.

FIGURE 22.2
How sound moves in different frames of reference

The Speed of Light Paradox

Towards the end of the 19th century, there was growing evidence of a paradox that threw this into doubt. The essence of the paradox is simple:

> No matter how fast you are moving, light always appears to move away at the same speed, equal to $c = 3.0 \times 10^8$ m/s in a vacuum.

This appears simple, but the consequences of this discovery were enormous. The principles are illustrated in the diagram below, which ignores the effect of air on the speed of light.

FIGURE 22.3
How light moves in different frames of reference

This appears on the surface to be logically inconsistent. In the ground frame of reference, the car is traveling in the same direction as the light, and so their relative motion is less than c. However, in the car frame of reference, the light is moving away at exactly c.

How the Paradox Was Proven: The Michaelson-Morley Experiment

Physicists carried out experiments in order to determine the Earth's motion through the ether. The most famous of these experiments, designed by Albert Michelson (1852-1931) and Edward W. Morley (1838-1923), called the Michelson-Morley experiment, was performed in 1887 at what is now Case Western Reserve University in Cleveland, Ohio. Using the interferometer, developed by Michelson, discussed earlier, they attempted to measure the relative velocity of the earth with respect to the velocity of light through the **ether**. It is important to remember that, like the velocity of sound, the velocity of light is independent of the velocity of the source. Therefore, the thinking was: if we move through the air while sound is traveling toward us in one instance and away from us in

another instance, we should be able to measure ourselves moving at different speeds relative to the sound. Similarly, if we move through the ether while light is traveling toward us in one instance and away from us in another instance, we should be able to measure the speed of the Earth relative to the light.

The results, of course, would need to be indirectly determined since the experiment relied upon using an interferometer. The interferometer, as you recall, is based upon the constructive and destructive interference of light waves. A very small difference in the time of travel between two light waves separating and recombining would be detected in the interferometer as a shift in the position of bright and dark fringes. One light wave traveled in the direction of the Earth's motion through the ether while the other light wave traveled perpendicular to the Earth's motion through the ether. Michelson thought that there should be a time difference in the light traversing the two paths. Here is his reasoning in his own words, used as an explanation to his daughter: *Two beams of light race against each other, like two swimmers, one struggling upstream and back, while the other, covering the same distance, just crosses and returns. The second swimmer will always win if there is any current in the river.*

With the help of E.W Morley, Michelson's interferometer, **Figure** 22.4, was calibrated so that it could detect a shift of one part in a hundred in the position of a fringe. The shift they anticipated due to the Earth's velocity through the ether was some forty times that! Clearly, the effect was measureable. Curiously, though, there was no discernible shift in the interference fringes.

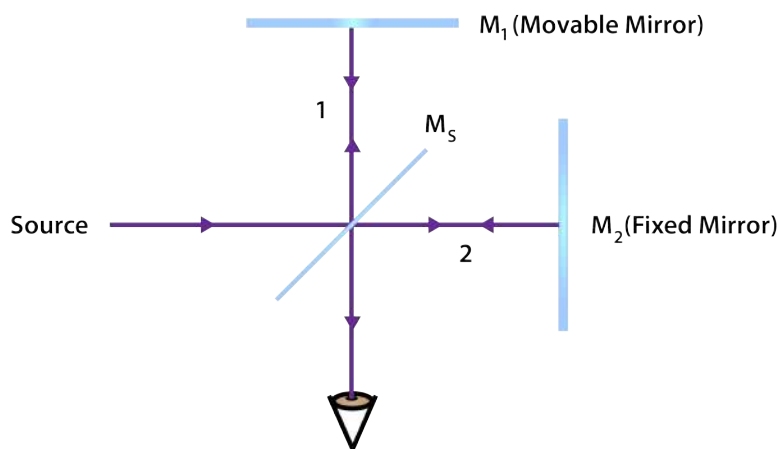



FIGURE 22.4
Diagram of the Michelson Interferometer.

The null result of the experiment, from the point of view of measuring the relative velocity between the Earth and the velocity of light through the ether, can be understood as follows:

The velocity of Earth in orbit about the sun is, on average, about $30\frac{km}{s}$. Using that velocity, Michelson calculated the expected shift in an interference fringe. Thus, the experiment should show a shift in fringe corresponding to that speed. When the Earth moves in the same direction as the light in the ether, the shift in fringe should verify the velocity of light with respect to the ether as $v_{rel\ to\ earth} = c - 30\frac{km}{s}$. When the Earth is moving toward the light, a shift in fringe should verify the velocity of light as $v_{rel\ to\ earth} = c + 30\frac{km}{s}$. The predicted fringe shift would confirm the velocity of the Earth in orbit about the sun and establish the absolute reference frame of the ether.

However, regardless of which way the light moved through the ether (and, therefore, through the interferometer), it never indicated a change in velocity relative to the Earth. There was no way to detect the Earth's motion through the ether. That result was absolutely shocking.

What would the result of the Michelson-Morley experiment imply if the results of this experiment applied to everyday objects, such as the ball that the girl on the skateboard had thrown in the example above? (Imagine the ball playing the role of a beam of light, like a flashlight being turned on.) It would mean that a stationary observer would measure the speed of the ball as $6.0\frac{m}{s}$,regardless of the direction the ball was thrown or the motion of the girl!

This meant that the Galilean relativity failed to provide the correct results when applied to light (and therefore any

form of electric and magnetic phenomena). Were Maxwell's equations incorrectly stated, perhaps? Or, maybe, Galilean relativity did not apply to light?

Resolving the Paradox

Many explanations were proposed to explain the null result of the Michelson-Morley experiment. Two prominent late 19th century physicists, Hendrick Antoon Lorentz (1853-1928) and G.F. Fitzgerald (1851-1901 **),** independently suggested that the arm of the interferometer, when parallel to the motion through the ether, was shortened (contracted) by an amount just enough to account for the smaller round trip time of the light. Lorentz suggested that the forces between the molecules of matter, being electrical, would perhaps explain the effect. No evidence supported that conjecture, however. The physics community was flabbergasted.

Finally, in 1905, Albert Einstein's famous paper containing what's now known as the special theory of relativity was published, giving a much better explanation for the Michelson-Morley experiment. The mathematics which Lorentz (and Fitzgerald) developed in order to explain the apparent length contraction was the same developed by Einstein in his special theory and is now called the Lorentz transformation. What Lorentz (and Einstein) transformed was Galilean relativity (the Galilean equations of motion), in order that electromagnetic phenomena be described properly.

22.2 Time Dilation and Length Contraction

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the two postulates of the special theory of relativity.
- Understand what is meant by time dilation and length contraction.
- Understand the twin paradox.

Vocabulary

- **length contraction:** Shortening of distance.
- **time dilation:** Clocks moving relative to an observer run more slowly compared to the clocks that are at rest relative to the observer.
- **twin paradox:** Illustrates questions of the relativity of time.

Introduction

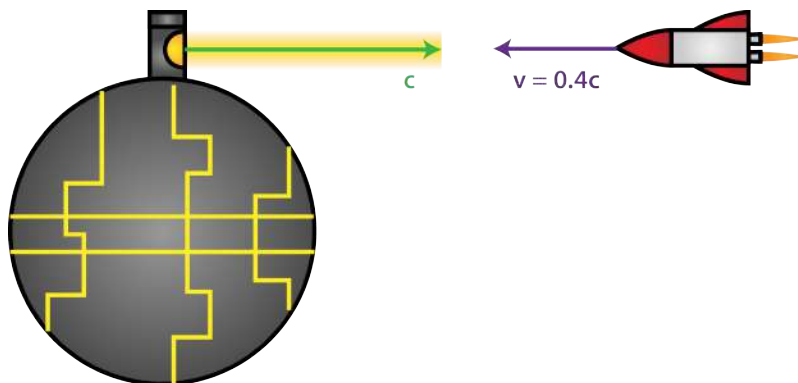
The surprising results for the speed of light were counter to all logic. Einstein's special theory of relativity was a resolution to this, which started from two postulates:

Postulate 1: The laws of physics must have the same form in all inertial frames of reference.

Postulate 2: The speed of light through a vacuum is constant, regardless of the motion of the source or observer.

The first postulate means that we cannot solve the paradox by saying that the ground observer correctly sees how the light moves, and the observer in the car or plane measure the speed wrong for some reason. It has to be that the observer in the plane is correct when they see light move away at the same speed.

Check Your Understanding

A space ship traveling with velocity $v = 0.4\ c$ approaches a space station housing a light beacon. When the ship is still some distance away, the station turns on the light beacon, as shown in the diagram below.

According to the special theory of relativity, as the beam of light passes the space ship, an observer in the space ship will measure the velocity of the light beam as

a. 0.6 c

b. c

c. 1.4 c

Answer: The correct answer is B. The second postulate of special relativity asserts that the velocity of light in a vacuum will always be measured as c regardless of the motion of the source or observer.

Time dilation

The first result of relativity is that time is not the same for all frames of reference. The simplest case for relativity is light traveling independently of the direction of motion.

To answer the question, we will describe a rather simple clock. The clock functions when a beam of light (shown in orange) is emitted from a source/clock and travels to a mirror. Upon striking the mirror, the light is reflected back, directly opposite the mirror, and both observers A and B record the event, as in **Figure** 22.5.

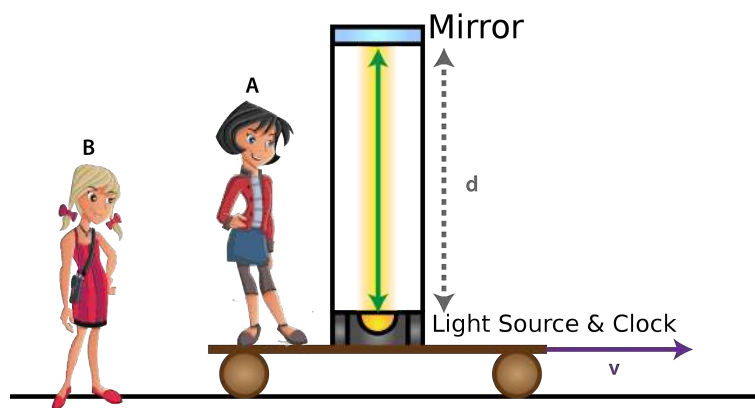



FIGURE 22.5
Light clock setup

From the point of view of observer A, the light goes straight up and down, while the ground and observer B are moving off to the left at velocity v.

If the distance between the mirror and the source is d, then the round-trip distance the light travels is $2d$. Since the light travels with speed c, the one-way travel time t_A as measured by observer A is

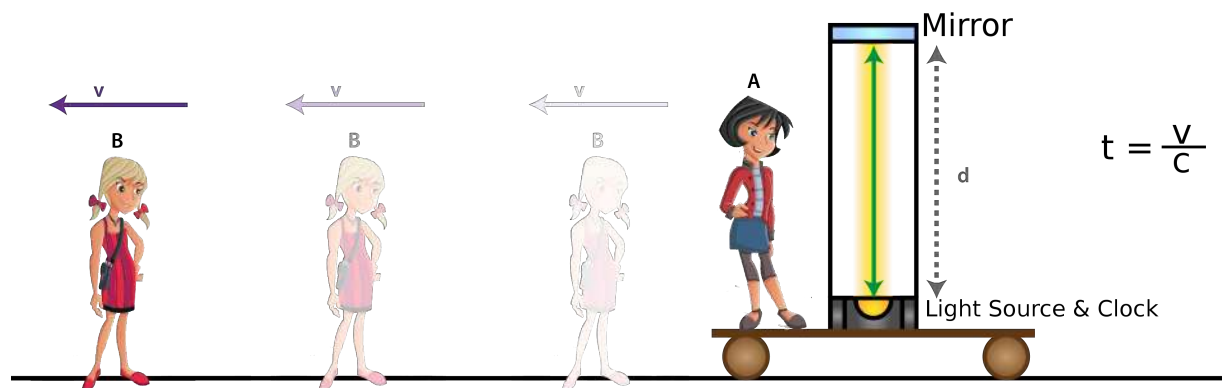



FIGURE 22.6
Time from the frame of reference of observer A.

$$t_A = \frac{d}{c}$$

The light arrives back at the clock in time $2t_A$.

What time interval will observer B see? Since the mirror moves with velocity v, to the right, observer B will see the light move in a diagonal path as shown in **Figure** 22.7. From their point of view, the light is travelling a longer distance, but it is still travelling at the same speed, c, from Postulate #2 of relativity.

Einstein's answer to the puzzle was that time works differently in this other frame of reference. For observer B, the time for the light to go one way is a different time, t_B. Using the Pythagorean Theorem, the distance the light travels one way is:

$$\begin{aligned}(vt_B)^2 + d^2 &= (ct_B)^2 \\ d^2 &= (ct_B)^2 - (vt_B)^2 \\ d &= t_B\sqrt{c^2 - v^2} \\ t_B &= \frac{d}{\sqrt{c^2 - v^2}}\end{aligned}$$

This is the time to go one way from the source to the mirror. The return time is the same, so the total time is $2t_B$. We can relate this back to the time in A's frame of reference.

$$t_B = \frac{t_A}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

Since the denominator is smaller than 1, the time interval measured by observer B will be longer than the time measured by observer A. We can, therefore, define **time dilation** as follows:

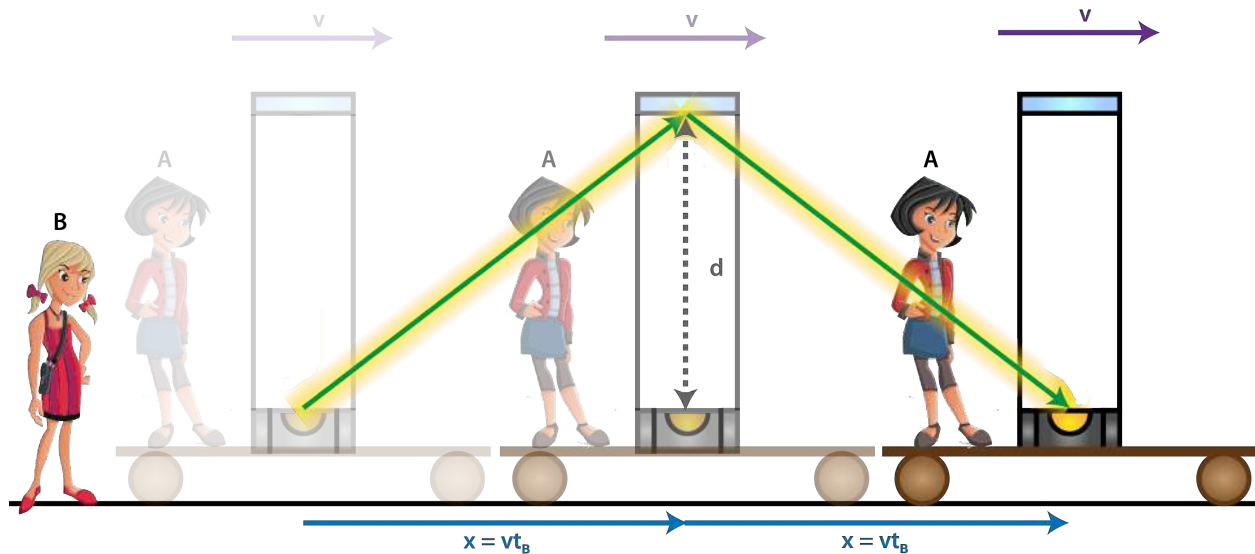



FIGURE 22.7

> Clocks moving relative to an observer run more slowly compared to the clocks that are at rest relative to the observer. This slowing down of time called time dilation.

For example, Earth-bound observers will measure time moving more slowly (than their own time) when observing a space ship moving with velocity v.

The situation is symmetric, with each inertial frame seeing the other's time as slower. We will shortly see, however, that the symmetry is not preserved if the space ship returns to earth.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LightClocksAndTimeDilation/

We will see in this chapter that the postulates of special relativity suggest that space and time are not independent of each other, but are interdependent. We refer to this interdependence, today, as space-time.

Illustrative Example 1

a. A futuristic space ship leaves the Earth traveling at a speed 0.75 c. A clock on board the ship reads an elapsed time of 1.00 h since the take-off. What time interval does an Earth-bound observer measure at that instant?

Solution:

Proper time is measured in the space ship, thus $t_p = 1.00\ h$.

$$t = \frac{t_p}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{1.00\ h}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.75)^2\ c^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{1.00\ h}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.75)^2}{1}}} = 1.51\ h$$

b. The ship slows to a speed of $100,000\frac{km}{h}$. Again, if the clock on board the ship measures 1.00 h, what is the amount of time measured on Earth?

Solution:

Let us first convert into $100,000\frac{km}{h}$ into $\frac{km}{s}$.

A speed of $100,000\frac{km}{h} = 10^5\frac{km}{h} = \left(10^5\frac{km}{h}\right)\left(\frac{1\ h}{3{,}600\ s}\right) = 27.8\frac{km}{s}$.

The speed of light is $c = 300,000\frac{km}{s}$. Therefore, the speed of the space ship in terms of c is

$\frac{27.8}{300{,}000}c = 9.26 \times 10^{-5}\ c$.

Also, $1.00\ h = 3,600\ s$.

Thus,

$$t = \frac{t_p}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{3{,}600\ s}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(9.26\times 10^{-5})^2\ c^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{3{,}600\ s}{\sqrt{1-\frac{(9.26\times 10^{-5})^2}{1}}} = 3,600.000015\ s.$$

This represents a difference in time between inertial frames of 1.5×10^{-5} s, which from an everyday point of view is negligible. The fact that t depends upon the ratio $\frac{v^2}{c^2}$ shows that when $v << c$, $\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} \cong 1$. Clearly, the common speeds that we experience are smaller than $100,000\frac{km}{h}$, so there can be no question that t and t_p can be considered essentially equal for day-to-day occurrences.

To date, the speed of the ship given in part B is about 40% greater than that achieved by any space ship or space probe.

You may wonder if the effects of time dilation only apply to clocks. The answer is no! Clocks measure time differently because time itself is different in moving frames of reference. Everything happens slower in such circumstances. Biological systems, for instance, are affected. The process of aging, the beating of one's heart, the pace of breathing, are all subject to the effects of time dilation. The heart rate of a person traveling in a space ship compared to what is measured on earth is slower. Recognition of this fact suggested what called today as the **twin paradox**.

The twin paradox

Let's say one of two twins decides to take a relativistic trip (a trip where the effects of time dilation cannot be ignored). If the traveling twin leaves when she is 20 years old, traveling at about 0.87 c, she will age half as slowly as her twin who remains on earth. If, after 10 years, as measured by a clock aboard her ship, she returns, she'll find that 20 years will have passed on earth. When the two twins meet again, the traveling twin will be 30 years old and the stay-at-home twin will be 40 years old.

Does this seem reasonable? The objection is sometimes raised that since all inertial frames are equivalent, the stay-at-home twin could make the same argument and thus she should be younger than the traveling twin.

There are several arguments showing that special theory of relativity does not create a paradox and, indeed, it is the twin on the ship who ends up younger. It's important to recall that the special relativity equations above are valid only for the inertial frames of reference, or frames that do not accelerate. In order for the traveling twin to return to the Earth, she must turn around. Any change in direction indicates a change in velocity and, therefore, acceleration.

Even though the situation has an interval of acceleration, one can still use special relativity to correctly determine the result. The inertial frame returning may not be the same inertial frame when leaving, but they are both still inertial frames. And if the traveling twin never returns, thus introducing no acceleration, the paradox becomes moot, since there is then no way for the twins to compare ages.

Of course, nothing prevents one from arguing that it was the Earth that had undergone the acceleration, and the space ship that had remained motionless. But how would the Earth do this? The only way the Earth could move back and forth is to suppose the entire universe must be moving back and forth. And even with this assumption it can be shown using Einstein's general theory of relativity, which deals with accelerating reference frames, that the results of special relativity are still correct. The situation between the Earth and the rocket ship is not symmetrical.

Only the traveling twin has experienced acceleration. Therefore, the twins' situations are not equivalent, and the home-bound twin will, in fact, be older. Hey, you can't expect to find eternal youth by staying home, right?

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LorentzTransformationForTwinParadox/

Length contraction

We made mention earlier that as a result of special relativity absolute space and absolute time do not exist. Rather, the two are interdependent, and any change in time must cause a change in space (length or distance) and vice versa. How can this be explained?

The fact that speed is the ratio of length to time means that both length and time must change, in just the right proportion, in order to ensure the speed of light remain constant.

We, therefore, can determine the change in length by using the result we found for time dilation.

Let us suppose Earth-bound observers watch a spaceship that travels with velocity v between two distant points. The distance between the two points as measured by an Earth-bound observer is L_p, and the time for the trip is t

We can then state

$L_p = vt$ (Equation A).

However, $t = \frac{t_p}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$ (Equation B).

Substituting t in Equation B into Equation A gives us,

$L_p = v\frac{t_p}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \rightarrow vt_p = L_p\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} \rightarrow$, but vt_p is the distance L measured in the spaceship, so $L = L_p\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}$.

The distance the observers in the space ship measure compared to the distance that observers on Earth measure is therefore shorter, since $\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} < 1$.

The shortening of distance is called **length contraction** and it is not limited to the "space" between two points. The same contraction occurs for material objects. For example, if one inertial frame, moving with a velocity v, passed another inertial frame containing a meter stick, the observers in these frames will not agree on the length of the meter stick. Those at rest relative to the meter stick will claim it does measure one meter. The occupants of the moving frame, on the other hand, will claim it is shorter than one meter.

It must be noted that length contraction is observed only in the direction of motion of the moving object. In our example with a meter stick, the width of the meter stick does not change, only its length.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RelativisticCar/

Check Your Understanding

1. An Earth-bound observer measures the distance to the star Sirius as 8.7 light years (Ly) (a light year is the distance that light travels in one year). What distance between the Earth and Sirius would be measured by an observer on a space ship moving at speed 0.8 c?

Answer:

Using the result derived above, we have

$L = L_p\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} = 8.7\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.8)^2\ c^2}{c^2}} = 5.2\ Ly$

2. If photons were capable of perceiving the effect of length contraction, what length would they assign to an object which measures 1 meter in its proper reference frame?

Answer: We can see that the time and length in special relativity are changed by a factor of $\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}$. In the case of length, we get the rather amazing result that from the point of view of light, all material objects contract to zero length since $v = c$. Therefore, the meter stick, as well as any object, has zero length as measured by our perceptive photons. From a photon's point of view, then, it takes zero time to get anywhere. You'll never convince a photon that they're not on time!

22.3 Simultaneity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand what is meant by simultaneous events.
- Understand the twin paradox.

Vocabulary

- **proper time**
- **simultaneity:** A thought experiment used to illustrate the relative nature of time.

Simultaneity

If the velocity of light is constant regardless of the motion of the source or observer, we can demonstrate that Newton's idea of absolute time cannot hold. Observers in different inertial frames will measure unequal time intervals when observing the same event. The classic example of this is a "thought experiment" suggested by Einstein. The example involves a railroad embankment and a very long train. The rails are attached to Earth, which we assume represents an inertial frame, and the train moving with velocity v relative to the rails is another inertial frame.

We can define what we mean by simultaneous in this manner:

We mark points A and B on the rails and in the train as shown in **Figure** 22.8. At the moment the train is coincident with A and B, lightning strikes the rails at A and B. An observer O on the ground has positioned himself equidistant from A and B. He measures the arrival time of the two light flashes at his location, discovering that the times are identical. Under such conditions we claim that the lightning strikes occurred simultaneously at points A and B with respect to the ground observer. The question, however, is: Will an observer on the train, moving with velocity v, as shown, who is positioned exactly above O (in blue) at the instant of the lightning strikes, measure the arrival time of the lightning to be identical?

As the train travels to the right in **Figure** 22.9, we can see that the light moving from B will reach the observer earlier than the light traveling from A, since the train is moving toward B and away A. The light from B has less distance to cover than the light from A. The observer in the train will, therefore, claim that the lightning strikes are not simultaneous. Thus, the Newtonian idea of an absolute and unchanging time will not hold if the velocity of light is independent of the source and the observer.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RelativityOfSimultaneity/

Let us compare the "classical" Newtonian explanation of the above situation with the modern explanation.

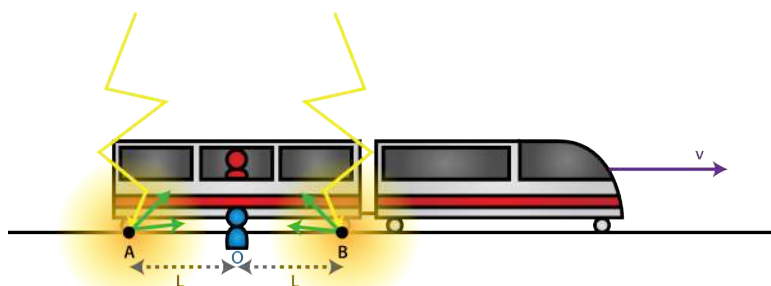



FIGURE 22.8

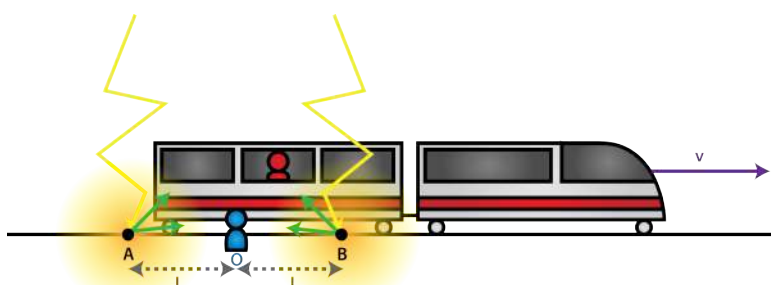



FIGURE 22.9

Classical Newtonian view

The reason that an observer on the train moving with velocity v sees the lightning arrive from B sooner than from A is because the velocity of the light from B relative to the observer is $c+v$. Meanwhile, the velocity of light from A relative to the observer is $c-v$.

A Newtonian, or classical, physicist would claim that the events were simultaneous in both inertial frames (the embankment and the train), and assert that time is an absolute quantity unchanged by motion.

Modern view

According to a modern physicist the (actual) reason the observer on the train sees the light from point B sooner than the light from point A is because the distance the light must travel from B to reach the observer is smaller than the distance the light must travel from A. (The train is moving toward the light from B and away from the light at A.) The velocity of the light relative to the observer is c, regardless if the observer is moving toward or away from the light. This is the second postulate of the theory of special relativity, as counterintuitive as it may seem to be!

The twin paradox

Let's say that one of two twins decides to take a relativistic trip, which we define as a trip where the effects of time dilation cannot be ignored. If the traveling twin leaves when she is 20 years old, traveling at about 0.87 c, she will age half as slowly as the twin who remains on Earth. If, after 10 years, as measured by a clock aboard her ship, she returns, she'll find that 20 years will have passed on Earth. When the two twins meet again, the traveling twin will be 30 years old and the stay-at-home twin will be 40 years old.

Does this seem reasonable? The objection is sometimes raised that since all inertial frames are equivalent, the stay-at-home twin could make the same argument, and thus she should be younger than the traveling twin.

There are several arguments demonstrating that special theory of relativity does not create a paradox and, indeed, that it is the twin on the ship who ends up younger. It's important to recall that the special relativity equations above are valid only for the inertial frames of reference, or frames that do not accelerate. In order for the traveling twin to return to the Earth, she must turn around. Any change in direction indicates a change in velocity and, therefore, acceleration.

Even though the situation has an interval of acceleration, one can still use special relativity to correctly determine the result. The inertial frame returning may not be the same inertial frame when leaving, but they are both still inertial frames. And if the traveling twin never returns, thus introducing no acceleration, the paradox becomes mute since there is then no way for the twins to compare ages.

Of course, nothing prevents one from arguing that it was the Earth that underwent the acceleration, and the spaceship that remained motionless. But how would the Earth do this? The only way the Earth could move back and forth is to suppose the entire universe must be moving back and forth. Even with this assumption, it can be shown using Einstein's general theory of relativity, which deals with accelerating reference frames, that the results of special relativity are still correct. The situation between the Earth and the rocket ship is not symmetrical.

Only the traveling twin has experienced acceleration –therefore, the twins' situations are not equivalent, and the home-bound twin will, in fact, be older. Hey, you can't expect to find eternal youth by staying home, right?

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/LorentzTransformationForTwinParadox/

Mass-Energy

Using special relativity, force and momentum must also be altered with the multiplicative factor $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$.

The relativistic equations for force and momentum are:

$$F = ma \rightarrow F = \frac{ma}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$
$$p = mv \rightarrow p = \frac{mv}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

Using special relativity, Einstein was also able to show that mass and energy were not independent of each other, but rather, equivalent. In fact, energy could be converted to mass and vice versa.

We state without proof that Einstein derived the relationship between energy and mass as $E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$.

The term mc^2 is called the rest energy of the object. Einstein reasoned that since mass and energy were equivalent, a resting object of mass m would have an equivalent energy mc^2. Thus, even when an object has no kinetic energy, it still has energy by virtue of the fact it has mass.

The total energy E of the object can be rewritten as

$E = mc^2 + KE$

The total energy E of an object is equal to the sum of the rest energy of the object mc^2, and the kinetic energy of the object KE. Notice that if the $KE$of the object is zero, the total energy of the object reduces to $E = mc^2$, Einstein's iconic equation.

We can also show that the relativistic equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ reduces to the Newtonian equation for the kinetic energy when $v \ll c$. We show this result in the following example.

Illustrative Example 23.2.2

Show that for the case $v << c$ the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ reduces to $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Solution:

Using the binomial expansion for $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$ when $v \ll c$, E can be expressed as follows:

$E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \approx mc^2\left(1 + \frac{v^2}{2c^2} + \ldots\right)$, where additional terms in the expansion add smaller and more negligible terms, and so are ignored.

Substituting the above approximation for E in the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$, we have

$$mc^2\left(1 + \frac{v^2}{2c^2} + \ldots\right) = mc^2 + KE \rightarrow mc^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = mc^2 + KE \rightarrow$$
$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

Check Your Understanding

True or False: The equation for relativistic kinetic energy for an object of mass $m$traveling with speed $v$can be found by substituting $\frac{m}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$ for the mass $m$into the equation $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Answer: False. We can see from the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ and Example 23.2.2 that the relativistic form for kinetic energy is not reached in the same way as the relativistic equations for force and momentum.

Check Your Understanding

a. How much energy is released if a proton of mass $1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg$ is completely converted to energy?

Solution:

Using the rest energy of a proton, we have

$E = mc^2 = (1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg)(3.00 \times 10^8)^2 = 1.50 \times 10^{-10}\ J$

b. Express your answer in electron-volts (eV).

Answer: Recall that $1.00\ eV = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J$, therefore

$\frac{1.50 \times 10^{-10}\ J}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J} = 0.9375 \times 10^9\ eV\ or\ 938\ MeV$

Relative velocity

We began our discussion of relativity by stating that the results of Maxwell's equations, that light must always travel at a constant velocity c in a vacuum, contradicted the results of Galilean relative velocity. Namely, relative velocity could not be calculated by the vector addition of velocities, that is $\vec{v}_r = \vec{v}_1 + \vec{v}_2$. We have seen that in order to preserve Galilean relativity, the expressions for both time and space needed to be changed. Since observers in different inertial frames measure different times and different lengths, the equation for the calculating Galilean relative velocity must also change. Einstein showed how the Galilean equation for relative velocities must be changed in order for light (and the theory of electromagnetism) to remain consistent with Galilean relativity.

The correct relativistic addition of velocities equation which Einstein (and Lorentz) derived looks like this: $v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}}$,

where v_1 is the velocity of an inertial frame (S') measured in the proper frame (S), and v_2 is the velocity of an object (or light wave) measured with respect to (S'). The relative velocity v_r is with respect to frame (S).

For example, if the above equation is applied to the Michelson-Morley experiment, we have $v_1 = 30\frac{km}{s}$,the velocity of the sun (S') with respect to the earth (S) and the velocity of light $v_2 = c$ with respect to the sun (S'). If we wish to calculate the speed of light v_r relative to the earth we have:

$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} \rightarrow \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1+\frac{30\frac{km}{s}c}{c^2}} = \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1+\frac{30\frac{km}{s}}{c}} = \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{\frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{c}} = \left(\frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1}\right)\left(\frac{c}{30\frac{km}{s}+c}\right) = c.$

This is, of course, the actual result of the experiment: the velocity of light is c regardless of the motion of the Earth.

Recall the example of the girl on the skateboard discussed earlier in the chapter. The girl has velocity $4.0\frac{m}{s}$ relative to the Earth, when she throws a ball with velocity $6.0\frac{m}{s}$ relative to herself. The velocity of the ball relative to the Earth, v_r using the relativistic equation for velocity addition is (when the ball is thrown in the positive direction),

$$v_1 = 4.0\frac{m}{s} \text{ and } v_2 = 6.0\frac{m}{s} \rightarrow$$
$$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} = \frac{4.0\frac{m}{s}+6.0\frac{m}{s}}{1+\frac{\left(4.0\frac{m}{s}\right)\left(6.0\frac{m}{s}\right)}{c^2}} = \frac{10.0\frac{m}{s}}{1+\frac{24\frac{m^2}{s^2}}{\left(9\times10^{16}\frac{m^2}{s^2}\right)}} \cong 10.0\frac{m}{s}$$

Notice how small the factor $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}$ is compared to 1. In this non-relativistic case we have $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2} = 2.67\times10^{-16}$. Unless the quantity $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}$ is comparable to 1, the relativistic equation will reduce to the old Galilean equation for relative velocity:

$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} \approx v_1 + v_2.$

In fact, all of the equations of special relativity will reduce to the classical ones when $v \ll c$. We typically regard Newtonian physics as a low-speed case of the special theory of relativity. This in known as the principle of correspondence. The principle of corresponded states that a general theory should always have, as a special case, the theory which it supplants.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/EinsteinsFormulaForAddingVelocities/

22.4 Mass-Energy Equivalence

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the equivalence of mass and energy

Vocabulary

- Mass-Energy

Mass-Energy Equivalence

Using special relativity, force and momentum must also be altered with the multiplicative factor $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$.

The relativistic equations for force and momentum are:

$$F = ma \rightarrow F = \frac{ma}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$
$$p = mv \rightarrow p = \frac{mv}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

Using special relativity, Einstein was also able to show that mass and energy were not independent of each other, but rather, equivalent. In fact, energy could be converted to mass, and vice versa.

We state without proof that Einstein derived the relationship between energy and mass as $E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$.

The term mc^2 is called the rest energy of the object. Einstein reasoned that since mass and energy were equivalent, a resting object of mass m would have an equivalent energy mc^2. Thus, even when an object has no kinetic energy, it still has energy by virtue of the fact that it has mass.

The total energy E of the object can be rewritten as:

$E = mc^2 + KE$

This equation states that the total energy E of an object is equal to the sum of the rest energy of the object mc^2 and the kinetic energy of the object KE.

Notice that if the KE of the object is zero, the total energy of the object reduces to $E = mc^2$, which is Einstein's iconic equation.

We can also show that the relativistic equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ reduces to the Newtonian equation for the kinetic energy when $v \ll c$. We show this result in the following example.

Illustrative Example 23.2.2

Show that, in the case $v \ll c$, the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ reduces to $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Solution:

Using the binomial expansion for $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$ when $v \ll c$, E can be expressed as follows:

$E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \approx mc^2\left(1+\frac{v^2}{2c^2}+\ldots\right)$, where additional terms in the expansion add smaller and more negligible terms, and so are ignored.

Substituting the above approximation for E in the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$, we have

$$mc^2\left(1+\frac{v^2}{2c^2}+\ldots\right) = mc^2 + KE \rightarrow mc^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = mc^2 + KE \rightarrow$$
$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

Check Your Understanding

1. True or False:

The equation for relativistic kinetic energy for an object of mass m traveling with speed v can be found by substituting $\frac{m}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$ for the mass m into the equation $KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$.

Answer: False. We can see from the equation $E = mc^2 + KE$ and Example 23.2.2 that the relativistic form for kinetic energy is not arrived at in the same way as the relativistic equations for force and momentum.

2a. How much energy is released if a proton of mass $1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg$ is completely converted to energy?

Solution:

Using the rest energy of a proton, we have

$E = mc^2 = (1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ kg)(3.00 \times 10^8)^2 = 1.50 \times 10^{-10}\ J$

2b. Express your answer in electron-volts (eV).

Answer: Recall that $1.00\ eV = 1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J$, therefore

$\frac{1.50\times10^{-10}\ J}{1.60\times10^{-19}\ J} = 0.9375 \times 10^9\ eV\ or\ 938\ MeV$

Relative velocity

We began our discussion of relativity by stating that the results of Maxwell's equations, that light must always travel at a constant velocity c in vacuum, contradicted the results of Galilean relative velocity. Namely, relative velocity could not be calculated by the vector addition of velocities, that is $\vec{v}_r = \vec{v}_1 + \vec{v}_2$. We have seen that in order to preserve Galilean relativity, the expressions for both time and space needed to be changed. Since observers in different inertial frames measure different times and different lengths, the equation for calculating Galilean relative velocity must also change. Einstein showed how the Galilean equation for relative velocities must be changed in order for light (and the theory of electromagnetism) to remain consistent with Galilean relativity.

The correct relativistic addition of velocities equation, serived by Einstein (and Lorentz), looks like this: $v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}}$.

Here, v_1 is the velocity of an inertial frame (S') measured in the proper frame (S) and v_2 is the velocity of an object (or light wave) measured with respect to (S'). The relative velocity v_r is with respect to frame (S).

For example, if the above equation is applied to the Michelson-Morley experiment, we have $v_1 = 30\frac{km}{s}$, the velocity of the sun (S') with respect to the Earth (S), and the velocity of light $v_2 = c$ with respect to the sun (S'). If we wish to calculate the speed of light v_r relative to the Earth, we have:

$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} \to \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1+\frac{30\frac{km}{s}c}{c^2}} = \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1+\frac{30\frac{km}{s}}{c}} = \frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{\frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{c}} = \left(\frac{30\frac{km}{s}+c}{1}\right)\left(\frac{c}{30\frac{km}{s}+c}\right) = c.$

This is, of course, the actual result of the experiment: the velocity of light is c regardless of the motion of the Earth.

Recall the example of the girl on the skateboard discussed earlier in the chapter. The girl has velocity $4.0\frac{m}{s}$ relative to the Earth when she throws a ball with velocity $6.0\frac{m}{s}$ relative to herself. The velocity of the ball relative to the earth v_r using the relativistic equation for velocity addition is (when the ball is thrown in the positive direction),

$$v_1 = 4.0\frac{m}{s} \text{ and } v_2 = 6.0\frac{m}{s} \to$$
$$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} = \frac{4.0\frac{m}{s}+6.0\frac{m}{s}}{1+\frac{\left(4.0\frac{m}{s}\right)\left(6.0\frac{m}{s}\right)}{c^2}} = \frac{10.0\frac{m}{s}}{1+\frac{24\frac{m^2}{s^2}}{\left(9\times10^{16}\frac{m^2}{s^2}\right)}} \cong 10.0\frac{m}{s}$$

Notice how small the factor $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}$ is compared to 1. In this non-relativistic case we have $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2} = 2.67\times10^{-16}$. Unless the quantity $\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}$ is comparable to 1, the relativistic equation will reduce to the old Galilean equation for relative velocity,

$v_r = \frac{v_1+v_2}{1+\frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}} \approx v_1 + v_2.$

In fact, all of the equations of special relativity will reduce to the classical ones when $v \ll c$. We typically regard Newtonian physics as a low-speed case of the special theory of relativity. This in known as the principle of correspondence: a general theory should always have, as a special case, the theory which it supplants.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/EinsteinsFormulaForAddingVelocities/

22.5 General Theory of Relativity

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the twin paradox.
- Understand the equivalence of mass and energy.

Vocabulary

- **principle of equivalence:** An accelerating frame of reference is indistinguishable from the acceleration due to gravity.

The general theory of relativity

The general theory of relativity, as mentioned earlier, deals with frames of reference undergoing acceleration. Einstein published this theory in 1916, eleven years after special relativity. The mathematics needed to understand general relativity is well beyond the level of this book, so we will mention just one of the most important consequences of the theory, **the principle of equivalence.**

The principle of equivalence

The principle of equivalence states that an accelerating frame of reference is indistinguishable from the acceleration due to gravity.

For example, imagine a person in an elevator in deep space far from any gravitational fields. If the elevator is accelerating at $9.81 \frac{m}{s^2}$, every experiment conducted in the elevator would produce the same results as that same experiment would on Earth. If the person was not aware of the location of the elevator, they could reasonably assume they were standing stationary on Earth. Additionally, if the elevator were not accelerating, but just floating in deep space with no appreciable gravitational fields and a person held an object and released it, the object would remain floating in front of them. The same event would occur if the elevator was freely falling on the Earth. Again, the occupants of the elevator could not determine if they were accelerating (falling freely) due to a gravitational field, or motionless in deep space.

The general theory of relativity can be thought of as a theory of gravity. Einstein was able to explain the nature of gravity without resorting to action at a distance. The general theory explained gravity as a curvature in space-time produced by mass. The more massive the body, the greater the curvature. The sun, for example, "warps" the space around it, and the planets follow paths along this warped space as shown in **Figure** below. There is no invisible force reaching out and holding the planets in their orbit. The difference between Newton's conception of gravity and Einstein's has been compared to observing a child rolling a ball upon the ground.

Newton is pictured on a tall building observing the child from far away. He notices that when the child rolls the ball, it always moves toward the center of the pavement. Naturally, Newton assumes that a force must be pulling the ball

toward the center. Einstein, however, is on the ground observing the child and sees that the pavement is sunken in the middle and this is the reason the ball always rolls toward the center.

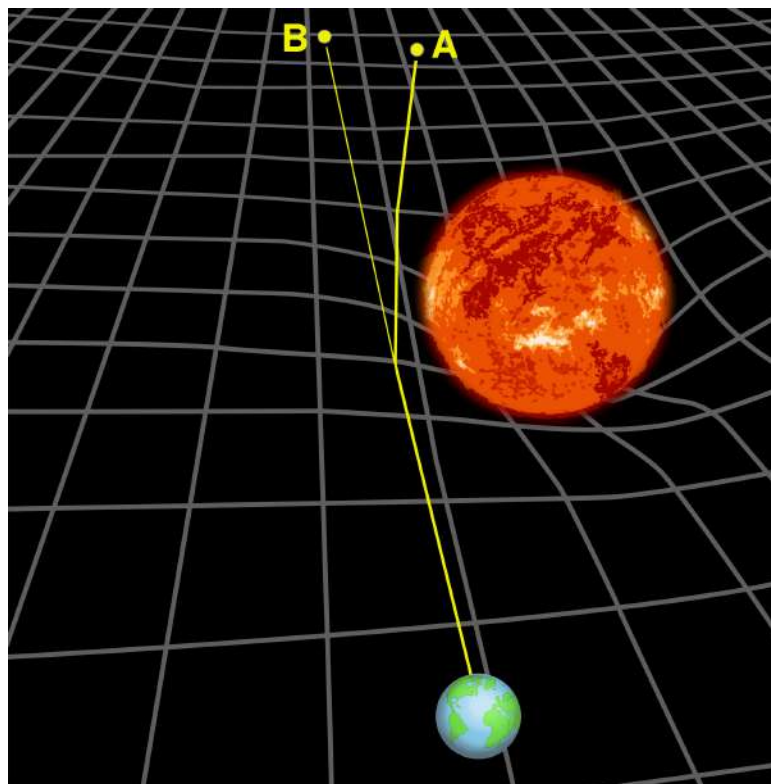



FIGURE 22.10
The sun warps space according to general relativity.

To see the effect of mass warping space, see the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BendingOfLightByAStar/

For a recap of special relativity, the link below may be of assistance.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KYWM2oZgi4E&feature=related

1. Postulates of Special Relativity

    Postulate 1: The laws of physics have the same form in all inertial frames of reference.

    Postulate 2: The speed of light in vacuum is constant in all inertial frames of reference.

2. Time dilation:

    Clocks moving relative to an observer who assumes himself "at rest," run more slowly compared to the clocks in the "at rest" frame. Such a slowing of time is called *time dilation*. The transformation equation between the two frames is given by

    $t = \frac{t_p}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$

    The time t_p is the proper time (also called the lab or at rest frame).

3. Length contraction

    Objects in motion with respect to a proper frame (or "rest frame") of reference are contracted in the direction of their motion. The length of the (moving) object as measured from the proper frame is given by

    $L = L_p\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}$ where L_p is the length measured in the proper frame.

4. Newton's Equations with the proper transformations

$$F = \frac{ma}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$
$$P = \frac{mv}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}$$

5. The total energy E is defined as $E = mc^2 + KE$,

   where KE is the kinetic energy of an object and m is its rest mass.

6. The correct relativistic addition of velocities equation which Einstein (and Lorentz) derived is

$$v_r = \frac{v_1 + v_2}{1 + \frac{v_1 v_2}{c^2}}$$

   where v_1 is the velocity of an inertial frame (S') measured in the proper frame (S) and v_2 is the velocity of an object (or light wave) measured with respect (S'). The relative velocity v_r is with respect to frame (S).

22.6 References

1. Image courtesy of NASA. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:GPS_Satellite_NASA_art-iif.jpg . public domain
2. CK-12 Foundation - Zachary Wilson, using teenager and car images copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under licenses from Shutterstock.com
3. CK-12 Foundation - Zachary Wilson, using teenager and car images copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
4. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
6. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using teenager image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
7. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using teenager image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
8. CK-12 Foundation - Raymond Chou, using teenager image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
9. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
11. Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 23 Quantum Physics

Chapter Outline

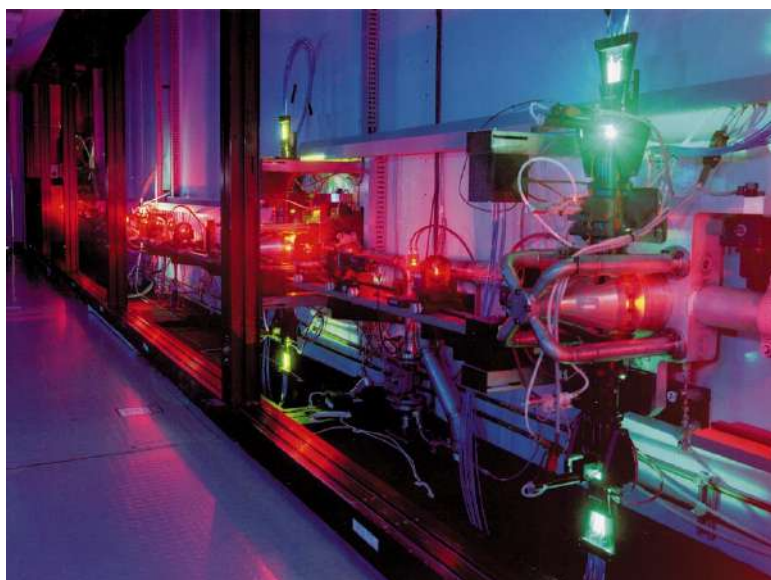



FIGURE 23.1
A copper vapor pump laser used in an atomic experiment.

As science began to look at very small sizes down to the scale of an atom, our previous intuition about matter broke donw. Quantum mechanics is the solution to what seemed like inconsistent behavior of atoms and light, that resolves dilemmas over what is a wave and what is a particle. Lasers create a precise wavelength due to quantum mechanics, and are increasingly found throughout everyday life. This chapter covers black body radiation and Planck's quantum hypothesis, photons and the photoelectric effect, and wave-particle duality.

23.1 Blackbody Radiation and Planck's Quantum Hypothesis

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how difficulty with blackbody radiation leads to the particle interpretation of light.
- Understand Planck's quantum hypothesis.

Vocabulary

- **blackbody radiation:** Ideal approximation of the different spectra of different substances.
- **Planck's constant:** $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J - s$**,** used in Planck's equation.
- **quantized:** Not-continuous, discrete.

Blackbody radiation

FIGURE 23.2
Glowing iron displays a range of colors between red, orange, and yellow

As objects heat up, they generally begin to glow, giving off light like the hot iron in the picture above. As their temperature goes up, more light and a different spectrum of light results. Different substances have different spectra, but many approximate an ideal known as **blackbody radiation**.

We call an idealized body that absorbs all energy a black body because black does not reflect any of the electromagnetic waves. Instead of reflecting the light that shines on it, a black body absorbs the light and its temperature goes up. From the motion of the temperature, the electrons in it are vibrating and produce electromagnetic waves. Higher temperature means faster vibration and higher frequencies.

The sun acts very similarly to a black body, because it releases its internal energy as light from the surface and does not reflect incoming light. During the late 19th century, physicists were able to experimentally determine what the shape of the curve for blackbody radiation looked like for objects at different temperatures, including the sun. **Figure** 23.3 shows two blackbody curves, one where the greatest intensity is at a temperature of 3000 K (a red star) and the other where the greatest intensity is at 6000 K (a yellow star such as our sun).

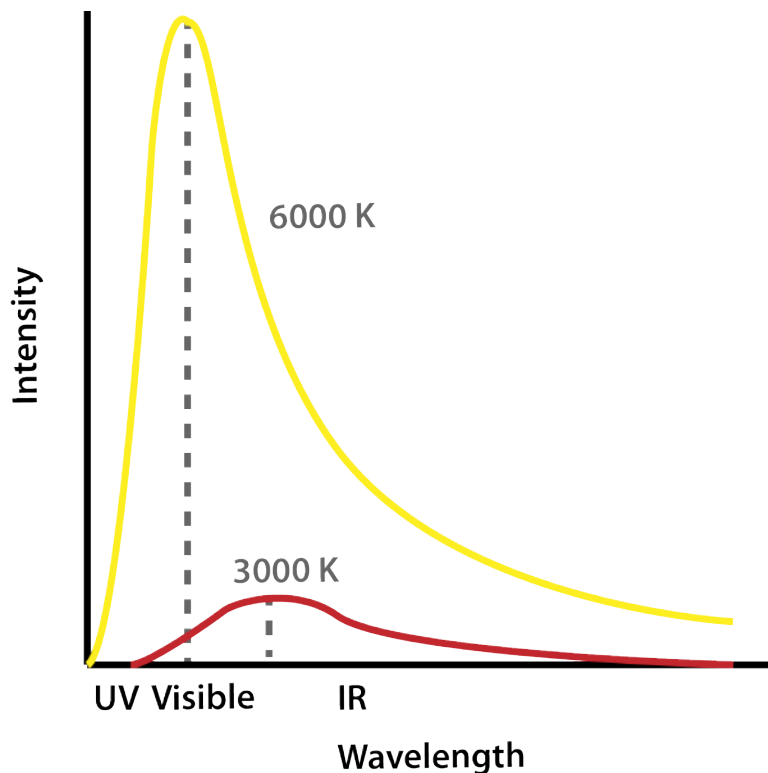



FIGURE 23.3
The blackbody spectrum of two stars.

The Classical Prediction

The problem with this observed result is that it did not match with the theoretical results from classic electromagnetism. Classical electromagnetism treated the radiation as the smooth result of many different vibrations. With many different vibrations within the body, the classical prediction was that shorter wavelengths were always more common than longer wavelengths. There was no peak in the middle —only a peak against the extreme of wavelength zero. This is known as Rayleigh-Jeans Law, after British physicist Lord Rayleigh (1842-1919) and Sir James Jean (1877-1946).

The failure of this prediction was a puzzle for many years.

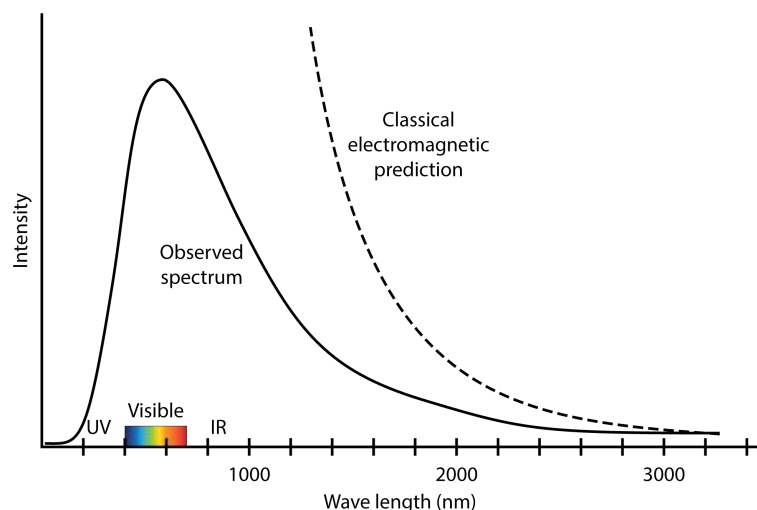



FIGURE 23.4

The observed rate of different wavelengths of light from the Sun, compared to the classical prediction.

Planck's Equation

In 1900, at the same time as the classical prediction was made, the German physicist Max Planck (1858-1947) derived a mathematical equation that correctly matched the experimental results. However, at the time, he had no physical explanation for what the equation meant. The mathematics implied that the energy given off by a blackbody was not continuous, but given off at certain specific wavelengths, in regular increments. If Planck assumed that the energy of blackbody radiation was in the form

$E = nhf$, where

- $n$is an integer (now called a quantum number),
- h, a constant, (now known as **Planck's constant**), with the value $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s$
- and f is the frequency of the light emitted,

then he could explain what the mathematics represented. This was indeed difficult for Planck to accept, because at the time, there was no reason to presume that the energy should only be radiated at specific frequencies. Nothing in Maxwell's laws suggested such a thing. It was as if the vibrations of a mass on the end of a spring could only occur at specific energies. Imagine the mass slowly coming to rest due to friction, but not in a continuous manner. Instead, the mass jumps from one fixed quantity of energy to another without passing through the intermediate energies.

To use a different analogy, it is as if what we had always imagined as smooth inclined planes were, in fact, a series of closely spaced steps that only presented the illusion of continuity.

Nature, it seemed, was quantized (non-continuous, or discrete). If this was so, how could Maxwell's equations correctly predict this result? Planck spent a good deal of time attempting to reconcile the behavior of electromagnetic waves with the discrete nature of the blackbody radiation, to no avail. It was not until 1905, with yet another paper published by Albert Einstein, that the wave nature of light was expanded to include the particle interpretation of light which adequately explained Planck's equation. To learn more about blackbody radiation, follow the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BlackbodyRadiation/

23.2 Photons and the Photoelectric Effect

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand photons.
- Understand the mechanism photoelectric effect.
- Solve problems involving the photoelectric effect.

Vocabulary

- **photoelectric cell:** A sealed glass chamber with a vacuum inside, and a gap between the wide metal plate on the negative side and the small metal plate on the positive side. The light source is set up to shine light on the wide metal surface.

- **photoelectric effect:** Describes how light gives energy to electrons, allowing them to jump across an electric field.

- **photon:** Particle of light.

- **work function:** The minimum energy $(E_o)E_0 = hf_0$ needed to overcome the electrical forces which bind the electron within the metal.

Introduction

The **photoelectric effect** describes how light gives energy to electrons, allowing them to jump across an electric field. The basic experimental setup is shown below. The **photoelectric cell** is a sealed glass chamber with a vacuum inside, and a gap between the wide metal plate on the negative side and the small metal plate on the positive side. The light source is set up to shine light on the wide metal surface.

The ammeter on the circuit shows current results when light shines on the wide metal surface. It is understood that the light gives energy to the electrons, enabling some of them to jump across the vacuum gap to the other side.

The **Figure** 23.6 shows the result when the light is turned on. It was clear that light somehow initiated a current, by causing electrons from the metal surface to jump across the gap to the anode. The electrons crossing are shown as blue dashed lines.

There are two fundamental parameters that can be varied in the effect:

- The frequency of the light
- The intensity of the light

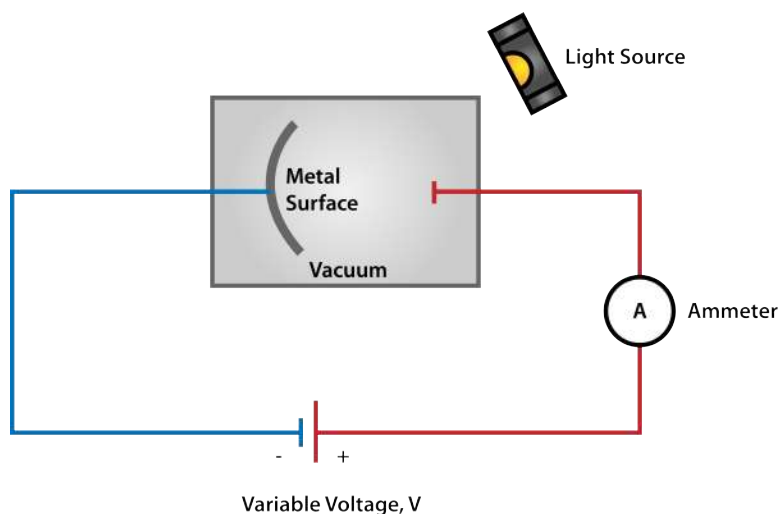



FIGURE 23.5
A simplified view of the photoelectric effect experiment setup.

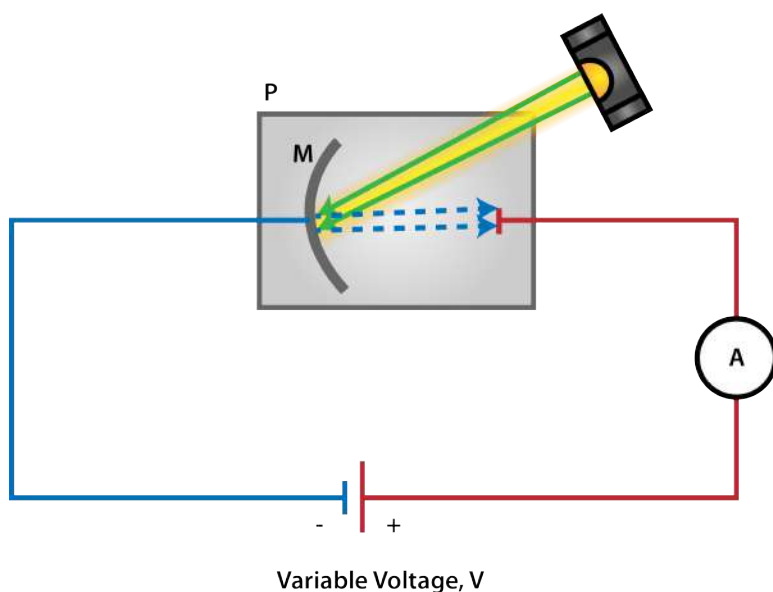



FIGURE 23.6
A photocell completes an electrical circuit.

There are also two things that can be measured in the effect:

- The current, as measured in the ammeter, shows the number of electrons released.
- By varying the voltage in the circuit, a rough measure of the kinetic energy (KE) of the electrons can be obtained. Less voltage means that the electrons need more KE in order to jump the gap.

Classical Prediction

According to the classical theory, the intensity of a wave is directly proportional to the square of the amplitude of the wave. A higher amplitude will shake the electron to a greater degree. As the electrons are shaken, they will gain energy and eventually be pushed out of their orbit around the nucleus. We take these key predictions from that:

- If the intensity of the light wave was increased, not only would more electrons be ejected, but those ejected would have a greater kinetic energy.
- The photoelectric effect should occur for any light, regardless of frequency. Lower frequency or intensity will have less energy, and will take more time to transfer enough energy for electrons to escape.

Experimental Results

The actual results contradicted the classical prediction markedly.

- Increasing the intensity of the light increased the number of electrons (the current), but had no effect on the kinetic energy of the electrons released.
- Increasing the frequency of the light increased the kinetic energy of the electrons released, but not the current. For some materials, a low-intensity blue light would eject electrons, whereas the red or orange light, no matter how bright, would cause no photoelectric effect at all.

Einstein's Explanation

In 1905, Albert Einstein proposed that Planck's blackbody equation could be explained in terms of the particle, or **photon**, model of light, rather than the wave model. The particle model suggests that light can be thought of as particles called photons, rather than as waves. Einstein suggested an explanation for Planck's equation based upon a phenomenon called the photoelectric effect, which had been observed but never properly explained. Physicists had known since the late 19th century that when light was incident upon a metal surface, under certain conditions, electrons were ejected from the surface. However, until Einstein's proposed model, there was no adequate explanation for that mysterious phenomenon, which is known as *t*he photoelectric effect.

Einstein's assumption was that photons of light were responsible for ejecting electrons and creating the observed current. Furthermore, he claimed that the energy carried by each photon was given in terms of Planck's equation:

$E = hf$

Therefore, the greater the frequency of the photon, the greater the kinetic energy of the ejected photon would be. Blue light, for example, should emit electrons with a greater kinetic energy then red light.

Einstein went a step further and said that the photons must have a minimum frequency f_o in order to eject electrons from the metal. This minimum frequency is known as the threshold frequency .

The threshold frequency corresponds to the minimum energy $(E_o) E_0 = hf_0$ needed to overcome the electrical forces which bind the electron within the metal. We now call this minimum energy the **work function** of the metal (W_o), or $W_o = hf_o$.

Einsten gave the maximum kinetic energy of an ejected electron as:

$KE_{max} = hf - hf_o$ or $KE_{max} = hf - W_o$

This equation is known as Einstein's equation for photoelectric effect and is, essentially, a statement of the law of conservation of energy applied to photoelectric effect.

Interestingly, the maximum kinetic energy of the electrons could be relatively easily determined by gradually reversing the potential difference V of the source shown in **Figure** 23.6. As the reversed potential is slowly increased, the current in the circuit eventually decreases to zero. The work done in stopping the ejected electrons (also known as "photoelectrons") would equal their maximum kinetic energy.

$W = eV_o = \Delta KE \rightarrow 0 - KE_{max} = eV_o \rightarrow -KE_{max} = eV_o$

But since the potential difference is reversed,

$V_o \to -V_o$

So $KE_{max} = eV_o$,

Where V_o is called the stopping potential or stopping voltage.

Follow the links below for more information on the photoelectric effect.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=X6WNLqFWMN8

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N7BywkIretM

Table 23.1 summarizes some of the differences between the predictions of Maxwell's classical electromagnetic theory and of Einstein's modern physics theory for the photoelectric effect.

TABLE 23.1:

	Increasing Intensity	**Increasing Frequency**
Classical (Maxwell)	More electrons ejected with greater kinetic energy	No effect
Modern (Einstein)	More electrons ejected with same kinetic energy	Greater kinetic energy of ejected electrons (Minimum frequency required to eject any electrons) $KE = hf - W_o$

Note that the relationship between the maximum kinetic energy KE_{max} of the ejected electrons and the frequency of light f incident on the material is linear as shown in **Figure** 23.7.

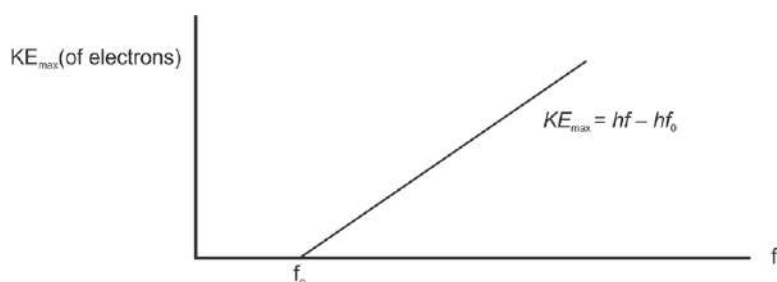



FIGURE 23.7

The **Table** 23.2 gives the work functions (W_o) for some common materials.

TABLE 23.2:

Element	**Average Work Function** $(eV) W_o = hf_o$
Aluminum	4.16
Calcium	2.87
Copper	4.82
Lead	4.25
Nickel	5.20
Potassium	2.29
Silicon	4.73
Silver	4.63
Sodium	2.36
Uranium	3.77

In the years 1913-1914, Robert A. Millikan (1868-1953) carried out an extensive set of photoelectric experiments that confirmed Einstein's predictions.

The photoelectric effect has many practical applications. Automatic doors function by using a photoelectric current. When a person attempts to enter or leave a doorway, the photoelectric beam is interrupted, causing a drop in the current that triggers a switch of some sort (perhaps a solenoid, as discussed earlier) which opens the door. When the beam is no longer interrupted, the circuit is closed, as is the door. The photoelectric effect is used in many common devices from burglar alarms to smoke detectors to sophisticated electronic circuitry.

In 1921, Albert Einstein (1879-1955) won the Nobel Prize in physics for his 1905 paper on the photoelectric effect. Interestingly, he never got one for his papers published on the special or general theories of relativity. In 1923, Robert Millikan won the Nobel Prize in physics for his experimental verification of Einstein's 1905 paper and for determining the charge of the electron.

For more information on the photoelectric effect follow the links below.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=N7BywkIretM

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=v5h3h2E4z2Q

Check Your Understanding

1a. What energy do photons of wavelength 400 nm (violet light) have?

Answer: $E = hf$ but $f = \frac{c}{\lambda}$, thus

$$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s)(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \frac{m}{s})}{400 \times 10^{-9}\ m} = 4.968 \times 10^{-19} \rightarrow 1.97 \times 10^{-19}\ J$$

1b. Express the answer to part a in electron-volts.

Answer: $1\ eV = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ J$

Therefore,

$E = \frac{4.968 \times 10^{-19}\ J}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \frac{J}{eV}} = 3.11\ eV$.

2. What is the threshold frequency f_o for copper?

Answer: **Table** 23.2 gives the work function of copper as $W_o = 4.82\ eV$.

The work function must be expressed in joules, not electron-volts, thus,

$$W_o = (4.82\ eV)\left(\frac{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ J}{eV}\right) = 7.71 \times 10^{-19}\ J \rightarrow W_o = hf_o = 7.71 \times 10^{-19}\ J \rightarrow$$
$$f_o = \frac{W_o}{h} = \frac{7.71 \times 10^{-19}\ J}{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s} = 1.16 \times 10^{15}\ Hz$$

This frequency corresponds to ultraviolet light (258 nm).

Illustrative Example 24.2.1

Assuming the average wavelength of solar radiation is 500 nm and the sun's power output is $P = 3.83 \times 10^{26}\ W$, estimate the number of photons the sun emits per second.

Solution:

It is given that the solar power output is $3.83 \times 10^{26} \frac{J}{s}$. A photon of wavelength 500 nm has energy

$E = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s)(3.00 \times 10^{8}\ \frac{m}{s})}{500 \times 10^{-9}\ m} = 3.976 \times 10^{-19} \rightarrow 3.98 \times 10^{-19}\ J.$

Therefore, the number of photons is

$\#\ of\ photons = \frac{3.83 \times 10^{26}\ \frac{J}{s}}{3.976 \times 10^{-19}\ J} = 9.63 \times 10^{44}$

As a comparison, the number of photons emitted each second by a 100-W light bulb is 2.52×10^{20}.

Illustrative Example 24.2.2

a. In **Figure** 23.6, a beam of monochromatic light is incident upon a potassium photocell with work function 2.2 eV. If the stopping potential of the ejected electrons is 0.90 V, what is the energy of the incident photons?

Solution:

The work required to bring one electron to rest is

$W = eV = (1.00 \times 10^{-19}\ C)(0.90\ V) = 0.90\ eV$

But,

$$KE_{max} = W$$
$$KE_{max} = 0.90\ eV \rightarrow KE_{max} = hf - W_o \rightarrow 0.90\ eV = hf - 2.2\ eV \rightarrow hf = 3.1\ eV$$

b. What is the frequency of the light?

Solution:

$f = \frac{E}{h} = \frac{(3.1\ eV)\left(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \frac{J}{eV}\right)}{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s} = 7.49 \times 10^{14}\ Hz \rightarrow 7.5 \times 10^{14}\ Hz$

Light of this frequency is violet.

For more information on the photoelectric effect follow the link below.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RR4T1IlM2Jw&feature=related

23.3 Wave-Particle Duality

Objective

The student will:

- Understand that light has both wave and particle attributes.

Vocabulary

- **wave-particle duality:** The wave-particle nature of light.

Introduction

In 1927, two physicists, C.J Davisson (1881-1958) and L.H. Germer (1896-1971), conducted an experiment on electrons scattering through a target made of nickel. Due to an accident in their procedure, the target was changed to the crystalline form of nickel, which had atoms in a very regular structure.

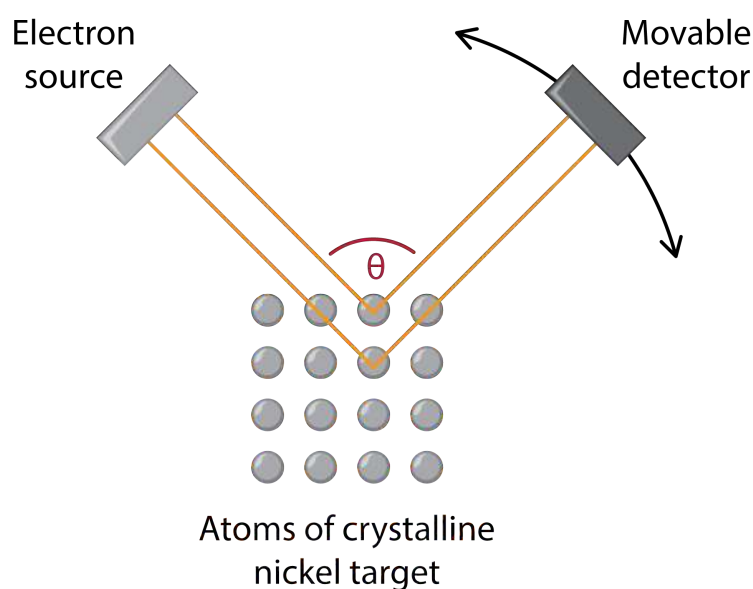



FIGURE 23.8
Setup of the Davisson-Germer experiment.

They found was that the scattered electrons displayed a diffraction pattern, with peaks at certain heights that related to the spacing of the atoms.

As it turned out, this was key evidence that confirmed the ongoing work of French physicist Louis de Broglie (1892-1987).

Waves and Particles

From the photoelectric effect and blackbody radiation, it was clear that light had unusual properties where it acted as both a wave and a particle.

- It had frequency like a wave, and displayed effects of interference such as the two-slit experiment, as well as the Doppler Effect.
- At the atomic scale, however, it acted in some ways as a particle as in the photoelectric effect.
- What appeared at first to be a smooth variation of wavelengths was actually a very finely grained set of distinct wavelengths, or quanta, as shown in blackbody radiation.

This is known as the wave-particle nature of light, or **wave-particle duality**. Danish physicist Niels Bohr (1885-1962) suggested that one must choose whether an experiment is to be performed using the wave nature of light or the particle nature of light, but never both!

So, what is light really?

If modern physics teaches us anything, it is that the world of our senses is limited. Macroscopic phenomena such as rolling balls and splashing waves appeal to our everyday senses and behave and accord to the expectations of those senses. But in reality, the only things our senses are directly privy to are the net macroscopic effects of an untold number of atomic interactions. We have no first-hand appreciation of how the atomic world behaves. And we have no reason to assume that once we begin to get hints of this entirely different world, it would merrily conform to our perceived macroscopic notions. Light, we may say, is that "thing" which manifests its behavior as a wave or a particle. Perhaps, someday we will understand it as something altogether different, but probably not something simpler.

The link below provides additional commentary on the nature of wave-particle duality.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/WaveParticleDualityInTheDoubleSlitExperiment/

Matter as waves

It is not unreasonable to pose the following question: If light can behave as a particle, is it not possible that particles can behave as waves?

This was the very question that French physicist Louis de Broglie (1892-1987) asked in his doctoral thesis in 1925. At the time, De Broglie's side was received with skepticism, since there was no evidence which called for such an explanation.

De Broglie's thesis suggested that all material particles possessing momentum would have an associated wave.

We can show that a photon of light carries momentum:

$p = \frac{E}{c}$

The wavelength of the light wave can be found by replacing $E = hf$ in the above equation:

$$p = \frac{E}{c} = \frac{hf}{c} = \frac{hf}{\lambda f} = \frac{h}{\lambda} \rightarrow$$
$$p = \frac{h}{\lambda} \; Equation\ A$$

Thus, De Broglie assumed that the wavelength of a matter wave would obey the same relationship as the wavelength of la ight wave.

Substituting $p = mv$ into Equation A, we have:

$mv = \frac{h}{\lambda} \rightarrow \lambda = \frac{h}{mv}$

Since De Broglie's supplied the above equation in his doctoral thesis, it was then a matter of experimentation to see if his prediction was true.

It was suggested a year later that a crystalline solid may act as a diffraction grating for a beam of electrons. Thus, if electrons had an associated wave, a diffraction pattern would emerge similar to a diffraction pattern that would be produced by the light passing through the crystal. In fact, that was the genesis of the idea. It had already been shown that x-rays passing through a crystal yielded diffraction patterns permitting physicists to measure the wavelength of x-rays. De Broglie's prediction for the wavelength of electron matter waves could be tested at wavelengths comparable to those of x-rays. Such an experiment could confirm if De Broglie's hypothesis was true.

The experiment was performed by C.J Davisson (1881-1958) and L.H. Germer (1896-1971) and fully confirmed de Broglie's hypothesis. It bears restating that De Broglie's description is valid for all particles– whether they are charged or uncharged, small or large, all material objects have associated matter waves. In 1929, De Broglie was awarded the Nobel Prize in physics for his work.

Check your understanding

What is the associated wave for a baseball of mass 145 g traveling with velocity 40.0 $\frac{m}{s}$?

Solution:

$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s}{(0.145\ kg)\left(40.0\ \frac{m}{s}\right)} = 1.14 \times 10^{-34}\ m$

Small wonder that the associated waves of macroscopic objects are not observable experimentally!

The fact that Planck's constant is so tiny ensures that macroscopic events remain easily within the domain of Newtonian (classical) physics.

Illustrative Example 23.3.1

What wavelength is associated with an electron beam of kinetic energy 95 eV?

(The mass of an electron is $m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{31}\ kg$)

Solution:

We first must determine the velocity of the electrons:

$$95\ eV = (95\ eV)\left(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \frac{J}{eV}\right) = 1.52 \times 10^{-17}\ J \rightarrow$$
$$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 \rightarrow 1.52 \times 10^{-17}\ J = \frac{1}{2}(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg)v^2 \rightarrow$$
$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.52 \times 10^{-17})}{9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg}} = 5.776 \times 10^6\ \frac{m}{s}$$

Thus, the wavelength is:

$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg)(5.776 \times 10^6\ \frac{m}{s})} = 1.259 \times 10^{-10}\ m = 0.126\ nm$

The electron microscope

Proof of De Broglie's hypothesis meant that wavelengths much smaller than light could be used to probe ever smaller and smaller structures. Using wavelengths larger or comparable to the size of an object you wish to see produces blurry, out-of-focus images. For example, the wavelengths of visible light are in the range 400 nm *to* 750 nm. Trying to observe objects smaller than the size of these wavelengths is not possible. The limit to which an optical instrument can focus properly is called the resolving power of the instrument. An analogy may be helpful to understand the role of wavelength and resolving power. Imagine closing your eyes and using your palm to "recognize" a chair, by touch. It will probably take only a moment to realize the object is a chair of some sort. The overall pattern will be recognizable to you. However, if the chair has some intricate patterns carved into the wood, your palm will not provide a distinct "image" of the pattern. Should you be permitted to use your finger rather than only your palm, you will be able to perceive the finer features of the chair. In the first instance, your palm was much smaller than the overall pattern, and so you were able to resolve the image (in your mind) of a chair. However, the finer details, being smaller than your palm, were lost or at best blurry to you. Perhaps your palm felt a slight indentation. By using the smaller probe of your finger, smaller details of the chair could be recognized. So, analogously, the smaller the wavelength, the better the resolution.

Since matter waves of electrons have such small wavelengths, they can be used to resolve much finer images than visible light. It was not long after the first successful experiments confirming the existence of matter waves that scientists realized that better microscopes could be built, which used electron matter waves rather than light waves. The first electron microscope was built in 1931.

Figure 23.9 shows an image of an ant taken with an electron microscope. Electron microscopes can produce clear images with magnifications millions of times greater than visible light.

FIGURE 23.9
An ant seen through an electron microscope.

Electron microscopes have many uses. They are an important diagnostic tool in medicine, a research tool in the field of biomedicine, and play a vital role in the analysis of materials, where defects and strengths of materials can be found and analyzed. The role of the electron microscope in science and industry cannot be overstated.

1. The Planck equation relates the energy E of a photon of light to its frequency f

   $E = hf$

   where the constant $h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J - s$ is known as *Planck's constant.*

According to the photoelectric effect, the maximum kinetic energy KE_{max} of the electrons ejected from a material is

$KE_{max} = hf - W_o$

where f is the frequency of the light incident upon the material and W_o is the *work function* of the material : the minimum energy needed to overcome the electrical forces that hold an electron within the material

$W_o = hf_o$

The frequency f_o corresponds to the minimum (threshold) frequency of light necessary to eject a photoelectron.

2. The De Broglie equation for the wavelength of matter waves is

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv}$$

where m is the mass of a particle, v its velocity and λ its associated wavelength.

23.4 References

1. Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:AVLIS_laser.jpg . public domain
2. Image copyright Valeriy Lebedev, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com/ . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
3. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
4. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Raymond Chou. CK-12 Foundation .
7. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
8. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
9. User:Life is suffering/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Aphaenogaster.tif . Public Domain

CHAPTER 24 Atomic Physics

Chapter Outline

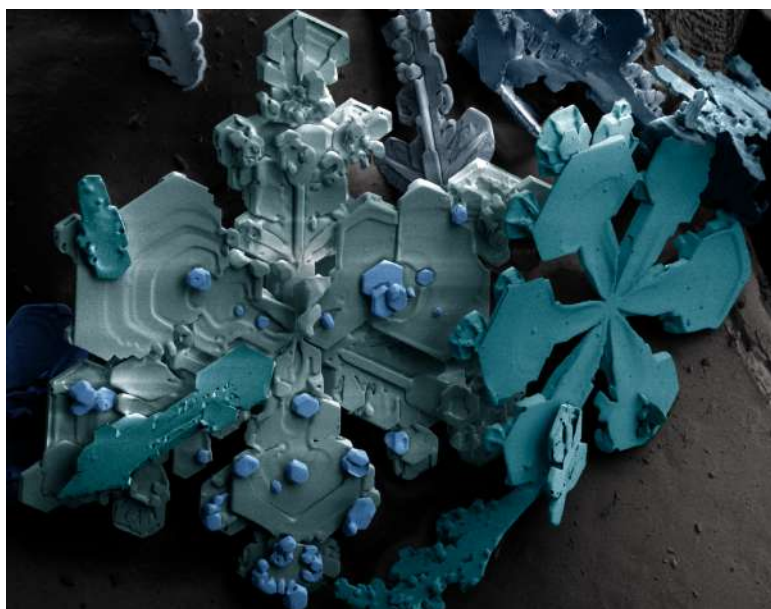



FIGURE 24.1
A scanning electron microscope image of snow crystals, with computer-generated colors.

A scanning electron microscope is a tool that uses electrons to make very sharp images with magnification of up to 500,000x. Our knowledge of electrons comes from early study of the atom that lead to greater understanding not only of electrons and atomic structuer, but of the nature of all particles. This chapter covers modeling the atom and atomic spectra, the Bohr atom, and the Uncertainty Principle.

24.1 Modeling the Atom

Objective

The student will:

- Understand Rutherford's model of the atom.

Vocabulary

- **Rutherford scattering**

Introduction

The structure of the atom was first probed at the end of the 19th century, through study of radiation and radioactivity. Three of the first forms of radiation studied were:

- X-rays, discovered in 1895 by Wilhelm C. Roentgen (1845-1923).
- Radiation from uranium, discovered in 1896 by Henri Becquerel (1852-1908) and further studied by Marie Curie (1867-1934).
- Electrons –then called "cathode rays" –were discovered decades earlier by German physicist Johann Hittorf, but their mass was measured in 1897 by British physicist J. J. Thomson (1856-1940), who is credited with their discovery.

Soon after, British physicist Ernest Rutherford (1871-1937) and French physicist Paul Villard separated radiation into three types, which would eventually be named alpha, beta, and gamma. Radiation would prove to be a key probe of the inside of the atom.

The Gold Foil Experiment

Rutherford conceived an experiment to probe the structure of the atom with the help of Hans Geiger (1882-1945), who co-invented the Geiger counter. The actual experiment was carried out by a 19-year-old undergraduate student, Ernest Marsden, (1889-1970) and Geiger himself.

The experiment was set up in an evacuated chamber watching alpha particles directed at an extremely thin metal foil, using a fluorescent screen as a detector, as shown in **Figure** 24.2. A deflected alpha particle would make a tiny flash on the screen visible through a microscope.

Marsden's job was to sit in the dark and look for these tiny flashes on the microscpe at a spot on the screen, and record how many flashes he saw per minute for different angles and different types of foil.

The general results were:

- Most of the particles, as expected, traveled straight through the foil. It was known that radiation would penetrate through solid matter.
- Some particles did scatter, and some even scattered back by more than 90 degrees. In these cases, the alpha particles were repelled backward!

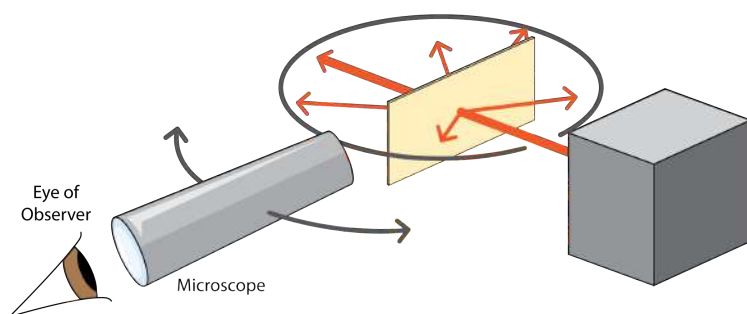



FIGURE 24.2
The Geiger-Marsden gold foil experiment.

It was the backwards scattering that was most remarkable, and the rate of these was the subject of Geiger and Marsden's first paper. Rutherford described the results with astonishment. "It's almost as incredible as if you fired a fifteen-inch shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you," he wrote.

Implications for the Atom

This result can be considered with a simple parallel. Picture that you are outside of an area with black curtains around it, not knowing what is inside. You can throw a bunch of baseballs through the curtains, and see where they go. However, you cannot look inside.

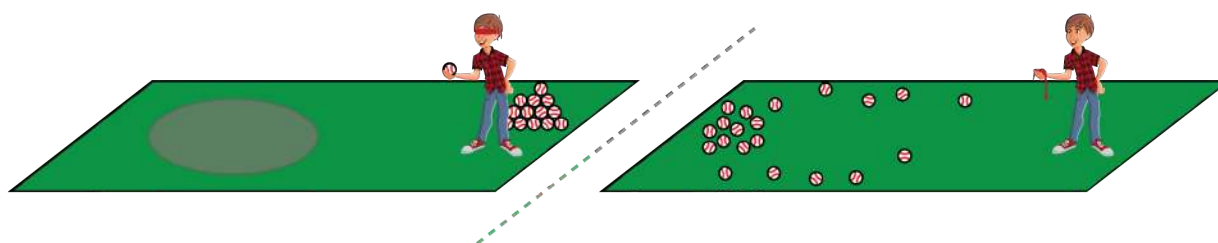



FIGURE 24.3
A thought experiment similar to Geiger-Marsden, where someone throws baseballs through an area with an unknown structure.

What happens is that nearly all of the baseballs go straight through, without any apparent deflection. However, a few deflect at different angles, and a tiny fraction even bounce straight backwards. What would you conclude?

Thomson's Model of the Atom

At the time, the prevailing model of the atom was from J.J. Thomson, who had discovered the electron. Electrons were known to have very little mass compared to the atom as a whole. He had proposed an atomic model, **Figure** 24.4, where tiny electrons were evenly distributed within a fluid of positive charge throughout the atom –dubbed the "plum pudding" model for its resemblance to pudding with raisins suspended in it.

This model failed to explain Geiger and Marsden's discovery. The soft "pudding" would not knock some particles

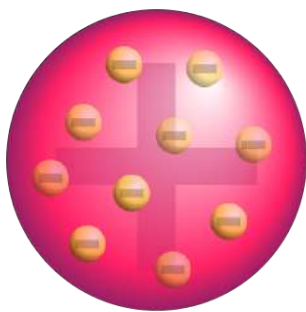



FIGURE 24.4
J. J. Thomson's model of atomic structure.

straight back, while leaving most undeflected.

Rutherford's Model of the Atom

Rutherford explained the Geiger-Marsden result by suggesting that the atom was mostly empty space, and that the mass of the atom was all compacted into a dense core at the center. A tiny, dense core would mean that most particles would pass through without being deflected. A few would be deflected to the side, and some would hit dead-on and head backward. The differences between Thomson's model prediction (top diagram) and Rutherford's explanation of the Geiger-Marsden result (bottom diagram) are shown in **Figure** 24.5.

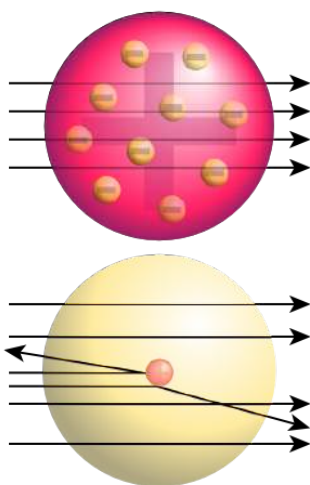



FIGURE 24.5
The top diagram shows Thomson's model and the bottom diagram Rutherford's interpretation of the atom having a densely packed positive nucleus.

Rutherford decided that the results could only mean that the positive charge was confined to a very small part of each atom that he named the nucleus. The nucleus would, therefore, be a very small region of very dense positive charge containing almost 99.99 % of the entire mass of the atom. This could account for the scattering of the alpha particles that came close enough to the nucleus.

For more information on Rutherford's experiment follow the link below.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Zd6_zVdMgJk

Rutherford's experiment suggested that the nucleus of an atom had a size between 10^{-15} m and 10^{-14} m. It was already known, however, that the size of an atom was about 10^{-10} m. Rutherford conjectured that the size of the electron orbits must be many thousands of times larger than the nucleus of the atom. Thus, the atom must have

been composed of mostly empty space, which explained why most of the alpha particles easily traveled through the foil. Rutherford's model of the atom was similar to the scaled-down solar system– a few comparatively small bodies (planets) in orbit about a massive central body (the sun). Rutherford published his paper in 1911.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/RutherfordScattering/

24.2 The Bohr Atom

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the role that atomic spectra had in explaining the internal structure of the atom.
- Solve problems involving the Balmer series.
- Understand Bohr's atomic theory.
- Solve problems using the equation for the Bohr atom.

Vocabulary

- **balmer series:** The results for emitted hydrogen spectra, given by Balmer's equation.

- **Bohr radius**: The smallest orbital radius of the hydrogen atom, $r_1 = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ m$.

- **emission spectrum:** The distinct set of sharp bright lines produced when the light from a heated element is refracted in a prism, also known as line spectrum.

- **ground state**: The lowest-energy state of an atom.

- **stationary states:** A situation in which electrons are existing within specific orbits around a nucleus. An electron in each stationary state possesses a definite energy.

- **transition**: Electrons that have undergone a change in energy are said to have undergone a transition.

Emission Spectrum of Hydrogen

Heating different elements creates different kinds of light. This is usually done by taking the gaseous form of an element, putting it in a sealed glass tube, and applying high voltage to the gas. The high voltage ionizes the gas and it gives off a distinct color depending on the element. For example, neon gas glows a bright red-orange color (the natural color of neon signs), while sodium vapor glows yellow and hydrogen glows pink. As discussed earlier, when sunlight is refracted through a prism, we see a rainbow spectrum. When the light from a heated element is refracted in a prism, however, we don't see a smooth rainbow spectrum. Instead, we see a distinct set of sharp bright lines, called the **emission spectrum** (or *line spectrum*) of that element. The diagram below shows a simple model of a spectroscope to measure the emission spectrum of hydrogen.

In an actual spectroscope, a diffraction grating may be used instead of a triangular glass prism, but the effect is the same –to separate colors in proportion to their wavelength. A detailed view of this is explained in the video in the link below.

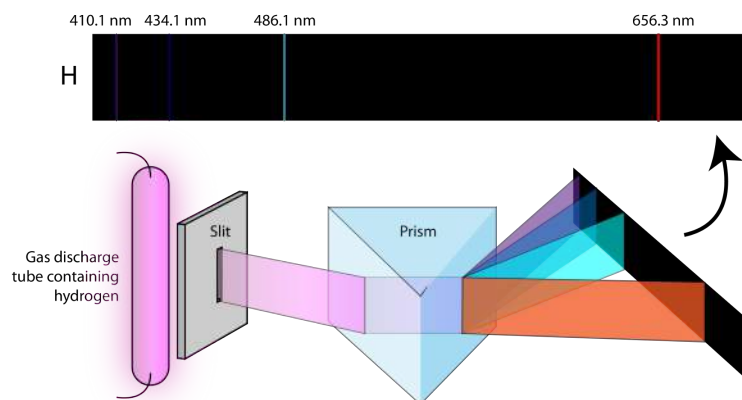



FIGURE 24.6
A simple model of a spectroscope.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2tZ6plRHLMg

Hydrogen has only one electron per atom and possesses the simplest line spectrum. The spectrum is shown in detail in the **Figure** 24.7.

FIGURE 24.7
Hydrogen gas emits line spectra.

Each line is a specific color with a distinct, constant wavelength.

TABLE 24.1:

Intensity	Color and Position	Wavelength
Brightest	Red, on right	656 nm
	Light blue, in middle	486 nm
	Dark blue, on left	434 nm
Faintest	Violet, farthest left	410 nm

In 1885, Swiss high-school teacher Johann Balmer (1825-1898) put forth a mathematical description of the line spectra of the hydrogen atom. He derived an empirical formula that describes the observed wavelength λ for each line in the hydrogen spectrum. A different integer n is associated with each emission line in the **Figure** 24.7, starting with $n = 3$ for the red emission line.

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), n = 3, 4, \ldots,$$

The letter R is known as the Rydberg constant, after Swedish physicist Johannes Robert Rydberg (1854-1919), who generalized Balmer's empirical result.

$R = 1.097 \times 10^7\ m^{-1}$

Balmer's equation gives results for emitted hydrogen spectra known today as the **Balmer series**. See the simulation below to try the Balmer series.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/SpectralSeriesOfTheHydrogenAtom/

Check Your Understanding

1. Show that for $n = 3$, the Balmer series predicts a wavelength of 656 nm.

Answer:

As n increases, $\frac{1}{n^2} \rightarrow smaller$, so the lines must fall closer together. As n becomes increasingly larger, the separation between lines becomes so small that the spectrum begins to look continuous.

It was later found that Balmer's formula could be extended to include electromagnetic radiation of smaller and larger wavelengths (as anticipated by Rydberg) than those of visible light.

The Lyman Series, for example, describes the ultraviolet region of the electromagnetic spectrum for the hydrogen atom, and has the same form as the Balmer series, as shown below.

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), n = 2, 3, \ldots$

The Paschen series, as well, describes the infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum for the hydrogen atom, and also has the same form as the Balmer series, as shown below.

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), n = 4, 5, \ldots$

Illustrative Example 25.2.1

What line spectrum frequency of light does the Lyman series predict for $n = 4$?

Solution:

The formula for the Lyman series is:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), n = 2, 3, \ldots \rightarrow$$
$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{4^2}\right) = \frac{15}{16}R \rightarrow \lambda = \frac{16}{15}\frac{1}{R}$$
$$\lambda = 9.723 \times 10^{-8}\ m\ (97.2\ nm)$$

But, $c = f\lambda \rightarrow f = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \frac{m}{s}}{9.723 \times 10^{-8}\ m} = 3.085 \times 10^{14}\ Hz \rightarrow 3.09 \times 10^{14}\ Hz$

Bohr's Model

A 27-year-old Danish physicist Niels Bohr (1885-1962) was working in Rutherford's laboratory, and attempted to explain inconsistencies in the model where electrons were in orbit around a tiny, dense, positive nucleus.

According to classical electromagnetic theory, a charge spinning in a circle –like an orbiting electron –is being accelerated back and forth, and it should radiate out electromagnetic waves just by orbiting. This did not happen. Hydrogen by itself radiated no light. Instead, it gave off light when energized, but only in specific lines as described by Balmer. Bohr suspected that Rutherford's atomic model would require some form of quantization similar to the one described in the works of Planck and Einstein.

He postulated (that is, stated without proof) that electrons could not lose energy in a continuous fashion but rather only when going from one energy state to another, as described by the Planck equation:

$E = nhf$

The energy of the atom must, therefore, be quantized.

Bohr also assumed that electrons could only take on specific (allowed) orbits about the nucleus, so the orbit radii must be quantized as well.

Electrons radiate or absorb energy only when changing from one "allowed orbit" to another. He called the allowed orbits **stationary states**. An electron in each stationary state possesses a definite energy. Electrons, Bohr hypothesized, could "jump" from one stationary state to another when absorbing or emitting a single photon. Not just any

photon would do, of course. A photon of a specific energy had to be absorbed by the electron in order for the electron to move into a stationary state of higher energy. The electron would then be in an excited stationary state and would quickly emit the energy it had absorbed and fall back into its previous lower stationary state. Energy could, therefore, be emitted or absorbed only in going from one stationary state to another within the atom. That idea could explain the reason for a discrete line spectrum and do away with Maxwell's prediction that all accelerating charges must radiate electromagnetic energy.

Bohr made several important assumptions in order to (mathematically) derive a model of the hydrogen atom based on quantization. We state his assumptions ("postulates") below:

1. Energy of the electrons within an atom is quantized.
2. Momentum of the electrons within an atom is quantized.
3. The orbits of the electrons are circular.

Using these assumptions, Bohr was able to derive the following:

The allowed radii for the hydrogen atom are

$r_n = n^2 r_1, n = 1, 2, \ldots$, Equation A,

where r_1 is the smallest orbital radius of the hydrogen atom, commonly referred to as the **Bohr radius**. The Bohr radius is $r_1 = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ m$. The result is in good agreement with the previous estimates of the radius of the atom.

The allowable energy levels, or stationary states, of the Bohr atom are,

$E = \frac{E_1}{n^2}, n = 1, 2, \ldots$, Equation B,

where E_1 is called the **ground state** of the atom. The ground state is the lowest-energy state of the atom. In the hydrogen atom, the ground state energy is about

$E_1 = -13.6\ eV$

The negative sign indicates that the electron must absorb 13.6 eV in order to be ejected from the atom. This energy is called *t*he ionization energy of the ground state of the hydrogen atom.

Energies E_2, E_3, ... represent higher-energy, or "excited" states of the electron. Notice that the higher the energy level, the less negative is the corresponding energy. For example,

$E_2 > E_1$, where $E_2 = -3.40\ eV$

The difference between allowable energy levels can be expressed as

$hf = E_h - E_l$,

where E_h is a higher energy state of the electron and E_l is a lower energy state of the electron. When an electron undergoes a change in energy, we often say it has undergone a **transition.**

Bohr was able to derive the results of the Balmer, Lyman, and Paschen series based on his assumptions. A slightly more generalized version of these series given by Bohr is

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_l^2} - \frac{1}{n_h^2}\right)$

where n_l is the lower state and n_h is the higher state.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/AbsorptionAndEmissionOfRadiationByAtoms/

Illustrative Example 25.2.2

What is the wavelength of a photon emitted when a transition occurs between $n = 4$ *to* $n = 3$ in a hydrogen atom?

Solution:

We will solve this problem two ways:

Method 1

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_l^2} - \frac{1}{n_h^2}\right) = (1.097 \times 10^7 \ m^{-1})\left(\frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{4^2}\right) = 533,263.9 \rightarrow l = 1.875 \times 10^{-6} \ m = 1,875 \ nm$$

Method 2

$$hf = E_h - E_l = \frac{E_1}{n_h^2} - \frac{E_1}{n_l^2} = (-13.6 \ eV)\left(\frac{1}{4^2} - \frac{1}{3^2}\right) = 0.6611 \ eV \rightarrow 1.06 \times 10^{-19} \ J \rightarrow$$
$$hf = 1.05777 \times 10^{-19} \ J \rightarrow h\frac{c}{\lambda} = 1.05777 \times 10^{-19} \ J \rightarrow$$
$$\lambda = \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34} \ J-s)\left(3.00 \times 10^8 \ \frac{m}{s}\right)}{1.06 \times 10^{-19} \ J} = 1.875 \times 10^{-6} \ m = 1,875 \ nm$$

We have kept the same number of significant digits for comparison to Method 1.

Method 2 directly exhibits the quantized energy levels within the hydrogen atom.

For more information on the Bohr atom follow the links below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/BohrsOrbits/

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KPozYveIaK4&feature=related

24.3 Uncertainty Principle

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand the uncertainty principle.
- Solve problems involving the uncertainty principle.

Vocabulary

- **Heisenberg uncertainty principle:** A fundamental constraint, upon any such set of measurements, made with any tool. The more narrowly we define the position Δx, the *less* well defined we know the momentum, Δp.
- **Quantum mechanics:** Changed the view of the atom from the orderly arrangement of the planetary atom to what is known today as an electron cloud model.

Introduction

Bohr's model of the atom established the principle that electrons could only orbit the nucleus in a limited number of levels, or quantized levels. This matched previous evidence for **quantum mechanics**, such as:

- Black body radiation like heated iron was shown to have very many different tiny wavelengths.
- The photoelectric effect showed that light could act like a particle.
- Diffraction of electrons showed that electrons could act like waves.

The essence of early quantum mechanics was two principles:

1. At tiny scales, waves could act like particles, and particles could act like waves.
2. Those waves could only have certain distinct (*quantized*) wavelengths, rather than a smooth range of wavelengths.

There was no connection established yet between this and electrons in orbit around the nucleus.

Electrons as Standing Waves

The connection between waves and electron orbits was only suggested more than ten years after Bohr's model of the atom, by French physicist Louis de Broglie (1892-1987). The reason that the properties of Bohr atom had to be quantized, according to de Broglie, was to accommodate a standing wave condition around the nucleus of the atom. From wave theory, a standing wave is also called a harmonic, and consists of a stable state with distinct numbers for how many wavelengths fit into the fixed length.

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/112738

De Broglie suggested that electrons orbiting around the nucleus could be acting as waves, forming circular standing waves based on the size of the orbit. Just as a string which could only support a discrete set of wavelengths between its fixed nodes, an integer number of electron waves would have to fit within an orbital. See **Figure** 24.8.

With de Broglie's hypothesis confirmed by the work of C.J Davisson and L.H. Germer, Bohr's atomic theory finally had a physical explanation to support it.

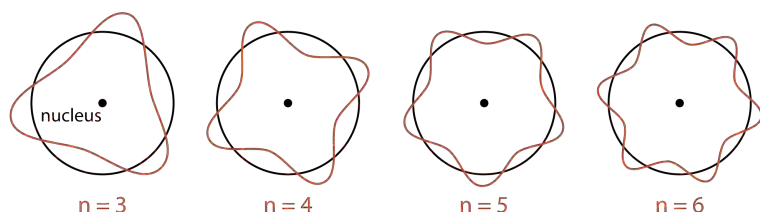



FIGURE 24.8
Electron orbits as standing waves around the nucleus.

This neatly connected the wave-particle duality and the observation that electrons would only occupy distinct orbits. However, it was still unclear what matter or energy really was –waves or particles.

The Heisenberg Uncertainty Principle

German physicist Werner Heisenberg (1901-1976) suggested an approach that treated matter as particles, but the exact position and speed of the particle was fundamentally fuzzy and uncertain. This uncertainty around the particle is continuous and results in wave-like properties. Take the case of light passing through a single narrow slit. In classical physical optics, we would treat this as a wave.

In Heisenberg's formulation, though, we can look at the light as a set of particles –photons –that are flying at the slit. As the photons reach the slit, their position is precisely determined. Those that get through have a well-defined position. The **Uncertainty Principle** says that the more narrowly we define the position Δx, the *less* well defined we know the momentum, Δp.

In principle, we could use very small-wavelength electromagnetic energy, say, gamma rays, and very accurately locate the electron by detecting where the collision between the photon and the electron took place. But any hope of determining the momentum of the electron at the time of the interaction is gone. It would be like slamming a fast-moving bowling ball into a Ping-Pong ball in an attempt to determine how fast the Ping-Pong ball was traveling before the collision.

We call this the Heisenberg uncertainty principle. It should not be thought of as an uncertainty due to the lacking effectiveness of the measuring tool used. Rather, it is a fundamental constraint, upon any such set of measurements, made with any tool. Heisenberg stated the uncertainty principle in mathematical terms. We will briefly explain his thinking.

Heisenberg reasoned that the location of an object could be no more accurate than the wavelength of the light used to detect the object. Thus, if light of wavelength λ is used to detect the object, its location in space would have an uncertainty of

$$\Delta x = \lambda$$

Light as a Wave

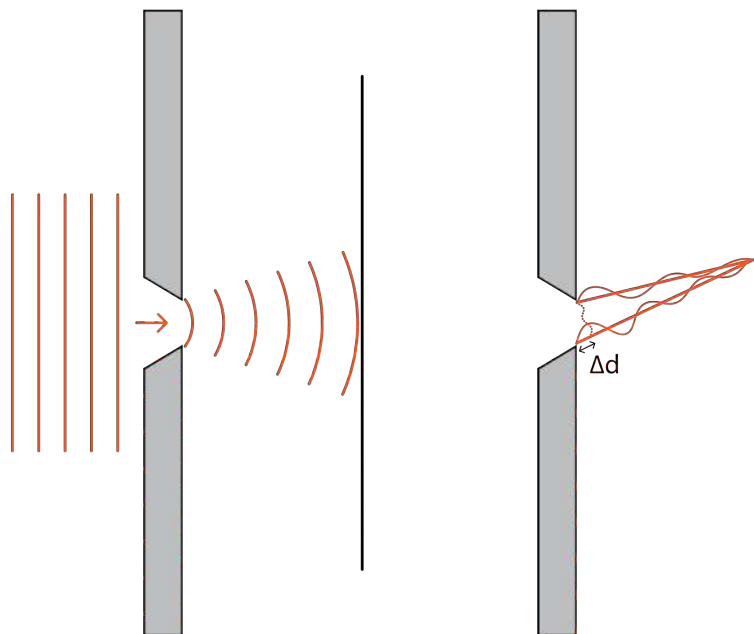



FIGURE 24.9
Light coming through a single slit, treated as a wave.

Similarly, the uncertainty in the object's momentum would be $\Delta p = \frac{h}{\lambda}$ since the momentum depends upon wavelength.

The uncertainties would multiply if both measurements were attempted simultaneously. Thus,

$\Delta x \Delta p \approx h$

Heisenberg's more detailed calculation (which we will not do here) yielded the inequality

$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{h}{2\pi}$

It is important to notice that the more precise one of the measurements, the less precise the other measurement. In principle then, one can measure either the position or the momentum of an object to any degree of precision, but not both. In fact: the more precise one measurement, the less precise the other measurement.

Quantum mechanics changed the view of the atom from the orderly arrangement of the planetary atom to what is known today as an electron cloud model. The fact that an electron has wavelike characteristics means it is spread out in space. Thus, the notion of an exact location for an electron is incompatible with its very nature. Heisenberg's uncertainty principle essentially ensures that there can be no well-defined planetary model of the atom.

At best, we can say that the location of an electron within an atom is probabilistic. The orbits we speak of today are the average values of probable locations of the electron within the atom.

This video shows a demonstration and explanation of the effect:

MEDIA
Click image to the left or use the URL below.
URL: http://www.ck12.org/flx/render/embeddedobject/67082

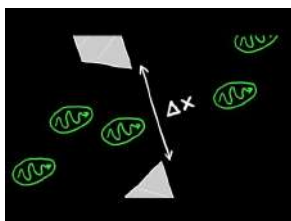



FIGURE 24.10
Treating light as an uncertain particle.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=a8FTr2qMutA

Illustrative Example 25.3.1

a. The uncertainty in the momentum of an electron is given as $\Delta p = 1.54 \times 10^{-27} \frac{kg-m}{s}$. What is the minimum uncertainty in its position if both measurements are attempted simultaneously?

Solution:

$$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{h}{2\pi} \rightarrow \Delta x \left(1.54 \times 10^{-27} \frac{kg-m}{s}\right) \geq \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ J-s}{2\pi} \rightarrow$$
$$\Delta x \geq 6.847 \times 10^{-8} \rightarrow 6.85 \times 10^{-8}\ m$$

Therefore, the minimum uncertainty is $6.85 \times 10^{-8}\ m$.

b. How many times larger is Δx compared to the radius of the Bohr radius?

Solution:

The Bohr radius is $r_1 = 0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ m$. Thus,

$\frac{6.85 \times 10^{-8}\ m}{0.529 \times 10^{-10}\ m} = 1,295$

The uncertainty in the position of the electron is nearly 1,300 times greater than the Bohr radius, which reinforces the notion of the electron cloud model as opposed to the well-defined planetary atom.

Illustrative Example 25.3.2

The uncertainty in the velocity of a car of mass 1000 kg is 0.75 m/s. What is the minimum uncertainty in the car's position?

Solution:

The uncertainty in the momentum of the car is

$$\Delta p = m\Delta v = (1000\ kg)\left(0.75\frac{m}{s}\right) = 750\frac{kg-m}{s}$$

Therefore,

$$\Delta x \geq \frac{h}{2\pi\Delta p} = \frac{6.626\times10^{-34}\ J-s}{2\pi\left(750\frac{kg-m}{s}\right)} = 1.41\times10^{-37}\ m$$

Therefore, the minimum uncertainty is $\Delta x = 1.41\times10^{-37}\ m$.

Uncertainties this small make it clear why quantum mechanical effects are not seen for macroscopic objects.

The Schrödinger Wave Equation

De Broglie had given a fairly simple way to compute the wavelength and frequency of a matter wave. Computing the amplitude of the wave, however, was not as simple. In 1925, the physicist Erwin Schrödinger (1887-1961) succeeded in deriving what is known today as the Schrödinger Wave Equation. The equation provides a way to calculate the amplitude of an electron wave, and in doing so provides a mechanism that reconciles the particle and wave aspects of all material objects.

If, using the Schrödinger equation, a particle (say, an electron) is treated as a wave, the equation allows one to find the amplitude of the wave. If, using the Schrödinger equation, the electron is treated as a particle, the interpretation of the amplitude of the Schrödinger equation is that the square of the amplitude gives the probability for the electron being at a specific location in space. These results are very important. Let us restate them:

1. In the first case (electron as wave) the Schrödinger equation gives the amplitude of the matter wave.
2. In the second case (electron as particle) the square of the amplitude assigns a set of probabilities to where the electron may be found.

Schrödinger's equation gave rise to a rather profound question: Are there inherent limits to the precision of measurement?

1. The Balmer series is an empirical formula which gives the reciprocal of the wavelength λ for each line in the hydrogen spectrum

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right), n = 3, 4, \ldots,$

The letter R is known as the Rydberg constant of value

$R = 1.097\times10^7\ m^{-1}$

The integer n is associated with each emission line.

2. Bohr quantized assumptions led to a more general statement of the Balmer series

$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R\left(\frac{1}{n_l^2} - \frac{1}{n_h^2}\right)$

where n_l is the lower state and n_h is the higher state.

3. Bohr's assumptions for hydrogen atom are:

a. The allowed radii of the atom

$r_n = n^2 r_1, n = 1, 2, \ldots$

where r_1 is the smallest orbital radius of the hydrogen atom, commonly referred to as the *Bohr radius*.

b. The allowable energy levels, or stationary states of the atom

$E = \frac{E_1}{n^2}, n = 1, 2, \ldots$

c. The difference between allowable energy levels can be expressed as

$hf = E_h - E_l$

where E_h is a higher energy state of the electron and E_l is a lower energy state of the electron.

4. The square of the amplitude of the matter wave in Schrodinger's equation assigns probabilities for the location of the electron.

5. The Heisenberg uncertainty principle is

$\Delta x \Delta p \geq \frac{h}{2\pi}$

where Δx is the uncertainty in position of the particle and Δp is the uncertainty in momentum of the particle.

24.4 References

1. Beltsville Agricultural Research Center. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Snow_crystals.png . Public Domain
2. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
3. CK-12 Foundation - Zachary Wilson, using image copyright Denis Cristo, 2014. http://www.shutterstock.com . Used under license from Shutterstock.com
4. User:Fastfission/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Plum_pudding_atom.svg . Public Domain
5. User:Fastfission/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Rutherford_gold_foil_experiment_results.svg . Public Domain
6. CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung, using emission spectra by User:Merikanto/Wikimedia Commons and User:Adrignola/Wikimedia Commons (H). H spectrum: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Emission_spectrum-H.svg . CC BY-NC-SA 3.0
7. User:Merikanto/Wikimedia Commons and User:Adrignola/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Emission_spectrum-H.svg . Public Domain
8. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
9. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .
10. Zachary Wilson. CK-12 Foundation .

CHAPTER 25 Nuclear Physics

Chapter Outline

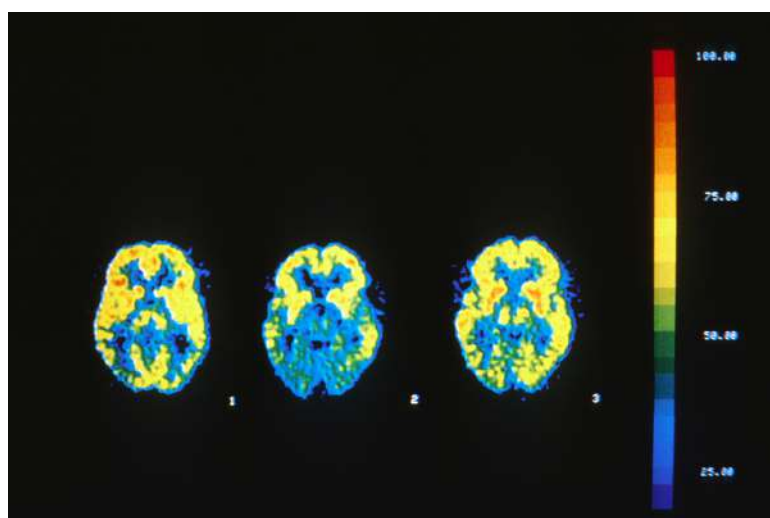



FIGURE 25.1
Positron emission tomography, or PET scan, of a patient undergoing treatment.

Positron emisson tomography, or PET scan, helps diagnose patients by tracking the movement of mildly radioactive material injected into the patient. It is one of a many techniques using nuclear properties to diagnose and treat disease. Many people consider all nuclear applications dangerous, but this is often based on misunderstanding. This chapter covers structure of the nucleus, nuclear forces, radioactive half-life, fission and fusion, and the Standard Model.

25.1 The Nucleus

Objectives

The student will:

- Know the particles making up the atomic nucleus.
- Understand binding energy.
- Understand the strong nuclear force.
- Understand "mass defect."
- Solve problems involving binding energy.
- Understand the three forms of radioactivity.
- Solve problems involving alpha decay.

Vocabulary

- **alpha decay**: Occurs when an α particle (a helium nucleus ^4_2He) is ejected from the nucleus of a parent atom.
- **atomic mass number** A: The total number of all nucleons in the nucleus.
- **atomic number** Z**:** The number of protons in the nucleus.
- **beta decay:** Occurs when a neutron within the nucleus changes into a proton by emitting an electron.
- **binding energy**: The energy equivalent of the mass difference (Δm), also known as the mass deficit.
- **daughter nucleus**: Nucleus formed by decay.
- **deuterium**: An isotope of hydrogen composed of one proton, one neutron, and one electron.
- **gamma decay:** When a nucleon falls to a lower energy level in the nucleus, a high-energy electromagnetic pulse, called a gamma ray (γ) is emitted.
- **isotopes**: The different masses of nuclei of an element .
- **neutron**: Electrically neutral particles.
- **parent nucelus:** Original nucleus of a radioactive atom.
- **proton:** Particle with a positive charge.
- **transmutation**: A process by which unstable nuclei can be transformed into entirely different ones. The transmutation process occurs when a particle is captured by the nucleus and through different nuclear decay or disintegration processes.

Introduction

The three common types of radioactivity were termed alpha (α) decay, beta (β) decay and gamma (γ) decay by Ernest Rutherford.

- **Alpha decay** is easily absorbed, stopped by a sheet of paper. It was found to be heavy, with a positive charge.
- **Beta decay** is roughly 100 times more penetrating, stopped by a few millimeters of aluminum. It is very light-weight with a negative charge.

- **Gamma decay** is most penetrating, requiring four or more centimeters of lead to stop it. It has no electric charge, but always occurs in coordination with other decay.

Detailed study of these and other radiation types over a period of twenty years led to a detailed picture of the nucleus. The key came when British physicist James Chadwick (1891-1974) identified a rare type of radiation as particles he named **neutrons** since they were electrically neutral (i.e. had no charge). This lead to a coherent view of atomic nuclei.

- All nuclei are made of a set of protons and neutrons. These two particles are collectively called **nucleons**.
- The **atomic number** is the number of protons in the nucleus, expressed symbolically as Z. This uniquely defines the chemical symbol of the element. All hydrogen nuclei have one proton, which means atomic number $Z = 1$. All carbon nuclei have six protons, which means atomic number $Z = 6$.
- The **atomic mass number** is the total number of all nucleons in the nucleus, expressed symbolically as A. Nuclei of a given element may have different number of neutrons and hence different A. Mass number is an integer that is not the same as the exact mass.
- The different masses of nuclei of an element are called **isotopes** of that element, and are referred to by the element name followed by mass, like hydrogen-1 (one proton), hydrogen-2 (one proton and one neutron), or carbon-12 (six protons and six electrons).
- The nucleus is represented symbolically as ${}^{A}_{Z}X$, where X is the chemical symbol of the element. For example, a nitrogen nucleus might be ${}^{14}_{7}N$ and oxygen-17 (an isotope of oxygen) is ${}^{17}_{8}O$.
- Mass deficit: The difference in mass of an atomic nucleus and the sum of the masses of the atomic nucleus.
- Nuclear fission: The splitting of an atom with a large atomic mass into at least two relatively equal parts, with an accompanying release of energy.
- Nuclear fusion: The process in which the nuclei of lighter elements combine and form heavier elements, with an accompanying release of energy.

Important Constants

The proton, neutron, and electron can be measured in kilograms, but are more commonly measured in terms of **unified atomic mass units**, abbreviated u. One unified a.m.u. is defined as one-twelfth the mass of a carbon-12 nucleus.
Proton mass $m_p = 1.6726 \times 10^{-27}\ kg = 1.007287\ u$
Neutron mass $m_n = 1.6749 \times 10^{-27}\ kg = 1.008665\ u$
Electron mass $m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ kg = 0.000549\ u$

Check Your Understanding

a. How many neutrons are in the iron nucleus ${}^{56}_{26}Fe$?

Answer: The atomic mass number A is equal to the atomic number (number of protons) Z plus the number of neutrons in the nucleus.

Therefore, the number of neutrons in the nucleus must be $56 - 26 = 30$ neutrons.

b. How many electrons are there in the ${}^{56}_{26}Fe$ atom?

Answer: Since atoms are neutral, they must have an equal number of protons and electrons. Thus, there are 26 electrons in the atom.

2. True or False: The nuclei ${}^{14}_{7}N$ and ${}^{15}_{7}N$ are isotopes of the same element.

Answer: True. Both are nitrogen nuclei. Nitrogen $^{14}_{7}N$is the common form of nitrogen having an equal number of protons and neutrons, and Nitrogen $^{15}_{7}N$is an isotope of nitrogen having one more neutron than proton.

Binding energy

Experimental evidence shows that the total mass of a stable nucleus is smaller than the sum of the masses of its constituent particles. The energy equivalent of this mass difference (Δm), or mass deficit, is called the **binding energy** of the nucleus.

Note: Most books give the mass of the atom which includes the mass of the electrons. This is of no concern as long as the mass of the electrons cancel out during the calculation.

An example will help clarify this idea:

Consider an isotope of hydrogen called **deuterium** $\left(^{2}_{1}H\right)$. It is composed of one proton and one neutron and one electron.

The mass of the deuterium atom is

$m_D = 2.014102\ u$

The mass of one neutron: $1.008665\ u$.

The mass of one hydrogen atom (one proton and one electron): $1.007825\ u$.

The total mass of the neutron and hydrogen atom:

$m_{total} = 1.008665\ u + 1.007825\ u = 2.01649\ u$

Therefore, the mass deficit is:

$m_{total} - m_D = \Delta m = 201649\ u - 2.014102\ u = 0.002388\ u$.

It can be experimentally verified that the excess mass (the mass deficit) is given off as energy when nucleons form a deuterium nucleus. We can compute the energy using the Einstein equation:

$E = \Delta mc^2 \rightarrow$

First, we convert Δm into kilograms and then compute the energy. Lastly, we express the answer in millions of electron volts (MeV).

$$\Delta m = (0.002388\ u)\frac{1.6605 \times 10^{-27}\ kg}{1\ u} = 3.965274 \times 10^{-30}\ kg \rightarrow$$
$$E = 3.965274 \times 10^{-30}\ kg\left(2.997 \times 10^{8}\frac{m}{s}\right)^2 = 3.561613 \times 10^{-13}\ J$$

We have used $c = 2.997 \times 10^{8}\frac{m}{s}$ instead of $c = 3.00 \times 10^{8}\frac{m}{s}$ for the speed of light in the above calculation.

Recall: $1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ J = 1\ eV \rightarrow (1.6 \times 10^{-19}\ J)(10^{6}) = (1\ eV)(10^{6}) \rightarrow 1.6 \times 10^{-13}\ J = 1\ MeV$

$E = \frac{3.561613 \times 10^{-13}\ J}{1.60 \times 10^{-13}\frac{J}{MeV}} = 2.226 \rightarrow 2.23\ MeV$

The result is the binding energy for deuterium. This is the amount of energy that is needed to separate the nucleons from each other.

It is typical to express the total binding energy in terms of the average binding energy per nucleon. Since deuterium is composed of two nucleons, we have:

Average binding energy per nucleon (see also **Figure** 25.2) $= \frac{2.226}{2} = 1.113 \rightarrow 1.11\ MeV$

There are 92 naturally occurring elements, and as stated before, the most stable atoms are those that have the same number of protons as neutrons. These atoms then have the greatest binding energies per nucleon, as shown in **Figure**

25.2. The maximum binding energy per nucleon occurs for iron atoms. Generally, the atoms in the periodic table (**Figure** 25.7) before iron are formed by the process of fusion within stellar interiors. Beyond iron, the greater energies needed to fuse nuclei result from stellar events called supernovas. Those atoms beyond iron are generally less stable, and decay through the process of fission. Fission occurs naturally through the process of radioactive decay, which we will shortly discuss, and can be induced artificially in nuclear reactors and nuclear bombs.

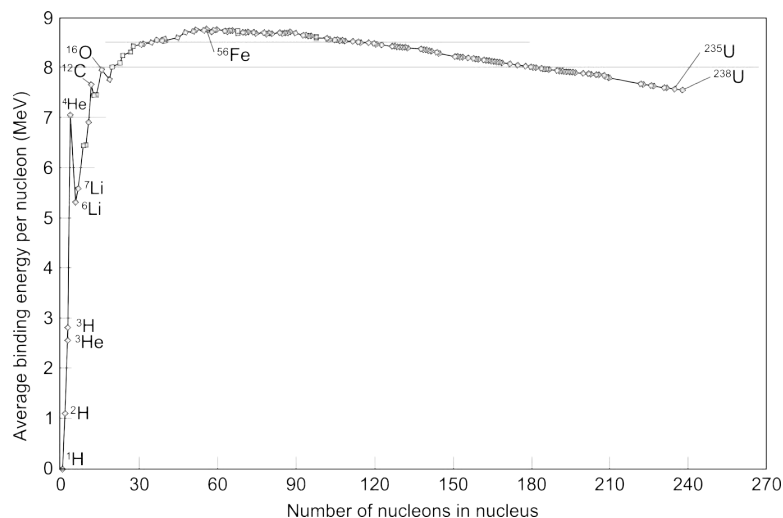



FIGURE 25.2

Average binding energy per nucleon (MeV) vs. atomic mass number, A.

Notice that the binding energy of the nucleus of an atom is much greater than the binding energy of the electrons held by the nucleus. Earlier, we saw that the energy needed to ionize a hydrogen atom–that is, to separate the ground-state electron– was only 13.6 eV.

The strong nuclear force and radioactivity

Physicists realized that another force must exist if protons could be in such close proximity within a nucleus and not fly apart due to electrostatic repulsion. Indeed, this force must be considerably stronger than the electrostatic force, or stable nuclei could not exist. We recognize this force today as one of the four fundamental forces in nature: the strong nuclear force. Many details about the nuclear strong force are not known yet, but we do know that it is a very short-range attractive force. It does not exist outside the nucleus. Within a nucleus, protons attract other protons, neutrons attract other neutrons, and they attract one another. As we say, the strong nuclear force is charge-independent. The strong nuclear force is some hundred times greater than the electrostatic force, but only if the nucleons are no farther apart than about 10^{-15} m.

For the nuclei of the elements that follow iron in the periodic table, neutrons outnumber protons. Generally–the heavier the nucleus, the greater the proportion of neutrons. Uranium, the largest naturally occurring atom, due to its many isotopes has about 50—55 more neutrons than protons.

Remember that the repulsive electrostatic force between the protons is countered by the attractive strong nuclear force between nucleons. But the strong force is very short-ranged, so its effect hardly extends beyond two adjacent nucleons. The electrostatic force, however, extends throughout the entire atom (in principle, out to infinity). Therefore, there is a limit to the number of protons that can exist within a nucleus before the stability of the nucleus is compromised. The more nucleons there are, the larger the nucleus becomes. As this happens, the short-range strong nuclear force weakens (very abruptly) and the repulsive electrostatic force dominates. Neutrons, however, are not subject to electrostatic repulsion but *are* subject to the strong force attraction. Thus, they help to keep the nucleus together without adding to the electrostatic repulsion. Still, almost all nuclei with more than 82 protons are unstable (exhibit radioactivity). We will soon see that unstable nuclei can be transformed into entirely different ones

through a process called **transmutation**. Uranium, for example, can turn into lead through a sequence of multiple transmutations.

The transmutation process occurs when a particle is captured by the nucleus and through different nuclear decay or disintegration processes. Nuclei which spontaneously decay are unstable and are called radioactive.

The original nucleus of the radioactive atom is called the **parent** and the nuclei formed by the decay are called the **daughters**.

Radioactivity was first discovered in 1896 by the French physicist Henri Becquerel (1852-1908). Becquerel was conducting research on phosphorescent substances (substances that remained luminous after exposure to light) when he discovered that rocks containing uranium darkened a photographic plate in the absence of light. He surmised that perhaps yet another new form of radiation (x-rays had been discovered the previous year) must be the reason. The new radiation occurred spontaneously, unlike x-rays which were produced when high-energy electrons impacted glass or metal.

Shortly after Becquerel's discovery, Marie Curie (1867-1934) and her husband Pierre Curie (1859-1906) discovered two new highly radioactive elements: polonium and radium.

In contrast to a stable nucleus, the nucleus of a radioactive atom has a greater mass than the sum of the masses of its fission products. A greater mass in the nucleus means a smaller amount of binding energy available to hold the nucleus together (see **Figure** 25.2). The extra mass in the nucleus is converted into the kinetic energy of the daughters or into electromagnetic energy.

Three types of radioactive decay

There are three spontaneous decay processes: alpha (α) decay, beta (β) decay, and gamma (γ) decay. Two of the processes, α decay and β decay, result in transmutations. Some transmutations require only one step to produce a stable atom. Other transmutations involve multiple decay processes of different kinds, until a stable nucleus is eventually formed.

We begin our discussion with α decay.

Alpha decay

Alpha decay, as the name implies, occurs when an α particle (a helium nucleus ${}^{4}_{2}He$) is ejected from the nucleus of a parent atom.

For example, polonium changes into lead by alpha decay: ${}^{210}_{84}Po \rightarrow {}^{206}_{82}Pb + {}^{4}_{2}H$

Illustrative Example 26.1.1

a. What is the energy of the α particle produced in the decay process: ${}^{210}_{84}Po \rightarrow {}^{206}_{82}Pb + {}^{4}_{2}He$?

We will ignore the kinetic energy of the recoil of the daughter (lead) atom since it is very small compared to the kinetic energy of the alpha particle. (Conservation of momentum shows that the α particle's velocity is more than 51 times greater than the lead nuclei.) Useful information:

$$\begin{aligned} m_{Po} &= 209.982848\ u \\ m_{Pb} &= 205.974440\ u \\ m_{\alpha=He} &= 4.002602\ u \end{aligned}$$

Solution:

We use a strategy similar to the one used in computing the binding energy.

First, we find the difference between the mass of the polonium atom and sum of the masses of the lead atom and the alpha particle.

$$\Delta m = m_{po} - m_{pb} - m_{\alpha} = 209.982848\ u - 205.974440\ u - 4.002602\ u = 0.005806\ u \rightarrow$$
$$(0.005806\ u)1.6605 \times 10^{-27} \frac{kg}{u} = 9.640863 \times 10^{-30}\ kg \rightarrow$$
$$E = \Delta mc^2 = 9.640863 \times 10^{-30}\ kg \left(2.997 \times 10^8 \frac{m}{s}\right)^2 = 8.65943 \times 10^{-13} \rightarrow 8.659 \times 10^{-13}\ J$$

b. Express the result of part (a) in MeV.

Solution:

$E = \frac{8.659 \times 10^{-13}\ J}{1.60 \times 10^{-19} \frac{J}{eV}} = 5.41 \times 10^6\ eV \rightarrow 5.41\ MeV$

Learn more about alpha decay by following the link below.

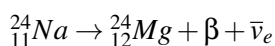
http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/alpha-decay

Beta decay

Beta decay occurs when a neutron within the nucleus changes into a proton by emitting an electron. This is not so remarkable since a neutron, removed from a nucleus, has a mean life-time of about 15 minutes. Free neutrons decay into a proton, an electron, and a subatomic particle called an antineutrino $(\overline{v}_e)$. Neutrino (or antineutrino) means "small neutral one," in Italian. It is an elementary particle with a mass much smaller than that of the electron. Neutrinos hardly interact with matter. In fact, as you sit and read this, trillions of neutrinos are passing through you without interacting with the atoms that make your body.

Note: The electron emitted during beta decay is not an orbital electron but an electron emitted from the nucleus of the atom. We often call these electrons, beta (β) particles.

An example of beta decay is the transformation of sodium $\left({}^{24}_{11}Na\right)$ into magnesium $\left({}^{24}_{12}Mg\right)$.

${}^{24}_{11}Na \rightarrow {}^{24}_{12}Mg + \beta + \overline{v}_e$

Notice that the mass number (A) during the transmutation process has not changed. It remains 24. What has changed is the atomic number Z, since there is now one more proton in the nucleus.

Learn more about beta decay by following the link below.

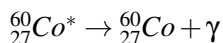
http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/beta-decay

Gamma Decay

We discussed earlier that the electrons of an atom occupy different stationary states or energy levels. It turns out that the nucleons within an atomic nucleus also occupy different energy levels. However, nuclear energy states are separated by much larger energy gaps. When a nucleon falls to a lower energy level in the nucleus, a high-energy electromagnetic pulse, called a gamma ray (γ) is emitted, just like a photon is emitted when an electron falls to a lower energy level in the atom. It is good to keep in mind that the only difference between a "photon" and a "gamma ray" is that the photons ejected or absorbed by an electron in an atom have much lower energy than gamma rays. Gamma rays have energies millions of times more than visible light photons.

Note that ejection of a gamma ray from a nucleus does not alter either the atomic mass or atomic number of the atom.

Here is an example of gamma decay involving an excited cobalt 60 nucleus ${}^{60}_{27}Co^*$. The asterisk signifies the nucleus in an excited state.

$^{60}_{27}Co^* \rightarrow ^{60}_{27}Co + \gamma$

To recap:

1. Alpha decay produces the slowest-moving, most massive particles, helium nuclei.
2. Beta decay produces fast-moving electrons.
3. Gamma decay produces only radiation.

Alpha radiation, as it is sometimes called, usually cannot penetrate even a thin sheet of paper. Beta radiation can pass through a thin piece of wood or a few millimeters of aluminum, and gamma radiation would go a few centimeters of lead as shown in **Figure** 25.3.

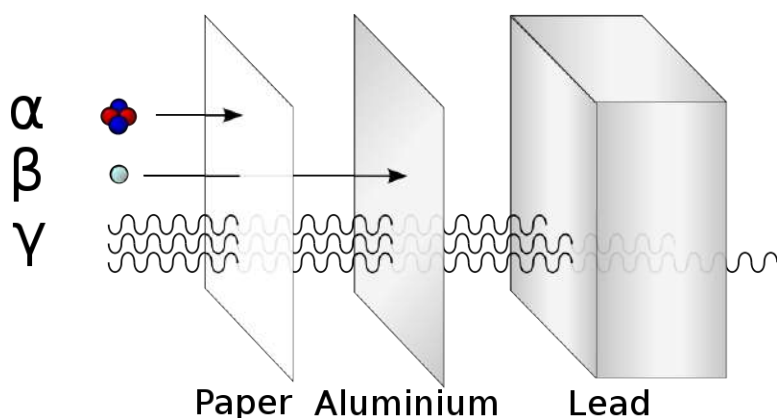



FIGURE 25.3
Penetrating abilities of alpha particles, beta particles and gamma radiation.

Generally, being exposed to alpha radiation is not harmful unless the radiation is produced by a source inside the body.

This may occur, for example, if the radioactive element radon (a gas) is inhaled. Then the effects of alpha radiation can be very serious. Radon is a known carcinogen.

Here is a story of the Russian spy, Alexander Litvinenko, who won asylum in Great Britain, only to have died in 2006 under "mysterious" circumstances, related to radiation poisoning induced by alpha-decay of polonium-210, found in his body. Follow the link below to learn more.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexander_Litvinenko

An alpha particle possessing the same amount of energy as a beta particle or gamma ray can cause ten to twenty times the damage to human cellular structure. The more massive, positively charged, alpha particle can cause numerous ionizations (remove electrons from atoms). The electronic configuration of an atom (the number of and energy levels of electrons) is responsible for all chemical interactions. Thus, a single alpha particle can cause the ionization of many atoms and alter the chemical properties of atoms within cells. The greatest danger occurs when damaged cells remain alive and continue to reproduce. Such altered, or mutated cells, do not perform their intended functions and are generically called cancerous cells.

The effects of beta and gamma radiation on human health are also of serious concern since all types of radiation have ionizing effects. This is why, for example, anytime an x-ray (yet another form of radiation dangerous to human health) is taken for medical purposes, the patient is covered with a lead-lined apron. Lead is very dense and difficult for the radiation to penetrate. The ionizing effect of gamma and x-ray radiation is thus significantly reduced by passing through several millimeters of lead.

In addition to the ill effects of radiation, there are also some benefits. Ironically, the very cancers that may be triggered by radiation can be fought by applying a narrowly directed radioactive beam to a cancerous area.

Radioactive sources may even be inserted directly into the cancerous cells. Radiation is also used to kill bacteria on food in the process known as food irradiation, thus increasing the shelf life of perishable items.

For more information on food irradiation follow the link below.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Food_irradiation

As a result of the study of radioactivity, physicists discovered a new conservation law.

The law of conservation of nucleon number: The total number of nucleons (A) in any reaction remains constant.When a nucleon falls to a lower energy level in the nucleus, a high-energy electromagnetic pulse, called a gamma ray (γ) is emitted $A = constant$.

25.2 Radioactive Half-life

Objectives

The student will:

- Understand how radioactive half-life is defined.
- Solve problems involving radioactive half-life.
- Understand radioactive dating.
- Solve problems involving radioactive dating.

Vocabulary

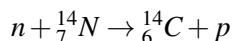
- **carbon dating:** A technique used to measure the time that the remains of an animal or plant has been dead. By measuring how quickly the carbon-14 decays into nitrogen-14, we can measure how long the bones have been dead.

- **half-life:** Over the period of time of one half-life, each nucleus has a 50% chance of decaying. Every isotope has a distinct half-life. No matter what the time duration for the half-life is, after that time interval passes, one-half of the original sample remains.

Carbon Dating

Radioactive decay occurs spontaneously, meaning that at any given moment, some number of atoms of the original sample (we don't know which particular atoms) are changing into a different substance. It does not happen on a fixed schedule, but instead happens randomly, with each atom having a chance to decay after a given time. This can be used to measure the time that the remains of an animal or plant has been dead, using a technique known as **carbon dating**.

The key to carbon dating is carbon dioxide in the air contains trace amounts of a radioactive isotope of carbon produced in the upper atmosphere by cosmic radiation, carbon-14. It is produced in the nuclear reaction as follows:

$n + {}^{14}_{7}N \rightarrow {}^{14}_{6}C + p$

As long as plants are alive, they bring in carbon-14 from the air via photosynthesis. As long as animals are alive, they eat plants or other animals containing these trace amounts of carbon-14. Once they are dead, they are cut off from the carbon-14 in the upper atmosphere. The remaining amount in their bones slowly goes down from decay from beta radiation: ${}^{14}_{6}C \rightarrow {}^{14}_{7}N + \beta$.

If we have a measure for how quickly the carbon-14 decays into nitrogen-14, this can be used to measure how long the bones have been dead. The question is, what is that function?

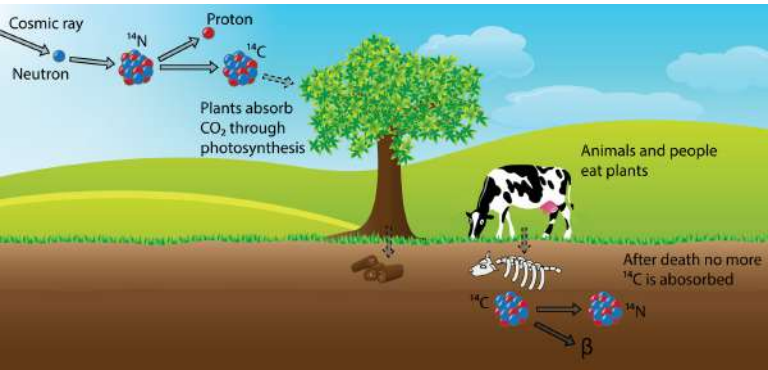



FIGURE 25.4
Carbon dating

Half-life

Each radioactive nucleus decays independently and randomly. Each isotope also has a distinct **half-life** that defines how quickly it decays. The half-life of a nucleus is defined as follows: Over the period of time of one half-life, each nucleus has a 50% chance of decaying.

Radioactive isotopes have different half-lives. For example, polonium-210, mentioned above, has a half-life of about 138 days. Uranium-238 has a half-life of over four billion years. Some radioactive isotopes have half-lives of thousandths of seconds, and even smaller. The meaning of half-life is the same, however. No matter what the time duration for the half-life is, after that time interval passes, one-half of the original sample remains.

Let us use the symbol T_o for the half-life of any radioactive isotope and N_o for initial mass N for the remaining mass of the radioactive isotope. We can then construct the following table.

TABLE 25.1:

Time (t) **in units of half-lives** T_o	**Sample amount** (N)
0	N_o
$1T_o$	$\frac{1}{2}N_o$
$2T_o$	$\frac{1}{4}N_o$
$3T_o$	$\frac{1}{8}N_o$
$4T_o$	$\frac{1}{16}N_o$

Note that based on the defintion of a half-life, the table describes an exponential function.

A graph corresponding to the table is provided below, **Figure** 25.5. It is assumed that when $t = 0, N_o = 10$ grams. Note that the time is expressed in units of half-life, n.

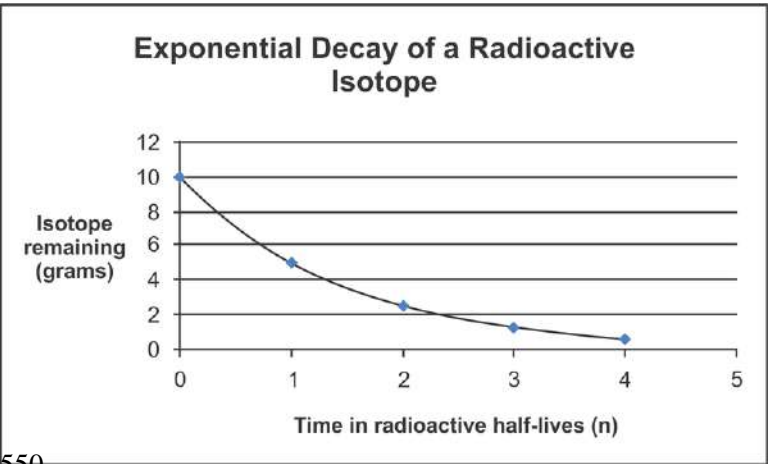



FIGURE 25.5
The decay of a radioactive material in units of half-lives.

Decay of Carbon-14

This function tells us how to measure the time taken by the decay of carbon-14. At the onset of death, the carbon-14 in the body begins to decrease. While a living thing is alive, it has a fixed ratio of carbon-14 to the ordinary carbon-12 of roughly one part per trillion.

Carbon-14 has a half-life of 5,730 years. Thus, after 5,730 years, only about half of the carbon-14 will remain (one part per two trillion). After 11,460 years, the ratio will be one part per four trillion.

Radioactive dating (or just carbon dating) is not perfect because the processes which form radioactive carbon and mix it with nonradioactive carbon are very dynamic. Yet, statistically it yields fairly accurate results. The accuracy of carbon dating has been verified by using items of known age. For example, the age assigned to papyrus found in Egyptian pyramids using carbon dating agrees quite well with the age that historians had determined from the historical records. Using carbon dating, the iconic paintings in Lascaux cave in southwestern France have been determined to be around $15,500 \pm 900$ years old. Carbon dating techniques have been instrumental in determining the approximate ages of prehistoric settlements by an examination of the charcoal found at campsites.

Learn more about carbon dating at the link below.

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/CarbonDating/

Illustrative Example

A sample of 128 grams of a radioactive isotope with half-life of 8 years decays for 48 years. How much of the original isotope remains?

Solution:

The time period for the decay, 48 years, is equivalent to 6 half-lives (or six doublings) $\rightarrow n = \frac{48}{8} = 6$.

Using Equation A,

$N = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n N_o = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^6 (128\ g) = 2.00\ g$

Therefore after 48 years, 2.00 g of the original isotope remains.

b. Determine the amount remaining if the time is 50 years.

Solution:

The approach is the same as in part (a).

$n = \frac{50}{8} = 6.25$ doublings

$N = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n N_o = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{6.25} (128\ g) = 1.68\ g$

25.3 Nuclear Fission and Fusion

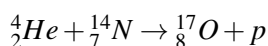
Vocabulary

- **nuclear fission:** The splitting of an atom with a large atomic mass into at least two relatively equal parts, with an accompanying release of energy.
- **nuclear fusion:** The process in which the nuclei of lighter elements combine and form heavier elements, with an accompanying release of energy.

Nuclear fission

Earlier, we saw that high-energy neutrons were able to change nitrogen into radiocarbon. Physicists have known since 1919 that other natural processes also caused the transmutation of elements. (Note: Transmutation occurs in both nuclear fission and nuclear fusion reactions.) In 1919, Ernest Rutherford observed that, as high-energy alpha particles passed through nitrogen gas, oxygen atoms and free protons (p) were emitted. He reasoned that the nitrogen nuclei had taken on one additional proton and two additional neutrons, and thus turned into oxygen-17.

The transformation can be written as:

$^{4}_{2}He + ^{14}_{7}N \rightarrow ^{17}_{8}O + p$

Rutherford's experiment was the first instance of what is called the artificial transmutation of elements. During the 1930s, the famous Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954), began experimenting in that field. He realized that slow-moving neutrons would be the best particles to use in inducing nuclear reactions, because they are not repelled by the nucleus. In fact, if they got close enough to the nucleus, they would be attracted by the strong nuclear force and captured by nuclei.

Fermi's idea proved correct. Bombarding the heaviest known naturally occurring element, uranium, $Z = 92$ with neutrons, he was able to produce the first transuranic (beyond uranium) elements that are not found anywhere on Earth. Examples include Neptunium $(Ne,\ Z = 93)$ and Americium $(Am,\ Z = 95)$.

Two German scientists, Otto Hahn and Fritz Strassmann, built on Fermi's work in the late 1930s. They noticed that at times, when uranium was exposed to slow neutrons, two smaller nuclei, roughly half the size of the uranium atom, emerged from the reaction. How could this be? Up until that time, only small particles such as alpha particles were seen to be ejected in such reactions.

A former Jewish colleague of Hahn's, Lise Meitner (1878-1968) and her nephew and colleague, Otto Frisch (1904-1979) had left Nazi Germany fearing the anti-Semitism of Hitler's Germany, and were working in Sweden at the time.

When Hahn reported the peculiar results of the experiment to Meitner (who shared them with Frisch), they quickly realized what had occurred. The captured neutron increased the internal energy of the nucleus of the uranium atom, **Figure** 25.6. The additional energy caused an increase in the motion of the nucleons in the atom. That, in turn, caused the nucleus to expand. As the nucleus expanded, the strong nuclear force weakened, permitting the electrostatic repulsion to split the uranium atom into nearly two equal parts, N_1 *and* N_2. Hahn and Strassmann had spilt the atom.

The splitting of an atom with a large atomic mass into at least two relatively equal parts, with an accompanying release of energy, is called nuclear fission.

It can be explained by likening the nucleus to a liquid drop, as shown in **Figure** 25.6.

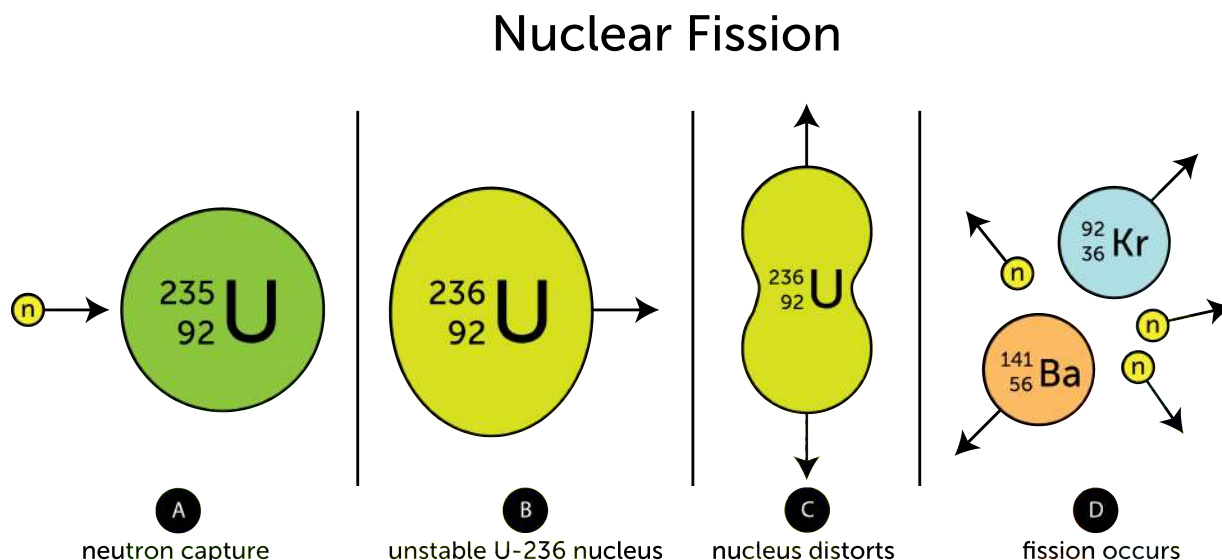



FIGURE 25.6
The liquid-drop model of atomic fission. (A) A neutron is about to be captured by a nucleus. (B) After capture, the atomic mass is increased by 1 and it is in an excited state. Thermal energy causes the nucleus to expand. (C) Expansion leads to the "fission" process of splitting. (D) The nucleus splits into two almost equal parts along with the ejection of three neutrons.

In addition to the daughter nuclei, three neutrons are also released in the process, as shown in **Figure** 25.6. Physicists can detect the tracks of subatomic particles on photographic plates, as well as observe them by a trail of tiny droplets of water they produce when passing through a container filled with water vaporor alcohol (such containers are known as "cloud chambers.")

For more information on the tools physicists use to detect subatomic particles, follow the links below.

Cloud chambers: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zxHvqWcTfMk

Bubble chambers: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qcUwLH8L5AU

It wasn't long before physicists realized the consequence of the liberation of additional neutrons within a reaction, which depended upon neutrons in the first place! It was clear that the release of just a few neutrons could induce an immense number of uranium nuclei to split in a very short period of time at the ever-increasing rate. The reaction would be self-sustaining, also known as the chain reaction.

A more detailed explanation of the process is as follows:

- Slow neutrons cause uranium-235 $\left({}^{235}_{92}U\right)$ to split into two nearly equal parts.
- In the process, several neutrons are liberated from the parent nucleus, in addition to about 200 MeV of energy.
- The emitted neutrons, in turn, cause more uranium nuclei to split apart and more energy to be released.
- The continual emission of neutrons creates an exponential increase of nuclear fission events known as a chain reaction. Using that principle, Fermi built the first nuclear reactor at the University of Chicago in December, 1942.

It was also understood that a nuclear chain reaction could be used to build an atomic bomb. During World War II, the

Nazis were working on such a bomb, and so was the United States. Fortunately for us, the United States succeeded and the Nazis did not. In fact, Nazi Germany was defeated before the United States developed the atomic bomb. About seven weeks after the surrender of Nazi Germany, the first atomic bomb was tested (detonated) in a remote section of New Mexico on July 16, 1945. With the war in the Pacific still going on, President Harry S. Truman made the decision to use the atomic bomb. In August 1945, atomic bombs were dropped on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, leading to the quick capitulation of Japan and ending World War II.

For nearly two decades after World War II, atomic tests (denotations) were conducted above ground. These explosions, despite all the precautions, produced enormous, long-lasting environmental effects. The radiation produced from atomic explosions (called atomic fallout) does not simply go away. The half-life of many radioactive particles produced in those tests is measured in decades, hundreds, and even thousands of years. As we stated earlier, nuclear radiation can have devastating effects, such as triggering cancer, on human beings. Those who witnessed the effects of atomic radiation in Japan knew well the consequences of waging atomic war. The ill effects of exposure to atomic radiation are not confined to only those who experience it. They can be passed on to future generations in the form of genetic mutations. Soil, air, and water can all be irrevocably poisoned by atomic fallout.

We now use atomic energy for peaceful purposes. Nuclear reactors produce heat that is used to generate steam to run turbines (generators). The dangerous byproducts of nuclear reactions, however, are still with us. It remains a challenge to find safe and secure ways of dealing with nuclear materials.

Learn more about nuclear fission by clicking the links below.

http://phet.colorado.edu/en/simulation/nuclear-fission

http://demonstrations.wolfram.com/IsotopeDecay/

Nuclear fusion

The process in which the nuclei of lighter elements combine and form heavier elements, with an accompanying release of energy, is called **nuclear fusion**.

Fusion does not occur naturally on Earth, since it requires tremendous amounts of energy to bring protons close enough for the strong force to overcome the electrostatic repulsion between them. We have managed to create uncontrolled fusion events on Earth in the form of thermonuclear bombs (an atomic bomb triggers a thermonuclear, or fusion bomb). Controlled fusion events have been achieved experimentally for only a tiny fraction of a second, and for very small samples of materials.

Fusion does occur naturally within the stars. Within the core of a star, sufficient energy exists to force the protons close enough together within the range of the nuclear strong force. Through a series of nuclear reactions, helium nuclei are eventually formed, releasing about 27 MeV per transmutation. Though this amount is considerably less than the energy released during the fission of a single Uranium-235 nuclei (200 MeV), the sun has vast amounts of hydrogen. Fusing hydrogen into helium releases about $4 \times 10^{26}\ J$ every second within the sun. This is about 1 million times more energy than the energy currently used by the entire human race in a year!

All nuclei beyond beryllium are made in the cores of stars. Stars as massive as the sun can create nuclei of oxygen $(Z = 8)$ but no greater. Stars with masses greater than eight times that of the sun can create nuclei up through iron and nickel. Some very massive red giant stars can produce nuclei up though lead. Most of the nuclei beyond iron, however, are produced during supernovae explosions, where the temperature inside the core of such massive stars reaches in excess of a billion kelvins (the core temperature of the sun is merely 30 million kelvins).

A supernova explosion occurs when the process of fusion inside a star's core is overcome by the gravitational force seeking to compress the star. As the star collapses, due to the inward force of gravity (known as "gravitational collapse"), enough energy is available to fuse nuclei beyond iron. Stellar compression continues until a "blast wave" is initiated and the star explodes, exuding those nuclei heavier than iron. Only a star with a mass several times greater than the sun has can become a supernova. With the exception of hydrogen, all of the elements in the periodic table, **Figure** 25.7, are created through fusion.

Group → / ↓ Period	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
1	1 H																	2 He
2	3 Li	4 Be											5 B	6 C	7 N	8 O	9 F	10 Ne
3	11 Na	12 Mg											13 Al	14 Si	15 P	16 S	17 Cl	18 Ar
4	19 K	20 Ca	21 Sc	22 Ti	23 V	24 Cr	25 Mn	26 Fe	27 Co	28 Ni	29 Cu	30 Zn	31 Ga	32 Ge	33 As	34 Se	35 Br	36 Kr
5	37 Rb	38 Sr	39 Y	40 Zr	41 Nb	42 Mo	43 Tc	44 Ru	45 Rh	46 Pd	47 Ag	48 Cd	49 In	50 Sn	51 Sb	52 Te	53 I	54 Xe
6	55 Cs	56 Ba		72 Hf	73 Ta	74 W	75 Re	76 Os	77 Ir	78 Pt	79 Au	80 Hg	81 Tl	82 Pb	83 Bi	84 Po	85 At	86 Rn
7	87 Fr	88 Ra		104 Rf	105 Db	106 Sg	107 Bh	108 Hs	109 Mt	110 Ds	111 Rg	112 Cn	113 Uut	114 Fl	115 Uup	116 Lv	117 Uus	118 Uuo
Lanthanides				57 La	58 Ce	59 Pr	60 Nd	61 Pm	62 Sm	63 Eu	64 Gd	65 Tb	66 Dy	67 Ho	68 Er	69 Tm	70 Yb	71 Lu
Actinides				89 Ac	90 Th	91 Pa	92 U	93 Np	94 Pu	95 Am	96 Cm	97 Bk	98 Cf	99 Es	100 Fm	101 Md	102 No	103 Lr

FIGURE 25.7

The periodic table.

25.4 Cosmic Rays

Cosmic Rays

Radioactive decay of nuclei is usually in only one of a few modes: α, β, and γ. However, at higher energies there is a much wider range of nuclear reactions. This is most commonly visible in **cosmic rays**. Cosmic rays are high-energy particles that hit the Earth's atmosphere, coming from sources far outside the solar system like distant supernovae.

Follow the link below for more information.

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mI1FPT0U8Qo

25.5 The Standard Model

Vocabulary

- **electroweak force:** Force composed of nuclear weak force and electromagnetism.
- **quantum chromodynamics:** Theoretical frameork.
- **quarks:** Small particles with a fractional charge that make up nucleons.
- **standard model:** Model combining everything that was known in the 1970s about the myriad of subatomic particles of the time.
- **weak nuclear force**

The weak nuclear force and the standard model

We have mentioned several times that there are four fundamental forces in nature:

- Gravity
- Electromagnetism
- The strong nuclear force
- **The weak nuclear force**

It would not be proper to end this chapter without at least a passing reference to the weak nuclear force and the ultimate goal of theoretical physics.

Physicists believe today that every particle has an associated "antiparticle." For example, the antiparticle of the electron is called the positron. It is identical to an electron in every way except for the fact that its charge is positive. When they combine, they annihilate each other A neutral particle like the neutron also has an antiparticle and a neutron and its antiparticle also annihilate each other when they combine. The realization that all particles have antiparticles is instrumental in developing a complete theory of subatomic particles, which is why we mention it here.

We stated earlier that a free neutron (one not confined to the nucleus of an atom) decays into a proton, an electron, and an antineutrino. The net charge remains zero, the antineutrino having no charge. An antineutron decays into an antiproton (negative charge), a positron, and a neutrino (again, the net charge is zero.) How, you may wonder, can a neutron be considered a fundamental particle if it can decompose into other particles? Indeed, this is not the case. Physicists no longer accept that nucleons are fundamental particles. The electron is still believed to be a fundamental particle, though.

If there are particles more fundamental than nucleons, then the nucleons must be composed of yet smaller particles. Physicists recognize these particles as having fractional charge and call them **quarks**. It is the weak nuclear force which allows quarks to transform a proton into a neutron (and vice versa). It is also known that the weak nuclear force creates neutrinos and facilitates certain types of radioactive decay and plays an important role in solar fusion.

Physicists realized that a strong force (or interaction) would be necessary to hold the quarks together and produced a theoretical framework for this called **quantum chromodynamics**.

In the 1960s, it was shown that the nuclear weak force and electromagnetism were aspects of the same force, now called the **electroweak force**. By the 1970's physicists had worked out a model of particle physics called the **Standard Model**. The model combined everything that was known about the myriad of subatomic particles of the time. It did not incorporate gravity (general relativity) but did combine the electroweak force and quantum chromodynamics.

Einstein's dream was to find a single force from which the four fundamental forces of nature would arise. The goal today is to extend the standard model into a grand unified theory (affectionately known as GUT) by incorporating into it the strong nuclear force and gravity. String theory, the notion that all forces and particles can be attributed to fundamental structures called strings, was thought to be able to provide such a theory. However, after 20 years of work with very little progress, more and more physicists are beginning to suspect that string theory may not hold the promise it once did.

In the summer of 2012, a very important discovery was made concerning a subatomic particle called the Higgs boson particle. The standard model has predicted the existence of a particle which conveys mass to particles. It is called the Higgs boson and physicists believe they have confirmation of its existence due to the high energy experiments conducted with the CERN (Conseil Europeen pour la Recherche Nucleaire) particle accelerator located near Geneva, Switzerland.

To learn more about the Higgs boson particle follow the link below.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Higgs_boson

1. Atoms are always neutral; that is, they have the same number of protons in the nucleus as electrons about the nucleus.
2. Neutrons and protons are called *nucleons* since they form the atomic nucleus.
3. The *atomic number* of an atom is the number of protons in its nucleus. It is expressed symbolically as Z.
4. The total number of nucleons in the nucleus is called the *atomic mass number*. It is expressed symbolically as A.
5. The nuclei that contain the same number of protons but a different number of neutrons are called *isotopes*. All chemical elements have multiple isotopes.
6. The nucleus is often represented symbolically as ${}^{A}_{Z}X$.
7. Experimental evidence shows that the total mass of a *stable* nucleus is smaller than the sum of the masses of its components. The energy equivalent of this mass difference Δm, or *mass deficit*, can be used to find *the binding energy* of the nucleus.
8. The binding energy is found from the Einstein equation $E = \Delta mc^2$.
9. The half-life is the amount of time required for half of the radioactive parent atoms to transform into the daughter atoms.
10. The amount of a sample N_o of radioactive material remaining after n doublings of its half-life is N, given by the equation $N = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n N_o$.
11. The splitting of an atom with a large atomic mass into at least two relatively equal parts, with an accompanying release of energy, is called nuclear *fission*.
12. The process in which the nuclei of lighter elements combine and form heavier elements, with an accompanying release of energy, is called nuclear *fusion*.

25.6 References

1. National Cancer Institute. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pet_scans_of_aids_patient_with_dementia.jpg . public domain
2. User:Fastfission/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Binding_energy_curve_-_common_isotopes.svg . Public Domain
3. User:Stannerd/Wikimedia Commons and User:Ehamberg/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Alfa_beta_gamma_radiation_penetration.svg . CC BY 2.5
4. Zachary Wilson and Laura Guerin. CK-12 Foundation .
5. Ira Nirenberg. CK-12 Foundation .
6. Christopher Auyeung. CK-12 Foundation .
7. User:Cepheus/Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Periodic_table.svg . Public Domain

Chapter 26 Physics Glossary

Chapter Outline

26.1 A

accuracy
Determined by a comparing a measured quantity to an accepted value (if the accepted value exists, of course).

average speed
Distance divided by time whether speed is constant or not.

average velocity
The change in position divided by the change in time whether velocity is constant or not.

26.2 D

dimensional analysis
In physics and all science, dimensional analysis is a tool to find or check relations among physical quantities by using their dimensions. The dimension of a physical quantity is the combination of the basic physical dimensions (usually length, mass, time, electric current, temperature, amount of substance, and luminous intensity) which describe it; for example, speed has the dimension length per time, and may be measured in meters per second, miles per hour, or other units. Dimensional analysis is based on the fact that a physical law must be independent of the units used to measure the physical variables. A straightforward practical consequence is that any meaningful equation (and any inequality and inequation) must have the same dimensions in the left and right sides. Checking this is the basic way of performing dimensional analysis.

displacement
The change in position, a vector quantity.

distance
The separation between two points, a scalar quantity.

26.3 H

hypothesis

A tentative explanation for an observation, phenomenon, or scientific problem that can be tested by further investigation.

26.4 L

law

A concise mathematical relationship that always occurs under specific conditions. A law is NOT an explanation.

length

The measurement of the extent of something along its greatest dimension.

26.5 M

mass
: A property of matter equal to the measure of an object's resistance to changes in either the speed or direction of its motion. The mass of an object is not dependent on gravity and therefore is different from but proportional to its weight.

meter stick
: A ruler one meter long (about 39.37 inches in length).

26.6 P

position

The separation between an object and a reference point.

powers of 10 notation

$1 = 10^0$, $10 = 10^1$, $100 = 10^2$, $1{,}000 = 10^3$, etc.
$\frac{1}{10} = 10^{-1}$, $\frac{1}{100} = 10^{-2}$, $\frac{1}{1000} = 10^{-3}$, etc.

precision

The number of significant digits to which a value has been reliably measured.
The ability of a measurement to be consistently reproduced.

26.7 R

random error

An inconsistent error usually associated with the precision of a measuring tool, often detected by multiple readings.

26.8 S

scalar
A quantity, such as mass, length, or speed, that is completely specified by its magnitude or size and has no direction.

scientific method
A systematic approach used to investigate the natural world.

significant digits
Those digits in a measurement that carry reliable measurement information.

SI units
The International System of Units (SI) defines seven units of measure as a basic set from which all other SI units are derived. These SI base units and their physical quantities are: meter for length, kilogram for mass, second for time, ampere for electric current, kelvin for temperature, candela for luminous intensity, and mole for the amount of substance.

systematic error
A consistent error usually associated with a calibration error or reading error, NOT detected by multiple readings.

26.9 T

theory

A statement or set of statements devised to explain a group of observations or phenomena, especially one that has been repeatedly tested or is widely accepted and can be used to make predictions about natural phenomena.

time

A nonspatial continuum in which events occur in apparently irreversible succession from the past through the present to the future.

26.10 U

uncertainty (in measurement)
Generally assumed $\pm\frac{1}{2}$ of the smallest (finest) interval of a measuring device.

uniform speed
A constant speed, one that does not change over time.

uniform velocity
A constant velocity, one that does not change over time.

unit conversion
The procedure for producing equivalent expressions for numerical quantities.

26.11 V

vector

A quantity, such as velocity, that must be completely specified by both a magnitude and a direction.